1.2.6 Sharing artifacts ................................................................. 135
1.2.7 Working with builds ........................................................ 139
  1.2.7.1 Working with build results .............................................. 139
    1.2.7.1.1 Viewing a build result ........................................... 139
    1.2.7.1.2 Assigning responsibility for build failures .................. 146
    1.2.7.1.3 Configuring build results expiry for a plan .................. 147
    1.2.7.1.4 Deleting the results of a plan build ......................... 148
  1.2.7.2 Working with comments .............................................. 149
  1.2.7.3 Working with labels ................................................ 150
  1.2.7.4 Quarantining failing tests ......................................... 150
  1.2.7.5 Setting up plan build dependencies ............................... 151
    1.2.7.5.1 Dependency blocking strategies ............................... 152
  1.2.7.6 Viewing test statistics for a job .................................. 153
  1.2.7.7 Reordering jobs in the build queue ................................ 154
  1.2.7.8 Stopping an active build ........................................... 154
1.2.8 Deployment projects .................................................. 155
  1.2.8.1 Understanding deployment releases ............................... 157
  1.2.8.2 Deployment projects workflow ...................................... 158
  1.2.8.3 A sample deployment project ...................................... 159
  1.2.8.4 Creating and configuring a deployment project .................. 163
    1.2.8.4.1 Naming versions for deployment releases .......... .......... 166
  1.2.8.5 Creating a deployment environment ............................... 169
    1.2.8.5.1 Tasks for deployment environments ........................... 172
    1.2.8.5.2 Triggers for deployment environments ........................ 174
    1.2.8.5.3 Agents for deployment environments ........................... 176
    1.2.8.5.4 Notifications for deployment environments .................. 177
    1.2.8.5.5 Variables for deployment environments ........................ 179
    1.2.8.5.6 Permissions for deployment environments .................... 180
    1.2.8.5.7 Requirements for deployment environments ................... 181
  1.2.8.6 Managing deployment projects .................................... 182
  1.2.8.7 Manually starting a deployment .................................... 184
  1.2.8.8 Deployments from branches ........................................ 186
1.2.9 Getting feedback ...................................................... 189
  1.2.9.1 Notifications ....................................................... 189
    1.2.9.1.1 Displaying the wallboard ...................................... 190
    1.2.9.1.2 Configuring notifications for a plan and its jobs ........ 191
    1.2.9.1.3 Working with Instant Messenger (IM) notifications .......... 201
    1.2.9.1.4 Subscribing to RSS feeds ..................................... 202
    1.2.9.1.5 System level notifications .................................... 202
  1.2.9.2 Reporting ........................................................... 204
    1.2.9.2.1 Viewing build statistics for all users ....................... 204
    1.2.9.2.2 Viewing build results for an author ........................ 205
    1.2.9.2.3 Generating reports on selected authors ...................... 205
    1.2.9.2.4 Generating reports across multiple plans ................... 208
    1.2.9.2.5 Viewing the Clover code-coverage for a plan ............... 213
    1.2.9.2.6 Viewing the Clover code-coverage for a build ............... 215
1.2.10 Integrating Bamboo with Atlassian applications .................. 217
  1.2.10.1 Linking to another application .................................. 218
  1.2.10.2 Integrating Bamboo with JIRA applications .................... 219
    1.2.10.2.1 Viewing linked JIRA application issues .................... 221
    1.2.10.2.2 Linking JIRA application issues to a build ............... 223
    1.2.10.2.3 Creating JIRA application issues from a build ............ 224
    1.2.10.2.4 Viewing Bamboo activity in JIRA applications ............ 225
    1.2.10.2.5 Integrating builds with your issues workflow .............. 227
  1.2.10.3 Integrating Bamboo with HipChat ................................ 229
  1.2.10.4 Integrating Bamboo with Confluence ............................. 230
  1.2.10.5 Integrating Bamboo with Stash ................................... 231
  1.2.10.6 Integrating Bamboo with FishEye ................................ 234
  1.2.10.7 Integrating Bamboo with Bitbucket Server ...................... 234
1.2.11 Managing your user profile ........................................ 236
  1.2.11.1 Changing your password ........................................... 237
  1.2.11.2 Changing your notification preferences .......................... 237
  1.2.11.3 Associating your author name with your user profile ........ 237
1.2.12 Bamboo variables ..................................................... 238
  1.2.12.1 Defining global variables ........................................ 244
  1.2.12.2 Defining plan variables .......................................... 245
  1.2.12.3 Passing Bamboo variables to a build script .................... 246
1.2.13 Bamboo permissions .................................................. 246
  1.2.14.1 Quick filters for Bamboo ......................................... 248
  1.2.14.2 Unpacking large .ZIP archives .................................... 249
1.3 Bamboo best practices .................................................. 250
  1.3.1 Bamboo Best Practice - System Requirements ....................... 251
  1.3.2 Bamboo Best Practice - Using stages ................................ 254
  1.3.3 Bamboo Best Practice - Branching and DVCS ....................... 256
  1.3.4 Bamboo Best Practice - Sharing artifacts .......................... 260
  1.3.5 Bamboo Best Practice - Using Agents ................................ 263
1.4 Administering Bamboo ..................................................... 268
Bamboo Documentation Home

Bamboo is a continuous integration and delivery tool that combines automated builds, tests, and releases in a single workflow.

Get started

New to using Bamboo? Get started with some introductory information.
Let's start

What's new

Read all about the latest changes in Bamboo.
Have a look

Getting started with Bamboo

This page describes how to install, set up, and start using Bamboo.
If you're upgrading Bamboo, read the Bamboo upgrade guide instead of this page.
For production installs we recommend that you read Bamboo best practice - system requirements.

Atlassian Bamboo is a continuous integration (CI) and deployment server. Bamboo assists software development teams by providing:

- automated building and testing of software source-code status.
- updates on successful and failed builds.
- reporting tools for statistical analysis.

Please see the following pages for information about getting started with Bamboo:

- Bamboo best practice - system requirements
- Understanding the Bamboo CI Server - a conceptual overview of using Bamboo for continuous integration (CI).

1. Install and start Bamboo

See one of:

- Installing Bamboo on Linux
- Installing Bamboo on Mac OS X
- Installing Bamboo on Windows

Once it's started, you can access Bamboo in your browser at http://localhost:8085/.

2. Set up notifications

Bamboo can send build result notifications using:

- HipChat - see Integrating Bamboo with HipChat
- Email - see Configuring Bamboo to send SMTP Email
- Other services - see Notifications

3. Get building with Bamboo

Bamboo has the concept of a ‘plan’ to look after the configuration for a build. So, to run your first build, you create and run a plan:

- Getting started with Java and Bamboo - a guide to setting up a simple CI workflow for Java code.
- Getting started with .NET and Bamboo - a guide to setting up a simple CI workflow on Windows.

Understanding the Bamboo CI Server

Bamboo is a continuous integration (CI) server that can be used to automate the release management for a software application, creating a continuous delivery pipeline.

What does this mean?

CI is a software development methodology in which a build, unit tests and integration tests are performed, or triggered, whenever code is committed to the repository, to ensure that new changes integrate well into the existing code base. Integration builds provide early 'fail fast' feedback on the quality of new changes.

Release management describes the steps that are typically performed to release a software application, including building and functional testing, tagging releases, assigning versions, and deploying and activating the new version in production.
What problem does Bamboo solve?

If you are a solo developer, then using Bamboo gives you:

- an automated, and therefore reliable, build and test process, leaving you free to code more.
- a way to manage builds that have different requirements or targets.
- automatic deployment to a server, such as the App Store or Google Play.

If you work in a team, then as well as the above advantages, using Bamboo also means that:

- your build and test process is not dependent on a specific local environment.
- builds and integration tests are triggered automatically as soon as a developer commits code (continuous integration).

If you work on a large, complex application, then, in addition to all the above advantages, using Bamboo means that:

- you can optimize build performance through parallelism.
- you can leverage elastic resources.
- you can deploy continuously, for example to user acceptance testing (UAT).
- you can implement release management.

How does Bamboo do this?

- Bamboo is the central management server which schedules and coordinates all work.
- Bamboo itself has interfaces and plugins for lots of types of work.
- Bamboo first gets your source from a source repository (lots of plugins here for a variety of systems).
- Then Bamboo starts the build - that can be done by calling something like MSBuild to build your Visual Studio solution, or Maven to call your compiler and linker - whatever you use.
- Once your solution or project is built, you have “artifacts” (build results, for example, an executable app, config files, etc.).
- You can do additional things with the build artifacts:
  - zip them up into a ZIP file and copy them somewhere.
  - run an install builder on them and create an MSI.
  - install them on a test server to make sure everything installs just fine.
- Bamboo provides a web front-end for configuration and for reporting the status of builds.
What does Bamboo need?

Bamboo schedules and coordinates the work involved in building and testing your application. Therefore, to use Bamboo, you will need to already have the following set up:

- a code repository that contains the complete source code for the project.
- build scripts
- test suites

It is generally assumed that the person who commits a change to the code is responsible for fixing any resulting build errors immediately.

How is a Bamboo workflow organized?

Bamboo uses the concept of a 'plan' with 'jobs' and 'tasks' to configure and order the actions in the workflow.

| Project | • Has one, or more, plans.  
|         | • Provides reporting (using the wallboard, for example) across all plans in the project.  
|         | • Provides links to other applications.  |
| Plan    | • Has a single stage, by default, but can be used to group jobs into multiple stages.  
|         | • Processes a series of one or more stages that are run sequentially using the same repository.  
|         | • Specifies the default repository.  
|         | • Specifies how the build is triggered, and the triggering dependencies between the plan and other plans in the project.  
|         | • Specifies notifications of build results.  
|         | • Specifies who has permission to view and configure the plan and its jobs.  
|         | • Provides for the definition of plan variables.  |
| Stage   | • Has a single job, by default, but can be used to group multiple jobs.  
|         | • Processes its jobs in parallel, on multiple agents (where available).  
|         | • Must successfully complete all its jobs before the next stage in the plan can be processed.  
|         | • May produce artifacts that can be made available for use by a subsequent stage.  |
| Job     | • Processes a series of one or more tasks that are run sequentially on the same agent.  
|         | • Controls the order in which tasks are performed.  
|         | • Collects the requirements of individual tasks in the job, so that these requirements can be matched with agent capabilities.  
|         | • Defines the artifacts that the build will produce.  
|         | • Can only use artifacts produced in a previous stage.  
|         | • Specifies any labels with which the build result or build artifacts will be tagged.  |
| Task    | • Is a small discrete unit of work, such as source code checkout, executing a Maven goal, running a script, or parsing test results.  
|         | • Is run sequentially within a job on a Bamboo working directory.  |

AWS account for Bamboo
Create and configure your AWS (Amazon Web Services) account for smooth Elastic Bamboo setup and maintenance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bamboo</th>
<th>AWS account required</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cloud</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>Runs builds on local agents and/or in cloud (with Elastic Bamboo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>Runs builds on local agents and/or in cloud (with Elastic Bamboo)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating AWS accounts

You can create an AWS root account on http://aws.amazon.com.

Cost management

The cost of all Amazon Web Services usage is billed to your AWS account, separately from your Atlassian subscription. It means that you are responsible for all AWS usage costs incurred on your AWS account.

You can check the current AWS cost in AWS Billing & Cost Management in the AWS management console. For more information, see What is AWS Billing and Cost Management?

The AWS account billing doesn't distinguish between your Bamboo EC2 usage and your other (non-Bamboo) EC2 usage.

Recommendations

We respect different ways in which you might want to structure your working environment. However, we thought we'd let you know what is important from our perspective.

IAM (AWS Identity and Access Management)

For security reasons, Atlassian recommends using IAM for user and access key management. For more information, see IAM Best Practices and IAM Users and Groups.

Tips:

- Bamboo uses access keys for authorization
- Lost access keys? You must generate a new key set in the AWS account console. For more information, see How Do I Get Security Credentials?

Getting started with Java and Bamboo

This tutorial outlines how to use Bamboo to run, and get rapid feedback on, builds for your Java project. Bamboo has the concept of a ‘plan’ to look after the configuration for your continuous integration workflow. So, to run your first build, you’ll create and run a Bamboo plan.

**Related pages:**

- Getting started with .NET and Bamboo

Information you need before you begin

This tutorial assumes you are using Bamboo Cloud, which allows us to make some assumptions about the resources available to Bamboo. You can still use the tutorial if you are using Bamboo Server installed on your local network. You just need to make sure you or your company administrator have properly installed and configured Bamboo for running plans.

We also assume you have an individual Bitbucket account. If you don’t, it only takes minutes to create one, and you can always delete it after you’re done.

1. Create a project and plan

A Bamboo plan specifies the source code repository, the tasks to run in your build, and when to trigger a build. We start by creating a new plan:

1. Log into your Bamboo instance as a user with permissions to create plans.
2. Choose Create > Create a new plan from the menu bar.

Every plan belongs to a project. We don't have a project yet, so choose Project > New Project, and enter details for both the project and
Bamboo needs to know the plan name, plan key and a brief description of what the plan is for.

See Configuring plans for more details.

2. Connect to a source repository

Bamboo needs to know where the source code repository is located, and needs permissions to access the repo, so that it can check out the code when it runs a build. Enter your Bitbucket credentials, and click Load Repositories to browse to your repository.

Connect to the demonstration atlassian_tutorial/helloworld repo on Bitbucket for this tutorial, if you like.
3. Choose how builds are triggered

We can choose how Bamboo gets prompted to run our plan build. For this tutorial, we want Bamboo to run the build when code is committed to the repo:

Leave the **Trigger IP addresses** setting empty.

See [Triggering builds](#) for more details.

4. Configure tasks

Each plan needs to have at least one task specified. Tasks do the real work of the plan.

**The source code checkout task**

A newly created plan has a default Source Code Checkout task that gets the source code from the source repository specified earlier.

See [Checking out code](#) for details.

**The builder task**
We also want to compile the code, and run the unit and integration tests. We'll add a builder task to the Bamboo plan to do that. We assume that your project already has a build process set up that Bamboo can call.

Click Add Task, then Builder and choose the task that matches the build tool for your project. Expand one of the following sections to see configuration details specific to that builder task:

Ant Configuration

Task Description

Executable

Ant

Build File

build.xml

Target

clean test

The target you want to execute. You can also define system properties such as -Djava.awt.headless=true.


Maven 3.x Configuration

Task Description

Executable

Maven 3

Goal

clean test

The goal you want to execute. You can also define system properties such as -Djava.awt.headless=true.

Use Maven Return Code

When determining build success, Bamboo checks Maven return code and searches the log for "BUILD SUCCESS". By checking this option, you will configure Bamboo to skip log parsing. This may fail on some Maven versions/operating systems.

Bamboo also supports Maven 1.0 and Maven 2.0.

Grails Configuration

Task Description

Executable

Grails Commands

clean
test-app

Use a newline to separate Grails commands. Bamboo will automatically append "-non-interactive" to each command


Note that:

- A build tool needs to be installed on the Bamboo server machine before you can use the Bamboo task.
- There are plugins available for Bamboo that add build tasks for other tools, such as Gant and Gradle. See the Atlassian Marketplace for details.

Getting the test results

Your tests will be run when the builder task compiles the code. Each of the builder tasks above has a section to tell Bamboo to expect test results and where to look for them. You can specify a custom results location if your project directory doesn't use the conventional structure.

Where should Bamboo look for the test result files?

- The build will produce test results.
  If checked, the build will fail if no tests are found. Test output must be in JUnit XML format.

Test Results Directory

- Lock in the standard test results directory.
- Specify custom results directories

Where should Bamboo look for the test result files?

See Configuring jobs and Configuring tasks for details.

5. Run!

Enable the plan, and click Create.

You should see the plan run. Bamboo will:

- Connect to the code repository
- Check out the source code
- Compile the code
- Run unit and integration tests
- Report back the test results

The 'Plan Summary' tab will report whether the build succeeded or not.

Tests in the appropriate directory in the source code repository will be run automatically as part of the build, and the test results will be displayed in Bamboo.

Now, whenever you commit a change to the repository, Bamboo will build your source code and report on your test results.

6. Get feedback
Bamboo displays a summary of the results of the build on the dashboard.

You can get further information about the build in the following ways:

- Build results for one or more plans can be displayed on a wallboard.
- You can get notifications about build results sent to you by email, IM and RSS feed.
- You can get build statistics about plans, and about developers contributing code to the build.
- You can drill down into the results to see the code changes that triggered the build, and the tests that were run for that build.

See Getting feedback for details.

**Getting started with .NET and Bamboo**

This page describes how your development team can start using the Bamboo continuous integration server to get rapid feedback on your .NET project.

*You may want to read Understanding the Bamboo CI Server first.*

We assume that you already have:

- Bamboo installed and running. See Installing and upgrading for details. You'll want user accounts in Bamboo for each member of your team.
- Source code under version control. Each team member will have access to the repository.
- Tests, as part of the source code for the project.
- A command that builds the code and executes the tests.

The continuous integration workflow we want is:

1. A developer commits code.
2. Bamboo builds the project:
   a. Connects to the repository and checks out the source code.
   b. Compiles the code.
   c. Runs the unit and integration tests.
3. Bamboo provides feedback on the test results.

How do we achieve this with Bamboo?

Well, we'll create a new Bamboo plan that knows how to check out and build our source code, and then report on our test results.

**On this page:**

Create a Bamboo plan
1. Plan details
2. Choose a source repository
3. Triggering the build
4. Configure tasks
   - The source code checkout task
   - The builder task
   - Getting the test results
5. Go!

**Related pages:**

- Getting started with Java and Bamboo

**Create a Bamboo plan**

A Bamboo plan is where you define the details of your continuous integration workflow.

A plan allows us to specify a source code repository, when Bamboo gets triggered to run the build, and how Bamboo should provide feedback on the test results.

1. **Plan details**

Click Create Plan in the menu bar, and then Create a New Plan.

Every plan belongs to a project. We don't have a project yet, so choose Project > New Project, and enter details for both the project and plan.

See Configuring plans for details.
2. Choose a source repository

Bamboo needs to know where the source code repository is located, and needs access to the repo so that it can check out the code when it runs a build.

Choose the repository type from **Source Repository**, and provide access details such as username and password.

See [Linking to source code repositories](#) for details.

### Source Repositories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Repository</th>
<th>Git</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Git support works best if the Git executable capability is defined for agents. If not defined, Bamboo will use JGit, which currently does not support submodules.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Repository URL</th>
<th>The URL of Git repository.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Branch</th>
<th>The name of the branch (or tag) containing source code.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authentication Type</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use shallow clones</td>
<td>Fetches the shallowest commit history possible. Do not use if your build depends on full repository history.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Triggering the build

We can choose how Bamboo gets triggered to run the plan build.

We want Bamboo to build the project whenever code is checked into the repository.

Choose **Trigger type > Repository triggers the build...**, and optionally, specify an IP address for the repository server.

See [Triggering builds](#) for details.
4. Configure tasks

Each plan needs to have one or more tasks specified. Tasks do the real work of the plan.

*The source code checkout task*

A newly created plan has a default Source Code Checkout task that gets the source code from the source repository specified earlier.

See Checking out code for details.

*The builder task*

We also want to compile the code. We'll add a builder task to the Bamboo plan to do that. We assume that your project already has a build process set up that Bamboo can call upon.

Click Add Task, then Builder and choose the task that matches the build tool for your project. Expand one of the following sections to see configuration details specific to that builder task:

- MSBuild...

**MSBuild Configuration**

**Task Description**

**Executable**

MSBuild v2.0 (32bit)  Add New Executable

**Project File**

YourSolution.sln

The Solution, Project File or MSBuild project to execute when this Job Builds

**Options**

The MSBuild.exe command line switches you wish to include.


- NAnt...
NAnt Configuration

Task Description

Executable

NAnt

Build File

default.build

The name of the NAnt build file that you want to execute when this Job builds

Targets

run

The NAnt targets you want Bamboo to execute when this Job builds

Options

The NAnt command line options you wish to include.

See http://nant.sourceforge.net/ for information about NAnt.

Visual Studio Configuration

Task Description

Executable

Visual Studio 2010

Solution

The Visual Studio solution file you want Bamboo to execute when this Job builds

Options

The devenv command line options you wish to include.

Platform

x86

The platform toolset required to compile your Solution.


Note that a build tool needs to be installed on the Bamboo server machine before you can use the Bamboo task.

See Configuring a builder task for details.

Getting the test results

Now we want to run the unit and integration tests, and display the results from those. You need to set up one of the MSTest, NUnit or MBUnit tasks so Bamboo can get and display the test results. You can specify a custom results location if your project directory doesn't use the conventional structure.

See Configuring a test task for details.

5. Go!
Enable the plan, and click Create.
You should see the plan run. The 'Plan Summary' tab will report whether the build succeeded or not.
Tests in the appropriate directory in the source code repository will be run automatically as part of the build, and the test results will be displayed in Bamboo.
Now, whenever you commit a change to the repository, Bamboo will build your source code and report on your test results.

Get feedback

Bamboo displays a summary of the results of the build on the dashboard.
You can get further information about the build in the following ways:
- Build results for one or more plans can be displayed on a wallboard.
- You can get notifications about build results sent to you by email, IM and RSS feed.
- You can get build statistics about plans, and about developers contributing code to the build.
- You can drill down into the results to see the code changes that triggered the build, and the tests that were run for that build.

See Getting feedback for details.

Getting started with PHP and Bamboo

This page describes how to use Bamboo to get rapid feedback on your PHP project. The worked example builds a Bamboo plan where a developer commits code and Bamboo responds by:
- Connecting to the code repository
- Checking out the source code
- Compiling the code
- Running unit and integration tests
- Reporting back test results

On this page:
- Information you need before you begin
- Step 1: Install the PHP base code framework
- Step 2: Install PHPUnit
- Step 3. Create a project and plan
- Step 4. Configure tasks
- Get feedback

Related pages:
- Getting started with .NET and Bamboo
- Getting started with Ruby and Bamboo

Information you need before you begin

This introduction assumes you are using Bamboo Server installed on your local network. You need to make sure you or your company administrator have properly installed and configured Bamboo for running plans.

You will also need to install:
- The PHP framework
- PHPUnit testing framework

Step 1: Install the PHP base code framework

In order to get full functionality from Bamboo and PHP, you will need to install the PHP base code framework. If you are using Ubuntu, then use the following command to install PHP.

```
$ sudo apt-get install php5-cli
```

See also:
- Installing PHP on MacOS
- Installing PHP on Windows

Step 2: Install PHPUnit

PHPUnit.de provides an excellent PHP archive resource called PHAR.
$ wget https://phar.phpunit.de/phpunit.phar  // download the PHPUnit packages
$ chmod +x phpunit.phar  // make PHPUnit executable
$ mv phpunit.phar /usr/local/bin/phpunit  // copy PHPUnit into your path
$ phpunit --version  // double check it's installed completely

If you prefer, you may use Composer or PEAR to download and install PHPUnit along with its dependencies, however these approaches are beyond the scope of this introduction.

Step 3. Create a project and plan

1. Create a new project

A Bamboo plan defines the details of your continuous integration workflow. You use a plan to identify the source code repository, specify the tasks to run in your build, and when to trigger a build. Each plan belongs to a project. You can add a plan to an existing project or create a new project. In this example, you create both a new project and a new plan in that project.

1. Log into your Bamboo instance as a user with permissions to create plans.
2. Choose Create > Create a New Plan from the menu bar.

Every plan belongs to a project. We don't have a project yet, so choose Project > New Project, and enter details for both the project and plan.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project</th>
<th>New Project</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>TestProject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key</td>
<td>TP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Configure the plan details

Bamboo needs to know the Plan name, Plan key and a brief description of what the plan is for. See Configuring plans for more details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan name</th>
<th>Tutorials</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plan key</td>
<td>TUT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Build Atlassian tutorials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Choose a source repository

Bamboo needs to know where the source code repository is located, and needs access to the repo so that it can check out the code when it runs a build. See Linking to source code repositories for more details.
### 4. Triggering the build

We can choose how Bamboo gets triggered to run the plan build:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trigger type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Repository triggers</td>
<td>the build when changes are committed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger IP addresses</td>
<td>Optionally add an IP address for your repository</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See [Triggering builds](#) for more details.

### Step 4. Configure tasks

Each plan needs to have at least one task specified. Tasks do the real work of the plan.

**The source code checkout task**

A newly created plan has a default Source Code Checkout task that gets the source code from the source repository specified earlier.

See [Checking out code](#) for details.

**Unit testing**

Unit testing for PHP is completed using the PHPUnit testing framework. This is a port of the popular Java JUnit testing framework to PHP. PHPUnit provides also produces test results in the JUnit XML format required by Bamboo.

You will need to add a server executable capability to run PHPUnit:

1. Go to [Overview > Server capabilities](#).
2. Click [Add capability](#) and complete the configuration using the following:
### Capability type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capability type</th>
<th>Executable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Type

PHPUnit

### Executable label

PHPUnit x.x

### Path

Path to the PHPUnit executable e.g. /usr/bin/phpunit-x.x

3. Click **Add** to add the PHPUnit capability.

Now you can create a PHPUnit testing task:

![PHPUnit configuration](image)

#### Getting the test results

Your tests will be run when the builder task compiles the code. Each of the builder tasks above has a section to tell Bamboo to expect test results and where to look for them. You can specify a custom results location if your project directory doesn't use the conventional structure.

- **Where should PHPUnit store the test results file?**
  - Log test execution to an XML file
  - Test Results File
    - test-reports/phpunit.xml
  - Where should PHPUnit store HTML code coverage data?
    - Generate code coverage report in HTML format

See [Jobs and tasks](#) for details.
Step 5: Go!

Enable the plan, and click Create.

You should see the plan run. The 'Plan Summary' tab will report whether the build succeeded or not.

Tests in the appropriate directory in the source code repository will be run automatically as part of the build, and the test results will be displayed in Bamboo.

Now, whenever you commit a change to the repository, Bamboo will build your source code and report on your test results.

Get feedback

Bamboo displays a summary of the results of the build on the dashboard.

You can get further information about the build in the following ways:

- Build results for one or more plans can be displayed on a wallboard.
- You can get notifications about build results sent to you by email, IM and RSS feed.
- You can get build statistics about plans, and about developers contributing code to the build.
- You can drill down into the results to see the code changes that triggered the build, and the tests that were run for that build.

See Getting feedback for details.

Getting started with Ruby and Bamboo

If you would like to see this page improved, please vote for this issue: BAM-10948 - Create documentation for Getting Started with Ruby and Bamboo

Using the Bamboo dashboard

The dashboard is your Bamboo 'home' page. The dashboard has three tabs:

- My Bamboo — a convenient summary of information that is relevant to you (only appears if you have logged in to Bamboo):
  - plans that you have nominated as your favorites.
  - your latest build results (i.e. builds that were triggered by your latest code changes).
  - a summary of your build statistics (only appear if your Bamboo User Profile has been associated with your Author Name).

- All Plans — a list of plans and each plan's latest build result.
- Current Activity — Bamboo's agents and build queue, showing which plans Bamboo is currently building and which plans are waiting to be built.

You can return to the dashboard from anywhere in Bamboo by clicking Dashboard in the top navigation menu.

 Viewing the dashboard

You can:

- click the project name (e.g. 'Bamboo Testing') to view the plans in the project.
- click the plan name (e.g. 'Acceptance Test JDK 1.6') to view the plan details.
- click the build number (e.g. '7823') to view the build result.
- click the author's name to view the author's details (the author is the person who triggered the build by checking-in code).

The icon next to a build number indicates the plan's current status:

- This plan's latest build was successful.
- This plan's latest build failed.
- Bamboo is currently checking-out the source-code for this plan, in preparation for starting a build.
Bamboo is currently queuing a build for this plan in the Build Queue.

Bamboo is currently executing a build for this plan.

The plan is stopped at a manual stage.

The plan was not built, perhaps because the build was manually stopped.

This plan has been disabled.

Screenshot: Bamboo dashboard - 'All Plans' tab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project</th>
<th>Plan</th>
<th>Build</th>
<th>Completed</th>
<th>Tests</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>(core</em> Bamboo</td>
<td>Build WAR</td>
<td>⑨ 81</td>
<td>3 months ago</td>
<td>No tests found</td>
<td>Changes by Krystian Brazulewicz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CI Tests ⑧</td>
<td>⑩ 6669</td>
<td>2 hours ago</td>
<td>30/20 passed</td>
<td>Changes by Peter Grasevski</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Deploy ⑧</td>
<td>⑪ 308</td>
<td>14 hours ago</td>
<td>No tests found</td>
<td>Scheduled with changes by Krystian Brazulewicz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Federated APIs CTX</td>
<td>⑫ 999</td>
<td>3 hours ago</td>
<td>No tests found</td>
<td>Changes by Peter Grasevski</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Integration Branch Auto Merger ⑧</td>
<td>⑬ 86</td>
<td>15 hours ago</td>
<td>No tests found</td>
<td>Changes by Pawel Skoczynski and Przemek Bruski</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J2K 7 Acceptance Test</td>
<td>⑭ 43</td>
<td>4 days ago</td>
<td>26/19 passed</td>
<td>Manual run by Mark Charnukhikin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>License check</td>
<td>⑮ 245</td>
<td>3 hours ago</td>
<td>No tests found</td>
<td>Changes by Peter Grasevski</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MERCURIAL Bamboo WAR</td>
<td>⑯ 27</td>
<td>2 months ago</td>
<td>No tests found</td>
<td>Changes by Marek Przyluski</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OpenJDK CI Tests</td>
<td>⑰ 3115</td>
<td>3 hours ago</td>
<td>223 passed</td>
<td>Scheduled with changes by James Hatherly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REST Docs</td>
<td>⑱ 371</td>
<td>1 month ago</td>
<td>No tests found</td>
<td>Manual run by Mark Charnukhikin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Filtering the plans

You can filter the plans on your dashboard according to plan labels. For instructions on how to add a label to a plan, see Working with labels.

To filter the dashboard plans by label:

1. Navigate to the dashboard.
2. Click the **Filter Plans** button. If the plan already has labels, they will be displayed next to the button, otherwise the button will read Filter Plans.
3. In the 'Filter Plans' dialog, select the labels to filter by.
4. Click Save. The dashboard will refresh, showing only the plans with the selected labels.

Screenshot: Filtering plans on a dashboard
Working with favorites

The **My Bamboo** tab lists your favorite plans — that is, the plans you work with the most. You can easily add and remove plans from your favorites.

When you add a plan to your favorites, you become a ‘watcher’ of the plan. This means that you will receive notifications about the build results for your favorite plans, depending on how your administrator has configured each plan’s notifications. You can receive notifications by email, Instant Messaging (IM) and RSS feed.

To add a plan to your favorites:

1. Click **Dashboard** in the top navigation bar, to display the dashboard.
2. Click the **All Plans** tab. This will display a list of all plans in your Bamboo system.
3. Locate the plan and click the grey star icon at the right.

Viewing Bamboo’s agents

A Bamboo agent is a service that can run job builds. There are the following types of Bamboo agents:

- **local agents** run as part of the Bamboo server.
- **remote agents** run on computers, other than the Bamboo server, that run the remote agent tool.
- **elastic agents** run in the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2).

Local agents run in the Bamboo server’s process, i.e. in the same JVM as the server. Each remote agent runs in its own process, i.e. has its own JVM.

Each agent has a defined set of capabilities and can only run builds for jobs whose requirements match the agent’s capabilities.

To view agents that are currently active, see **Using the Bamboo dashboard**.

View the agents in Bamboo

1. Choose **Build > Build activity** from the Bamboo header.
2. Click the name of the agent in the ‘Building’ section to see details for that particular agent.
3. Click **X of Y online agents building** in the ‘Building’ section of the page to see a list of all available agents.

View a specific Bamboo agent as a Bamboo administrator

1. Choose **Agents** from the ‘cog’ menu of the Bamboo header.
2. Click the name of the agent. You can configure this agent and its capabilities:
   - Click **Executable Plans** to view the plans that this agent can build.
   - Click **System Properties** to view the system properties of this agent.

Keyboard shortcuts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What are you doing?</th>
<th>Keyboard Shortcut</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Viewing any screen</td>
<td>Alt / Cmd + c</td>
<td>Opens Create menu at Create new plan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Getting started with Node.js and Bamboo

Node.js is described as:

"a platform built on Chrome's JavaScript engine for easily building fast, scalable network applications. Node.js uses an event-driven, non-blocking I/O model that makes it lightweight and efficient, perfect for data-intensive real-time applications that run across distributed devices." [Node.js]

We agree, and bundle a number of tasks with Bamboo to make it easy for you to get continuous integration and deployment for your Node.js projects. You can find the official Node.js documentation [here].

Distributions

Node.js distributions usually come bundled with npm, a package manager for the platform, which runs from the command line and manages dependencies for your applications.

All npm packages contain a file, usually in the project root, called package.json - this file holds metadata relevant to the project. You can find out more about the package.json file [here].

Configure your Node.js project

Add the following dependencies (or devDependencies) to the package.json file in your Node.js project. These are required if you want to use the Grunt 0.4.x, Gulp, Bower, Nodeunit or Mocha Test Runner tasks:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Dependency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grunt 0.4.x</td>
<td>grunt (v0.4 or newer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grunt-cli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gulp</td>
<td>gulp (v3.3.2 or newer recommended)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bower</td>
<td>bower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mocha Test Runner</td>
<td>mocha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mocha-bamboo-reporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nodeunit</td>
<td>nodeunit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Your package.json file should look something like this:
Install the necessary `node_modules` before executing any of the Node.js tasks, by adding an `npm` task and using the `install` command.

**Node.js tasks**

Bamboo ships with specific tasks for Node.js that make it easy to integrate the Node.js platform with Bamboo. You can use these tasks to set up builds for your Node.js project.

```
"devDependencies": {

  "mocha": "~1.18",
  "mocha-bamboo-reporter": "*",

  "nodeunit": "~0.8"
}
"dependencies": {

  "grunt": "~0.4",
  "grunt-cli": "~0.1",

  "gulp": "~3.3.2",

  "bower": "~1.3.12"
}
```

Note that it is possible to execute scripts installed by the `npm` task from the `node_modules`; however, we recommend that you use the dedicated tasks for executing such scripts, such as Grunt, Mocha or Nodeunit.

Install the necessary `node_modules` before executing any of the Node.js tasks, by adding an `npm` task and using the `install` command.

**npm task**

The `npm` task allows you to execute Node Package Manager commands in build plans and deployment projects. To run `npm` commands, simply enter the command to execute during task configuration:
In order to execute npm commands, the Node.js capability must be present on your build agent (see below).

Note: since Node.js and npm are distributed together, Bamboo will use the Node.js capability for npm tasks as well. The path will be modified at run time to point to the npm executable.

**Node.js task**

The Node.js task is a general purpose task that can be used to execute Node scripts within Bamboo.

To run the Node.js task, the Node.js capability must be present on your local or remote agents (see below). Node.js can be used to execute any custom Node.js scripts or applications. To do so, enter the path of the script to execute in the task configuration, and optionally define additional arguments to pass.

Note that it is possible to execute scripts installed by the npm task from the `node_modules`, however we recommend that you use the dedicated tasks for executing such scripts, such as Grunt, Mocha or Nodeunit.

**Mocha**

Mocha is a test framework that runs on the Node.js platform.

You can use the Mocha Test Runner task to run your Mocha tests – it will create an output file named `mocha.json`.

You can configure the task to parse test results after a successful execution. Alternatively, you can add a Mocha Test Parser task to run afterwards to parse the test results.

If you don't do a full checkout on each build, make sure you add a task to delete `mocha.json` before the Mocha Test Runner task. A simple script task that runs `rm -f mocha.json` should do the trick.

**Grunt**
Use the Grunt task to take advantage of the Grunt task runner.

**Nodeunit**

Nodeunit is a tool for defining and running unit tests for Node.js projects. Running the Nodeunit task will create test results in JUnit XML format.

You can configure the task to parse test results after a successful execution. Alternatively, you can add a following JUnit Parser task to parse the test results.

**Node.js capability**

Bamboo comes with a definition for a new executable capability called Node.js. In order to use the Node.js task (as well as most of the other Node.js tasks in Bamboo), you need this capability to be present on your local or remote agents.

The capability can be auto detected on the server side.

### Server capabilities

You can use this page to view, add and delete server capabilities. These capabilities will be inherited by all local agents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Executable label</th>
<th>Path</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ant (Ant)</td>
<td>/usr/share/ant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails (Grails)</td>
<td>/usr/share/grails/2.2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node.js (Node.js)</td>
<td>/opt/node-v0.10.26-linux-x64/bin/node</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `NODE_HOME` environment variable will instruct Bamboo where to look for Node.js if it is not installed in a typical directory - it should point to the location of the Node.js installation. Bamboo will search the agent’s default directories to find the Node.js installation; it will also search in location specified by `NODE_HOME`.

**Getting started with Docker and Bamboo**

Manage and run your Bamboo remote agents using Docker!

A Bamboo server can use one or more remote build agents (up to 100 depending on your license). Remote agents execute jobs from your build plan. Because jobs can have different requirements, it is useful to have agents with different capabilities.

Docker is a great way to manage your remote agents, and provides:

- Ease of use – you can automate or script the creation and maintenance of your remote agents.
- Very quick duplication and distribution of changes to remote agents.
- The ability to run multiple remote agents on the same host without conflicting requirements.

Read Configuring the Docker task in Bamboo to see how you can build Docker images, run Docker containers as part of your Bamboo build, and push a Docker image to a Docker registry.

**Docker images**

Atlassian has published two images to the Docker Hub at https://hub.docker.com/u/atlassian/.

- **atlassian/bamboo-java-agent** Suitable for java stack development.
  - Bamboo agent .jar (5.6.0)
  - OpenJDK 7
  - Git, Mercurial, CVS and SVN
  - Maven 2, 3 and Ant

- **atlassian/bamboo-base-agent** Suitable for deep customization.
  - Bamboo agent .jar (5.6.0)
  - OpenJDK 7
You can modify these images to suit your own requirements.

**Bamboo server**

Note that the Docker images do not include a Bamboo server. Download and install Bamboo separately before continuing – see Getting started with Bamboo.

**Usage**

For a new Bamboo installation there will not be any remote agents yet. When you run a remote agent (see below), it will connect to the Bamboo server and will be ready to execute jobs from your build plans.

Ensure your Bamboo server is running, then go to Administration > Agents to see your remote agent once it is running.

The following commands need to be run with `sudo` because Docker needs to run as root. You may need to replace `docker` with `docker.io` (depending on your installation) – see http://docker.io.

Pull the remote build agent from the Docker Hub Repository:

```
sudo docker pull atlassian/bamboo-java-agent
```

Once downloaded, run your agent with the following command:

```
sudo docker run -e HOME=/root/ -e BAMBOO_SERVER=http://hostname:port/bamboo -i -t atlassian/bamboo-java-agent:latest
```

Replace `hostname:port` with your Bamboo server’s name and port (typically 8085).

Don’t use localhost as the server address because for Docker, localhost is in the Docker container, not the host machine.

Go back to Administration > Agents (or refresh that page) and notice that your remote agent has registered itself.

**Customization**

The two Bamboo agent images are based on our own atlassian/ubuntu-minimal image, which is built using the Docker 'contrib' script and 'debootstrap'.

To customize an image, run it in a container. Name the container for easier access later:

```
sudo docker run --name="tmp-name" -e HOME=/root/ -i -t atlassian/bamboo-java-agent:latest /bin/bin/bash
```

Now change whatever you want inside the container with the usual bash commands. You can enforce some capabilities by changing the file in `/root/bamboo-agent-home/bin/bamboo-capabilities.properties`.

After that, exit and create a new image from the container like this:

```
sudo docker commit tmp-name atlassian/customized-agent:1.0.0
```

You can publish your new image by pushing it to the Docker Registry.

**Troubleshooting**
If you have DNS problems (i.e. the Docker container can ping the IP of the server but not the hostname) consider using this command:

```bash
sudo docker run -dns=your-dns-server-ip1 -dns=your-dns-server-ip2
```

You'll need to replace those values with the actual IP addresses of your DNS server.

If the agent seems to connect and start bootstrapping but has trouble with active mq then check on your Bamboo server that you have set up the broker URL correctly. Go to Administration > General configuration. You should not have 'localhost' specified there.

**Using Bamboo**

Atlassian Bamboo is a continuous integration (CI) and continuous delivery (CD) server. Bamboo assists software development teams by providing:

- automated building and testing of software source-code status.
- updates on successful/failed builds.
- reporting tools for statistical analysis.
- visibility into, and control over, release artifacts and environments.

This section has information about using Bamboo. Please see Administering Bamboo for information about managing the Bamboo server itself.

### Continuous integration

- Understanding the Bamboo CI Server
- Configuring plans
- Linking to source code repositories
- Jobs and tasks
- Working with builds
- Sharing artifacts

### Continuous delivery

- Understanding deployment releases
- Deployment projects
- A sample deployment project
- Creating a deployment project
- Creating a deployment environment

### See also

- Getting started
- Managing your user profile
- Administering Bamboo
- Supported platforms
- Bamboo releases
- Installing and upgrading
- Integrating Bamboo with Atlassian applications

### Configuring plans

A plan defines everything about your continuous integration build process in Bamboo. A plan:

- Has a single stage, by default, but can be used to group jobs into multiple stages.
- Processes a series of one or more stages that are run sequentially using the same repository.
- Specifies the default repository.
- Specifies how the build is triggered, and the triggering dependencies between the plan and other plans in the project.
- Specifies notifications of build results.
- Specifies who has permission to view and configure the plan and its jobs.
- Provides for the definition of plan variables.

Every plan belongs to a project.

Projects and plans can only be configured by Bamboo administrators (see Creating a plan).

**On this page:**

- Navigate to a plan's configuration
- Configure a plan
- Viewing plan configuration in the YAML format

Navigate to a plan’s configuration
Choose **Build > All build plans** from the Bamboo header, then click the edit icon ( 

) for the plan you want to edit.

The plan's configuration is found on several tabs. You can also view the configuration in the YAML format:

**Configure a plan**

1. Navigate to the plan's configuration pages as described above.
2. Click a tab to configure that aspect of your plan:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tab</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plan details</td>
<td>A plan's Project Key and Plan Key are not editable once the plan is created, however see Moving plans to another project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stages</td>
<td>See Using stages in a plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repositories</td>
<td>See Linking to source code repositories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triggers</td>
<td>See Triggering builds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>See Using plan branches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dependencies</td>
<td>See Setting up build dependencies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permissions</td>
<td>See Configuring a plan's permissions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notifications</td>
<td>See Configuring notifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variables</td>
<td>See Defining plan variables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>See Configuring expiry of a plan's build results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit log</td>
<td>A record of changes to the plan's configuration. This feature is disabled by default. To enable it, please go to Administration &gt; System &gt; Audit Log.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Viewing plan configuration in the YAML format**

Bamboo instance administrators can view the plan configuration in the YAML format in Plan configuration > Actions:

**Viewing a plan's build information**

A **plan** defines everything about your continuous integration build process in Bamboo.

**To view information about a plan:**

1. Navigate to the desired plan, as follows:
   - If you are viewing the **Dashboard**, locate and click the plan's name in the list, or
   - If you are viewing a job or build result, click the plan name in the breadcrumb links at the top of the screen.
2. Click a tab to view information about the plan:

   **Related pages:**
   - Using the Bamboo dashboard
   - Viewing a build result
   - Configuring plans
   - Configuring a plan's permissions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tab</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plan Summary</td>
<td>Information about the plan, as shown in the diagram below.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Branches

The branch plans for this plan.

Recent Failures

Information about recent failures of the plan, including the builds that failed, links to the build results, time taken to fix, etc.

History

The full history of builds of the plan.

Tests

A summary of the 10 most frequently broken tests.

Quarantined Tests

Failing test's results that have been disconnected from the build results.

Issues

View the JIRA issues linked to builds of your plan. *(You will only see this if your administrator has integrated Bamboo with JIRA.)*

Use the Actions menu to access functions for the plan, such as Disable Plan and Configure Plan. *(This menu is only displayed if you are an administrator for the plan.)*

Diagram: Plan Summary (annotated)

Creating a plan

A plan defines everything about your build process, including what gets built, how the build is triggered and what jobs are executed.

This page describes how to:

- Create a new plan
- Clone an existing plan

Note, you need the Create User or Admin global permission to create or clone a plan.

Create a new plan

1. Click Create > Create a new plan in the top menu bar. Complete the build plan details on the Configure plan page:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project</th>
<th>The name of your build project</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plan name</td>
<td>The name of your build plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan key</td>
<td>The key for your build plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan description</td>
<td>A brief description of the build plan's function or purpose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Choose from either a previously used repository, or link to a new repository.

If you want to link a new repository, select your code repository host from the options:

- **Stash (Bitbucket Server)** An enterprise Git repository tool by Atlassian. [Learn more...](https://www.bitbucket.org)
- **Bitbucket (Bitbucket Cloud)** A free code DVCS hosting site for Git and Mercurial. [Learn more...](https://bitbucket.org)
Other

A range of other repository hosts is also supported:

- Git
- GitHub
- Mercurial
- Subversion
- CVS
- Perforce

You may need to supply additional information depending on your code repository. Go to the next step when done.

If you have previously linked a repository, then you may select it again, search for an alternative host or link a new one. Use the repository picker to select one of your existing linked repositories. Click Configure plan and you are done. You can now configure the tasks and jobs required by your build plan.

**Link repository to new build plan**

Repository host

Previously linked repository

Bamboo Master

Link new repository

Configure plan  Cancel

3. Select the repository and branch for your plan.
4. Specify access to the repository. You may choose from:

| Allow all users to reuse the configuration of this repository | All user access. This is the default access setting. |
| Only you are allowed to reuse the configuration of this repository | Limit access to just yourself. |

5. You can now configure the tasks and jobs required by your build plan.

Clone an existing plan

When you clone an existing plan, you make a copy of that plan and its entire configuration, with the exception of any branches:

1. Click Create > Clone an existing plan in the top menu bar.
2. Use Plan to clone to select a plan. Only plans for which you have the 'Clone' and/or 'Admin' plan permission are shown.
3. Choose an existing project for the plan, or create a new project.
4. Enter details for the new plan.
5. Choose whether to enable this plan. Enabling the plan instructs Bamboo to start running builds of the plan, based on the plan's trigger configuration.
6. When you click Create, the 'Plan Summary' page for the new plan will be displayed. Bamboo will automatically run an initial build for your new plan.

**Using plan branches**

Plan branches are used to represent a branch in your version control repository, with the plan branch using the same build configuration as your plan.

Tools such as Git and Mercurial encourage a practice called feature branching, where a developer can use a new branch to work in isolation from his or her team members before merging their changes back into main line development.

With plan branches in Bamboo:

- Any new branch created in the repository can be automatically built and tested using the same build configuration as that of the parent plan.
- Any branches deleted from the repository can be deleted automatically from Bamboo according to the settings.
- You have the flexibility to individually configure branch plans, by overriding the parent plan, if required.
- Optionally, changes from the feature branch can be automatically merged back to the "master" (e.g. trunk, default or mainline branch) when the build succeeds.

You can customize how Bamboo manages branches on the system, plan, and branch levels.

Further reading:

- Atlassian Git Tutorial
Managing plan branches in Bamboo

You can create plan branches manually or automatically. The branch configuration can be provided on the plan level and customized on the branch level. The settings provided in the branch configuration override the settings provided for the plan.

Use the Branch status page for quick access to plan branch information.

You can access the list of all branches in a plan from different places. For example, you can click the Branch icon next to the plan name in the Build Dashboard view:

You can also access the branch list from the Plan summary view:

Subversion branches location

This section is displayed only for plans that use a Subversion source repository. Bamboo assumes that your Subversion repository
structure follows the convention for branches, and automatically calculates the branch root URL.
For example, for the fastBuild repo with this URL: https://svn.mycompany.com/svn/fastBuild/trunk, Bamboo will expect that branches will be created at this location: https://svn.mycompany.com/svn/fastBuild/branches.
If your Subversion repository structure follows a different convention, you can specify where repository branches will be created by selecting Change subversion branches URL.

**Automatic branch management**

Plan branches can be created and deleted automatically based on the updates in the primary source repository. Automatic branch management is available for Git, Mercurial, and Subversion. For other repository types, you can use manual branching. You can override the default settings for a branch, such as values of the variables.

By default, automatic branch management is:

- disabled for branches that you create manually
- enabled for branches that are created automatically

You can specify how often Bamboo checks the primary source repository for new or deleted branches in the general branch settings.

You can override the branch deletion settings in the branch details configuration view.

To hand over the branch management to Bamboo:

1. Go to the **Plan Configuration** view: in the Plan summary view, click the **Actions** button
2. Click the **Configure plan**
3. In the **Branches** tab, configure the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary source repository branches</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New branches</td>
<td>Do not create plan branches (default)</td>
<td>Bamboo does not create new plan branches automatically when new branches are detected in the primary source repository.</td>
<td>Independently from the automatic branch management settings, you can always create branches manually.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create plan branches for all new branches</td>
<td>Bamboo creates a plan branch for each new branch detected in the primary source repository.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create plan branches for matching new branches</td>
<td>Bamboo creates a plan branch for each new branch detected in the primary source repository that matches the regular expression that you provided.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deleted branches</td>
<td>Do not delete plan branches (default)</td>
<td>If a branch in the primary source repository was deleted, Bamboo does not automatically delete the corresponding plan branch.</td>
<td>If you selected <strong>Clean up plan branch automatically</strong> in the configuration on the branch level, the branch is disabled and deleted according to the daily cleanup rules, regardless of the automatic branch management settings. <strong>Clean up plan branch automatically</strong> is selected by default for manually created &quot;Plan Branches&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete branches after a period of time</td>
<td>If a branch in the primary source repository was deleted, Bamboo deletes the corresponding plan branch. The value must be higher than 0 and is specified in days. Plan branches are deleted at most once a day.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete branches with a daily cleanup</td>
<td>If a branch in the primary source repository was deleted, the corresponding plan branch is removed with a daily cleanup that happens daily at 3 AM (server time).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inactive branches</td>
<td>Do not delete inactive plan branches (default)</td>
<td>If a branch in the primary source repository is inactive, Bamboo does not automatically delete the corresponding plan branch.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete plan branches after a period of inactivity</td>
<td>If a branch in the primary source repository is inactive, Bamboo deletes the corresponding plan branch if no commits are detected for the specified period. The value must be higher than 1 and is specified in days.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Save** at the bottom of the view to apply the changes.

**Global settings - branch detection interval**

Once plan branching is enabled, Bamboo checks for new or deleted branches in the primary source code repository. You can specify how often Bamboo checks for new branches in the primary source repository in the system settings. The default value is 300 seconds.

To configure the branch detection interval:

1. Open the Bamboo Administration view by clicking the cog icon and selecting a section from the list that opens.
2. In the **Bamboo Administration** view, scroll down the menu on the left to find the **System** section.
3. Click **General configuration**.
4. In **Global system configurations**, set the branch detection interval. Provide the value in seconds, the default value is 300.

**Manual branch management**

Use manual branching for all supported repository types. You may want to consider using **automatic branch management** for Git, Mercurial and Subversion repositories.

To manually create a branch of a plan:

1. Go to the **Plan Configuration** view: in the Plan summary view, click the **Actions** button and select **Configure plan**.
2. Click the **Branches** tab.
3. Click **Create plan branch** in the upper right of the view.
4. In the **Create plan branch** view, you can create branches in one of the following ways:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select from available VCS branches</td>
<td>Select one or more branches from the list of available VCS branches. At the bottom of the list of the branches you can select the <strong>Enable branches</strong> check box, which makes all selected branches available for building and change detection.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Create plan branch manually | Provide:  
  - a display name (required) - overrides the VCS branch name  
  - a branch description - a meaningful description of the branch  
  - VCS branch name - the name of the branch in the VCS repository  
You can select the **Enable branches** check box, which makes the new branch available for building and change detection. Click **Auto-detect VCS** branches to go back to the list of available VCS branches. |

5. Click **Save**.

**Integrating branches with JIRA applications**

Check **Create Remote Links from JIRA Issues** to have the plan branch automatically linked, using an issue key in the branch name.

When a developer begins working on a feature described in a JIRA application issue, they use Git or Mercurial to branch the repository. If they use the issue key as part of the VCS branch name, Bamboo will detect the issue key and automatically link the new branch to the
issue:

- The JIRA application issue key needs to be in the name of the branch – 'jb-BDEV-790' and 'BDEV-769 1' are valid forms.
- The link shows up right under the breadcrumb on the Build Result Summary for the plan branch, and on the issue too.

To use JIRA applications Feature Branching, Bamboo needs an application link to the JIRA application server.

Branch notifications

You can get build notifications from branch plans just as you do for master plans.

To specify how notifications are sent by all branches created from a plan, go to the Branches tab for the plan's configuration and choose one of the following options:

- Notify committers and people who have favorited this branch.
- Use the plan's notification settings.
- Notifications should not be sent for this branch.

You can override how notifications are sent from a particular branch plan, if necessary, by going to the Notifications tab on the Plan Branch configuration.

See Configuring notifications for a plan and its jobs for information about plan notifications.

Branch dependencies

You can use build dependencies for plan branches in a similar way to that for plans: a branch plan is triggered only when another branch plan has been successfully built. This can be used to ensure that breaking source code changes associated with one branch plan are detected before they can break the build of a dependent branch plan. Dependencies between master plans are maintained if their branch plans have the same name. See Setting up plan build dependencies for further information about dependencies.

Select Trigger Dependencies for Branches, on the Dependencies tab for the plan configuration, if you want plan branches to honor the build dependencies of their respective master plans.

Branch details configuration

Whether a plan branch is created automatically or manually, the master plan maintains the structure and configuration of it's branch plans. However, you can go to the configuration pages to override the following settings in a branch plan:
## Branch clean-up

On the **Branch Details** tab of the branch's configuration, you can specify that a plan branch is *not* cleaned up automatically.

Please note that ‘Automatic Branch Clean-up’ is supported for Mercurial, Git (Bamboo 4.1.1 and above) and Subversion (Bamboo 4.2.0 and above).

By default, plan branches are deleted automatically after:

- 7 days after the branch was deleted in the primary source repository **OR**
- 10 days of branch inactivity in the primary source repository

The values can be specified on the plan level.

## Trigger type

On the **Branch Details** tab of the branch's configuration. See **Triggering builds**.

Note that you can only configure one trigger for a plan branch, and that this overrides all triggers that may be configured for the master plan.

## Merging

On the **Branch Details** tab of the branch's configuration. Described below.

## Source repository

On the **Source Repository** tab of the plan branch configuration. You can override the default repository settings of a plan on the branch level:

**Automatic branch merging**

Bamboo provides 2 merging models if you choose to automate your branch merging:

- **Branch Updater** — a branch repo is kept up-to-date with changes to master.
- **Gatekeeper** — the default repo is only updated with changes in the branch that have built successfully.

The automatic branch merge strategy for the master plan can be **overridden** in an individual plan branch, if required. Automatic branch merging is not available for Subversion.

### Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Branch clean-up</td>
<td>On the <strong>Branch Details</strong> tab of the branch's configuration, you can specify that a plan branch is <em>not</em> cleaned up automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>Please note that ‘Automatic Branch Clean-up’ is supported for Mercurial, Git (Bamboo 4.1.1 and above) and Subversion (Bamboo 4.2.0 and above).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By default, plan branches are deleted automatically after:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 7 days after the branch was deleted in the primary source repository <strong>OR</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 10 days of branch inactivity in the primary source repository</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The values can be specified on the plan level.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trigger type</strong></td>
<td>On the <strong>Branch Details</strong> tab of the branch's configuration. See <strong>Triggering builds</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>Note that you can only configure one trigger for a plan branch, and that this overrides all triggers that may be configured for the master plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Merging</strong></td>
<td>On the <strong>Branch Details</strong> tab of the branch's configuration. Described below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source repository</strong></td>
<td>On the <strong>Source Repository</strong> tab of the plan branch configuration. You can override the default repository settings of a plan on the branch level:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Automatic branch merging</strong></td>
<td>Bamboo provides 2 merging models if you choose to automate your branch merging:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- <strong>Branch Updater</strong> — a branch repo is kept up-to-date with changes to master.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- <strong>Gatekeeper</strong> — the default repo is only updated with changes in the branch that have built successfully.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The automatic branch merge strategy for the master plan can be <strong>overridden</strong> in an individual plan branch, if required. Automatic branch merging is not available for Subversion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Branch updater**

**When to use**

The Branch Updater should be used when you want to:

- Automatically merge changes from the team's master branch into your feature branch, after a successful build of the master branch.
- Get notified when the changes on your feature branch are no longer compatible with the team's master branch.

**Configuring**

To have recent changes in another repo merged into your branch repo:

1. Go to the **Branch Details** tab of the branch plan's configuration pages. (Click on the branch icon beside a plan name on the **All Plans** tab, then choose **Actions** > **Configure Branch**.)
2. Under 'Merging' select **Branch Merging Enabled**, and then click **Branch Updater**.
3. Use the **Merge From** list to choose the repo from which changes should be merged with your feature branch.
4. Select **Push on** only if you want those changes merged back into your branch once the build completes successfully.
5. Click **Save**.
**Gatekeeper**

**When to use**

The Gatekeeper should be used when you want to:

- Automatically merge your feature branch back into the team's master branch, after a successful build of the merged changes from both branches.
- Get notified when a build of combined changes from both branches fails, preventing the feature branch from being merged back into the team's master branch.

**Configuring**

To have your successfully built changes pushed to another repo:

1. Go to the Branch Details tab of the branch plan's configuration pages. (Click on the branch icon beside a plan name on the All Plans tab, then choose Actions > Configure Branch.)
2. Under 'Merging' select Branch Merging Enabled, and then click Gate Keeper.
3. Use the Checkout list to choose the repo with which to merge your changes (and to which changes should be pushed).
4. Select Push on only if you want your changes pushed to the other repo once the build completes successfully.
5. Click Save.

**Limitations with plan branches**

The following limitations apply to using automated plan branching and merging:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Limitations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
Auto plan branching

- Can only be used with Git, Mercurial and Subversion repositories. For other repository types, use manual branching.
- Cannot be used with the Git implementation embedded in Bamboo. (You need to have set up native Git.)

Manual plan branching

- Can be used for all repository types supported by Bamboo.

Auto branch merging

- Can only be used with Git and Mercurial repositories.
- Can only be used with branches that were configured in Bamboo.
- Cannot be used with the Git implementation embedded in Bamboo. (You need to have set up native Git.)

Bamboo Branch status

With Bamboo you can view and manage your plan branch assignments on a single page.

Getting to the Branch status dashboard

You can find the page in the top menu, in **Build > Branch status**:

![Branch status dashboard](image)

You can also find a link to the **Branch status** page in some other places, like screens with the details of builds or plans:

![Branch status link](image)

Using the Branch status dashboard

Here are the most important things that you need to know about the Branch status dashboard.

Picking a repository and a VCS branch

To start working with branch statuses, you must specify a repository and a VCS branch. You can select it from a list or start typing to search by name.

The dashboard works for all linked repositories that support branches:

- Git
- Mercurial
- SVN
- Bitbucket Cloud
- Bitbucket Server / Stash
- Github

We've added a small **Copy** button next to the selected branch name - it copies the name of the branch in case you need to share it.
Viewing build plans assigned to a VCS branch

Once you pick a repository and a VCS branch, you'll probably see a list of plans that build the branch:

If the information about the commits is available to Bamboo, you can see the number of commits next to the build status:

Click the number to display the details of the commits:

It might happen that there aren't any build plans assigned to the VCS branch that you selected. You can associate the branch with a plan directly from the Branch status page (see Managing plan branches below).

Managing plan branches

You can manage assignments between plan branches and VCS branches directly from the Branch status page. To assign a build plan to the selected VCS branch, click within the search field and either pick a build plan from a list or start typing to
Managing existing build plans

Once you’ve specified some plans that will build your branch, you can see them in the list on the Branch status page. Next to each plan, there’s a small Actions menu that allows you to run, edit, or remove build plans assigned to a VCS branch:

Branches wallboard

The branches wallboard displays the status of all the branches and the plan that the branches belong to. The plan’s own status always appears first. Plans shown as grey are disabled.

To display the branches wallboard:

1. Go to the Plan Summary for the plan that has branches you want to display.
2. Choose Actions > Branch Wallboard.

Managing plans

A plan defines everything about your continuous integration build process in Bamboo. See Configuring plans for information about how to set up build plans.

You can also perform actions on one or more plans together, or make global settings that affect all plans on the Bamboo server.
See the following pages for information about managing your Bamboo plans:

- Configuring a plan’s permissions
- Disabling or deleting a plan
- Modifying multiple plans in bulk
- Moving plans to a different project
- Configuring concurrent builds
- Configuring the hanging build event
- Configuring the build queue timeout event
- Disabling build monitoring

Configuring a plan’s permissions

This page describes how to change the permissions for a particular plan. For ongoing ease of management, we recommend that you grant permissions to groups rather than to individual users.

You need to have ‘Admin’ permission on the plan to edit its permissions.

Note that a Bamboo Admin can also set global permissions for access to Bamboo.

To change plan permissions:

1. Choose Build > All build plans from the Bamboo header, then click the name of the plan you want to edit.
2. Choose Actions > Configure plan.
3. Click the Permissions tab.
4. Use the ‘Grant permission to’ section to add users or groups for which you wish to set permissions.
5. Select (or clear) the check box for each permission that you wish to change for a user or group. See the table below for details.
6. Click Save.

Related pages:

- Configuring plans
- Granting plan permissions in bulk
- Managing permissions
- Managing users
- Managing groups

---

See the following pages for information about managing your Bamboo plans:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan permission</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **View**        | • View the plan and its builds  
|                 | • Add a comment or label to a build result |
| **Edit**        | • Edit the configuration for a plan and its jobs (except for plan permissions and stages)  
|                 | • Delete a comment or label from a build result  
|                 | • Add and delete plan labels |
| **Build**       | • Trigger a manual plan build  
|                 | • Pause and resume a plan build |
| **Clone**       | • Clone the plan |
| **Admin**       | • Edit the configuration for a plan and its jobs (including plan permissions and stages) |

Screenshot: Plan permissions

Permissions

You can edit your plan permissions here. Permissions can be granted to specific users or groups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Users</th>
<th>View</th>
<th>Edit</th>
<th>Build</th>
<th>Clone</th>
<th>Admin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Giancarlo Loniatti</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logged in users</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anonymous users</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Add user | Add group

Permission types

- **View**: User can view the plan in Bamboo, including its builds.
- **Edit**: User can view and edit the configuration of the plan and its jobs. This does not include the ability to change a plan's permissions or its stages.
- **Build**: User can trigger a manual build on the plan, as well as suspending and resuming the plan.
- **Clone**: User can clone the plan.
- **Admin**: User can administer all components of the plan, including the stages and the plan's permissions.

Note:

Users with the global 'admin' permission have all of the above permissions for this plan.
Disabling or deleting a plan

Bamboo allows you to disable or delete plans that you don’t want to be built:

- **Disabling a plan** prevents it from being built. You can re-enable the plan, if you want to build it again.
  For example, if a plan’s latest build is broken and cannot be fixed quickly, you may want to disable it temporarily to stop the plan from being built.

- **Deleting a plan** removes it completely from your Bamboo system. You will need to recreate a new plan from scratch, if you want to build it again.
  For example, if a plan is no longer relevant, you may want to delete it.

On this page:
- Disable a plan
- Delete a plan

Related pages:
- Configuring plans
- Disabling or deleting a job
- Stopping an active build
- Exporting data for backup

---

**Disable a plan**

1. On the All Plans tab of the dashboard, click on the plan’s name.
2. Choose Actions > Disable Plan.

You can also disable the plan using the Plan Enabled check box on the Plan Details tab of a plan’s configuration pages.

Note that disabling a plan doesn’t disable its branch plans.

**Delete a plan**

Deleting a plan deletes everything related to that plan, including the plan’s configuration, all of the plan’s job configurations and the plan’s branch plans, job build results, artifacts, labels and comments:

- Deleting a plan also deletes its branch plans. Be careful!
- The ‘Admin’ global permission is required to delete a plan.
- A plan that is currently being built cannot be deleted. If you need to delete such a plan, stop the plan’s build first. Refer to Stopping an active build for more information.
- Bamboo ‘cleans up’ everything related to deleted plans every two minutes. You’ll have to wait at least that long if you want to reuse the key from a deleted plan.
- If you need to keep a permanent record of the job build results for your plan, see Exporting data for backup.

There are two ways to delete a plan:

- From the dashboard:
  1. On the All Plans tab of the dashboard, click on the plan to delete.
  2. Choose Actions > Configure Plan.
  3. Choose Actions > Delete Plan.

- In the Administration Console:
  1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
  2. Click Remove Plans (under ‘Plans’) in the left navigation column.
  3. Select the plan you wish to delete.
  4. Click Delete at the bottom of the list. You will be prompted to confirm the deletion.

---

Modifying multiple plans in bulk

Bulk actions allow you to make changes to multiple plans at once.

You need to be a Bamboo administrator to modify plans in bulk.

**To use bulk actions:**

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Bulk Action in the left-hand panel (under ‘Plans’).
3. Choose the required bulk action and follow the on-screen instructions to complete the 5 steps.

The following bulk actions are available:
### Moving plans to a different project

Moving a plan to a different project involves changing the plan's project key (as well as possibly the plan name and plan key), which will also change the build key for all of the plan's build results.

Moving a plan does not affect the plan's configuration, nor any comments or labels that have been applied to job build results within the plan.

You need to be a Bamboo administrator to move a plan.

⚠️ Note that moving a plan will require Bamboo to re-index all its data, so your Bamboo system may run slowly for a few minutes.

**Before you begin:**

- We recommend that you back up your Bamboo build results before you move a plan. See Exporting data for backup for instructions.

**To move a plan to a different project:**

1. Click the ![Overview](image-url) icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Move Plans (under 'Plans') in the left-hand panel.
3. Select either an existing project or New Project from the Destination Project list. For a new project, enter a new Project Name and a unique Project Key.
4. Select one or more plans to move.
5. Click Move to display the 'Configure New Plan Details' page (as shown in Screenshot 2 below).
6. Edit the new name and new key for each plan, if necessary. You may need to do this if the destination project already has a plan with the same plan name or key, or if you wish to change these.
7. Click Move.

**Screenshot 1: ‘Moving Plans - Select Plans’**
Choose new build keys and build names

The following plans will be moved to project A new project. You can update the plan names and keys below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Project</th>
<th>Original Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
<th>Original Key</th>
<th>New Key</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+core+ Bamboo (BAM)</td>
<td>CI Tests</td>
<td>CI Tests</td>
<td>FC</td>
<td>FC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+core+ Bamboo (BAM)</td>
<td>Integration Branch Auto Merger</td>
<td>Integration Branch Auto Merger</td>
<td>IBAM</td>
<td>IBAM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Move Cancel

Configuring concurrent builds

Bamboo's concurrent builds feature allows you to build a plan concurrently on several agents. You might find this useful if a plan is likely to be triggered again before the current build completes.

You can configure a default value for the maximum number of builds of a plan that your Bamboo server can run concurrently, using the Bamboo administration console. This value is a default – it can be overridden on the Miscellaneous tab of a plan's configuration.

You need to be a Bamboo administrator to configure concurrent builds.

To configure the number of concurrent builds of a plan allowed by Bamboo:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Concurrent Builds in the left panel (under 'Plans'), then click Enable.
3. Click Edit.
4. Edit the value for Default number of concurrent builds allowed.
5. Click Save.

Configuring the hanging build event

The hanging build event is thrown when Bamboo determines that a build has become unresponsive according to two criteria:
• Expected Build Time — defined as Build Time Multiplier x Average Build Time
  • Build Time Multiplier is a user-defined setting.
  • Average Build Time is calculated by Bamboo using an average of previous build times (in minutes).
• Log Quiet Time — the length of time (in minutes) between log entries for a build.

The Expected Build Time and Log Quiet Time must both be exceeded for Bamboo to throw a hanging build event.

This event is currently used by Bamboo to send notifications.

You can also disable build monitoring altogether so that the hanging build event never occurs.

On this page:
• Configure the hanging build event
• The check interval for hung builds

Related pages:
• Configuring notifications for a plan and its jobs
• Configuring the build queue timeout event
• Disabling build monitoring
• Configuring tasks

Configure the hanging build event

You can change the criteria governing when a hanging build event is thrown.

Note, the hanging build criteria can be also be set for a specific job, when specifying a job’s builder. Job-level criteria will override the global criteria described on this page (including disabling this event).

To edit the hanging build event settings:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Build Monitoring (under ‘Plans’) in the left panel.
3. Click Edit and update the values for Build Time Multiplier and Log Quiet Time as required.
4. Click Save.

Screenshot: Editing the hanging build event settings

Build monitoring

You can configure the default settings for detecting hanging builds on this page. Hanging build detection can also be disabled altogether on this page. You can override these settings for individual plans in the executable configuration of each plan.

Bamboo determines that a build has hung, if both of the criteria below are exceeded.

• expected build time - calculated as the average build time * build time multiplier
• log quiet time - the length of time Bamboo goes without receiving any log messages for that build

Default build monitoring criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build time multiplier</th>
<th>2.5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Log quiet time</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Multiplier to be applied to the average build time (e.g. 2.5)
The length of time (in whole minutes) without logs being received (e.g. 10 minutes)

You can configure also default settings for detecting build waiting in build queue longer than specified time. Bamboo determines that build time has been exceeded if build waits in the queue longer specified timeout.

• build queue timeout - the length of time build waits in the queue before notification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build queue timeout</th>
<th>60</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The length of time (in whole minutes) before queue timeout would be detected (e.g. 60 minutes)

Save Cancel

The check interval for hung builds

By default, Bamboo will check whether a hanging build event has been thrown every 60 seconds.

You can change this check interval by configuring the system property, bamboo.buildHangingMonitor.checkInterval. (This property is specified in seconds.)

Please read Starting Bamboo for instructions on how to configure the bamboo.buildHangingMonitor.checkInterval system property.

Configuring the build queue timeout event
The build queue timeout event is thrown when a build has been waiting in the build queue for longer than a specified period of time. This event is currently used by Bamboo to send notifications.

**Configuring the build queue timeout event**

You can change the criteria governing when the build queue timeout event is thrown. You can also disable build monitoring altogether so that the build queue timeout event never occurs.

1. **Configuring the build queue timeout event**
2. **Disabling the build queue timeout event**
3. **The check interval for build queue timeouts**

**To edit the build queue timeout event settings:**

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Build Monitoring** (under "Plans") in the left panel.
3. Click **Edit** and update the value for **Build Queue Timeout** as required.
4. Click **Save**.

**Screenshot: Editing build queue timeout event settings**

**Build monitoring**

You can configure the default settings for detecting hanging builds on this page. Hanging build detection can also be disabled altogether on this page. You can override these settings for individual plans in the executable configuration of each plan. Bamboo determines that a build has hung, if both of the criteria below are exceeded.

- **expected build time** - calculated as the average build time * build time multiplier
- **log quiet time** - the length of time Bamboo goes without receiving any log messages for that build

**Default build monitoring criteria**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build time multiplier</th>
<th>2.5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multiplier to be applied to the average build time (e.g. 2.5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log quiet time</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The length of time (in whole minutes) without logs being received (e.g. 10 minutes)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can configure also default settings for detecting build waiting in build queue longer than specified time. Bamboo determines that build time has been exceeded if build waits in the queue longer specified timeout.

- **build queue timeout** - the length of time build waits in the queue before notification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build queue timeout</th>
<th>60</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The length of time (in whole minutes) before queue timeout would be detected (e.g. 60 minutes)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disabling the build queue timeout event**

You can disable the build queue timeout event by disabling build monitoring for your Bamboo installation. See Disabling build monitoring.

Please note, you cannot disable the build queue timeout event without disabling all build monitoring features for your Bamboo installation.

**The check interval for build queue timeouts**

By default, Bamboo will check whether a build queue timeout event has been thrown every 60 seconds.

You can change this by configuring the system property, `bamboo.buildQueueMonitor.checkInterval`. (This property is specified in seconds.)

Please read Starting Bamboo for instructions on how to configure the `bamboo.buildQueueMonitor.checkInterval` system property.
To disable build monitoring:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Build Monitoring** in the left panel.
3. Click **Disable**. This will disable all build monitoring for your Bamboo installation, including the build hanging event and build queue timeout notifications. It is not possible to disable build monitoring features separately.

**Screenshot: Disabling build monitoring**

### Build monitoring

#### Hanging build detection

You can configure the default settings for detecting hanging builds on this page. Hanging build detection can also be disabled altogether on this page. You can override these settings for individual plans in the executable configuration of each plan.

Bamboo determines that a build has hung, if both of the criteria below are exceeded.

- expected build time - calculated as the average build time * build time multiplier
- log quiet time - the length of time Bamboo goes without receiving any log messages for that build

#### Build queue timeout detection

You can configure also default settings for detecting build waiting in build queue longer than specified time. Bamboo determines that build time has been exceeded if build waits in the queue longer specified timeout.

- build queue timeout - the length of time build waits in the queue before notification

### Default build monitoring criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build time multiplier</th>
<th>Log quiet time</th>
<th>Build queue timeout</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Edit**  **Disable**

### Linking to source code repositories

A key part of setting up your continuous integration build process is to specify the code repositories that Bamboo will work with. You can specify repositories at the following levels in Bamboo:

- **global** – repositories are available to all plans in Bamboo.
- **plan** – repositories are available to all jobs in the Bamboo plan.
- **job** – repositories are available to all tasks in the Bamboo job.

The recommended approach is to set up linked source repositories at the global level, described below.

#### Important changes to Linked Repositories that affect usage and permissions

Linked repositories are now the preferred way to define and share repository configuration between plans in Bamboo. As a result, we've made two changes that you should be aware of:

- When users create plans, they are only given the option to select from Linked Repositories. This requires that users have the **Create plan** global permission.
- Users will need the **Create Plan** global permission in order to create Linked Repositories. Note that this permission alone does not permit a user to create or edit a plan.

In the long term, Atlassian plans to deprecate the repository configuration defined against the plan. These configurations can be converted to Linked repositories by clicking **Convert to linked repository** in each plan's repository configuration page.

#### Link a source code repository for all Bamboo plans

Linked repositories are available globally to all plans and jobs configured on the Bamboo server. Doing this can save you from having to reconfigure the source repositories in multiple places if these ever change - any changes to a linked repository are applied to every plan or job that uses that repository.

You need the 'Create plan' or 'Admin' global permission to configure linked repositories.

1. Click the 'cog' icon in the Bamboo header and then **Linked repositories**.
2. Click **Add repository**.
3. Select your repository type from the available menu options. For configuration details for a particular repository type, please refer to one of the following pages:
   - Bitbucket (for Bitbucket Cloud)
   - Git
   - GitHub
   - Mercurial
   - Subversion
   - CVS
   - Perforce

If you need to use an unsupported type of repository, a number of third-party Source Repository plugin modules are available (e.g. the ClearCase plugin). You can also write a Source Repository Module plugin to enable Bamboo to connect to your repository.

Note that shared source repositories are no longer the preferred way to share repository configuration between plans. Use linked repositories instead!

Configure a repository for a plan

When you create a new plan, the source repository you specify becomes the default. It is used by the plan's 'Default Job' and can be used by other jobs added to this plan.

1. Navigate to the plan. See Configuring plans for instructions.
2. Choose Actions > Configure plan.
   - Click the Repositories tab to see all the repositories that have been added to the plan.
   - Click a repository name in the list to edit its configuration details.
   - Click Add repository to configure a repository to be used by the plan.

For configuration details for a particular repository type, please refer to one of the following pages:
   - Bitbucket (for Bitbucket Cloud)
   - Git
   - GitHub
   - Mercurial
   - Subversion
   - CVS
   - Perforce

Please note that In the long term, Atlassian plans to deprecate the repository configuration defined against a plan. These configurations can be converted to linked repositories by clicking Convert to linked repository in each plan's repository configuration page.

Configure a repository for a job

You can specify additional repositories for a Bamboo plan to work with at the job level, perhaps for tasks in later stages of the build.

You add the Source Code Checkout task to a job to configure a particular repository for just that job. See Checking out code for details about configuring the Source Code Checkout task.

Bitbucket Server

This page describes how to configure Bamboo to use a Bitbucket Server repository.

You can specify repositories at the following levels in Bamboo:
   - global – repositories are available to all plans in Bamboo.
   - plan – repositories are available to all jobs in the Bamboo plan.
   - job – repositories are available to all tasks in the Bamboo job.

The recommended approach is to set up linked source repositories at the global level – see Linking to source code repositories.

When you link a repository hosted in Atlassian’s Bitbucket Server with a build plan in Bamboo, then without any further configuration:
   - Bamboo will automatically run a build when changes are pushed to the Bitbucket Server repository, without needing to configure polling.
   - Bamboo will automatically update plan branches when a developer pushes a new branch to the repository (or deletes a branch).
   - You can click through to Bitbucket Server to see the commit diff for all files that are part of the changeset.
   - Bitbucket Server commits that are part of a build are displayed in Bamboo.
   - Build results are notified to Bitbucket Server (and displayed for the associated commits and pull requests).

On this page:
   - Configuration requirements

Bitbucket Server and Bamboo only need to have been connected by creating an application link. Repositories in Bitbucket Server are then made available in Bamboo, so it is easy for you to link your Bamboo plan to a Bitbucket Server repository.
When you create a plan that uses a Bitbucket Server source repository, Bamboo will automatically use the 'Bitbucket Server repository triggers the build when changes are committed' trigger option instead of using the 'polling the repository for changes' option. This reduces the load on the Bamboo and Bitbucket servers because Bamboo doesn't need to send poll requests (for each branch of each plan) to the Bitbucket server every 3 minutes (the default polling period). Instead, Bitbucket Server will trigger Bamboo whenever there is a push to the repository.

Configuration requirements

Navigate to the source repository settings for a plan or job, as described on Linking to source code repositories, then:

1. Either click Add Repository to add a new repository, or edit an existing repository configuration.
2. Choose Stash from the Repository host list.
3. Complete the required information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display name</th>
<th>A name that identifies this repository within Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stash server</td>
<td>This menu will show all Bitbucket servers that have been linked to Bamboo via an application link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repository</td>
<td>The repository that will be built. This menu will show all repositories on the Bitbucket server that you have permissions to access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch</td>
<td>Pick a branch if you want to check out code from a branch other than the default branch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use shallow clones</th>
<th>Allows Bamboo to perform shallow clones (i.e. history truncated to a specified number of revisions). This should increase the speed of the initial code checkouts, however if your build depends on the full repository history, we recommend that you do not use this option. Shallow clones are enabled by default.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable repository caching on remote agents</td>
<td>Allow caching of repositories on remote agents to save bandwidth. Note that caches are always full clones of the source repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use submodules</td>
<td>Select to enable submodules support if these are defined for the repository. If native Git capability is not defined for agent submodules support will be disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command timeout</td>
<td>This helps to stop hung Bitbucket processes. On slower networks, you may consider increasing the default timeout to allow Bamboo time to make an initial clone of the Git repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbose logs</td>
<td>Turns on more verbose logs from Git commands. Use this option if you encounter problems with Git in Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetch whole repository</td>
<td>Fetches whole repository instead of only one selected branch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Quiet Period</td>
<td>Specifies a delay after a single commit is detected before the build is started. This allows multiple commits to be aggregated into a single build.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include/Exclude Files</td>
<td>Allows you to specify the files that Bamboo should, or should not, use to detect changes. When you configure the Include option, it means that you want Bamboo to use only the mentioned files for change detection (by default Bamboo checks all the files). In the same way, if you configure the Exclude option, Bamboo will not consider the excluded files when detecting changes. Enter into File Pattern a regular expression to match the files that Bamboo includes or excludes. The regex pattern must match the file path in the repository. See this page for examples.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclude changesets</td>
<td>Enter a regular expression to match the commit messages for changesets that should not start a build.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Git LFS**

Enables support for Git Large File Storage (LFS), which replaces large files such as audio samples, videos, datasets, and graphics with text pointers inside Git, while storing the file contents on a remote server. To use this option you must have the following:

- Git version 1.8.2 or later installed locally in your environment
- Git LFS 1.2 or later installed.

Bamboo 5.15 is shipped number of images which also include the Git LFS client.

To learn more about Git LFS, see [Git LFS tutorials](https://docs.atlassian.com/).

**Web repository**

If your repository can be viewed in a web browser, select the repository type.

This allows links to relevant files to be displayed in the 'Code Changes' section of a build result.

**Stash** – specify the following details for the repository:

- **Server URL** – the URL of your Bitbucket Server instance (e.g. 'https://bitbucket.mycompany.com').
- **Stash Project Key** – the key of the project in Bitbucket Server (e.g. 'CONF').
- **Repository Name** – the name of the repository in Bitbucket Server (e.g. 'conf-dev').

See [Integrating Bamboo with Bitbucket Server](https://docs.atlassian.com/) for more information.

---

**Bitbucket Cloud**

This page describes how to configure Bamboo to use a Bitbucket Cloud repository.

If you set up two-factor authentication (2FA) in Bitbucket Cloud, you must configure an app password for Bamboo.

You can specify repositories at the following levels in Bamboo:

- **global** – repositories are available to all plans in Bamboo.
- **plan** – repositories are available to all jobs in the Bamboo plan.
- **job** – repositories are available to all tasks in the Bamboo job.

The recommended approach is to set up linked source repositories at the global level – see [Linking to source code repositories](https://docs.atlassian.com/).

On this page:

- Configure a Bitbucket source repository
- Bamboo statuses in Bitbucket Cloud

Note that you will not be able to create plans or jobs that use a Bitbucket repository without first specifying the shared local Mercurial or Git capability. Read more about [configuring a Version Control capability](https://docs.atlassian.com/).

**Configure a Bitbucket source repository**

1. Navigate to the repository configuration for a linked repository, plan or job. See [Linking to source code repositories](https://docs.atlassian.com/).
2. Either click **Add Repository** to add a new repository, or edit an existing repository configuration.
3. Choose **Bitbucket Cloud** from the **Source Repository** list.
4. Enter a **Name** to help identify the repository in Bamboo.
5. Specify the repository access level and corresponding authentication details for loading the list of repositories:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Public</th>
<th>Private</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>Provide the name of the Bitbucket Cloud user who owns the repository in the <strong>Owner</strong> field.</td>
<td>To load the list of repositories available in Bitbucket Cloud you can provide a username and a password or use <strong>shared credentials</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5/au/).
5.2 You can configure the following settings of a public or private source repository for your plan:

- **Repository** - retrieves all repositories you have explicit permissions to access from Bitbucket Cloud when you click **Load Repositories**
- **Branch** - pick a branch if you want to check out code from a branch other than the default branch

5.3 For private repositories, you can specify the authentication method that Bamboo will use to connect to the repository you selected. You can choose from:

- **Username and password** - reuse the credentials provided in step 5.1
- **SSH private key** - provide an SSH key to authenticate; use shared credentials or upload an SSH key and type a passphrase

### Advanced Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>timeout</strong></td>
<td>This is useful to stop hung Bitbucket processes. On slower networks, you may consider increasing the default timeout to allow Bamboo time to make an initial clone of the Mercurial repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Verbose logs</strong></td>
<td>For Mercurial: Turns on <code>--verbose</code> and <code>--debug</code> options in Hg or Git commands and passes the output to build logs. Use this option if you encounter problems with Git or Mercurial in Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enable Quiet Period</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a delay after a single commit is detected before the build is started. This allows multiple commits to be aggregated into a single build.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Include/Exclude Files</strong></td>
<td>Allows you to specify the files that Bamboo should, or should not, use to detect changes. Enter into <strong>File Pattern</strong> a regular expression to match the files that Bamboo includes or excludes. The regex pattern must match the file path in the repository. See sub page for examples.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exclude Changesets</strong></td>
<td>Enter a regular expression to match the commit messages for changesets that should not start a build.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Git LFS** | Enables support for Git Large File Storage (LFS), which replaces large files such as audio samples, videos, datasets, and graphics with text pointers inside Git, while storing the file contents on a remote server. To use this option you must have the following:
  - Git version 1.8.2 or later installed locally in your environment
  - Git LFS 1.2 or later installed. Bamboo 5.15 is shipped number of images which also include the Git LFS client. |

To learn more about Git LFS, see [Git LFS tutorials](#).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Web Repository</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Web Repository</strong></td>
<td>If your repository can be viewed in a web browser, select the repository type. This allows links to relevant files to be displayed in the 'Code Changes' section of a build result. <strong>Note:</strong> This option is not available for Git repositories. See <a href="#">BAM-13376</a> - Git repository type doesn’t allow generic web repository viewers for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mercurial Web Repository</strong></td>
<td>select one of the following viewer schemes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Bitbucket Web Repository Scheme (if you use Bitbucket)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Default Web Repository Scheme (hgserve) (Mercurial's own default web server)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Stash – specify the following details for the repository:

- **Stash URL** – the URL of your Stash (now Bitbucket Server) instance (e.g. 'https://bitbucket.mycompany.com').
- **Stash Project Key** – the key of the project in Stash (e.g. 'CONF').
- **Repository Name** – the name of the repository in Stash (e.g. 'conf-dev').

Use this option to connect to a Bitbucket Server repository.

See [Integrating Bamboo with Bitbucket Server](#) for more information.

FishEye – specify the following details for the repository:

- **FishEye URL** – the URL of your FishEye repository (e.g. 'https://atlaseye.atlassian.com/').
- **Repository Name** – the name of your FishEye repository (e.g. 'bamboo'). This is effectively the alias for your repository path.
- **Repository Path** – the path for your FishEye repository (e.g. '/atlassian/bamboo/').

See [Integrating Bamboo with FishEye](#) for more information.

**How do I determine my Repository Path?**

If you have previously run builds with changes from your repository, the easiest way of determining your repository path is to view the code changes and copy the path from the start of the path of one of the changed files, up to (but not including) the appropriate root directory. The root directories for repositories are the ones shown by FishEye when browsing a repository (e.g. trunk). For example, if a code change listed /atlassian/bamboo/trunk/bamboo-acceptance-test/pom.xml, the path would be /atlassian/bamboo/.

If you have not previously run builds with changes from your repository, you will need to ask your FishEye administrator for the repository path indexed by FishEye.

Bamboo statuses in Bitbucket Cloud

You can view the status of Bamboo builds in Bitbucket Cloud.

The feature is set up automatically if you set up a plan in the following way:

- the repository type is Bitbucket Cloud or Bitbucket Server
- you provided Bitbucket credentials (username and password)

The automatic setup of Bamboo build statuses in Bitbucket works with private and public repositories as long as you provide valid Bitbucket credentials.

The build statuses in Bitbucket are displayed in the commit, branch, and pull request views.

For more information about Bamboo statuses in Bitbucket Cloud, see:

- Work with pull requests
- Integrate your build system with Bitbucket Cloud
- statuses/build Resource

Stash

You can specify repositories at the following levels in Bamboo:

- **global** – repositories are available to all plans in Bamboo.
- **plan** – repositories are available to all jobs in the Bamboo plan.
- **job** – repositories are available to all tasks in the Bamboo job.

The recommended approach is to set up linked source repositories at the global level – see [Linking to source code repositories](#).

When you link a repository hosted in Atlassian’s Stash (now Bitbucket Server) with a build plan in Bamboo, then without any further configuration:
Bamboo will automatically run a build when changes are pushed to the Stash repository, without needing to configure polling. Bamboo will automatically update plan branches when a developer pushes a new branch to the repository (or deletes a branch). You can click through to Stash to see the commit diff for all files that are part of the changeset. Stash commits that are part of a build are displayed in Bamboo. Build results are notified to Stash (and displayed for the associated commits and pull requests).

Stash and Bamboo only need to have been connected by creating an application link. Repositories in Stash are then made available in Bamboo, so it is easy for you to link your Bamboo plan to a Stash repository.

When you create a plan that uses a Stash source repository, with Stash 3.1 and later, Bamboo will automatically use the 'Stash repository triggers the build when changes are committed' trigger option instead of using the 'polling the repository for changes' option. This reduces the load on the Bamboo and Stash servers because Bamboo doesn't need to send poll requests (for each branch of each plan) to the Stash server every 3 minutes (the default polling period). Instead, Stash will trigger Bamboo whenever there is a push to the repository.

Configuration requirements

Navigate to the source repository settings for a plan or job, as described on Linking to source code repositories, then:

1. Either click Add Repository to add a new repository, or edit an existing repository configuration.
2. Choose Stash from the Repository host list.
3. Complete the required information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display name</th>
<th>A name that identifies this repository within Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stash server</td>
<td>This menu will show all Stash servers that have been linked to Bamboo via an application link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repository</td>
<td>The repository that will be built. This menu will show all repositories on the Stash server that you have permissions to access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch</td>
<td>Pick a branch if you want to check out code from a branch other than the default branch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use shallow clones</th>
<th>Allows Bamboo to perform shallow clones (i.e. history truncated to a specified number of revisions). This should increase the speed of the initial code checkouts, however if your build depends on the full repository history, we recommend that you do not use this option. Shallow clones are enabled by default.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable repository caching on remote agents</td>
<td>Allow caching of repositories on remote agents to save bandwidth. Note that caches are always full clones of the source repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use submodules</td>
<td>Select to enable submodules support if these are defined for the repository. If native Git capability is not defined for agent submodules support will be disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command timeout</td>
<td>This helps to stop hung Bitbucket processes. On slower networks, you may consider increasing the default timeout to allow Bamboo time to make an initial clone of the Git repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbose logs</td>
<td>Turns on more verbose logs from Git commands. Use this option if you encounter problems with Git in Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetch whole repository</td>
<td>Fetches whole repository instead of only one selected branch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Quiet Period</td>
<td>Specifies a delay after a single commit is detected before the build is started. This allows multiple commits to be aggregated into a single build.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include/Exclude Files</td>
<td>Allows you to specify the files that Bamboo should, or should not, use to detect changes. When you configure the Include option, it means that you want Bamboo to use only the mentioned files for change detection (by default Bamboo checks all the files). In the same way, if you configure the Exclude option, Bamboo will not consider the excluded files when detecting changes. Enter into File Pattern a regular expression to match the files that Bamboo includes or excludes. The regex pattern must match the file path in the repository. See this page for examples.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On this page:

- Configuration requirements
## Git

This page describes how to configure Bamboo to use a Git repository.

You can specify repositories at the following levels in Bamboo:

- **global** – repositories are available to all plans in Bamboo.
- **plan** – repositories are available to all jobs in the Bamboo plan.
- **job** – repositories are available to all tasks in the Bamboo job.

The recommended approach is to set up linked source repositories at the global level – see **Linking to source code repositories**.

You need to have previously defined a Git capability before you can configure a Git source repository – see **Defining a new version control capability**.

Note that Bamboo comes with its own built-in Git implementation. However, you need to use native Git to be able to use symbolic links, submodules, automatic branch detection and automatic merging - these are not supported by the built-in Git.

You can download Git from the following locations:

- **For Windows**
- **For Linux and Mac**

### Related pages:
- Bitbucket Cloud
- GitHub
- Defining a new version control capability

## Configure a Git source repository

1. Navigate to the repository configuration for a linked repository, plan or job. See **Linking to source code repositories**.
2. Either click **Add Repository** to add a new repository, or edit an existing repository configuration.
3. Choose **Git** from the **Source Repository** list.
4. Enter a **Name** to help identify the repository in Bamboo.
5. You can configure the following settings for a Git source repository for your plan:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Repository URL</th>
<th>The full path to your Git repository (e.g.: <a href="https://bitbucket.org/atlassian/bamboo-git-plugin.git">https://bitbucket.org/atlassian/bamboo-git-plugin.git</a> )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Valid URLs are of the form: | **git://host.xz[:port]/path/to/repo.git**  
**ssh://[user@]host.xz[:port]/path/to/repo.git**  
**[user@]host.xz[:port]/path/to/repo.git**  
**http[s]://host.xz[:port]/path/to/repo.git**  
**/path/to/repo.git**  
**file://path/to/repo.git** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Branch</strong></th>
<th>Type the name of the relevant branch (or tag) you want to work on. Leave empty to work on the <strong>master</strong> branch.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Authentication Type</strong></td>
<td>None – choose if you want to access the repository anonymously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Username and password – use <strong>shared credentials</strong> or type a username and a password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SSH private key – use <strong>shared credentials</strong> or upload an SSH key and provide the SSH passphrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Use shallow clones</strong></td>
<td>Allows Bamboo to perform shallow clones (i.e. history truncated to a specified number of revisions). This should increase the speed of the initial code checkouts, however if your build depends on the full repository history, we recommend that you do not use this option. Shallow clones are enabled by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Location of POM file</strong></td>
<td>The path to your project's <code>.pom.xml</code> file, relative to the root of your Git Repository URL (defined above). <em>(Only available when importing a Maven 2 project)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Git LFS</strong></td>
<td>Enables support for Git Large File Storage (LFS), which replaces large files such as audio samples, videos, datasets, and graphics with text pointers inside Git, while storing the file contents on a remote server. To use this option you must have the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Git version 1.8.2 or later installed locally in your environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Git LFS 1.2 or later installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bamboo 5.15 is shipped with different images which also include the Git LFS client.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Advanced Options**

| **Use submodules** | Select to enable submodules support if these are defined for the repository. If native Git capability is not defined for agent submodules support will be disabled. |
| **Command timeout** | This is useful to stop hung Bitbucket processes. On slower networks, you may consider increasing the default timeout to allow Bamboo time to make an initial clone of the Git repository. |
| **Verbose logs** | Turns on more verbose logs from Git commands. Use this option if you encounter problems with Git in Bamboo. |
| **Enable Quiet Period** | Specifies a delay after a single commit is detected before the build is started. This allows multiple commits to be aggregated into a single build. |
| **Include/Exclude Files** | Allows you to specify the files that Bamboo should, or should not, use to detect changes. When you configure the Include option, it means that you want Bamboo to use **only** the mentioned files for change detection because by default Bamboo checks all the files. The same way, if you configure the Exclude option, Bamboo will not consider the excluded files for detecting changes. |
| | Enter into **File Pattern** a regular expression to match the files that Bamboo includes or excludes. The regex pattern must match the file path in the repository. See sub page for examples. |
| **Exclude Changesets** | Enter a regular expression to match the commit messages for changesets that should not start a build. |
| **Git LFS** | Enables support for Git Large File Storage (LFS), which replaces large files such as audio samples, videos, datasets, and graphics with text pointers inside Git, while storing the file contents on a remote server. To use this option you must have the following: |
| | • Git version 1.8.2 or later installed locally in your environment |
| | • Git LFS 1.2 or later installed. |
| | Bamboo 5.15 is shipped with Git LFS client image. |

**Web repository**

| **Web Repository** | If your repository can be viewed in a web browser, select the repository type. This allows links to relevant files to be displayed in the 'Code Changes' section of a build result. |

Bamboo 5.15 is shipped with Git LFS client image. To learn more about Git LFS, see [Git LFS tutorials](#).
### Stash – specify the following details for the repository:

- **Stash URL** – the URL of your Stash (now Bitbucket Server) instance (e.g. `https://bitbucket.mycompany.com`).
- **Stash Project Key** – the key of the project in Stash (e.g. 'CONF').
- **Repository Name** – the name of the repository in Stash (e.g. 'conf-dev').

Use this option to connect to a Bitbucket Server repository.

See [Integrating Bamboo with Bitbucket Server](#) for more information.

### FishEye – specify the URL and other details for the repository:

- **FishEye URL** — the URL of your FishEye repository (e.g. `https://atlaseye.atlassian.com/`).
- **Repository Name** — the name of your FishEye repository (e.g. 'bamboo'). This is effectively the alias for your repository path.
- **Repository Path** — the path for your FishEye repository (e.g. `/atlassian/bamboo/`).

See [Integrating Bamboo with FishEye](#) for more information.

**How do I determine my Repository Path?**

If you have previously run builds with changes from your repository, the easiest way of determining your repository path is to view the code changes and copy the path from the start of the path of one of the changed files, up to (but not including) the appropriate root directory. The root directories for repositories are the ones shown by FishEye when browsing a repository (e.g. `trunk`). For example, if a code change listed `/atlassian/bamboo/trunk/bamboo-acceptance-test/pom.xml`, the path would be `/atlassian/bamboo/`. If you have not previously run builds with changes from your repository, you will need to ask your FishEye administrator for the repository path indexed by FishEye.

---

## Configuring Git SSH on Windows

### SSH overview

Your can use SSH keys to establish a secure connection between the Bamboo server and the SCM that hosts Git repositories.

- If no Git capability is configured, Bamboo will use its built-in Git implementation: the built-in Git implementation does not support symbolic links, submodules, automatic branch detection and automatic merging.
- Your SCM administrator must have already enabled SSH access to Git repositories.
- Supported key types are DSA and RSA2. Note that RSA1 is not supported. We've tested key sizes of 768, 1024, 2048, 4096 and 8192 bytes.

**On this page:**

- SSH overview
- Git repository connectivity using SSH under Windows
- Enabling SSH access to Git repositories

### Git repository connectivity using SSH under Windows

The Bamboo Developers recommend that you use Cygwin SSH client instead of the SSH client bundled with Git. Cygwin SSH offers significantly improved speed, stability and configuration options over the one bundled with Git.

1. Download the relevant Cygwin packages from [cygwin.com](https://cygwin.com)
2. Run the executable, selecting the default options until you reach the 'Select package' menu
3. Select the following packages from the menu:
   - git-completion
   - git-gui
   - git-k
   - openssh

Next you need to configure the Cygwin SSH instance.

1. Open the `C:\cygwin` directory and edit the Cygwin.bat file in a text editor. Add this line:

   ```
   set CYGWIN=binmode ntsec
   ```

   **before** the line that invokes the bash shell

2. Next we will check that Cygwin was correctly installed. Run `C:\Cygwin\Cygwin.bat`, and run the following command:
cygrunsrv -h

This should display a listing of Cygwin help commands. If not, then something has gone wrong and you will need to reinstall Cygwin.

Once you have configured your SSH service, follow the steps described below for enabling access to Git repositories. You will also need to add an SSH capability for each local and remote agent.

**Enabling SSH access to Git repositories**

**To enable SSH access:**

You need to set up SSH access when you configure your linked repositories:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click **Linked repositories** (under ‘Build resources’)
3. Click **Add repository**, and select Git from the Source repository menu
4. Complete the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display name</td>
<td>The name that identifies the repository when you are using multiple repositories in a plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repository URL</td>
<td>The URL of the Git repository</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch</td>
<td>The name of the branch or tag containing the source code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Select **SSH private key** from the **Authentication Key** menu
6. Select the file containing your SSH key using the ‘Choose File’ button
7. Enter the passphrase to allow access to your SSH key
8. Click **Save repository**

Once you have enabled SSH access, you will also need to add an SSH server capability:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click **Server capabilities** and scroll to the bottom of the page
3. Click **Add** under the ‘Add capability’ heading
4. Complete the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capability type</td>
<td>Git</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executable</td>
<td>SSH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path</td>
<td>The path to the SSH executable, for example: /usr/bin/ssh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click **Add** to add the SSH capability.

**GitHub**

This page describes how to configure Bamboo to use a GitHub repository.

You can specify repositories at the following levels in Bamboo:

- global – repositories are available to all plans in Bamboo.
- plan – repositories are available to all jobs in the Bamboo plan.
- job – repositories are available to all tasks in the Bamboo job.

The recommended approach is to set up linked source repositories at the global level – see [Linking to source code repositories](#).

**Related pages:**

- Git

**Configure a GitHub source code repository**

1. Navigate to the repository configuration for a linked repository, plan or job. See [Linking to source code repositories](#).
2. Either click **Add Repository** to add a new repository, or edit an existing repository configuration.
3. Choose **GitHub** from the **Source repository** list.
4. Enter a **Display Name** to help identify the repository in Bamboo.
5. Enter your **GitHub Username** and **Password**.
6. Click **Load Repositories**.
7. You can configure the following advanced options for a GitHub source repository for your plan:

### Advanced Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use submodules</td>
<td>Select to enable submodules support if these are defined for the repository. If native GitHub capability is not defined for agent submodules support will be disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command timeout</td>
<td>This is useful to stop hung Bitbucket processes. On slower networks, you may consider increasing the default timeout to allow Bamboo time to make an initial clone of the GitHub repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbose logs</td>
<td>Turns on <code>--verbose</code> and <code>--debug</code> options in hg commands and passes the output to build logs. Use this option if you encounter problems with GitHub in Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Quiet Period</td>
<td>Specifies a delay after a single commit is detected before the build is started. This allows multiple commits to be aggregated into a single build.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include/Exclude Files</td>
<td>Allows you to specify the files that Bamboo should, or should not, use to detect changes. Enter into <strong>File Pattern</strong> a regular expression to match the files that Bamboo includes or excludes. The regex pattern must match the file path in the repository. See <a href="#">sub page</a> for examples.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclude Changelset</td>
<td>Enter a regular expression to match the commit messages for changsets that should not start a build.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Web Repository

If your repository can be viewed in a web browser, select the repository type.

**Stash** – specify the following details for the repository:

- **Stash URL** – the URL of your Stash (now Bitbucket Server) instance (e.g. `https://bitbucket.mycompany.com`).
- **Stash Project Key** – the key of the project in Stash (e.g. 'CONF').
- **Repository Name** – the name of the repository in Stash (e.g. 'conf-dev').

Use this option to connect to a Bitbucket Server repository.

See [Integrating Bamboo with Bitbucket Server](#) for more information.

**FishEye** – specify the URL and other details for the repository:

- **FishEye URL** – the URL of your FishEye repository (e.g. `'https://atlaseye.atlassian.com/'`).
- **Repository Name** – the name of your FishEye repository (e.g. 'bamboo'). This is effectively the alias for your repository path.
- **Repository Path** – the path for your FishEye repository (e.g. '/atlassian/bamboo/').

See [Integrating Bamboo with FishEye](#) for more information.

#### How do I determine my Repository Path?

If you have previously run builds with changes from your repository, the easiest way of determining your repository path is to view the code changes and copy the path from the start of the path of one of the changed files, up to (but not including) the appropriate root directory. The root directories for repositories are the ones shown by FishEye when browsing a repository (e.g. 'trunk'). For example, if a code change listed `/atlassian/bamboo/trunk/bamboo-acceptance-test/pom.xml`, the path would be `/atlassian/bamboo/`. If you have not previously run builds with changes from your repository, you will need to ask your FishEye administrator for the repository path indexed by FishEye.

### Mercurial

This page describes how to configure Bamboo to use a Mercurial repository.

You can specify repositories at the following levels in Bamboo:

- **global** – repositories are available to all plans in Bamboo.
- **plan** – repositories are available to all jobs in the Bamboo plan.
- **job** – repositories are available to all tasks in the Bamboo job.

The recommended approach is to set up linked source repositories at the global level – see [Linking to source code repositories](#).
Before you start:

- **Please use Mercurial 2.1.1 or later.** Mercurial 2.1 has a bug that makes it incompatible with Bamboo.
- **You will not be able to create plans or jobs that use a Mercurial repository without specifying the shared local Mercurial capability first.** Read more about configuring a version control capability.

### Related pages:
- Bitbucket Cloud

#### Configure a Mercurial source repository

1. Navigate to the repository configuration for a linked repository, plan or job. See [Linking to source code repositories](#).
2. Either click **Add Repository** to add a new repository, or edit an existing repository configuration.
3. Choose **Mercurial** from the Source Repository list.
4. Enter a Name to help identify the repository in Bamboo.
5. You can configure the following settings for a Mercurial source repository for your plan:

| Repository URL | The full path to your Mercurial repository (eg: `git://bitbucket.org/atlassian/bamboo-git-plugin.git`)  
 Valid URLs are of the form:  
- `local/filesystem/path[#revision]`  
- `file://local/filesystem/path[#revision]`  
- `http[s]://[user[:pass]@]host[:port]/[path][#revision]`  
- `ssh://[user[:pass]@]host[:port]/[path][#revision]`  
(For further references visit [Mercurial documentation](#)) |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Branch</td>
<td>The name of the relevant branch (or tag) you want to work on. Leave empty to work on default branch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Authentication | You can use shared credentials or type a username and a password.  
**SSH private key**  
You can use shared credentials or upload an SSH key and provide the SSH passphrase.  
**SSH private key (direct connection)**  
Upload an SSH Key. The passphrase is not required.  
**Default Mercurial credentials**  
Bamboo will rely on the default hg authentication. Use this option, for example, if you had set up the Bamboo server manually with SSH servers defined in `.ssh/config`, valid SSH identity files, etc. |
| Advanced Options | Type the number of minutes bamboo should wait for hg commands to finish. This is useful to stop hung Mercurial processes. On slower networks you may consider increasing default timeout to allow Bamboo to make an initial clone of the Mercurial repository.  
**Verbose logs**  
Turns on `--verbose` and `--debug` options in hg commands and passes the output to build logs. Use that option if you encounter problems with Mercurial in Bamboo.  
**Location of POM file**  
Type the path to your project's `pom.xml` file which is relative to the root of your Mercurial Repository URL (defined above).  
*(Only available when importing a Maven 2 project)*  
**Disable repository caching**  
Select this option to enable subrepositories support.  
**Enable Quiet Period**  
Specifies a delay after a single commit is detected before the build is started. This allows multiple commits to be aggregated into a single build.  
**Include/Exclude Files**  
Allows you to specify the files that Bamboo should, or should not, use to detect changes. Enter into File Pattern a regular expression to match the files that Bamboo includes or excludes. The regex pattern must match the file path in the repository. See sub page for examples.  
**Exclude Changesets**  
Enter a regular expression to match the commit messages for changesets that should not start a build. |

---

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License](#).
If your repository can be viewed in a web browser, select the repository type. This allows links to relevant files to be displayed in the 'Code Changes' section of a build result.

### Mercurial Web Repository
- **BitBucket Web Repository Scheme** (if you use BitBucket)
- **Default Web Repository Scheme (hgserve)** (Mercurial's own default web server)

### Stash
- **Stash URL** – the URL of your Stash (now Bitbucket Server) instance (e.g. `https://bitbucket.mycompany.com`).
- **Stash Project Key** – the key of the project in Stash (e.g. 'CONF').
- **Repository Name** – the name of the repository in Stash (e.g. 'conf-dev').

Use this option to connect to a Bitbucket Server repository.

See [Integrating Bamboo with Bitbucket Server](#) for more information.

### FishEye
- **FishEye URL** — the URL of your FishEye repository (e.g. `https://atlaseye.atlassian.com/`).
- **Repository Name** — the name of your FishEye repository (e.g. 'bamboo'). This is effectively the alias for your repository path.
- **Repository Path** — the path for your FishEye repository (e.g. '/atlassian/bamboo/').

See [Integrating Bamboo with FishEye](#) for more information.

**How do I determine my Repository Path?**
If you have previously run builds with changes from your repository, the easiest way of determining your repository path is to view the code changes and copy the path from the start of the path of one of the changed files, up to (but not including) the appropriate root directory. The root directories for repositories are the ones shown by FishEye when browsing a repository (e.g. trunk). For example, if a code change listed `/atlassian/bamboo/trunk/bamboo-acceptance-test/pom.xml`, the path would be `/atlassian/bamboo/`.

If you have not previously run builds with changes from your repository, you will need to ask your FishEye administrator for the repository path indexed by FishEye.

### Upgrading remote agents for Mercurial
The remote agent installer has been modified for Bamboo 2.7 to handle Mercurial source code repositories. This update only impacts Mercurial plans or jobs that use the "SSH/Keyfile with passphrase" option to access the remote repository:

*Screenshot: Choosing the 'Keyfile with passphrase' option for a plan or job*
If you need to access a Mercurial repository using the SSH protocol with a passphrase-protected keyfile, then you need to upgrade your remote agents to version 2.7 or later. Otherwise, you can keep your old agent. To upgrade your remote agents:

1. Obtain the Bamboo remote agent for version 2.7 or later (i.e. `atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer-x.x.jar` where 'x.x' is 2.7 or later). Refer to [Bamboo remote agent installation guide](#) for more information.
2. Use this file to replace your existing `atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer.x.x.jar` (where 'x.x' is 2.6 or earlier) on the computers running your Bamboo remote agents.
3. Restart the remote agent (i.e. kill it among with accompanying wrapper processes and then issue the command `java -jar atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer-2.7.jar yourBambooAgentServer`).

This procedure should prepare your agent to build Mercurial plans using passphrase-protected SSH keyfiles.

**Perforce**

This page describes how to configure Bamboo to use a Perforce repository.

You can specify repositories at the following levels in Bamboo:

- global – repositories are available to all plans in Bamboo.
- plan – repositories are available to all jobs in the Bamboo plan.
- job – repositories are available to all tasks in the Bamboo job.

The recommended approach is to set up linked source repositories at the global level – see [Linking to source code repositories](#).

**Configure a Perforce source repository**

1. Navigate to the repository configuration for a linked repository, plan or job. See [Linking to source code repositories](#).
2. Either click **Add Repository** to add a new repository, or edit an existing repository configuration.
3. Choose **Perforce** from the **Source Repository** list.
4. Enter a **Display Name** to help identify the repository in Bamboo.
5. You can configure the following settings for a Perforce source repository for your plan:

**On this page:**
- Configure a Perforce source repository
- Notes

### Port
Type either the port to which the Perforce client will connect, or the Perforce server itself. This is the Perforce P4PORT environment variable that tells Bamboo which p4d (Perforce server) to use.

### Client (Workspace)
The name of the Perforce Client Workspace which Bamboo will use. The Client Workspace determines which portions of the depot are visible in your Workspace Tree.

Do not create two Plans/Jobs that use the same client (e.g. one client set to manage, the other client set to not manage). This setup will create major issues in your builds.

### Depot View
The client view of the depot that contains the source code files for this Plan/Job. This is typically in the form //<clientname>/<workspace_mapping>/*... For details please see the Perforce User’s Guide.

Bamboo sets the client root to its working directory, which means that code will be checked out to the 'working directory/<workspace_mapping>' location. Please take note of this, when specifying the 'Artifact Copy Pattern' for your Build Artifacts.

### Username
The Perforce username that Bamboo will use when it accesses the server ('Port'). Leave this field blank if you want Bamboo to use the default Perforce user (i.e. the OS username).

### Password
Type the password required by the Perforce username (if applicable).

### Let Bamboo manage your workspace
This field indicates whether or not you want Bamboo to manage your workspace.

### Use Client Mapping For Change Detection
Select this option if you use overlay mappings for your workspace. Your workspace must be available on the Bamboo Server.

### Advanced Options

#### Enable Quiet Period
Specifies a delay after a single commit is detected before the build is started. This allows multiple commits to be aggregated into a single build.

#### Include/Exclude Files
Allows you to specify the files that Bamboo should, or should not, use to detect changes.

Enter into **File Pattern** a **regular expression** to match the files that Bamboo includes or excludes. The regex pattern must match the file path in the repository. See [sub page](#) for examples.

#### Exclude Changesets
Enter a **regular expression** to match the commit messages for changesets that should not start a build.

#### Web Repository
If your repository can be viewed in a web browser, select the repository type.

This allows links to relevant files to be displayed in the 'Code Changes' section of a build result.

**Generic Web Repository**
- **Web Repository URL** – the URL of the repository.
- **Web Repository Module** — the particular repository required for this plan or job, if the **Web Repository URL** above points to multiple repositories.

**Stash** – specify the following details for the repository:
- **Stash URL** – the URL of your Stash (now Bitbucket Server) instance (e.g. 'https://bitbucket.mycompany.com').
- **Stash Project Key** – the key of the project in Stash (e.g. 'CONF').
- **Repository Name** – the name of the repository in Stash (e.g. 'conf-dev').

Use this option to connect to a Bitbucket Server repository.

See [Integrating Bamboo with Bitbucket Server](#) for more information.
How do I determine my Repository Path?

If you have previously run builds with changes from your repository, the easiest way of determining your repository path is to view the code changes and copy the path from the start of the path of one of the changed files, up to (but not including) the appropriate root directory. The root directories for repositories are the ones shown by FishEye when browsing a repository (e.g. trunk). For example, if a code change listed /atlassian/trunk/bamboo-acceptance-test/pom.xml, the path would be /atlassian/bamboo/

If you have not previously run builds with changes from your repository, you will need to ask your FishEye administrator for the repository path indexed by FishEye.

Notes

1. You will not be able to create plans or jobs that use a Perforce repository without specifying the shared local Perforce capability first. Read more about configuring a VCS capability.
2. Keep your Perforce configuration up to date — If you are using Perforce as your repository, you must ensure your Perforce configuration in Bamboo is in sync with any changes to your Perforce repository (such as client, depot or user credential changes). If not, your Perforce repository changes may cause unexpected behavior in Bamboo when Bamboo tries to access the repository. See the notes in the configuration instructions below for further details.
3. Issue when running Bamboo with Perforce prior to Bamboo 2.0.7 — A known issue exists when running Bamboo with Perforce prior to Bamboo 2.0.7 (See BAM-2866 and BAM-2849). If you change the name of your Perforce client (i.e. via an update) without updating your Perforce configuration in Bamboo, Bamboo will not be able to find the Perforce client to run against. Perforce will then create a default client in your running directory. This can lead to situations where Bamboo will attempt to clear out data from your running directory (e.g. force build). To avoid this problem, ensure that you update the ‘Client’ in your Perforce configuration whenever you change your Perforce client.
4. Please be aware of the following implications when either letting Bamboo manage or preventing Bamboo from managing your workspace:
   - If you let Bamboo manage your workspace,
     - We recommend this configuration if your Jobs will be running on many different machines or different operating systems, as Bamboo sets the client root for you.
     - Bamboo will make configuration changes to the Client Workspace to manage builds (e.g. Bamboo will modify the host and root). You need to ensure that you enter a Client Workspace in the ‘Client’ field that will be used solely for Bamboo.
     - Under this configuration, you should configure one client per Job to avoid conflicts when updating the client root.
   - If you do not let Bamboo manage your workspace,
     - We recommend this configuration if you wish to reuse your client for several Jobs, as Bamboo will retrieve the client root directory from Perforce and use it to run builds.
     - Setting the client root in Perforce: We strongly recommend that you choose a directory that is dedicated for Bamboo’s use only, when you are specifying the client root in your Perforce repository. This directory may get cleaned (i.e. files and sub-directories deleted) if you choose to force clean builds.
     - Under this configuration, you need to ensure that the client root directory exists on all machines that the Job will be built on.
     - Please note that alternate roots does not currently work in Bamboo. See issue BAM-2377 for further details.

Using Perforce with Bamboo - limitations and workarounds

There are some limitations to using Bamboo with Perforce. Please read the following information carefully before setting up a build plan to use Perforce.

On this page:
1. Running builds on multiple remote agents or machines
2. Using Perforce Overlay and Exclusionary Mappings in Bamboo

1. Running builds on multiple remote agents or machines

Limitation

You will not be able to run builds on multiple remote agents and/or multiple remote machines using a Perforce repository, without using one of the workarounds described below. If you try to do so, you will run into problems with change detection that could cause your agents to build incorrect code. This problem does not affect the running of builds on multiple local agents.

Background

Perforce is a client/server SCM (software configuration management) system that manages your changes/files by storing the change information on its server. However, storing change information on the Perforce server can cause problems when you have clients on multiple
agents/machines. If you have downloaded a particular change with a Perforce client, the change will be marked as downloaded by the Perforce server. If you use the same Perforce client on another machine, the Perforce server will incorrectly assume that you have already downloaded that particular change and will not download it. Hence, your agents may not pick up changes correctly and could build incorrect code.

**Workarounds**

There are a few workarounds available for this issue, if you are using Perforce with Bamboo:

- **Restrict your plan to use a single machine** — you can use one or more remote agents to build a plan, if they are running on the same machine and you set the client root yourself (i.e. do not let Bamboo manage your workspace) so that your agents will build to the same directory.
- **Make Bamboo force a clean build every time it builds** — this will ensure that your agents are always building the correct code. However, it can be an inefficient setup for big projects.
- **Use alternate roots for different machines** — specifying alternate roots for different machines will allow you to work around the change detection issue, as long as the roots on each machine are unique. Please note however, you will be restricted to three machines (with three different roots) due to Perforce limitations.

Please see the following JIRA issues for further information, BAM-2843 and BAM-2774.

### 2. Using Perforce Overlay and Exclusionary Mappings in Bamboo

**Limitation**

You will not be able to control how Bamboo detects changes using exclusionary mappings or overlay mappings.

ℹ️ Please note, this issue does not affect you if you only trigger your builds on a schedule or manually, as Bamboo agents still build the correct code when triggered.

ℹ️ You may want to try the "Use Client Mapping For Change Detection" available in the Bamboo Perforce repository type.

**Background**

Bamboo currently uses the depot view, not the client view, when detecting changes. Hence, any exclusionary and overlay mappings will not be available during change detection.

For example, if a p4 client uses an overlay mapping like this one:

```plaintext
//depot/Prj/... //clientName/depot/Prj/...
+//depot/Dep/... //clientName/depot/Prj/Dep/...
```

and the 'Depot' specified in a plan’s repository configuration is:

```plaintext
//clientName/depot/Prj/...
```

then Bamboo will lookup the corresponding depot view and detect changes by running the following command:

```plaintext
p4 changes //depot/Prj/...
```

Consequently, no changes to files in //clientName/depot/Prj/Dep/... will be picked up by change detection, despite the overlay mapping.

Hence, if you set up your build to trigger when code is updated it will not trigger correctly.

**Workarounds**

A partial workaround is available in Bamboo, if you wish to use exclusionary mappings for your client workspace. Specify your build plan to exclude files that match a specified pattern by choosing ‘Exclude all changes that match the following pattern’ from the ‘Include / Exclude Files’ dropdown (under the ‘Common repository configuration’ section). See this document for further details. Please note, this will only exclude one pattern whereas multiple exclusions can be specified in an exclusionary mapping.

Unfortunately, there is no workaround for overlay mappings in Bamboo.

Please note, we are aware of these problems and are working to address them — see the following JIRA issue for further information, BAM-323.

### Subversion
This page describes how to configure Bamboo to use a Subversion repository.

You can specify repositories at the following levels in Bamboo:

- **global** – repositories are available to all plans in Bamboo.
- **plan** – repositories are available to all jobs in the Bamboo plan.
- **job** – repositories are available to all tasks in the Bamboo job.

The recommended approach is to set up linked source repositories at the global level – see Linking to source code repositories.

### On this page:
- Configure a Subversion source repository
- Notes

### Related pages:
- Setting the SVN workspace format

#### Configure a Subversion source repository

1. Navigate to the repository configuration for a linked repository, plan or job. See Linking to source code repositories.
2. Either click **Add Repository** to add a new repository, or edit an existing repository configuration.
3. Choose Subversion from the Source Repository list.
4. Enter a **Display Name** to help identify the repository in Bamboo.
5. You can configure the following settings for a Subversion source repository for your plan:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Repository URL</strong></th>
<th>The location of the root of your Subversion repository. For example: <a href="http://svn.collab.net/repos/svn/trunk">http://svn.collab.net/repos/svn/trunk</a>. Note that you can use global variables in this field (see Using Global or Build-specific Variables).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you are importing a Maven 2 Project, this location should contain your project's pom.xml file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Branch name</strong></td>
<td>The display name of a branch or a module that you want to check out. For example My project. The name will be used in the Bamboo UI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Branch path</strong></td>
<td>The path to a branch or a module that you want to checkout. For example, trunk, branches/my_branch. The path is relative to the root URL of the repository. Note that you can use global variables in this field (see Using Global or Build-specific Variables).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you are importing a Maven 2 Project, this location should contain your project's pom.xml file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Username</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) The Subversion username (if any) required to access the repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Authentication Type</strong></td>
<td>Password – choose this option if you want to authenticate with a username and password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SSH – if you choose to authenticate using SSH, you need to provide the following details:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Private Key</strong> – the absolute path of your SSH private key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Passphrase</strong> – the passphrase for your SSH private key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you are planning to use remote agents the ssh private key file has to be copied to the agent box into the same location as specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SSL Client Certificate</strong></td>
<td>If you choose to authenticate using an SSL Client Certificate, you need to provide the following details:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Private Key</strong> – the absolute path of your SSL client certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Passphrase</strong> – the passphrase for your SSL client certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please note, the client certificate has to be in PKCS12 format and the client certificate file must be passphrase protected, otherwise a runtime exception is thrown by the JDK security engine while opening the user key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Advanced Options

| **Detect Changes in Externals** | Select this if your Subversion repository uses svn:externals to link to other repositories (your externals must be in the root of the checkout directory, not in a subdirectory). Please note that you only need to select this check box if you require Bamboo to detect changes in the externals. If your externals reference a particular (static) revision, you do not need to check this box. |
| **Use SVN Export**             | This option will speed up the first-time checkout, but updates are not supported. Implies Force Clean Build. |
| **Enable Commit Isolation**   | Ensures that a build will only have one change, allowing you to isolate your build failures. |
Automatically detect root URL for branches
Specifies whether the VCS Branching Task automatically determines the location of created branches.

Automatically detect root URL for tags
Specifies whether the VCS Tagging Task automatically determines the location of created branches.

Enable Quiet Period
Specifies a delay after a single commit is detected before the build is started. This allows multiple commits to be aggregated into a single build. (Only available when configuring an existing plan.)

Include/Exclude Files
Allows you to specify the files that Bamboo should, or should not, use to detect changes.
Enter into File Pattern a regular expression to match the files that Bamboo includes or excludes. The regex pattern must match the file path in the repository. See sub page for examples.

Exclude Changesets
Enter a regular expression to match the commit messages for changesets that should not start a build.

Web Repository
If your repository can be viewed in a web browser, select the repository type.
This allows links to relevant files to be displayed in the 'Code Changes' section of a build result.

**Generic Web Repository**
- Web Repository URL – the URL of the repository.
- Web Repository Module — the particular repository required for this plan or job, if the Web Repository URL above points to multiple repositories.

**Stash** – specify the following details for the repository:
- Stash URL – the URL of your Stash (now Bitbucket Server) instance (e.g. 'https://bitbucket.mycompany.com')
- Stash Project Key – the key of the project in Stash (e.g. 'CONF').
- Repository Name – the name of the repository in Stash (e.g. 'conf-dev').

Use this option to connect to a Bitbucket Server repository.

See [Integrating Bamboo with Bitbucket Server](#) for more information.

**FishEye** – specify the URL and other details for the repository:
- FishEye URL — the URL of your FishEye repository (e.g. 'https://atlaseye.atlassian.com/').
- Repository Name — the name of your FishEye repository (e.g. 'bamboo'). This is effectively the alias for your repository path.
- Repository Path — the path for your FishEye repository (e.g. '/atlassian/bamboo/').

See [Integrating Bamboo with FishEye](#) for more information.

**How do I determine my Repository Path?**
If you have previously run builds with changes from your repository, the easiest way of determining your repository path is to view the code changes and copy the path from the start of the path of one of the changed files, up to (but not including) the appropriate root directory. The root directories for repositories are the ones shown by FishEye when browsing a repository (e.g. trunk). For example, if a code change listed /atlassian/bamboo/trunk/bamboo-acceptance-test/pom.xml, the path would be /atlassian/bamboo/.
If you have not previously run builds with changes from your repository, you will need to ask your FishEye administrator for the repository path indexed by FishEye.

Notes
- If you are having problems connecting to Subversion, consult our documentation on troubleshooting Subversion connections.
- If you use pre-1.5 Subversion client to access code checked out by Bamboo, you may encounter problems with your builds. This is due to the SVNKit upgrade in Bamboo 2.1.4. Please read this knowledge base article for further details.
- You can add the -Dsvnkit.http.methods=Basic,NTLM system property to SVNKit to have NTLM authentication work with Bamboo.

**Configuring source code management triggers for Subversion**
This page provides instructions on how to configure Subversion to send message events that trigger the execution of Bamboo plans. You only need to configure Subversion to send these message events if The repository triggers the build when changes are committed build strategy has been specified for one or more of your Bamboo plans.
**Configuring Subversion to trigger a build**

This section explains how to configure Subversion to trigger a build when the repository is changed. A Subversion hook script is used to perform the trigger action whenever a Subversion repository is changed.

The following commands and script files assume that your Subversion server runs on a UNIX- or Linux-based operating system. If your Subversion server runs on any other operating system, then you will need to modify the script files and if necessary, the commands below to suit that operating system.

---

**Step 1. Enable the Subversion post-commit hook**

To do this, run the following commands:

```bash
cd svn-repository-containing-the-build-source-code
cd into the hooks/ directory
```

The Subversion post-commit file is not installed by default. If it does not exist, make a copy of the `post-commit.tmpl` file in the `hooks/` directory, name it `post-commit` and make it executable:

```bash
cp post-commit.tmpl post-commit
chmod a+rx post-commit
```

**Step 2. Install the post-commit trigger**

Add a line like the following to the `post-commit` file, for running Bamboo's build trigger script file.

```bash
/path-to-your-bamboo-installation/scripts/svn-triggers/postCommitTrigger.sh base-url BUILD-KEY
```

where:

- `base-url` is the base URL of the Bamboo server. For example:
  ```
  http://<name-of-machine>:8085
  ```
- `BUILD-KEY` is the key of the Bamboo plan to be executed.

Make Bamboo's build trigger script file executable (using `chmod`) so that the Subversion user can execute it.

**Step 3. Do a test commit**

Conduct a 'test' commit. Bamboo should start building the relevant plan after a few seconds.

The Bamboo log file should contain an entry like this:

```
[INFO] com.atlassian.bamboo.build.UpdateAndBuild - Bamboo build was triggered by remote http call from 127.0.0.1
```

---

**Notes**

**Build Trigger Security** — Bamboo will only accept remote build triggers if the triggers originated from the Subversion server(s) identified in the Subversion Repository URL of any Bamboo plans. Requests originating from other Subversion servers will be rejected by Bamboo.

**CVS**

This page describes how to configure Bamboo to use a Bitbucket repository.

You can specify repositories at the following levels in Bamboo:
1. **CVS Root**
   - The full path to your CVS repository root (e.g. `pserver:me@cvs.atlassian.com:/cvsroot/atlassian`). Bamboo supports pserver, ext (ssh) and local repository access methods. Note that you can use global variables in this field (see Bamboo variables).
   - **Info:** If you are importing a Maven 2 Project, this location should contain your project's `pom.xml` file.

2. **Authentication Type**
   - **Password** – choose this option if you want to authenticate with a password.
   - **SSH** – if you choose to authenticate using SSH, you need to provide the following details:
     - **Private Key** — the absolute path of your SSH private key.
     - **Passphrase** — the passphrase for your SSH private key.

3. **Quiet Period**
   - This setting is used to avoid starting a build while someone is in mid-checkin. Bamboo will only initiate a build for this plan when no more changes are detected within the Quiet Period following the last known change. Type the number of seconds Bamboo should wait. Please note that this parameter is mandatory for CVS, as CVS allows partial checkouts.
   - **Info:** (Only available when configuring an existing plan)

4. **Module**
   - Type the name of the CVS module that contains the source-code.
   - **Info:** Currently Bamboo has limited support for CVS ampersand modules. To use an ampersand module, you will need to define a regular module with the same name as the ampersand module (since Bamboo expects there to be a directory with the specified checkout module name). For example:
     - a. Create a module (e.g. `allbuilds`).
     - b. Define an ampersand module with the same name. (The ampersand module can be empty.)
     - c. In the Module field, enter the following: `allbuilds allbuilds &project2 &project2 &project3`.

5. **Version of module**
   - The version of the module that Bamboo should build:
     - **HEAD**
     - **Branch/Tag** – supply the name of the branch or tag.
   - **Info:** Note that you can use global variables in this field (see Bamboo variables).

### Advanced Options

1. **Include/Exclude Files**
   - Allows you to specify the files that Bamboo should, or should not, use to detect changes.
   - Enter into **File Pattern** a regular expression to match the files that Bamboo includes or excludes. The regex pattern must match the file path in the repository. See sub page for examples.

2. **Exclude Changesets**
   - Enter a regular expression to match the commit messages for changesets that should not start a build.

3. **Web Repository**
   - If your repository can be viewed in a web browser, select the repository type.
   - This allows links to relevant files to be displayed in the 'Code Changes' section of a build result.
   - **Generic Web Repository**
     - **Web Repository URL** – the URL of the repository.
     - **Web Repository Module** — the particular repository required for this plan or job, if the Web Repository URL above points to multiple repositories.
Stash – specify the following details for the repository:

- **Stash URL** – the URL of your Stash (now Bitbucket Server) instance (e.g. 'https://bitbucket.mycompany.com').
- **Stash Project Key** – the key of the project in Stash (e.g. 'CONF').
- **Repository Name** – the name of the repository in Stash (e.g. 'conf-dev').

See [Integrating Bamboo with Bitbucket Server](#) for more information.

FishEye

- **FishEye URL** — the URL of your FishEye repository (e.g. 'https://atlaseye.atlassian.com/').
- **Repository Name** — the name of your FishEye repository (e.g. 'Bamboo'). This is effectively the alias for your repository path.
- **Repository Path** — the path for your FishEye repository (e.g. '/atlassian/bamboo/').

See [Integrating Bamboo with FishEye](#) for more information.

**How do I determine my Repository Path?**

If you have previously run builds with changes from your repository, the easiest way of determining your repository path is to view the code changes and copy the path from the start of the path of one of the changed files, up to (but not including) the appropriate root directory. The root directories for repositories are the ones shown by FishEye when browsing a repository (e.g. trunk). For example, if a code change listed /atlassian/bamboo/trunk/bamboo-acceptance-test/pom.xml, the path would be /atlassian/bamboo/.

If you have not previously run builds with changes from your repository, you will need to ask your FishEye administrator for the repository path indexed by FishEye.

### Configuring source code management triggers for CVS

This page provides instructions on how to configure CVS to send message events that trigger the execution of Bamboo plans.

You only need to configure CVS to send these message events if **The repository triggers the build when changes are committed** trigger has been configured for one or more of your Bamboo plans.

#### Configuring CVS to trigger a build

This section explains how to configure CVS to trigger a build when the repository is changed. This involves installing two scrips:

1. A pre-commit trigger keeps track of the last directory to be processed, so we know when the commit has completed.
2. A post-commit trigger that waits until it has processed the last directory of the commit before instructing the Bamboo server to execute the relevant plan(s).

**On this page:**
- Configuring CVS to trigger a build
- Notes

**Related pages:**
- CVS
- Configuring source code management triggers for Subversion

⚠️ The following commands and script files assume that your CVS server runs on a UNIX- or Linux-based operating system. If your CVS server runs on any other operating system, then you will need to modify the script files and if necessary, the commands below to suit that operating system.

### Step 1. Checking out the CVSROOT

First check out your repository's CVSROOT directory into a temporary directory:

```bash
cvs -d cvsroot-to-your-repository checkout CVSROOT
```

where:

- **cvsroot-to-your-repository** is the root directory pathname of the CVS repository.

⚠️ Using `-d cvsroot-to-your-repository` overrides the any `CVSROOT` environment variable setting.

The following files should be checked out:
Step 2. Install the pre-commit trigger

Add a line like the following example's to the CVSROOT/commitinfo pre-commit trigger file. The CVSROOT/commitinfo file contains the list of programs to run whenever a file is about to be committed to the repository.

```bash
^Moo /path-to-your-bamboo-installation/scripts/cvs-triggers/preCommit.sh %r/%p
```

where:
- `^Moo` is the regular expression used to identify the name of the module (called Moo) being updated.
- `/path-to-your-bamboo-installation/scripts/cvs-triggers/preCommit.sh` is the Bamboo shell script used to detect the last file of the check in.

If your Bamboo installation and CVS server are on different machines, refer to the note below.

Step 3. Install the post-commit trigger

Add a line like the following example's to the CVSROOT/loginfo post-commit trigger file. The CVSROOT/loginfo file contains the list of programs to run whenever a file has been successfully committed into the repository.

```bash
^Moo
```

where:
- `^Moo` is the regular expression used to identify the name of the module (called Moo) being updated.
- `/path-to-your-bamboo-installation/scripts/cvs-triggers/postCommitBuildTrigger.sh` is the Bamboo shell script to trigger the build.
- `MOO-KEY` is the key of the Bamboo plan to be executed.

Step 4. Save the changes back to CVS

Commit the changes you made to the CVSROOT/commitinfo and CVSROOT/loginfo files in step 2 and 3, respectively, back to the repository.

```bash
cvs -d cvsroot-to-your-repository commit
```

where:
- `cvsroot-to-your-repository` is the root directory pathname of the CVS repository.

Using `-d cvsroot-to-your-repository` overrides the any `CVSROOT` environment variable setting.
Step 5. Do a test commit

Conduct a 'test' commit. Bamboo should start building the relevant plan after a few seconds.

The Bamboo log file should contain an entry like this:

```
[INFO] com.atlassian.bamboo.build.UpdateAndBuild - Bamboo build was triggered by remote http call from 127.0.0.1
```

- The `postCommitBuildTrigger.sh` is only triggered when the last file of the commit has been committed.
- The `preCommit.sh` and `postCommitBuildTrigger.sh` must have sufficient privileges to be executed by the CVS user.
- If your Bamboo installation is not running on the same machine as the CVS server, you will also need add the Bamboo `preCommit.sh` and `postCommitBuildTrigger.sh` files to the CVSROOT directory and add the names of these files to the end of the `checkoutlist` file.

Notes

Build Trigger Security — Bamboo will only accept remote build triggers if the triggers originated from the CVS server(s) identified in the CVS root paths of any Bamboo plans. Requests originating from other CVS servers will be rejected by Bamboo.

Shared credentials

You can store credentials within Bamboo for easier access to repositories and Amazon Web Services. The access details that you provide are available to all plans on your Bamboo server.

To manage shared credentials:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Go to Build resources > Shared credentials.
3. You can add, edit, or delete existing credentials.

Related pages:
- Linking to source code repositories
- Checking out code
- Configuring plans

Adding shared credentials

1. Click Add shared credentials and select the type of credentials that you want to add.
2. Provide the details:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Credential name</td>
<td>The name of the credential set. Make the name meaningful, as Bamboo refers to the credential set by its name without quoting the details.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS</td>
<td>Access key ID</td>
<td>Credentials assigned to each IAM user in the AWS management console. For more information, see AWS account for Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Secret access key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSH</td>
<td>SSH key</td>
<td>The private key from the SSH key pair that you created to authenticate with a repository. You must specify the public key on the repository host side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SSH passphrase</td>
<td>The passphrase for accessing the SSH private key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username and password</td>
<td>Username</td>
<td>The username with which you want to authenticate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password with which you want to authenticate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click Save credentials to add the credentials to the shared credentials list.
Editing shared credentials

You can modify the details of the existing shared credential by clicking **Edit** next to the credential name and selecting the **Change** check box.

Deleting shared credentials

You can delete existing shared credentials by clicking **Delete** next to the credential name.

After you click **Delete**, Bamboo displays a message with a list of repositories or plan tasks that depend on the credential and might break if you delete it.

Triggering builds

Triggering in Bamboo allows plan builds to be started automatically. Bamboo has the following trigger methods:

- Trigger a build if code has changed:
  - Poll the repository for changes
  - A push to the repository triggers the build
- Trigger a build based on a schedule:
  - Cron-based scheduling
  - Single daily build
- Trigger a build depending on the outcome of other plans:
  - Plan builds are triggered by preceding **successful builds** of other plans.
  - Plan only builds if **other specified plans are building successfully**.

### On this page:

- Choosing a triggering strategy
- Conditional build triggers

### Related pages:

- Running a plan build manually
- Setting up plan build dependencies

Note that a plan that has no configured triggers can only be started **manually**, or if it is **dependent** on the successful build of another plan.

From Bamboo 4.3, you can configure multiple triggers for each plan. This allows a plan to be triggered by different trigger types, and to have triggering scenarios such as "every 5 minutes between 9:00am and 10:00am, and every 20 minutes between 1:00pm and 10:00pm".

Triggers can only be configured by a Bamboo administrator.

Choosing a triggering strategy

This table lists the ways in which plan builds can be triggered in Bamboo.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Triggering option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Polling the repository for changes</strong></td>
<td>Bamboo will 'poll' the selected source code repositories for code changes, using either a specified interval (that is, periodically) or a schedule. If Bamboo detects code changes, a build of the plan is triggered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Your VCS must service a 'check out' or 'update' command whenever it is polled, even if no code has changed in a repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>See Polling the repository for changes.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Repository triggers the build when changes are committed

Bamboo waits to receive a message about changed code from any of the selected source code repositories. When Bamboo receives such a message, a build of the plan is triggered.

- This option minimizes server load, because message events are sent only when code changes to a repository are committed.
- You must configure your source code management system to send message events to Bamboo about code changes in the repositories.

- This is the default option when you use a linked Bitbucket Server repository.

See Repository triggers the build when changes are committed.

### Cron-based scheduling

Bamboo will trigger scheduled builds of this plan based on a cron expression.

- This option allows you to schedule builds when server load is likely to be minimal, for example, outside office hours.
- Scheduled builds are triggered irrespective of any code changes in the source code repositories.

See Cron-based scheduling.

### Single daily build

Bamboo will trigger a build of the plan once per day at a specified time.

- Can be set up to run at a time of your choice.
- This option is suitable if a build of this plan takes a long time to complete.
- Scheduled builds are triggered irrespective of any code changes in the source code repositories.

See Single daily build.

### Conditional build triggers

*This feature is only available when configuring an existing plan.*

You can choose to run builds of this plan only if other specified plans are currently passing. Those plans must build successfully before this plan will be built. See also Setting up plan build dependencies.

Note that, because a plan may have multiple triggers configured, each of which can have differing trigger conditions, it is possible for the plan build to be started by one trigger, even though another trigger is currently blocked.

To specify build trigger conditions:

1. Choose Build > All build plans from the Bamboo header.
2. Locate the plan in the list and click the edit icon to display the plan’s configuration pages.
3. Click the Triggers tab, and click either an existing trigger or Add trigger.
4. Select Only run Build if other Plans are currently passing, under ‘Trigger conditions’.
5. Specify one or more other plans by adding their full keys.

### Trigger conditions

- Only run Build if other Plans are currently passing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan Keys</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FULL_KEY</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enter comma separated Plan Keys.

### Polling the repository for changes

You can configure Bamboo to poll the repository for source code changes, either:

- periodically (e.g. every 180 seconds), or
- based on a schedule (e.g. the second Sunday of every month at 5:00 am).

If Bamboo detects a change in the source code, a build of your plan is triggered.
To configure Bamboo to poll the repository for source code changes:

1. Click Dashboard and then the All Plans tab.
2. Locate the plan in the list and click the edit icon (编辑) to display the plan's configuration pages.
3. Click the Triggers tab, then click either an existing trigger or Add Trigger.
4. Optionally, enter a trigger description.
5. Choose Trigger type > Polling the Repository for changes.
6. Bamboo displays the available repositories for the plan, as previously configured on the Source Repositories tab. Choose the repositories that this trigger should apply to.
7. Choose a polling strategy:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Periodically</th>
<th>Enter a Polling Frequency value (in seconds) for the time between when Bamboo checks for repository changes.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled</td>
<td>Click the edit icon (编辑) to use the Schedule Editor to set the polling schedule.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note, this is a schedule for polling your repository: a plan build will only be triggered if there are source code changes. See Triggering builds.

For the Cron Expression option, a cron expression consists of 6 mandatory and one optional field. The fields in sequential order are: seconds, minutes, hours, day-of-month, month, day-of-week and (optional) year. For example, 0 0 1 ? * 1. For information on Cron expressions, see this FAQ: Constructing a cron expression in Bamboo.

8. Click Save Trigger.

Repository triggers the build when changes are committed

Using the source repository to trigger the build of a plan is one of the available methods for triggering builds in Bamboo.

*Repository triggers the build when changes are committed* has the advantage of placing minimal load on your Bamboo server. However, it requires that your source repository is configured to fire an event to the Bamboo server (which the configured Plan will "listen for").

Configuring the repository to trigger the build when changes are committed requires two changes:

1. Configuring your source repository
2. Configuring Bamboo to respond to post-commit messages
The overall process is: a commit to the repository causes a post-commit message to be sent to Bamboo. Bamboo responds by checking the repository for unbuilt changes. If changes are found, Bamboo triggers a build.

### Related pages:
- Triggering builds
- Polling the repository for changes
- Cron-based scheduling
- Single daily build

### 1. Configuring your source repository

Configure your source code management system's repository to send post-commit event messages to Bamboo. These messages tell Bamboo to begin building the plans that use this repository.

**For Bitbucket Cloud, click here to expand...**

Add the Bamboo webhook to your repository in Bitbucket Cloud. No further action is necessary on your local repository. Each push of new commits in to Bitbucket will trigger the build based on your configuration.

**For Bitbucket Server, click here to expand...**

When you create a plan that uses a linked Bitbucket Server repository, Bamboo uses the 'Bitbucket repository triggers the build when changes are committed' trigger option by default.

**For Git, click here to expand...**

Edit the Git repository's `.git/hooks/post-receive` trigger file, for example with the following:

```
/path/to/postCommitBuildTrigger.sh http://bambooserver JIRA-MAIN JIRA-BRANCH
```

where:
- JIRA-MAIN and JIRA-BRANCH are the Bamboo plans that you would like to trigger
- JIRA is the project key
- BRANCH or MAIN are the plan key

For Git, use the SVN `postCommitBuildTrigger.sh` script. See below for more information about the scripts.

**For Mercurial, click here to expand...**

Edit the Hg repository's `.hg/hgrc` settings, for example with the following:

```
[hooks]
changelog.update = /pathto/postCommitBuildTrigger.sh http://bambooserver JIRA-MAIN JIRA-BRANCH
```

where:
- JIRA-MAIN and JIRA-BRANCH are the Bamboo plans that you would like to trigger
- JIRA is the project key
- BRANCH or MAIN are the plan key

See below for more information about the scripts.

**For Subversion, click here to expand...**
If you are using a remote SVN server, copy file
"atlassian-bamboo/repositoryScripts/svn-triggers/postCommitBuildTrigger.sh" (.py for Windows installations) located in the Bamboo install directory to the SVN repository .../hook/post-commit folder so that the postCommitBuildTrigger file is accessible from the post-commit trigger file.

Edit the Subversion repository's hooks/post-commit trigger file, for example with the following:

```
/path/to/postCommitBuildTrigger.sh http://bambooserver
JIRA-MAIN JIRA-BRANCH
```

where:
- JIRA-MAIN and JIRA-BRANCH are the Bamboo plans that you would like to trigger
- JIRA is the project key
- BRANCH or MAIN are the plan key

See below for more information about the scripts. Also, refer to Configuring source code management triggers for Subversion.

For Perforce, click here to expand... Add the script as a change-commit trigger.

```
triggerName change-commit //myDepot/... 
"/usr/local/bin/postCommitBuildTrigger.sh
http://bambooserver/ MYPLAN-DEFAULT"
```

See below for more information about the scripts.

For CVS, click here to expand... Edit two files in the CVSROOT module: commitinfo and loginfo.

- For commitinfo, add a line like this:

```
^jira(/|$) /pathto/preCommit.sh
```

where "jira" is your module.
- For loginfo, you can add a line, for example the following:

```
^jira(/|$) /pathto/postCommitBuildTrigger.sh %(JIRA-MAIN JIRA-BRANCH
```

where:
- JIRA-MAIN and JIRA-BRANCH are the Bamboo plans that you would like to trigger
- JIRA is the project key
- BRANCH or MAIN are the plan key

See below for more information about the scripts. Please refer to Configuring source code management triggers for Subversion.

- You can download the scripts using this link. Use the same SVN script for Git. Copy the scripts to your repository. The scripts can also be found in the /scripts folder of your Bamboo Installation Directory.
- Depending on which operating system your repository is running on, you may need to edit the scripts. The scripts assume that 'wget' is in '/usr/bin/'; if this isn't the case for your repository (e.g. Solaris 10 has it in '/usr/sfw/bin/'), edit the scripts and change '/usr/bin/' to the appropriate location.
- Ensure that the user which Bamboo is running as has appropriate file permissions to execute the scripts, i.e. the scripts should be executable by non-root user(s).

2. Configuring Bamboo to respond to post-commit messages

Before you begin:
• Triggering a build when there is no repository update — Bamboo will ignore build triggers if the local working copy and the repository copy have the same revision numbers. When testing your build triggers, ensure that the local working copy is not the latest version - if this is the case, Bamboo will take no further action.

• If you’re using the Bitbucket Cloud Bamboo post-push hook, ensure that the user you are using to authenticate triggering the build has the ‘build’ permission on the plan you are attempting to trigger.

To configure Bamboo to trigger a build on code check in:

1. Click Dashboard and then the All Plans tab.
2. Locate the plan in the list and click the edit icon to display the plan’s configuration pages.
3. Click the Triggers tab, then Add Trigger.
5. Optionally, enter a trigger description.
6. Bamboo displays the available repositories for the plan, as previously configured on the Source Repositories tab. Choose the repositories that this trigger should apply to.
7. Only enter an IP address in Trigger IP Addresses if you want Bamboo to trigger on post-commit messages from other than the primary IP address for the repository.

If you use a Mercurial or Git repository then you must type the IP address of your repository host in Trigger IP Addresses. For Bitbucket Cloud the current outbound IP addresses can be found at Access Bitbucket Cloud from Behind a Firewall

8. Click Save Trigger.

Screenshot: Build Strategy – repository triggers the build when changes are committed

Cron-based scheduling

Using a cron-based schedule to trigger the build of a plan is one of the available methods for triggering builds in Bamboo. This schedule is configured using the Schedule Editor.

The schedule can be daily (times per day), weekly (days per week), monthly (days per month) or based on a cron expression.

To schedule a plan build using a cron expression:

1. Click Dashboard and then the All Plans tab.
2. Locate the plan in the list and click the edit icon (🔗) to display the plan’s configuration pages.
3. Click the Triggers tab, then click either an existing trigger or Add Trigger.
4. Optionally, enter a trigger description.
5. Choose Trigger type > Cron Based Scheduling.
6. Click the edit icon (🔗)
6. Click next to the current schedule to display the Schedule Editor.
7. Use the Schedule Editor (see screenshots below), to specify the build schedule for your plan. For information about cron expressions, see this FAQ: Constructing a cron expression in Bamboo.
8. Click Save Trigger.

Screenshots: Schedule Editor options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Daily</th>
<th>Days per Week</th>
<th>Days per Month</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interval: once per day</td>
<td>At: 12 : 00 am</td>
<td>At: 12 : 00 am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>At: 12 : 00 am</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Constructing a cron expression in Bamboo

Cron is a time-based job scheduler used in Unix/Linux computer operating systems with a unique and powerful terminology. A number of scheduling features in Bamboo, such as build expiry and elastic instance scheduling, require you to specify your requirements as a cron-based expression. For example, a cron expression such as "0 0/30 9-19 ? * MON-FRI" signifies that a scheduled event will be triggered every half an hour from 9am to 7pm, Monday to Friday.

A cron expression comprises of 6 mandatory and one optional field to specify a schedule. The fields in sequential order are: seconds, minutes, hours, day-of-month, month, day-of-week and (optional) year, i.e. 

```
<seconds> <minutes> <hours> <day-of-month> <month> <day-of-week> <year (optional)>
```

Each field can be expressed as an integer (e.g. 1, 2, 3, etc) and special characters can be used in most fields as well (i.e. 

```
*, -, / ?, L W #
```

Bamboo uses OpenSymphony’s Quartz to schedule cron tasks. The syntax it accepts may vary from other cron implementations. Please refer to the Quartz CronTrigger Tutorial documentation for further information on each of these parameters and more detailed examples.

Single daily build

Triggering the build of a plan to run at a particular time each day is one of the available methods for triggering builds in Bamboo. A "Single daily build" runs at a time of your choice. This is particularly suitable for builds that take a long time to complete.

Related pages:
- Triggering builds
- Polling the repository for changes
- Repository triggers the build when changes are committed
- Cron-based scheduling

To schedule a plan build at a specified time each day:

1. Click Dashboard and then the All Plans tab.
2. Locate the plan in the list and click the edit icon to display the plan's configuration pages.
3. Click the Triggers tab, then click either an existing trigger or Add Trigger.
4. Optionally, enter a trigger description.
5. Choose Trigger type > Single daily build.
6. Specify the time of day at which the build should run in Build Time. Use hh:mm format, with a 24-hour clock.
7. Click Save Trigger.

Running a plan build manually

Typically in Bamboo, your build plans are configured to be automatically triggered when code changes are committed to the working repository, or according to a schedule.

However, there can be scenarios where you do not want the plan to be automatically triggered:

- The plan should only ever be run manually.
- You want to choose the revision of the default repository that should be used for the build.
You want to run a customized build, so as to override global variables or plan variables.
You want to select particular manual stages to run.
You want the plan to be triggered by other plans that build successfully first.

This page describes how to run a plan build manually, and the options available when running a customized plan build.

Running a plan build manually

To start a plan build manually:

1. Locate the relevant plan on the Dashboard.
2. Click the Run icon for the plan.

Alternatively, if you are viewing the plan, simply click the Run menu.

Running a customized manual build

If you trigger a plan build manually, you can customize the following aspects of how the plan is run (when these are available):

- Choose the revision of the default repository that should be used.
- Override any global variables or plan variables with your own parameters when triggering a build manually. This is referred to as running a 'parameterized plan build'.
- Select which manual stages to run, if manual stages have been configured for the plan.

To run a customized plan build:

1. Locate the relevant plan on the Dashboard.
2. Click the plan name to go to the Plan Summary.
3. Choose Run > Run Customized.
4. Customize the following aspects of the plan:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Choose a repository revision to use for the build.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note that:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can only choose revisions from the default repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The build is not included in plan statistics or telemetry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SVN repositories use the revision number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Perforce projects use the changelist number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Git repositories use the changeset number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Mercurial repositories use the tag</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note for Subversion repositories that make use of externals
When running a build with a custom revision on a Subversion repository with externals, Bamboo will choose the latest revision in the external repository. This is because Subversion externals always use the latest version and cannot be fixed at a specific revision.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build Variables</th>
<th>Click Override a variable to choose another variable to override.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

   | Stages | Choose the stages that should be run. |

5. Click Run.
Rerunning a failed stage

If a stage has failed in your build, you can choose to rerun the stage (with exactly the same data) instead of the entire plan.

To rerun a stage:

1. Navigate to the failed build result, as described on Viewing a build result.
2. Choose Run > Rerun all failed Jobs to run the stage again.

Note that:

- Only failing jobs will be re-run.
- Subsequent stages will be executed automatically, unless they are manual stages.
- You might want to add a comment to the build result to record the reason for failure. The existing build result will be overwritten (Bamboo will not create a new build) and the previous failure reason will not be retained.
- For plans based on a Subversion repository, you can only rerun the failed job or the whole plan.

Screenshot: Rerunning a failed stage

Triggering a Bamboo build from Bitbucket Cloud using Webhooks

Webhooks provide a way to configure Bitbucket Cloud to make requests to your server (or another external service) whenever certain events occur in Bitbucket Cloud. The purpose of this guide is to help you set up a Webhook that will trigger a Bamboo build from Bitbucket Cloud after a certain event. For example, you may want Bitbucket Cloud to trigger a Bamboo build when your repository receives a commit (aka post-commit trigger).

Procedure

1. First configure the Bamboo plan to trigger with a Remote trigger: Bamboo > Plan Configuration > Triggers > Add trigger > Remote trigger.
2. Bamboo requires you to whitelist the IP addresses of the source of the request to trigger under the Trigger IP Addresses field (comma separated for each IP).
   a. The current list of Bitbucket Cloud IP addresses for outbound POST requests by Webhooks: Bitbucket Cloud IP Addresses
   b. CIDR Notation is only supported in Bamboo 5.14+
   c. Bamboo’s IP whitelist also inspects the X-Forwarded-For HTTP header to determine the origin of the request. If you have a reverse proxy forwarding requests to your Bamboo instance, depending on it’s configuration, you may also need to whitelist the IP address of the Proxy Server.
3. Add a Webhook to your Bitbucket Cloud repository: Bitbucket Cloud > Repository > Settings > Webhooks > Add Webhook
   a. Title: Choose any title for your Webhook that aptly describes it.
b. URL: Enter the URL of the Bamboo API to trigger a plan: 
\[
\text{BAMBOO\_URL/rest/triggers/1.0/remote/changeDetect}\text{ion?planKey=PLAN\_KEY&skipBranches=false}
\]
i. Replace \text{BAMBOO\_URL} with the URL of your Bamboo instance.
ii. Replace \text{PLAN\_KEY} with the key of the plan you wish to trigger. The \text{PLAN\_KEY} is visible in the URL when browsing the plan in Bamboo. E.g. \text{https://bamboo.atlassian.com/browse/PLAN\_KEY}

c. Triggers: Choose the event(s) you want the Webhook to activate on. E.g. Repository Push.
d. Save.

That's it! If you find your Webhook doesn't appear to be working – the best place to start troubleshooting is by viewing the request and response at Bitbucket Cloud > Repository > Settings > Webhooks > View requests.

Using stages in a plan

Stages group (or 'map') jobs to individual steps within a plan's build process. For example, you may have an overall plan build process that comprises a compilation step, followed by several test steps, followed by a deployment step. You can create separate Bamboo stages to represent each of these steps.

A stage:

- Has a single job, by default, but can be used to group multiple jobs.
- Processes its jobs in parallel, on multiple agents (where available).
- Must successfully complete all its jobs before the next stage in the plan can be processed.
- May produce artifacts that can be made available for use by a subsequent stage.

Each new plan created in Bamboo contains at least one stage (for the default job) and is known as the 'Default Stage'. Stages can only be configured by Bamboo administrators.

On this page:

- About manual stages
- Navigate to the stages for a plan
- Create a stage
- Edit a stage
- Delete a stage

About manual stages

Any stage in a plan can be configured to be a manual stage. If you run a plan with manual stages, Bamboo will pause the execution of the plan every time it reaches a manual stage. The plan build will only continue once a user has manually triggered the stage. Please note:

- A manual stage can only be triggered if the previous stage has completed successfully.
- Manual stages must be executed in the order that they are configured in the plan. You cannot skip a manual stage.
- Manual stages will be displayed in the Plan Navigator with either this icon (not due to be triggered) or this icon (pending execution).
- You need 'Build' permission on the plan to run a manual stage.

Navigate to the stages for a plan

To navigate to the stages for a plan:

1. Choose Build > All build plans from the Bamboo header, then click the name of the plan you want to edit.
2. Choose Actions > Configure Plan.
3. Click the Stages tab.

Create a stage

1. Navigate to the stages for the plan, as described above.
2. Click Create Stage, at the right.
3. Complete the form and click Create. For information about manual stages, see About manual stages above.
4. (optional) You may want to do one or more of the following with your new stage:
   - Order your new stage in the list of stages, by dragging and dropping it.
   - Add a new job to your stage.
   - Move a job from another stage to your new stage by dragging and dropping the job.

Note that you may break artifact dependencies by moving stages, or by moving jobs between stages. Bamboo will warn you, if a dependency will be broken by moving a stage or a job.
Edit a stage

1. Navigate to the stages for the plan, as described above.
2. Edit the stage as required:
   - To edit the name and description of the stage or configure whether it is a manual stage, click the cog icon and choose Configure stage.
   - To move the stage, drag and drop the stage to the desired place in the plan.

Note that you may break artifact dependencies by moving stages. Bamboo will warn you if a dependency will be broken by moving a stage.

Delete a stage

Before you begin, please understand that:

- Deleting a stage will delete all job configurations, artifacts, logs and results related to the stage. These cannot be recovered after the stage is deleted.
- You may break artifact dependencies by deleting a stage.

To delete a stage:

1. Navigate to the stages for the plan, as described above.
2. Click the cog icon for the relevant stage and choose Delete stage.
3. Click Confirm to delete the stage. Note that a deleted stage cannot be recovered.

Jobs and tasks

The following pages contain information about configuring jobs and tasks for your Bamboo plans. If you are looking for information about Bamboo builds, please see Working with builds.

- Creating a job
- Configuring jobs
- Disabling or deleting a job
- Configuring tasks

Jobs

A Bamboo job is a single build unit within a plan. One or more jobs can be organized into one or more stages. The jobs in a stage can all be run at the same time, if enough Bamboo agents are available. A job is made up of one or more tasks.

A job:

- Processes a series of one or more tasks that are run sequentially on the same agent.
- Controls the order in which tasks are performed.
- Collects the requirements of individual tasks in the job, so that these requirements can be matched with agent capabilities.
- Defines the artifacts that the build will produce.
- Can only use artifacts produced in a previous stage.
- Specifies any labels with which the build result or build artifacts will be tagged.

Each new plan created in Bamboo contains at least one job known as the 'Default Job'.

Projects and plans can only be configured by Bamboo administrators (see Creating a plan).

Tasks

A task:

- Is a small discrete unit of work, such as source code checkout, executing a Maven goal, running a script, or parsing test results.
- Is run sequentially within a job on a Bamboo working directory.

Tasks may make use of an executable if required. Tasks are configured within the scope of a job. A job can be configured to execute a number of tasks, on the same working directory. For example, before executing a Maven goal, the user could substitute specific files within the working directory, substitute version numbers, check out source repositories, or execute a script.

Final tasks for a job are always executed, even if previous tasks in the job failed.

Screenshot: Configuring tasks for a job
Creating a job

This page describes how to create a Bamboo job in a stage of a plan.

- You can either create a new job, or clone an existing job.
- You must have the ‘Admin’ or ‘Create Plan’ global permission to create jobs.
- A job allows you to collect together a number of tasks that you want to be run sequentially on the same agent.

Related pages:
- Configuring plans
- Using stages in a plan
- Configuring jobs
- Disabling or deleting a job

To create a new job for a plan:

1. Click Dashboard and then the All Plans tab.
2. Click the name of the plan in the list.
3. Choose Actions > Configure Plan.
4. Click on the Stages tab.
5. Click Add Job in the stage where you want the new job.
6. Click either Create a new job or Clone an existing job.
7. If cloning a job, complete the ‘Job to clone from’ section:
   - Plan to clone from — Select the plan containing the job you wish to clone. Plans are grouped by project in the list.
   - Only plans for which you have the ‘Clone’ and/or ‘Admin’ plan permission are shown.
   - Job to clone — Select the job you wish to clone from your selected plan. Jobs are grouped by stage in the list.
8. Complete the ‘Job Details’ section.
9. Select Yes please! to enable this job, if required. Enabling the job instructs Bamboo to execute the job whenever the job’s plan is built.
10. Click Create Job.

If you wish to configure tasks for the job, such as configuring a Repository Checkout, please refer to Configuring jobs.

Screenshot: Creating a new job
Configuring jobs
A Bamboo job is a single build unit within a plan. One or more jobs can be organized into one or more stages. The jobs in a stage can all be run at the same time, if enough Bamboo agents are available. A job allows you to collect together a number of tasks that you want to be run sequentially on the same agent.

You must have the 'Admin' or 'Create Plan' global permission to configure jobs.

Related pages:
- Creating a job
- Disabling or deleting a job
- Viewing a job's Maven dependencies

To configure an existing job in a Bamboo plan:
1. Go to the configuration pages for the plan that has the job.
2. Click on the required job (under 'Stages & Jobs'), and then appropriate tab to begin editing that aspect of your job:
   - Job Details — Note that Job Key is not editable.
   - Tasks — see Configuring tasks, including Repository Checkout tasks and builder tasks.
   - Requirements — see Configuring a job's requirements.
   - Artifacts — see Configuring a job's build artifacts.
   - Miscellaneous — see Configuring miscellaneous settings for a job and Configuring automatic labeling of build results.

Configuring a job's requirements
This page describes how to configure the requirements of a job.
A requirement is specified in a job or a task. A requirement specifies a capability that an agent must have for it to build that job or task. A job inherits all of the requirements specified in its tasks.

Together, capabilities and requirements control which agents can execute builds for particular jobs. Each job can only be built by agents whose capabilities match the job's requirements.

There are four types of capabilities in Bamboo that can be specified by job and task requirements:

- Executable capabilities — Define external programs that can be called by Bamboo, for example Ant, Maven, MSBuild or PHPUnit. See Defining a new executable capability.
- JDK capabilities — Define the JDK versions to be used by the job or task. See Defining a new JDK capability.
- Version control capabilities — Specify the VCS client application that Bamboo should use to check out source code. See Defining a new version control capability.
- Custom capabilities — Can be used to control which jobs will be built by a particular agent. For example, if the builds for a particular job should only run in a Windows environment, you could create a custom capability of 'operating.system=WindowsXP' for the appropriate agent(s), and specify it as a requirement for this job. See Defining a new custom capability.

Before you can specify a requirement in your job, you must first define that capability in your Bamboo system.
Specifying extra requirements for a job

A job will inherit the requirements of its tasks by default. However, you can specify extra requirements for a job, in addition to its task requirements.

To specify extra requirements for a job:

1. Navigate to the desired job's configuration pages, as described on Configuring jobs.
2. Click the Requirements tab (see screenshot below). This page shows a list of all the job's current requirements and the number of 'Matching Agents' and 'Matching Images' (i.e. agents/elastic images which meet the job's requirements and can run a build for this job). See Viewing current capable agents below for more information.
3. If you have previously set up an agent capability, you can select it from the Requirement list in the 'Add Extra Requirement' section. If you are setting up a new custom requirement, select New custom requirement from that list instead.
4. Complete the form for the requirement:
   a. Key(new custom requirement only) — enter a key of the new capability.
   b. Select the value for the requirement from the list:
      • exists — this job can be built by any agent that has a capability with the same key.
      • equals — this job can be built by any agent that has the capability with the same key and value.
      • matches — this job can be built by any agent that has a capability with the same key, and the value matches the regular expression. For more information about regular expressions, see Oracle's tutorial on regular expressions.
5. Click Add. The numbers of 'Matching Agents' and 'Matching Images' will be updated, as the plan can now only be built by agents with capabilities that meet the new custom requirement you have specified.

Viewing current capable agents

To view details about agents or elastic images that are currently able to build your job:

1. On the job's Requirements tab (described above), click the name of the requirement in the table (e.g. 'Maven 2').
2. The summary page for the capability will be displayed, showing the agents and elastic images that have the capability. See Viewing a capability's agents and jobs for more information.

Configuring a job's build artifacts

Artifacts are files created by a job build (e.g. JAR files). Artifact definitions are used to specify which artifacts to keep from a build and are configured for individual jobs.

See Sharing artifacts.
This page describes how to define the artifacts that should be kept from a job's build. For example, you may wish to keep reports, websites or files (e.g. JAR files) generated by a job build.

You can also configure artifact sharing between jobs in a plan. For example, you may want to run acceptance tests on a build, and then share the WAR from one job to another, without rebuilding the WAR each time. See Sharing artifacts.

**Define the artifacts to keep for a job**

You can specify which artifacts to keep by setting up an artifact definition for the job. The artifacts will be available after each build of a job.

To set up an artifact definition for a job:

1. Navigate to the desired job, as described on Configuring jobs.
2. Click the **Artifacts** tab, and then **Create Definition**. For example, if you want to keep the latest version of a JAR you have built, you could specify **Copy Pattern** to be ‘*.jar’ and the **Location** to be ‘target’.
   
   Please note:
   - The location is relative to the build directory. Do not use the absolute path to refer to the location.
   - The copy pattern is relative to the location specified.
   - Asterisks are not supported for **Location**. For this field, provide the folder name where the file would be located.
   - If you want to share artifacts with other jobs in the plan, you will need to mark the artifacts as shared. See Sharing artifacts.

**Screenshot: Creating an artifact definition**

**Create definition**

Create a new artifact definition

Name: **Latest JAR**

If the artifact is shared, the name must be unique within the plan

Location: **target**

Specify the directory (relative path) to find your artifact. e.g. target

Copy pattern: **"**/*.jar**"**

Specify the name (or Ant file copy pattern) of the artifact(s) you want to keep. e.g. "**"/*.jar

[ ] Shared

Make the artifact available to be used in other builds and deployments.

**Notes**

Artifacts are copied to a subdirectory (/JOB_KEY/download-data/) under your 'Build Directory' folder (see Locating important directories and files). Artifacts which you define in the plan are listed in each build result as artifacts (see Viewing a build's artifacts).

**Configuring miscellaneous settings for a job**

For each job of a plan, you can optionally specify a number of miscellaneous settings including:

- Build hanging detection
- NCover output
- Clover code coverage
To configure the miscellaneous settings for a job:

1. Navigate to the desired job, as described in Configuring jobs.
2. Edit the desired settings as follows:

| Override default hanging build detection | Override the default build hanging detection settings. These settings determine when a build hung event is thrown (e.g. you can configure your notifications to trigger from this event).
| Build Time Multiplier — Calculate the ‘Expected Build Time’ for the build (i.e. ‘Expected Build Time’ = ‘Build Time Multiplier’ multiplied by ‘Average Build Time’). ‘Average Build Time’ is calculated by using an average of previous build times.
| Log Quiet Time — The amount of time since Bamboo last recorded an entry in the build log for a build. The ‘Expected Build Time’ and ‘Log Quiet Time’ must both be exceeded for Bamboo to throw the build hung event.
| Build Queue Timeout — The amount of time that a build will wait in a build queue before an timeout event is thrown. Setting this value will override the global build queue timeout setting (see Configuring the build queue timeout event).

| NCover output will be produced | Do not select this option. NCover is a code coverage tool that supports .NET projects.

| Use Clover to collect Code Coverage for this build | Select this check box if:
| • This job will be building a Java or Groovy-based project using a builder such as Ant, Maven or Grails.
| • You are running Atlassian Clover and want to collect code coverage data to view from within Bamboo (see Viewing the Clover code-coverage for a build).

| Automatically integrate Clover into this build | • Generate a Clover Historical Report — shows the current coverage results compared with previous Clover code coverage reports.
| • Generate a JSON report — gives the Clover results in a format ready for embedding into applications or external report views.

You will also need to insert a Clover license (evaluation licenses are available) into the field provided. See Enabling the Clover add-on.

| Clover is already integrated into this build and a clover.xml file will be produced | Use this option when you already have Clover-for-Ant or Clover-for-Maven configured to generate a report.
| • Clover XML Location — specify where the Clover XML report is generated. Include the name of the directory, including path, relative to your job build's root directory, for example: target/site/clover/clover.xml

3. Click Save.

Configuring automatic labeling of job build results
For each job of a plan, you can (as an option) specify a label that can be applied to the job's build results automatically after each build of that job.

Automatic labeling of job builds is built into Bamboo itself. There are a number of third-party plugin modules available that can provide additional 'post' actions (e.g. the Pre-Post Build Command plugin). You can also write your own plugins to provide additional post actions for a job. See the Bamboo Plugin Guide for further details.

Labels can also be applied to build results manually by Bamboo users.

On this page:
• Specifying labels for a job's build results
• Regex examples

Related pages:
• Configuring jobs

Specifying labels for a job's build results

To specify labels for a job's build results:

1. Navigate to a job's configuration pages, as described on Configuring jobs.
2. Click the Miscellaneous tab.
3. Using Regex Pattern, you can either:
   • Specify a regular expression to match content in the log files of this job's builds. Labels will be applied to a build of this job if this regular expression matches content in the build's log files (see the examples below).
     For more information about regular expressions, please refer to the Java documentation on regular expression constructs.
     Leave this field blank to label every build of this job.
4. In the **Labels** field, type the word (or multiple words, separated by commas and/or spaces) with which the plan's build results are to be labeled.
5. Click **Save**.

**Regex examples**


**A simple regex example:**

```
'There are \d+ results'
```

In the above regex, "\d+" represents *any number with one or more digits*. ("\"d\" means 'any digit', and '+' means 'one or more times'. When combined, they mean 'any sequence of one or more digits'.) Therefore, positive matches would include:

- 'There are 0 results'
- 'There are 123 results'

**A regex example with multiple labels:**

You can use "capturing groups" with Bamboo 1.2.1 or later to create different labels for different purposes.

For example, the following settings will label your builds with PERFORMANCE\_IMPROVED if "PERFORMANCE\_IMPROVED" appears in the build log, and PERFORMANCE\_DETERIORATED if "PERFORMANCE\_DETERIORATED" appears in the build log. If both strings appear in a log, then both labels are applied to the build.

- Enter the following into the **Regex Pattern** field:

  ```
  \(PERFORMANCE\_IMPROVED\|PERFORMANCE\_DETERIORATED\)
  ```

- Enter the following into the **Labels** field:

  ```
  \1
  ```

**Viewing a job’s Maven dependencies**

If you have configured a job to use a Maven builder (Maven 2 or later), you can choose to have dependencies generated from your Maven pom.xml (see documentation for setting up Maven as a builder for instructions). After the initial build, Maven will parse the pom.xml file, determine the artifacts produced by the build and generate the dependencies. You can view these dependencies in two places:

- On the **Dependencies** tab when configuring your plan, as described in Setting up plan build dependencies.
- On the **Artifacts** tab when viewing a job's build result, as described below.

**Before you begin:**

- The Maven dependencies for a build will only become known to Bamboo after a build. If you cannot see the Maven dependencies for a build, try running it first without triggering any other dependencies. See Modifying multiple plans in bulk if you want to run multiple builds.

**To view the Maven dependencies for a job's build result:**

1. Navigate to the desired job, as described on Configuring jobs.
2. Click the desired build result number in the 'Recent History' of the Job Summary.
3. Click the **Artifacts** tab for the build results. The produced Maven artifacts and Maven artifact dependencies will be listed.

**Screenshot: Maven 2 dependencies for a job's build result**
Disabling or deleting a job

Bamboo allows you to disable or delete jobs that you don't want to be built.

Disabling a job

Disabling a job prevents Bamboo from building that particular job within a plan, allowing the rest of the plan's jobs to be built. You can re-enable the job, if you want to build it again. For example, if a job's latest build is broken and cannot be fixed quickly, you may want to disable it temporarily to stop the job from being built.

Deleting a job

Deleting a job deletes everything related to that job, including the job's configuration, build results, artifacts, labels and comments. However, everything else related to the job's plan, and this plan's other jobs, is retained by Bamboo.

You will need to recreate a new job from scratch, if you want to build it again. For example, if a job is no longer relevant, you may want to delete it.

Note that:

- The 'Admin' global permission is required to delete a job.
- A job that is currently being built cannot be deleted. If you need to delete such a job, stop the plan's build first. Refer to Stopping an active build for more information.
- If you need to keep a permanent record of your job's build results, see Exporting data for backup.

Related pages:
- Creating a job
- Configuring jobs
- Disabling or deleting a plan
- Deleting a job's current working files

Disable or delete a job

1. Navigate to the job configuration, as described on Configuring jobs.
2. Choose either Actions > Disable Job or Actions > Delete Job.

Deleting a job's current working files

If you only run a single Bamboo server (i.e. with no remote or elastic agents) and:

- you need to ensure that a plan's job cleanly checks out its source code when Bamboo next executes a build of that plan
- and you do not use the Force Clean Build option when linking to the source repository for a job

then you can simply delete the current working files for that job to ensure its source code is cleanly checked out.

You need the 'Admin' global permission or the 'Admin' plan permission to delete current working files.
To delete a job’s current working files:

1. Navigate to the job configuration, as described on Configuring jobs.
2. Click the Files tab. Note that the Files tab is only available if:
   - the current working files resulting from that job’s previous build reside on the Bamboo server (not a remote/elastic agent) and
   - working files exist in this directory.
3. Click Delete all build files at the end of this page (scroll down if necessary).

Configuring tasks

A task:

- Is a small discrete unit of work, such as source code checkout, executing a Maven goal, running a script, or parsing test results.
- Is run sequentially within a job on a Bamboo working directory.

Tasks may make use of an executable if required. Tasks are configured within the scope of a job. A job can be configured to execute a number of tasks, on the same working directory. For example, before executing a Maven goal, the user could substitute specific files within the working directory, substitute version numbers, check out source repositories, or execute a script.

Final tasks for a job are always executed, even if previous tasks in the job failed.

Create a task for a job

When creating a new job or configuring an existing one, you need to specify the tasks that will execute the job’s builds. You must specify an executable for each task. If you specify an Ant, Grails or Maven executable, you will also need to choose a JDK.

When creating a new plan, you can configure the tasks for the plan’s default job.

To create a task for a job:

1. Navigate to the tasks configuration for a job. Do this by:
   - clicking the Tasks tab when configuring an existing job, or
   - creating a new plan (you will be configuring tasks for the default job).
2. Click Add task.
3. Click a task type, or search for a task.
4. Click a particular task, such as ‘SCP Task’, then complete the form to configure the task. The fields in the form depend on the task you choose. See the following pages for further details:
   - Checking out code
   - Configuring a builder task
   - Configuring a test task
   - Configuring variables task
   - Configuring a deployment task
   - Pattern matching reference
   - Configuring the Docker task in Bamboo
5. Click Save.

Screenshot: Specifying a task for a job — Task types
Order the tasks in a job

Tasks can be designated as **build tasks** or **final tasks** in a job:

- **Build Tasks** will run sequentially in the order specified in the job. If a Build Task fails, all subsequent tests will not be executed.
- **Final Tasks** will run sequentially, once the build tasks have completed. Final Tasks will always be executed, regardless of whether any Build Tasks or other Final Tasks fail. Final Tasks will be executed even if you stopped the build manually.

To order the tasks for a job:

1. Navigate to the tasks for the desired job.
2. Drag and drop the tasks into the desired order in the table on the left. If you want to change a Build Task to a Final Task or vice versa, drag and drop it under the desired header in the table. Your changes will be saved immediately.

**Screenshot: Existing Task — Command Task**

**Notes**

- **Adding new executables** — At least one executable is configured automatically after installing Bamboo. You can add more executables of different types as described in **Configuring a new executable**.
- **Adding new JDKs** — At least one JDK is configured automatically after installing Bamboo. You can add more JDKs as described in **Defining a new JDK capability**.
- **About the 'Compatibility Task'** — The 'Compatibility Task' is created by Bamboo when upgrading from Bamboo 3.0 or earlier and Bamboo cannot match a builder to a task. This may occur if you are using a builder enabled by a custom plugin.
Checking out code

You use the Source Code Checkout task to check out a repository for use by just one job. By default, repositories are checked out to the Bamboo working directory.

Using Source Code Checkout task you can also:

- Check out repositories to a custom directory path in the working directory.
- Specify multiple checkouts that occur at different stages of the build. (Simply add another Source Code Checkout task to a job at any point in the plan.)

For information about specifying a repository for use by all the plan's jobs, or by all plans, see Linking to code repositories.

To configure a new Source Code Checkout task:

1. Navigate to the job that should perform the task.
2. Click the Tasks tab, and select an existing 'Source Code Checkout' task in the tasks list, or add a new one using the Add Task button.
3. Configure the task:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>Enter a description of the task, for display in Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repository</td>
<td>Select the desired repository. If you wish to add different types of repositories, they must have been previously defined on the plan's Source Repositories tab. See Linking to source code repositories for a list of supported SCMs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checkout Directory</td>
<td>The location to which the contents of the selected repository will be checked out to when the task executes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force Clean Build</td>
<td>Deletes the previously checked out directory and checks it out again prior to the next build. This may significantly increase build times.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Add repository, at the bottom of the 'Task' screen, to check out another repository using this task.
5. Click Save.

Screenshot: Configuring a Source Code Checkout task

Notes

- A number of source repositories are supported 'out of the box', as described on the Linking to code repositories page.
- If you need to use a type of repository that is not supported, a number of third-party Source Repository plugin modules are available (e.g. ClearCase plugin). You can also write a Source Repository Module plugin to enable Bamboo to connect to your repository.

Configuring a builder task

A builder task allows you to connect your Bamboo plan (or job) to a build tool such as Ant, Maven or MSBuild. The build tool uses its existing configuration when the plan (or job) is built.

You can connect Bamboo to the following build tools:
Ant

This page describes how to configure a Bamboo task to use Ant.

See Configuring a builder task for an overview of Bamboo builder tasks.

Related pages:
- Configuring tasks
- Configuring jobs
- Pattern matching reference

To configure an Ant task:
1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing Ant task, or click Add Task and then Ant to create a new task.
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>A description of the task, which is displayed in Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Click **Save**.

**Custom command executable**

This page describes how to configure a Bamboo task that uses a command (e.g. Bash) executable.

See [Configuring a builder task](#) for an overview of Bamboo builder tasks.

### Related pages:
- Configuring tasks
- Configuring jobs

#### To configure a command task:
1. Navigate to the **Tasks** configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing Command task, or click **Add Task** and then **Command** to create a new task.
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Executable</strong></td>
<td>The command executable that is available to perform the task (e.g. Bash). The executable that you select will become one of the task's (and so, the job's) requirements. You can add other executables, if required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Build File</strong></td>
<td>The name of your existing build file (e.g. <code>build.xml</code>). You can include variables (see <a href="#">Using Global or Build-specific Variables</a>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target</strong></td>
<td>The Ant target that you want this Bamboo task to execute (e.g. <code>test</code>). You can use <code>-D</code> to define one or more JVM parameters (e.g.: <code>-Djava.awt.headless=true</code>). You must use double quotes around the parameter value; single quotes are considered as part of the actual value. Multiple Ant targets can be specified with a space-delimited list. You can also include variables (see <a href="#">Using Global or Build-specific Variables</a>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Build JDK</strong></td>
<td>The JDKs that are available to perform the task. The JDK that you select will become one of the task's (and so, the job's) requirements. You can add other JDKs, if required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Environment Variables</strong></td>
<td><em>(Optional)</em> Additional system environment variables that you want to pass to your build. Note that existing environment variables are automatically available to the executable. You can also include Bamboo global or build-specific variables (see <a href="#">Using Global or Build-specific Variables</a>). Multiple variables should be separated with spaces. Parameters with spaces must be quoted (e.g. <code>ANT_OPTS=&quot;-Xms200m -Xmx700m&quot;</code>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Working Sub Directory</strong></td>
<td><em>(Optional)</em> An alternative subdirectory, relative to the job's root directory, where Bamboo will run the executable. The root directory contains everything checked out from the job's configured source repository. If you leave this field blank, Bamboo will look for build files in the root directory. This option is useful if your task has a build script in a subdirectory and the executable needs to be run from within that subdirectory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **The build will produce test results** | Select to specify the directory, relative to the root directory, where test results will be created. You can use Ant-style patterns such as `**/test-reports/*.xml`. Bamboo requires test results to be in JUnit XML format.  
For jobs that use CVS, the root directory is `<bamboo-home>/xml-data/build-dir/JOB_KEY/<cvs-module>`. |
Grails

This page describes how to configure a Bamboo Grails task.

Bamboo supports Grails versions 1.2.x, 1.3.x, and 2.x.

To configure a Grails task:
1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing Grails task, or click Add Task and then Grails to create a new task.
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>A description of the task, which is displayed in Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executable</td>
<td>The Grails executable that is available to perform the task. The executable that you select will become one of the task's (and so, the job's) requirements. You can add other executables, if required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Grails Commands  | The Grails commands that you want Bamboo to execute. See the Grails Command Line Reference documentation for more details on Grails commands.  
  - You can use ' -D ' to define one or more JVM parameters, e.g.: -D java.awt.headless=true will pass the parameter 'java.awt.headless' with a value of 'true'.  
  - You can include variables (see Bamboo variables). |
| Build JDK        | The JDKs that are available to perform the task. The JDK that you select will become one of the task's (and so, the job's) requirements. You can add other JDKs, if required. |
| Environment Variables | (Optional) Additional system environment variables that you want to pass to your build. Note that existing environment variables are automatically available to the executable. You can also include Bamboo global or build-specific variables (see Using global, plan or build-specific variables). Multiple variables should be separated with spaces. Parameters with spaces must be quoted (e.g ANT_OPTS="-Xms200m -Xmx700m"). |
**Working Sub Directory**
(Optional) An alternative subdirectory, relative to the job's root directory, where Bamboo will run the executable. The root directory contains everything checked out from the job's configured source repository. If you leave this field blank, Bamboo will look for build files in the root directory. This option is useful if your task has a build script in a subdirectory and the executable needs to be run from within that subdirectory.

**The build will produce test results**
Choose one of the following: **Look in the standard test results directory** – Bamboo looks in the standard directory for the test results. Use this unless you've customized your test runner to output the results to a different location. **Specify custom results directories** – Specify the custom directory, relative to the root directory, where test results will be created. You can use Ant-style patterns such as `**/test-reports/*.xml`. Bamboo requires test results to be in JUnit XML format. For jobs that use CVS, the root directory is `<bamboo-home>/xml-data/build-dir/JOB_KEY/<cvs-module>`.

4. Click **Save**.

**Maven**
This page describes how to configure a Bamboo task to use a Maven executable. **Apache Maven** is a tool used for building and managing Java-based projects.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related pages:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Configuring tasks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Configuring jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Viewing a job's Maven dependencies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Defining a new JDK capability</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atlassian blogs:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Forgetful Maven Users, Rejoice! A new Bamboo task &quot;releases&quot; you from worry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To configure a Maven task:**
1. Navigate to the **Tasks** configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing Maven task, or click **Add Task** and then a **Maven** option (e.g. **Maven 2.x**) to create a new task.
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>A description of the task, which is displayed in Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executable</td>
<td>The Maven executable that is available to perform the task. The executable that you select will become one of the task's (and so, the job's) requirements. You can add other executables, if required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goal</td>
<td>The Maven goal that Bamboo will execute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can use <code>-D</code> to define one or more JVM parameters. For example, <code>-Djava.awt.headless=true</code> will pass the parameter <code>java.awt.headless</code> with a value of 'true'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Multiple maven goals can be specified, separated spaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can include variables (see Using Global or Build-specific Variables).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Maven Return Code</td>
<td>Select to have Bamboo skip log parsing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build JDK</td>
<td>The JDKs that are available to perform the task. The JDK that you select will become one of the task's (and so, the job's) requirements. You can add other JDKs, if required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Override Project File</td>
<td>(Optional: Maven 2.x and later only) The path to your Maven project file, relative to the working sub directory specified. If this is not specified, Maven will use the <code>pom.xml</code> in the root of the working sub directory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**MSBuild**

This page describes how to configure a Bamboo task to use an MSBuild executable.

Note that you cannot use Clover to collect code coverage for MSBuild builds, as Clover only supports builders of Java/Groovy-based projects, such as Ant, Maven or Grails.

To configure an MSBuild task:

1. Navigate to the **Tasks** configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of the desired MSBuild task, or click **Add Task** and then **MSBuild** if creating a new task.
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MSBuild configuration</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Task Description</strong></td>
<td>A description of the task, which is displayed in Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Executable**        | The MSBuild executable that is available to perform the task. The executable you select will become one of the task’s (and so, the job’s) requirements.  
You can **add other executables**, if required. |
| **Project File**      | The name of the solution, project file or MSBuild project to execute, for example **ExampleSolution.sln**.  
You can include variables (see **Bamboo variables**). |
| **Options**           | The MSBuild command line options that you want to include.  
By default, Bamboo 5.7 (and later versions) writes the contents of the **Projects File** and **Options** fields to an MSBuild response file. See **below** for more information.  
You can include variables (see **Bamboo variables**). |

4. If required, specify environment variables and working directory settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment Variables</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| (Optional) Additional system environment variables that you want to pass to your build. Note that existing environment variables are automatically available to the executable. You can also include Bamboo global or build-specific variables (see **Bamboo variables**).  
Multiple variables should be separated with spaces. Parameters with spaces must be quoted (e.g **ANT_OPTS=-Xms200m -Xmx700m**). |  |

4. Click **Save**.
Passing options to MSBuild

By default, Bamboo 5.7 (and later versions) writes the contents of the `Projects File` and `Options` fields to an MSBuild response file:

```
# MSBuild response file generated by Atlassian Bamboo
%CONTENTS_OF_OPTIONS_FIELD%
%CONTENTS_OF_PROJECTS_FILE_FIELD%
```

and then runs the following command:

```
msbuild.exe @<full-path-to-response-file>response-file.rsp
```

This allows you to use the same settings with the Bamboo MSBuild task as you would use when calling MSBuild on the command line.

You can disable creation of the response file. In that case, Bamboo will create a `.bat` file instead:
"<full-path-to-msbuild>msbuild.exe" %CONTENTS_OF_OPTIONS_FIELD%
%CONTENTS_OF_PROJECTS_FILE_FIELD%

and run that.

Click here to see how to disable use of the response file...

To disable use of the MSBuild response file, set the bamboo.plugin.dotnet.msbuild.useResponseFile system property to false.

There are a couple of ways to do that:

- If you start the Bamboo server or remote agents manually you can set the property on the command line, as an argument to the JVM, like this:

  -Dbamboo.plugin.dotnet.msbuild.useResponseFile=false

  Do this on all Bamboo agents, and on the Bamboo server if you use local agents.

- If your agents are run as a service, set the system property in the configuration file, like this:

  # The Bamboo Agent home configuration file
  wrapper.java.additional.1=-Dbamboo.home=/home/bamboo/bamboo-agent
  wrapper.java.additional.2=-Dbamboo.agent.ignoreServerCertName=false
  wrapper.java.additional.3=-Dbamboo.plugin.dotnet.msbuild.useResponseFile=false

- If your Bamboo server runs as a service, add the system property to the configuration file.

NAnt

This page describes how to configure a Bamboo task to use a NAnt executable.

**Related pages:**
- Configuring tasks
- Configuring jobs

**To configure a NAnt task:**

1. Navigate to the Configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of the desired NAnt task, or click Add Task and then NAnt if creating a new task.
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAnt configuration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Task Description:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A description of the task, which is displayed in Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Executable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The NAnt executable that is available to perform the task. The executable that you select will become one of the task's (and so, the job's) requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can add other executables, if required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. **Build File**
   The relevant file name (e.g. `default.build`). You can include variables (see Bamboo variables).

4. **Targets**
   The NAnt target that you want Bamboo to execute. for example: `run`. You can also include variables (see Bamboo variables).

5. **Options**
   The NAnt command line options that you want to include. You can also include variables (see Bamboo variables).

4. If required, specify environment variables and working directory settings:

   - **Environment Variables**
     Additional system environment variables that you want to pass to your build. Note that existing environment variables are automatically available to the executable. You can also include Bamboo global or build-specific variables (see Bamboo variables). Multiple variables should be separated with spaces. Parameters with spaces must be quoted (e.g. `ANT_OPTS=-Xms200m -Xmx700m`).

   - **Working Sub Directory**
     An alternative subdirectory, relative to the job's root directory, where Bamboo will run the executable. The root directory contains everything checked out from the job's configured source repository. If you leave this field blank, Bamboo will look for build files in the root directory. This option is useful if your task has a build script in a subdirectory and the executable needs to be run from within that subdirectory.

   - **Run as Powershell script**
     (Optional, Windows only) Check the ‘Run as Powershell script’ checkbox to run the script with Powershell instead of `cmd.exe` which interprets .bat files. The inline editor supports Powershell syntax.

5. Click **Save**.

Note that you cannot use Clover to collect code coverage for NAnt builds, as Clover only supports builders of Java/Groovy-based projects, such as Ant, Maven or Grails.

### Script

This page describes how to configure a Bamboo task to use a script executable. You can use Bash on Linux, and batch files on Windows.

#### Related pages:
- Configuring tasks
- Configuring jobs

#### To configure a script task:

1. Navigate to the **Tasks** configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of the desired script task, or click **Add Task** and then **Script** if creating a new task.
3. Complete the following settings:

   - **Task Description**
     A description of the task, which is displayed in Bamboo.

   - **Interpreter**
     You can select from the following interpreters:
     - Shell
     - Windows PowerShell
     - `/bin/sh` or `cmd.exe`

   - **Script location**
     Select the location of the script file.
     - **File** — enter the location of the file in the **Script file** field. This can be either relative to the repository root of the plan, or absolute. You can include variables (see Bamboo variables).
     - **Inline** — enter the script in the **Script body** field.

   - **Argument**
     Specify an argument to pass to the script. Arguments that contain spaces must be quoted. You can include variables (see Bamboo variables).
4. If required, specify environment variables and working directory settings:

| Environment Variables | (Optional) Additional system environment variables that you want to pass to your build. Note that existing environment variables are automatically available to the executable. You can also include Bamboo global or build-specific variables (see Bamboo variables). Multiple variables should be separated with spaces. Parameters with spaces must be quoted (e.g.
| Working Sub Directory | (Optional) An alternative subdirectory, relative to the job's root directory, where Bamboo will run the executable. The root directory contains everything checked out from the job's configured source repository. If you leave this field blank, Bamboo will look for build files in the root directory. This option is useful if your task has a build script in a subdirectory and the executable needs to be run from within that subdirectory. |

5. Click **Save**.
To configure a Visual Studio task:

1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of the desired MSBuild task, or click Add Task and then Visual Studio if creating a new task.
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Studio configuration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Task Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Executable</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Solution</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Options</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Platform</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. If required, specify environment variables and working directory settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment Variables</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) Additional system environment variables that you want to pass to your build. Note that existing environment variables are automatically available to the executable. You can also include Bamboo global or build-specific variables (see Bamboo variables). Multiple variables should be separated with spaces. Parameters with spaces must be quoted (e.g. ANT_OPTS=-Xms200m -Xmx700m*).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Working Sub Directory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) An alternative subdirectory, relative to the job's root directory, where Bamboo will run the executable. The root directory contains everything checked out from the job's configured source repository. If you leave this field blank, Bamboo will look for build files in the root directory. This option is useful if your task has a build script in a subdirectory and the executable needs to be run from within that subdirectory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Run as Powershell script</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Optional, Windows only) Check the 'Run as Powershell script' checkbox to run the script with Powershell instead of cmd.exe which interprets .bat files. The inline editor supports Powershell syntax.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click Save.

**Xcode**

Xcode support is undergoing testing and as such is unsupported by Atlassian at this time. If you would like to see it officially supported, please vote for this improvement request.

- **Prerequisites**
- **Testing iOS applications**
  - Configuring your Xcode project automated simulator tests
  - Configuring the Xcode task for testing
- **Updating the available SDKs when Xcode is upgraded**
- **Apple Xcode 4** – or later version
- **Certificates and provisioning profiles** – You must install all required developer certificates and provisioning profiles on every machine that Bamboo will use to run your build. See the [App Distribution Guide](#) for more information.
- **Bamboo Xcode support plugin** – The latest Xcode plugin installed in your Bamboo server.
- **ios-sim** *(optional when building Mac applications)* – A command line utility used to launch the iOS Simulator from the command line. If you have homebrew installed, you can install it by running `brew install ios-sim`. For other installation methods, see the [ios-sim website](#).
- **Cocoapods** *(optional if you do not have a Podfile in your project)* – Cocoapods is the library dependency manager for Mac OS X. In order for Bamboo to install dependencies from your Podfile (if you have created one), Bamboo will need it installed on all systems where the build should run.

### Testing iOS applications

To have tests automatically run on the iOS Simulator and reported within Bamboo you must make some changes to your Xcode project's test bundles and add the Xcode build task to your Job within Bamboo.

#### Configuring your Xcode project automated simulator tests

Without modifications, Apple does not support running unit tests in the simulator using the `xcodebuild` terminal utility which Bamboo uses to automate builds and tests.

Using ios-sim and a small modification to the `RunUnitTests` script phase in the test bundle it's possible to overcome this limitation.

```
if [ "$RUN_UNIT_TEST_WITH_IOS_SIM" = "YES" ]; then
    test_bundle_path="$BUILT_PRODUCTS_DIR/$PRODUCT_NAME.$WRAPPER_EXTENSION"
    ios-sim launch "$(dirname "$TEST_HOST")" --setenv
    DYLD_INSERT_LIBRARIES=/../../Library/PrivateFrameworks/IDEBundleInjection.framework/IDEBundleInjection --setenv
    XCInjectBundle="$test_bundle_path" --setenv
    XCInjectBundleInto="$TEST_HOST" --args -SenTest All "$test_bundle_path"
    echo "Finished running tests with ios-sim"
else
    "$(SYSTEM_DEVELOPER_DIR)/Tools/RunUnitTests"
fi
```

Change the content of the script to:
Configuring the Xcode task for testing

To configure a Xcode to test an iOS project task:
1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing Xcode task, or click Add Task then Xcode to create a new task.
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>A description of the task, which is displayed in Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apple SDK</td>
<td>The Apple SDK to target during the build.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report test results</td>
<td>Report and store any OCUnit/SenTestKit results run during the build.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run tests in iOS simulator</td>
<td>Provides the RUN_UNIT_TEST_WITH_IOS_SIM variable used in the custom build phase to run the unit tests on the simulator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Save.

Updating the available SDKs when Xcode is upgraded

When you upgrade Xcode you may need to update Bamboo with the correct SDK information.

If you use local agents:
1. Login as an administrator
2. Go to Administration -> Server Capabilities
3. Click Detect server capabilities

If you are using remote agents:
1. Run xcode-build -showsdks from the command line

   ![Command Line Output](image)

   2. Login as an administrator
   3. In Administration -> Agents, pick the agent you wish for the new SDK capability to be present on
   4. Click Add Capability and pick Xcode SDK from the Capability Type field
   5. Set a name for the SDK (e.g. OS X 10.9)
   6. Set a SDK label (e.g. macosx10.9)
Configuring a test task

Test tasks in Bamboo parse test data, and may run tests, using a particular testing framework.

Please note:

- Java builder tasks in Bamboo (e.g. Maven) parse test information as part of the task. You do not need to configure a test task, if you have specified that test results will be produced as part of the builder task. However, you can configure a builder task to not produce test results and use a test task to parse the test data instead. For example, you may want to set up one JUnit Parser task to parse test data for a number of Maven tasks after they have executed.
- .Net builder tasks in Bamboo (e.g. NAnt) do not parse test information as part of the task. You must configure a test task (e.g. NUnit Parser), if you want test results from the builder task to be parsed.

Related pages:
- Configuring a builder task

See the following pages for more information on configuring specific test tasks:
- JUnit Parser
- MBUnit Parser
- MSTest Parser
- MSTest Runner
- NUnit Parser
- N NUnit Runner
- PHPUnit
- TestNG

Community test task plugins

There are numerous test task plugins available on the [Atlassian Marketplace](https://marketplace.atlassian.com). These plugins are unsupported by Atlassian for the time being but the source code has been made freely available.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bamboo plugin</th>
<th>Testing framework</th>
<th>Languages and Platforms</th>
<th>Supported by Atlassian?</th>
<th>Source code</th>
<th>Issue tracking adding official support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo Xcode Task</td>
<td>OCUnit</td>
<td>Objective-C, Apple iOS, Cocoa and Mac OS X</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>Available on Bitbucket</td>
<td>BAM-6149 - Provide official support for the Bamboo Xcode plugin <a href="https://jira.atlassian.com/browse/BAM-6149">RESOLVED</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo Ruby Plugin</td>
<td>RSpec</td>
<td>Ruby</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>Available on Github</td>
<td>BAM-1232B - JIRA project doesn't exist or you don't have permission to view it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo CppUnit Task</td>
<td>CppUnit</td>
<td>C++</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>Available on Bitbucket</td>
<td>BAM-7839 - Support the CppUnit task plugin <a href="https://jira.atlassian.com/browse/BAM-7839">OPEN</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
JUnit Parser
This page describes how to configure a Bamboo task to parse JUnit test results.

Because TestNG uses the JUnit XML format, the JUnit Parser task is also able to parse TestNG test results.

Before you begin:

- Java builder tasks in Bamboo (e.g. Maven) parse test information as part of the task. You do not need to configure a test task, if you have specified that test results will be produced as part of the builder task.

Related pages:

- Configuring tasks
- Configuring jobs
- Configuring a test task

Atlassian blogs:

- So you want to run tests in parallel... now what?

To configure a JUnit Parser task:

1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing JUnit Parser task, or click Add Task and then JUnit Parser to create a new task.
3. Update the task settings:

   | Task Description | Enter a description of the task, for display in Bamboo. |
   | Disble this task | Check, or clear, to selectively run this task. |
   | Specify custom results directories | Enter the name of the test results directory (or multiple directories, separated by commas). You can also use Ant-style patterns such as **/test-reports/*.xml/ where the base directory is the “working directory” – this can be found at the start of your build log. Do not specify an absolute path. For jobs that use CVS, the job build’s root directory is <bamboo-home>/xml-data/build-dir/JOB_KEY/<cvss-module>.

4. Click Save.

MBUnit Parser
This page describes how to configure a Bamboo task to parse MBUnit test results.

Before you begin:

- .NET builder tasks in Bamboo (e.g. NAnt) do not parse test information as part of the task. You must configure a test task (e.g. MBUnit Parser), if you want test results from the builder task to be parsed.

Related pages:

- Configuring tasks
- Configuring jobs
- Configuring a test task

To configure a MBUnit Parser task:

1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing MBUnit Parser task, or click Add Task and then MBUnit Parser to create a new task.
3. Update the task settings:

   | Task Description | Enter a description of the task, for display in Bamboo. |
   | MBUnit Test Results File | Enter the name of the test results file. The test file must be in MBUnit XML format. For more information on MBUnit, see http://www.mbunit.com/. |

4. Click Save.

MSTest Parser
This page describes how to configure a Bamboo task to parse MSTest results.

.NET builder tasks in Bamboo (for example NAnt) do not parse test information as part of the task. To have the test results parsed, you need to configure a test task such as MSTest Parser.
Note that each test results file must have a unique name. You can use Bamboo variables to achieve this. Here is a customer-supplied example that includes the revision and build numbers in the name of the test file:

```
<Project-Test-Subfolder>\TestResults\<Project>TestResults-Rev_${bamboo.repository.revision.number}-Build_${bamboo.buildNumber}.trx
```

To configure a MSTest Parser task:

1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing MSTest Parser task, or click Add Task and then MSTest Parser to create a new task.
3. Update the task settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>Enter a description of the task, for display in Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSTest Test Results File</td>
<td>Enter the name of the test results file. The test file must be in MSTest format. For more information on MSTest, see this MSDN page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Save.

MSTest Runner

This page describes how to configure a Bamboo MSTest Runner task. The MSTest Runner task runs and parses tests for .NET builds.

Before you begin:

- .NET builder tasks in Bamboo (e.g. NAnt) do not parse test information as part of the task. You must configure a test task (e.g. MSTest Parser), if you want test results from the builder task to be parsed.
- If Bamboo is running as a Windows service, ensure that the Service is running as a local user instead of a System User (Bamboo will install itself as the SYSTEM user on Windows).

To configure a Bamboo MSTest Runner task:

1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default Job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing MSTest Runner task, or click Add Task and then MSTest Runner to create a new task.
3. Update the task settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related pages:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuring tasks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring a test task</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>A description of the task, for display in Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Executable**
The MSTest Runner executable that you wish to use for this task (e.g. "Visual Studio 2010"). The executable that you select will become one of the task's capability requirements (and hence, one of the job's requirements). For details, please see Configuring a job's requirements.

Specifically for MSTest, we recommend that the executable be defined with the Visual Studio IDE folder path. Example:

```
C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\Common7\IDE\
```

This will allow Bamboo to find the necessary resources.

**Environment Variables**
Any extra environment variables you want to pass to your build. e.g. JAVA_OPTS="-Xmx256m -Xms128m".

**Container**
The test container, i.e. the file that contains the tests you want to run. For example, tests.dll. The value of this field is passed to the MSTest.exe as the /testcontainer parameter. See MSTest.exe Command-Line Options (MSDN).

**Test Metadata**
The path to the Test Metadata file relative to the working directory. For example, MyApp\MyApp.vsmdi

**Result Filename**
The file that you want to save the test results to. For example, testResults.trx. The value of this field is passed to the MSTest.exe as the /resultsfile parameter. See MSTest.exe Command-Line Options (MSDN).

**Run Configuration**
The run configuration that you want to use. For example, localtestrun.Testrunconfig. The value of this field is passed to the MSTest.exe as the /runconfig parameter. See MSTest.exe Command-Line Options (MSDN).

---

**NUUnit Parser**
This page describes how to configure a Bamboo NUUnit Parser task.

Before you begin:
- .NET builder tasks in Bamboo (e.g. NAnt) do not parse test information as part of the task. You must configure a test task (e.g. MSTest Parser, NUUnit Parser), if you want test results from the builder task to be parsed.

**Related pages:**
- Configuring tasks
- Configuring jobs
- Configuring a test task

**To configure a NUUnit Parser task:**
1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing NUUnit Parser task, or click Add Task and then NUUnit Parser to create a new task.
3. Update the task settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>Enter a description of the task, for display in Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUUnit Test Results File/Directory</td>
<td>Enter the name of the test results file/directory. The test files must be in NUUnit XML format. For more information on NUUnit, see <a href="http://www.nunit.org/">http://www.nunit.org/</a>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Save.

---

**NUUnit Runner**
This page describes how to configure a Bamboo task to run NUUnit tests, and then parse the test results.

Before you begin:
- .NET builder tasks in Bamboo (e.g. NAnt) do not parse test information as part of the task. You must configure a test task (e.g. MSTest Parser, NUUnit Parser), if you want test results from the builder task to be parsed.

**Related pages:**
- Configuring tasks
- Configuring jobs
- Configuring a test task

**To configure a NUUnit Runner task:**
1. Navigate to the **Tasks** configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing NUnit Runner task, or click **Add Task** and then **NUnit Runner** to create a new task.
3. Update the task settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>A description of the task, which gets displayed in Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executable</td>
<td>The NUnit Runner executable that is available to perform the task. The executable that you select will become one of the task's (and so, the job's) requirements. You can add other executables, if required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUnit Test Files</td>
<td>The name of an assembly (.dll), Visual Studio project (.csproj), or NUnit Test Suite (.nunit) to test. See <a href="http://www.nunit.org/">http://www.nunit.org/</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Result Filename</td>
<td>The name to be used for the XML results file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests to Run</td>
<td>The name of the test case, test fixture or namespace to run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test Categories to Include</td>
<td>Specify one or more test categories, separated by commas, to be included in the test run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test Categories to Exclude</td>
<td>Specify one or more test categories, separated by commas, to be excluded from the test run. Exclusions take precedence over inclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command Line Options</td>
<td>Specify any command line options or switches you wish to include when running NUnit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environment Variables</td>
<td>Any extra environment variables you want to pass to your build. e.g. <code>JAVA_OPTS=-Xmx256m -Xms128m</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Save**.

For more information on NUnit, see [http://www.nunit.org/](http://www.nunit.org/).
PHPUnit

This page describes how to configure a PHPUnit task.

Before you begin:

- To use this task, you will need to install PHPUnit and reference the path to your PHP command-line interpreter, (e.g. /usr/bin/phpunit on Ubuntu).

Related pages:
- Configuring tasks
- Configuring jobs

To configure a PHPUnit task:
1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing task, or click Add Task and then **PHPUnit** (or another option, such as **PHPUnit 3.3.X**) to create a new task.

3. Update the task settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>Enter a description of the task, for display in Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executable</td>
<td>Select the PHPUnit executable that you wish to configure for this task (e.g. &quot;PHPUnit 3.3.x&quot; or &quot;PHPUnit&quot;). The executable that you select will become one of the task's capability requirements (and hence, one of the job's requirements). For details, please see Configuring a job's requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>Type the name of the directory/files that will be analyzed recursively by PHPUnit. The default value is &quot;.&quot; (i.e. the working subdirectory, if specified). You must specify at least one argument.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environment Variables</td>
<td>Additional system environment variables that you want to pass to your build. Note that existing environment variables are automatically available to the executable. You can also include Bamboo global or build-specific variables (see Using global, plan or build-specific variables). Multiple variables should be separated with spaces. Parameters with spaces must be quoted (e.g. ANT_OPTS=&quot;-Xms200m -Xmx700m&quot;).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working Sub Directory</td>
<td>An alternative subdirectory, relative to the job's root directory, where Bamboo will run the executable. The root directory contains everything checked out from the job's configured source repository. If you leave this field blank, Bamboo will look for build files in the root directory. This option is useful if your task has a build script in a subdirectory and the executable needs to be run from within that subdirectory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log test execution to XML file</td>
<td>Select if you want PHPUnit to record test results in JUnit format. This format is also used by TestNG. Test Result File — the relative location, and name, of the file to record PHPUnit test results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate code coverage report in HTML format</td>
<td>Select if you want PHPUnit to generate code coverage data in HTML format (e.g. for PHPUnit HTML Code Coverage reports). HTML Code Coverage Directory — the relative location of the directory to store the code coverage report.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Save**.
TestNG

This page describes how to configure a Bamboo task to parse TestNG test results.

Before you begin:

- Java builder tasks in Bamboo (e.g. Maven) parse test information as part of the task. You do not need to configure a test task, if you have specified that test results will be produced as part of the builder task.

To configure a TestNG Parser task:

1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing TestNG task, or click Add Task and then TestNG to create a new task.
3. Update the task settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>Enter a description of the task, for display in Bamboo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Related pages:
- Configuring tasks
- Configuring jobs
- Configuring a test task
4. Click Save.

### Configuring a variables task

Variables tasks in Bamboo allow you to:

- pass a value between stages.
- pass a value from a plan to a deployment project.
- read variables from a file using a `key=value` format.
- print to file the current values of the available variables in your build.

#### Inject Bamboo variables task

The 'Inject Bamboo variables' task allows you to read the values for variables from a file, and create those variables in your build plan.

The file should use a `key=value` format.

You can choose if those variables should have local scope (in which case they cease to exist when the job finishes) or result scope (in which case they are persisted and passed into subsequent stages or related deployment releases).

See Configuring tasks for help on creating a task.

#### Dump variables to log task

The 'Dump variables to log' task simply writes out the current values of all variables used in the build.

See Configuring tasks for help on creating a task.
FAQ

Q. What happens if the same key is used twice?
A. The last assignment will prevail. If you set the scope to local variable with the same key as an existing result variable, the value of the result variable will be restored when the job finishes.

Q. What if I manually set a variable with the same key as a result variable?
A. Same as above – the last assignment wins.

Q. Can I manually override a result variable in a subsequent manual stage?
A. Yes.

Q. What if 2 jobs in the same stage create the same variable?
A. The variable will exist but it is undefined which value will ultimately be assigned to it.

Q. Is restarting builds, re-running failed jobs or continuing from a manual stage supported?
A. Of course! One caveat though: if you restart a build which has an associated deployment release, the variable in the release will not be refreshed. We're working on that...

Configuring a deployment task

Deployment tasks in Bamboo allow you to set up plans that can manage the continuous deployment and delivery of your application.

See the following pages for more information on configuring specific deployment tasks in Bamboo:

- Using Tomcat with Bamboo for continuous deployment
- Using the SCP task in Bamboo
- Using the SSH task in Bamboo
- Using the Heroku task in Bamboo
- Using the AWS CodeDeploy task

Using the SCP task in Bamboo

You can use the Bamboo SCP task to upload files from Bamboo directly to a remote server as part of a Bamboo job. The SCP task is able to copy multiple files and preserves the directory structure for the copied files.

See Configuring a deployment task for an overview of Bamboo deployment tasks.

To configure an SCP task:

1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing SCP task, or click Add Task and then SCP Task to create a new task.
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>Helps you identify the purpose of the task.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>The hostname or IP address of the remote server to which the files will be copied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Verify remote host fingerprint on connect</strong></td>
<td>Enter the host fingerprint to be verified. See below for more details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Port</strong></td>
<td>The port number of the remote host that is used for the SSH connection. The default value is 22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Username</strong></td>
<td>The username to use to connect to the remote host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Authentication Type** | **Password** – the password associated with **Username**.  
**Key without passphrase** – browse to the SSH private key with which to authenticate with the remote host.  
**Key with passphrase** – browse to the SSH private key, and supply the passphrase, to use to authenticate with the remote host. |
| **Local Path** | The local path (relative to the Bamboo working directory) to the files you want to copy. Use commas to separate files and directories. You can also use Ant-style pattern matching to include multiple files, such as `/target/*.jar`. |
| **Remote Path** | The path to the destination directory on the remote server. |

4. Click **Save**.
Host fingerprint

You can determine the fingerprint for a host by running:

```
ssh-keygen -l -F <HOSTNAME>
```

The fingerprint is the part of the response shown in the screenshot below:
Using the SSH task in Bamboo

You can use the Bamboo SSH task to execute a SSH command on a remote computer as part of a Bamboo job. You can use the SSH task to do such things as:

- Calling database migration scripts
- Starting and stopping services
- Anything you can run on the command line on a remote machine

See Configuring a deployment task for an overview of Bamboo deployment tasks.

Configuring a deployment task

To configure an SSH task:

1. Navigate to the Tasks configuration tab for the job (this will be the default job if creating a new plan).
2. Click the name of an existing SSH task, or click Add Task and then SSH Task to create a new task.
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>Helps you identify the purpose of the task.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>The hostname or IP address of the remote server on which the SSH Command will be executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verify remote host fingerprint on connect</td>
<td>Enter the host fingerprint to be verified. See below for more details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>The port number of the remote host that is used for the SSH connection. The default value is 22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>The username to use to connect to the remote host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Type</td>
<td>Password – the password associated with Username.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Key without passphrase – browse to the SSH private key with which to authenticate with the remote host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Key with passphrase – browse to the SSH private key, and supply the passphrase, to use to authenticate with the remote host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSH Command</td>
<td>The shell command to execute on the remote host. You can only enter a single command here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Save.
**SSH Task configuration**

Task description

- Disable this task

- **Host**

- Hostname or IP address of the remote host

- **Username**

- Username you want to use to access the remote host

- **Authentication Type**

  - Password

- **Password**

- **SSH command**

  - Shell command to execute on the remote host

- **Advanced Options**

  - Host fingerprint

  You can determine the fingerprint for a host by running:
Using Tomcat with Bamboo for continuous deployment

You can use Bamboo to deploy and manage your Java web application with Tomcat 6 or 7, without having to directly interact with Maven, Ant or write special scripts.

Bamboo provides tasks that use the HTTP-based scripting interface to the Tomcat Manager application that ships with Tomcat. You can use the Bamboo tasks to perform the following Tomcat operations:

- Deploy an application to a Tomcat instance
- Start an application in a Tomcat instance
- Stop an application in a Tomcat instance
- Reload an application to a Tomcat instance
- Undeploy an application from a Tomcat instance

Each of these tasks run as part of a Bamboo job.

### Setting up Tomcat

You will need to prepare the Tomcat server before Bamboo can manage and deploy applications to it.

1. Download the [Tomcat 7 distribution](http://tomcat.apache.org/7.0-doc/) and unzip it on your file system.
2. Add a new Tomcat user for Bamboo to use the Tomcat Application Manager by adding the following line in `conf/tomcat-users.xml` between the `<tomcat-users>` tags:

   ```xml
   <user username="bamboo" password="bamboo" roles="manager-script,manager-gui"/>
   ```

3. Start Tomcat by running `bin/startup.sh` on Linux or Mac, or `bin/startup.bat` on Windows.
4. Test this setup by browsing to `http://localhost:8080/manager` and using the username and password you configured in the step above. You should see the "Tomcat Web Application Manager" page, and a list of the running applications on your instance.

For more information about the Tomcat Application Manager and its authentication and authorization configuration see the [Tomcat documentation](http://tomcat.apache.org/)

### Deploying an application from Bamboo

You use Tomcat deployment tasks in the context of a job in a build plan in Bamboo. This plan should generate a deployable artifact, such as a WAR file. To deploy the artifact, you add a Tomcat deploy task to the plan, as follows:

1. Navigate to the task configuration for the job (this will be the default job if you are creating a new plan).
2. Click Add Task and then Deploy Tomcat Application.
3. Configure the Tomcat task settings, as described below.
4. Click **Save**.
5. To deploy the application, simply run the plan.

You can check that the deployment has been successful by:

1. Navigating to the logs for the job. Towards the end you should see something like:

   ```
   > Deploying application with war file ‘target/tomcat-test-0.1.war’
   to context ‘/myapp’ to server
   > Application was successfully deployed.
   ```

   This indicates that Bamboo completed the task successfully.

2. Now, browse to the expected address for your application. You should see the welcome page.

### Configuring the Tomcat tasks

The Tomcat Deploy, Start, Stop, Undeploy and Reload tasks each make use of some or all of the following configuration settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
<th>To help you to identify the task.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check, or clear, to selectively run this task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomcat Manager URL</td>
<td>The URL for the Tomcat Manager e.g. <a href="http://localhost:8080/manager/">http://localhost:8080/manager/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target Tomcat server is version 6.x</td>
<td>Choose this if deploying to a Tomcat 6.x server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomcat Manager Username and Password</td>
<td>These should match the credentials set in <code>conf/tomcat-users.xml</code> when you configured Tomcat, as described above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Context</td>
<td>Specifies where the application should sit on the Tomcat server once deployed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAR File</td>
<td>The path to the WAR file, relative to the Bamboo working directory, for example “target/tomcat-test-0.1.war”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Deployment Tag                    | The value used to tag the deployment within the Tomcat Manager. You can use Bamboo variables to build the tag value.  
For example, using the value `${bamboo.buildResultKey}` will tag the deployment with the build number of the build that was used to deploy the application. |

### Using the Heroku task in Bamboo

You can use Bamboo to deploy your Java web application to the **Heroku** cloud platform.

The plan that does this:

- Should have access to the previously created WAR artifact. For example, in Maven-based projects, this would typically be created using the `package` goal. See **Sharing artifacts**.
- Should use the **Heroku: Deploy WAR Artifact** task. To configure this task, specify the **API Key**, **App Name**, and **WAR File** to use. Your API key can be found on the Heroku account page. If the app name specified does not exist, it will be created for you. The WAR file value should be the relative path to the WAR artifact.

To find out more, go to the Heroku documentation:

- [Getting started with the Heroku plugin for Atlassian Bamboo](https://confluence.atlassian.com/x/EPKDw)
- [Getting started with Java on Heroku](https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/getting-started-with-java-on-heroku)

![Heroku](https://atlassian.com/cdn-cgi/image/w=180,h=180/r=1/f=webp/atlassian/cdn-sites/prod/atlassian/images/heroku.png)

Note that the Heroku task is bundled with Bamboo 4.3, and later, but is also available from the [Atlassian Marketplace](https://marketplace.atlassian.com/services/heroku-deploy).

### Using the AWS CodeDeploy task

With the AWS CodeDeploy task for Bamboo you can deploy applications to EC2 instances automatically, reliably, and rapidly. Additionally, AWS CodeDeploy keeps track of the whole deployment process.
On this page:

- Overview
- Before you begin
- Adding an AWS CodeDeploy task to a Bamboo plan
- AWS CodeDeploy configuration for Bamboo
- Preparing files for deployment
  - Examples of revisions

Overview

The AWS CodeDeploy task compresses the specified directory with an AppSpec file into a .zip file, uploads the file to Amazon S3, and starts the deployment according to the configuration provided in the CodeDeploy application.

Further reading

- What is AWS CodeDeploy?
- AWS CodeDeploy deployments

Before you begin

There are several requirements that must be met before you can start using the AWS CodeDeploy task. In short, you must configure the following in your AWS Management Console:

- an EC2 instance with a tagged deployment group
- a CodeDeploy application
- an IAM user
- an S3 bucket

For more guidelines about your AWS configuration, see AWS CodeDeploy configuration for Bamboo.

The content that you want to be zipped and deployed requires a specific structure. For more information, see Preparing files for deployment.

Adding an AWS CodeDeploy task to a Bamboo plan

To use the CodeDeploy task:

1. Go to the plan configuration.
2. Click Add task.
4. Provide the following details:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Task description</td>
<td>A short description of the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Select the check box to skip this task in the build.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AWS credentials
You can select existing AWS credentials from the list or add new AWS credentials. The newly created AWS credentials are added to the shared credentials list in Bamboo.

To make existing AWS credentials available for selection within the AWS CodeDeploy task in Bamboo, add them to [Shared credentials](#).

Region
A region in which the application is deployed.

Deployable content directory
Location of the directory that contains the deployable content and an AppSpec file. By default, it is the root build directory. The content of the directory is compressed into a .zip file and sent to Amazon S3 bucket for deployment. For more information, see [Preparing files for deployment](#).

Amazon S3 bucket
The name of an S3 bucket from which the deployable content (your app and the AppSpec file) is deployed. Start typing to open a selection list of the existing S3 buckets that are available for the AWS credentials provided in the task configuration. For more information, see [Amazon S3 bucket](#).

Application name
The name of the CodeDeploy application that you created in the AWS management console. For more information, see [AWS CodeDeploy application](#).

Deployment group
Start typing to open a list of deployment groups available for the Application name specified in the previous step.

AWS CodeDeploy configuration for Bamboo
The infrastructure setup is described in detail by AWS. For more information, see [Getting Started with AWS CodeDeploy](#).

Atlassian provides guidelines for the following:
- IAM user
- AWS CodeDeploy application
- Amazon S3 bucket

**IAM user**

We recommend creating a dedicated CodeDeploy IAM user or group.

The following policy gives full permissions to Amazon S3 buckets, CodeDeploy application and deployment group:

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [ 
      {
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Action": [ 
          "codedeploy:*",
          "s3:*"
        ],
        "Resource": "*"
      }
    ]
}
```

For more examples of policies, see [Bucket Policy Examples](#).

**AWS CodeDeploy application**

Each CodeDeploy application holds information about the deployment configuration.

For more information, see [Create an Application with AWS CodeDeploy](#).

**Amazon S3 bucket**

An Amazon S3 bucket must exist. We recommend creating a dedicated CodeDeploy S3 bucket that is located in the same region as the instances to which you want to deploy the application.

For more information about how to grant access to S3 buckets, see [IAM user](#).
Preparing files for deployment

The deployable content that is compressed and sent to an Amazon S3 bucket is called a revision and it consists of the application and an AppSpec (Application Specification) file.

Examples of revisions

- simple
- advanced

Pattern matching reference

Bamboo supports a powerful type of regular expression for matching files and directories (as with pattern matching in Apache Ant).

These expressions use the following wild cards:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wild Card</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>Matches one character (any character except path separators)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>Matches zero or more characters (not including path separators)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**</td>
<td>Matches zero or more path segments.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember that Ant globs match paths, not just simple filenames.

- If the pattern does not start with a path separator i.e. / or \, then the pattern is considered to start with /**/.
- If the pattern ends with / then ** is automatically appended.
- A pattern can contain any number of wild cards.

Also see the Ant documentation.

Examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Matches</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*.txt</td>
<td>/foo.txt and /bar/foo.txt but not /foo.txty or /bar/foo.txty/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*/.txt</td>
<td>/foo.txt but not /bar/foo.txt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**/dir1/file.txt</td>
<td>Same as above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>//dir1/file.txt</td>
<td>Same as above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/dir1/**</td>
<td>Matches all files under /dir1/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring the Docker task in Bamboo

The Docker task in Atlassian Bamboo allows you to use Docker images and containers in your Bamboo builds and deployments.

If you’re using a Windows Bamboo server, you can’t run Docker commands directly from the Windows command line.

To use the Docker task with a Windows Bamboo server, run Docker Machine.
The Docker task supports the following Docker actions:

- **Build a Docker image**
- **Run a Docker container**
- **Push a Docker repository to a Docker registry**

Remember to define a Docker capability on an agent before you configure a Docker task.

For examples of how to use Docker in Bamboo, see the Bamboo, Docker, and building web apps blog post.

Note that Bamboo requires Docker 1.7.1 or later. See also Getting started with Docker and Bamboo for information about how to manage and run your Bamboo remote agents using Docker.

**Build a Docker image**

Builds a Docker image based on the specified Dockerfile. The Dockerfile may be provided as an existing file in the task's working directory or defined in the task configuration.

The image is stored in Docker's local image installation directory and can be used by subsequent Docker tasks in the job. You can optionally save the image to a file in the working directory which can then be packaged as a build artifact.

To build a Docker image in Bamboo:

1. Create a new Docker task for the relevant job. See Configuring tasks for details.
2. Add a Task description to help remind you why you created the task.
3. Use the Disable this task checkbox to control whether the task gets run.
4. Choose the Build a Docker image command and complete the settings. Click below to see more information about the settings:
   - **Build a Docker image...**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Repository</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The repository name (and optionally a tag) to be applied to the resulting image, following this pattern: <code>registry.address:port/namespace/repository:tag</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only repository is mandatory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dockerfile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use either an existing Dockerfile (located in the working directory for the task), or specify the contents of the Dockerfile.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do not use cache when building the image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>By default, Docker will reuse a cached build during the next build. See the Docker documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select <strong>Do not use cache...</strong> to ensure that the new image will include changes since the last build. Note that this may incur a performance penalty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Save the image as a file</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify the directory location and file name. Optionally configure a <strong>job artifact</strong> to pass it to next stages and deployments.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If required, specify advanced options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment variables</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>(Optional)</em> Additional system environment variables that you want to pass to your build. Note that existing environment variables are automatically available to the executable. You can also include Bamboo global or build-specific variables (see Bamboo variables). Multiple variables should be separated with spaces. Parameters with spaces must be quoted (e.g JAVA_OPTS=&quot;-Xms200m -Xmx700m&quot;).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Working sub directory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>(Optional)</em> An alternative subdirectory, relative to the job's root directory, where Bamboo will run the executable. The root directory contains everything checked out from the job's configured source repository. If you leave this field blank, Bamboo will look for build files in the root directory. This option is useful if your task has a build script in a subdirectory and the executable needs to be run from within that subdirectory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Run a Docker container**

Starts a Docker container based on the specified image.

By default, the task's working directory is mounted and used as the Docker container's working directory, but you can specify your own settings.

By default, the container is removed on completion of the task, but you can choose **Detach container** to have the container continue to run after a deployment project completes. Containers can be linked to detached containers started by preceding tasks in a job by selecting the 'Link to detached containers' option.
Note that a non-detached container that fails to start will not be removed when the Bamboo task completes. See this KB article for more details.

To run a Docker container in Bamboo:

1. Create a new Docker task for the relevant job. See Configuring tasks for details.
2. Add a Task description to help remind you why you created the task.
3. Use the Disable this task checkbox to control whether the task gets run.
4. Choose the Run a Docker container command and complete the settings. Click below to see more information about the settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Docker image</th>
<th>The image you want to use to instantiate the Docker container</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Detach container</td>
<td>Allows you to run the container in the background, after a deployment project completes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying a Container name</td>
<td>Specify a Container name that isn't used by other containers in this job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Add port mapping to specify mappings that bind ports inside the container to ports on the host.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wait for service to start</td>
<td>Allows you to specify how long Bamboo should wait for the service to become available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You need to specify a pattern for the URL that Bamboo should check, and a timeout period.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link to detached containers</td>
<td>Allows you to link containers to detached containers started by preceding tasks in a job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Container environment variables</td>
<td>Allows you to specify parameters to pass to the container, for example J AVA_OPTS=&quot;-Xmx256m -Xms128m&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separate multiple parameters with spaces. Parameters with spaces must be quoted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Container command</td>
<td>The command to run in the Docker container.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Container working directory</td>
<td>The working directory for the container.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional arguments

Additional Docker run options.

Argument strings that have values which contain spaces require the entire argument string be contained within quotes, that is, the parameter marker, the parameter, the equals sign, and the value containing spaces. For example:

```
"--health-cmd=mysqladmin ping || exit 1"
```

### Volumes

You can mount additional host directories as data volumes inside the container.

If required, specify advanced options:

### Environment variables

_(Optional)_ Additional system environment variables that you want to pass to your build. Note that existing environment variables are automatically available to the executable. You can also include Bamboo global or build-specific variables (see Bamboo variables). Multiple variables should be separated with spaces. Parameters with spaces must be quoted (e.g `JAVA_OPTS="-Xms200m -Xmx700m"`).

### Working sub directory

_(Optional)_ An alternative subdirectory, relative to the job's root directory, where Bamboo will run the executable. The root directory contains everything checked out from the job's configured source repository. If you leave this field blank, Bamboo will look for build files in the root directory. This option is useful if your task has a build script in a subdirectory and the executable needs to be run from within that subdirectory.

*Save your changes!*

---

**Push a Docker image to a Docker registry**

Pushes a Docker image to a Docker registry. This may be the central Docker Hub registry or a custom registry.

To push a Docker repository from Bamboo to a registry:

1. Create a new Docker task for the relevant job. See Configuring tasks for details.
2. Add a Task description to help remind you why you created the task.
3. Use the Disable this task checkbox to control whether the task gets run.
4. Choose the Push a Docker image to a Docker registry command and complete the settings. Click below to see more information about the settings:

   *Push a Docker image to a Docker registry...*
### Registry

Choose to push to either Docker Hub or a custom registry.

### Repository

For Docker Hub you must specify the repository name and optionally a tag, for example: `namespace/repository:tag`

For a custom registry you must specify the registry address, repository name and optionally a tag, for example: `registry.address:port/namespace/repository:tag`

### Username, Password, Email

Credentials for the registry account. Leave it empty to use agents’ `dockercfg` file.

---

If required, specify advanced options:

### Environment variables

(Optional) Additional system environment variables that you want to pass to your build. Note that existing environment variables are automatically available to the executable. You can also include Bamboo global or build-specific variables (see [Bamboo variables](#)). Multiple variables should be separated with spaces. Parameters with spaces must be quoted (e.g. `JAVA_OPTS=-Xms200m -Xmx700m`).

### Working sub directory

(Optional) An alternative subdirectory, relative to the job’s root directory, where Bamboo will run the executable. The root directory contains everything checked out from the job’s configured source repository. If you leave this field blank, Bamboo will look for build files in the root directory. This option is useful if your task has a build script in a subdirectory and the executable needs to be run from within that subdirectory.

---

**Advanced authentication**

The push task allows you to define username, password and email for authentication purposes.

If the other tasks require authentication, or if you want to share credentials between all builds for certain agents, it’s possible to create the docker configuration file on the agent itself, named `~/.dockercfg`.

---

*Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5/)*
When using the push task, leave authentication fields empty in order to use dockercfg instead.

Docker command updates ~/.dockercfg file; if you have any configuration management tool in place updating this file (like puppet, chef or ansible), make sure it's not executing while you are running a docker build.

**Troubleshooting**

**No space left on device**

Docker stores its images in a local image installation directory. Over time this directory may grow to consume all of the available disk space. When this occurs you should remove unused images by running the `docker rmi` command.

The following Docker issues affecting disk space may provide further information:

- Device-mapper does not release free space from removed images
- Graph deletes are non-atomic, db refs deleted without deleting on-disk entities

**Permission denied on files created within a Docker container**

Docker runs processes inside containers as the root user. This means files created on mounted volumes are owned by the root user and not by the user running the Docker command (the bamboo agent user). This may cause an issue if a subsequent task requires access to those files on the host.

Docker plans to allow mapping between container and host users in the future. Until then, you can work around this issue by changing the owner of the files in the mounted volume to the host user:

- Supply the host user's id and group id to the container by setting the following environment variables in the Docker run task configuration:
  - HOST_UID=$UID
  - HOST_GID=$GID
- Run a script inside the container to change the owner of the files in the mounted volume:

  ```bash
  chown -R $HOST_UID:$HOST_GID /<path_to_mounted_volume>
  ```

**Permission denied when running Docker**

When attempting to run a Docker container you may see a 'permission denied' issue:

```
2015/02/10 06:35:31 Post
http://var/run/docker.sock/build?rm=1&t=docker-toy-demo: dial unix /var/run/docker.sock: permission denied
```

The solution is to add the Bamboo user agent to the Docker group on the agent.

**Getting execution errors for valid docker files or unable to start docker container**

Example build output:

```
Driver devicemapper failed to get image rootfs
511136ea3c5a64f264b78b5433614aee563103b4d4702f3ba7d4d2698e22c158: Error mounting
```
'/dev/mapper/docker-202:16-17252355-511136ea3c5a64f264b78b5433614aec563103b4d4702f3ba7d4d2698e22c158' on
'/mnt/docker/devicemapper/mnt/511136ea3c5a64f264b78b5433614aec563103b4d4702f3ba7d4d2698e22c158': invalid argument

simple 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 Failing task since return code of
[/usr/bin/docker build --no-cache=true
--tag="docker.atlassian.io/dk:9.3"
/home/bamboo/bamboo-agent-home/xml-data/build-dir/dkr-build-JOB1] was 1
while expected 0

error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 Error occurred while running Task
'Build docker image(5)' of type
com.atlassian.bamboo.plugins.bamboo-docker-plugin:task.docker.cli.
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 com.atlassian.bamboo.task.TaskException: Failed to execute task
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.plugins.docker.service.BuildService.execute(BuildSe
rvice.java:53)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.plugins.docker.tasks.cli.DockerCliTask.execute(Dock
erCliTask.java:60)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.task.TaskExecutorImpl$3.call(TaskExecutorImpl.java:
281)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.task.TaskExecutorImpl$3.call(TaskExecutorImpl.java:
278)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.task.TaskExecutorImpl.executeTaskWithPrePostActions
(TaskExecutorImpl.java:198)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.task.TaskExecutorImpl.executeTasks(TaskExecutorImpl
.java:278)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.task.TaskExecutorImpl.execute(TaskExecutorImpl.java:
105)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.build.pipeline.tasks.ExecuteBuildTask.call(ExecuteB
uildTask.java:75)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.v2.build.agent.DefaultBuildAgent.build(DefaultBuild
Agent.java:188)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.v2.build.agent.BuildAgentControllerImpl.waitAndPerf
ormBuild(BuildAgentControllerImpl.java:112)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.v2.build.agent.DefaultBuildAgent$1.run(DefaultBuild
Agent.java:110)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.utils.BambooRunnables$1.run(BambooRunnables.java:49)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.security.ImpersonationHelper.runWith(ImpersonationH
elper.java:31)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14 at
com.atlassian.bamboo.security.ImpersonationHelper.runWithSystemAuthority
(ImpersonationHelper.java:20)
com.atlassian.bamboo.security.ImpersonationHelper$1.run(ImpersonationHelper.java:52)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14    at
java.lang.Thread.run(Thread.java:745)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14   Caused by:
com.atlassian.bamboo.plugins.docker.client.DockerException: Error
running Docker build command
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14    at
com.atlassian.bamboo.plugins.docker.client.DockerCmd.build(DockerCmd.java:149)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14   Caused by:
com.atlassian.utils.process.ProcessException: Error executing
/usr/bin/docker build --no-cache=true --tag="docker.atlassian.io/dk:9.3"
/home/bamboo/bamboo-agent-home/xml-data/build-dir/DDT-REP-JOB1
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14    at
com.atlassian.bamboo.plugins.docker.process.DockerTaskProcessService.execute(DockerTaskProcessService.java:57)
error 12-Feb-2015 12:12:14    at
If the agent consistently fails executing docker run commands, either when building an image or running an instance there is a risk that you've run into https://github.com/docker/docker/issues/4036 To help diagnose this you can SSH to the agent and look at the kernel messages by running:

dmesg

There are several possible messages that indicate this problem. Some of those are listed here:

- [83471099.881879] JBD2: no valid journal superblock found
- [83471099.881883] EXT4-fs (dm-2): error loading journal
- [88401612.723018] EXT4-fs (dm-1): warning: mounting fs with errors, running e2fsck is recommended
- [88401612.724764] EXT4-fs (dm-1): mounted filesystem with ordered data mode. Opts: discard

There is a big risk that the device mapper is corrupt. This means that you need to stop Docker and remove the files used by devicemapper, then restart Docker. If running on an elastic agent, terminating the agent and starting a new one is also a viable option.

To stop Docker and remove the files, run the following:

```bash
sudo -i
#stop the docker daemon
service docker stop
#remove the broken devicemapper files
rm -rf /var/lib/docker
service docker start
```

The location of the devicemapper files may differ from the example above. Run the following to find the exact path:

docker info

## Sharing artifacts

This page describes how to keep and share artifacts produced by a job, such as reports, websites or .jar files. Bamboo allows artifact sharing between:

- Jobs
- Build plans
- Build plans to deployment environments.

### Define an artifact to keep for a job

You can specify which artifacts to keep by setting up an artifact definition for the job. The artifacts will be available after each build of the job.

### Related pages:

- Viewing a build's artifacts
- Configuring a job's build artifacts
- Pattern matching reference
To set up a new artifact definition:

1. Navigate to the job, as described on Configuring jobs.
2. Click the Artifacts tab, and then Create definition:
   a. Specify a Name for the artifact.
   b. Use Location to specify the folder, relative to the build directory, where the artifact will be located. Do not use the absolute path to the artifact. Wild cards are not supported.
   c. Copy pattern is relative to Location. For example, if you want to keep the latest version of a .jar file, you could specify Copy pattern to be "*/.jar" and the Location to be "target".
   d. Select the Shared check box if you want to share artifacts with other jobs in the plan.
3. Click Save.

Artifacts are copied to a subdirectory (*/JOB_KEY/download-data/) under your Build Directory folder – see Locating important directories and files.

Sharing artifacts between jobs

You can share artifacts between jobs in different stages using artifact dependencies. For example, you may want to run acceptance tests on a build, sharing the same WAR from one job to another without rebuilding it each time.

Each time the artifact is shared with a subsequent job, it is copied to the job's agent.

To share an artifact between two jobs in different stages:

1. Navigate to the configuration pages for the job that will produce the artifact, as described on Configuring jobs, and click the Artifacts tab (see Configuring a job’s build artifacts).
2. Either click Share for an existing artifact, or create a new artifact definition, as described above.
3. Navigate to the job in a subsequent stage that will consume the artifact, and click the Artifacts tab.
4. Click Create dependency, then:
   • Choose from the Artifact list.
   • Specify the Destination directory, then click Create.

Sharing artifacts between build plans

You can share artifacts between different build plans, however you need to use the ‘Artifact downloader task’ to do so. For example, you may want to run acceptance tests on a particular build from a different plan by sharing the same WAR from one plan to another without

1. The Artifact list only shows artifacts from jobs in previous stages that have been marked as shared. This is described in Configuring a job’s build artifacts.
2. Destination directory is relative to the build directory. Do not use the absolute path to refer to the destination directory.
3. The artifact from the most recent successful build will be used. If there are no successful builds from the artifact-producing plan or the artifacts have expired, the artifact-consuming job will fail.
rebuilding it each time.

To share an artifact between two build plans:

1. Locate the build plan that you wish to associate an artifact with.
   a. Select **Configure plan** from the 'Actions' drop down menu.
   b. Click on **Stages & jobs** and select a job or create a new job if one does not already exist.
   c. Click on the **Tasks** tab for the selected job.
2. Click the **Add task** button. The 'Task types' window will appear. Select **Artifact Downloader Task** to open the 'Artifact downloader task' configuration pane:

   Complete the configuration using the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Optional?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Task description</td>
<td>A brief description of the artifact downloader task</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check this box to disable the task</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Plan</td>
<td>The build plan that is the source of the artifact you need to download</td>
<td>❌</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click on **Add another artifact** to add another artifact to the download list. Alternatively, use the grey cross icon to delete an artifact from your configuration.
4. Click on **Save** to save your artifact download configuration.

Sharing artifacts from a build plan to a deployment environment

You can also share artifacts from a build plan into a deployment environment. For example, you may wish to share a particular build result from a plan with a deployment environment. To do this, you need to add the 'Artifact downloader task' to a deployment environment during or after the environment creation process.

To share an artifact from a build plan to a deployment environment:

1. Open your deployment project and expand the relevant environment panel. In the Other settings section, click on the **Tasks** button. The 'Set up tasks' screen will display:

   | 1. The **Artifact** drop down menu only shows artifacts from jobs in previous stages that have been marked as shared. This is described in **Configuring a job's build artifacts**.
   | 2. **Destination directory** is relative to the build directory. Do not use the absolute path to refer to the destination directory.
2. Click **Add task**. The 'Task type' selection window will display. Select **Artifact Downloader Task** to open the 'Artifact downloader task configuration' pane:

![Artifact Downloader Task Configuration]

Complete the configuration using the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Optional?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Task description</td>
<td>A brief description of the artifact downloader task.</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable this task</td>
<td>Check this box to disable the task.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artifact Name</td>
<td>Use the drop down menu to locate the name of the artifact that you want to download.</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination Path</td>
<td>The location of the working directory into which you want the artifact downloaded.</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click **Add another artifact** to add another artifact to the download list.
4. Click **Save** to save your artifact download configuration.

1. The **Artifact** drop down menu only shows artifacts from jobs in previous stages that have been marked as shared. This is described in Configuring a job’s build artifacts.
2. **Destination directory** is relative to the build directory. Do not use the absolute path to refer to the destination.
Working with builds

The following pages contain information on working with your Bamboo builds.

- Working with build results
- Working with comments
- Working with labels
- Quarantining failing tests
- Setting up plan build dependencies
- Viewing test statistics for a job
- Reordering jobs in the build queue
- Stopping an active build

Working with build results

About builds

A build is the execution of either a plan or a job. The execution of a plan is referred to as a 'plan build' and that of a job is a 'job build'.

About build results

Every completed build has a build result:

- 'Successful' — the code compiled, with or without errors, and all tests completed successfully.
- 'Failed' — either the code did not compile, or at least one test failed.
- 'Incomplete' — the build was not completed, e.g. it may have been stopped manually.

Additionally,

- if the build result is 'Failed', and the previous build result was 'Successful', the build is said to be 'Broken'.
- if the build result is 'Successful', and the previous build result was 'Failed', the build is said to be 'Fixed'.

The latest build result for every plan is listed on the Dashboard. Bamboo can also send notifications and generate RSS feeds about build results.

Viewing a build result

The instructions on this page describe how to view the build results for a plan.

Every completed build has a build result:

- 'Successful' — the code compiled, with or without errors, and all tests completed successfully.
- 'Failed' — either the code did not compile, or at least one test failed.
- 'Incomplete' — the build was not completed, e.g. it may have been stopped manually.

Additionally,

- if the build result is 'Failed', and the previous build result was 'Successful', the build is said to be 'Broken'.
- if the build result is 'Successful', and the previous build result was 'Failed', the build is said to be 'Fixed'.

Viewing the most recent build result for a plan

To view the most recent job build result of a plan:

1. Click Dashboard in the top menu.
2. Locate the plan on the All Plans tab, then click the build number.

On this page:

- Viewing the most recent build result for a plan
- Viewing all build results for a plan
- Viewing all build results for a job
Screenshot: Build Result Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tab</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Build Summary</td>
<td>Displays a snapshot of the build result.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• indicates a successful build.

• indicates a build that was not completed. For example, it may have been stopped manually.
• indicates a failed build. If a build has failed, you can run the entire build again or rerun just the failed stage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tests</th>
<th>Provides details of the build’s test results.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Changes</td>
<td>Provides details of the code changes that triggered this build (if applicable).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artifacts</td>
<td>Shows any artifacts relating to this build.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logs</td>
<td>Displays a complete build log.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metadata</td>
<td>Displays any metadata that relates to this build.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build Times</td>
<td>Displays a histogram of build times for jobs, and a list of which agents were used to build each job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issues</td>
<td>Provides details of the JIRA issues linked to this build (if applicable). Availability depends on Bamboo's configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clover</td>
<td>Displays the Clover code-coverage that relates to this build (if applicable). The clover tab is located on the job level because a build can have more than one jobs, and each job might have different Clover results or not have clover tab at all. That's why in order to see the Clover tab, you need to drill down to the individual job that contains the clover report.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can assign responsibility for a broken build, either to yourself (click Claim full responsibility) or to someone else in your team (click Assign responsibility).

Viewing all build results for a plan

To view all build results for a plan:

1. Click Dashboard in the top menu.
2. Click the plan on the All Plans tab. The ten most recent builds will be displayed in the ‘Recent History’ section on the Plan Summary tab. See Viewing a plan’s build information.
3. Click the History tab to view all builds for the plan.

Viewing all build results for a job

To view all build results for a job:

1. Navigate to the desired job, as described on Configuring jobs. The ten most recent builds will be displayed in the ‘Recent History’ section of the Job Summary tab.
2. Click the History tab to view all builds for the job.

Viewing test results for a build

Bamboo provides a convenient summary of all the tests that were run when a particular build was executed — as well as full details of any errors. This is useful when you are investigating what caused a build to fail.

Note that for more meaningful display of test names within Bamboo, the word 'test' is stripped out of test case name names if it occurs at the beginning, and capitals and underscores are treated as word separators.
To view the test results for a particular build:

1. Navigate to the build results for the plan or job, as described in Viewing a build result, and click the desired build result.
2. Click the Tests tab.
   - Click the test name to see a particular test’s results for other builds.

Screenshot: Test results for a build

Test Results

Summary | Tests | Changes | Artifacts | Logs | Metadata | Issues | Actions
--- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | ---

56 tests in total 11 tests failed 11 failures are new 25 minutes taken in total.

New Test Failures (11)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>View Job</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BamboocRegressionBugTest testCvsDeleteBuildFiles</td>
<td>Func Test Repository</td>
<td>1 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BuildSetupTest testCanCreatePlanWithJobOfSameName</td>
<td>Func Test Misc</td>
<td>21 secs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BuildSetupTest testSvnCloneBuild</td>
<td>Func Test Misc</td>
<td>29 secs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BuildSetupTest testBasicChainValidationAndCreation</td>
<td>Func Test Misc</td>
<td>26 secs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BuildTest testCvsSuccessfulBuild</td>
<td>Func Test Repository</td>
<td>1 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>junit.framework.AssertionFailedError: Expected text not found in current page:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jenkins.TimeoutException: Jobs are not running or started too long ago: Job Build...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jenkins.TimeoutException: Jobs are not running or started too long ago: Job Build...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Click View test case across builds.

Viewing a test’s history

A test’s history shows you:

- The occasions when the test has failed. This can be useful when investigating what code changes were related to a failed test (see below).
- The test’s average duration (running time), and whether the duration is increasing or decreasing across builds.

To view a test’s history:

1. Navigate to the build results for the Plan/Job, as described in Viewing a build result, and click the desired build result.
2. Click the Tests tab.
3. Click the name of the test in which you are interested. The test’s latest result will be displayed.
4. Click View test case across builds. The 'Test History' will be displayed, as shown below.
Viewing the code changes that triggered a build

If a build was triggered by a code change, the updated files will be listed in the build result.

When Atlassian's FishEye is connected to your Bamboo server, you can view the code changes that triggered a build. When a build fails due to a compilation error or failed test, you can explore the failed build in FishEye and jump directly into the changeset that broke the build. You can view the history of that changeset to see what the author was trying to fix, take advantage of the side-by-side diff view to analyze the change and then open the correct files in your IDE.

**Related pages:**
- Linking to source code repositories
- Triggering builds

**To view the code changes that triggered a particular build result:**

1. Navigate to the build results for the plan, as described in Viewing a build result, and click the desired build result.
2. Click the Changes tab. A list of updated files will be shown.
   - Click the link to the source file to view the changes.
   - Click the version number to view the entire file.
   - Click the diffs link to view the differences between the current and previous version of each file.

Links to individual source-code files will only be available if your Bamboo administrator has connected the plan to the source repository, as specified in the ‘Advanced Options’ on the ‘Source Repositories’ tab for the plan. For details, see Integrating Bamboo with FishEye.

Viewing a build's artifacts

After a build has run, you can view the artifacts that were produced by all of the jobs in the plan. You can also view the latest version of an artifact from the most recent build.

Artifacts are files created by a job build (e.g. JAR files). Artifact definitions are used to specify which artifacts to keep from a build and are configured for individual jobs.

Viewing the artifacts for a build

**To view a build's artifacts:**

1. Go to the build result. See Viewing a build result for instructions.
2. Click the Artifacts tab. The artifacts produced by the jobs in the plan will be displayed. The artifact definitions for a job determine which artifacts are kept and which artifacts are shared with other jobs in the plan.

**On this page:**
- Viewing the artifacts for a build
- Viewing the latest version of an artifact from the latest build

**Related pages:**
- Configuring a job's build artifacts
- Sharing artifacts

---

[Documentation for Bamboo 5.15](https://confluence.atlassian.com/pages/attachments/show/-/-/-/test-history.png)
Viewing the latest version of an artifact from the latest build

To view the latest version of an artifact from the most recent build, you can manually edit the build artifact URL to retrieve it.

To view the latest version of an artifact from the most recent build:

1. Copy the URL for the build artifact.
2. Paste the URL for the build artifact in your browser and replace the build number in the URL with '/latest'.
   - If you need to log in to view the artifacts, you can append os_username and os_password parameters to the URL to access the files.

For example, if the URL for your artifact is:
http://server/bamboo/browse/MYBUILD-254/artifact/logs/sample-log.log
You would replace '-254' with /latest:
http://server/bamboo/browse/MYBUILD/latest/artifact/logs/sample-log.log

Screenshot: Build Artifacts

Viewing a build log

Every build has a build log. A build log is a permanent record of all the output generated by compiling the job's source-code and executing the tests.

To view a build log:

1. Navigate to the build results for the plan or job, as described in Viewing a build result, and click the desired build result.
2. Click the Logstab.
   - Click View for the desired log.
   - Click Download to download a text file of the log.
1. Viewing the metadata for a build result

If your source-code repository provides metadata (i.e. key-value properties that are used to describe your build) for your build results, Bamboo will display it.

To view the metadata for a build result:

1. Navigate to the build results for the plan or job, as described in Viewing a build result, and click the desired build result.
2. Click the Metadata tab.

Screenshot: Metadata for a Build Result

Assigning responsibility for build failures

Bamboo automatically alerts the people who are assigned as responsible for a broken build, and lets other members of the team know that
someone is looking at the problem. As you investigate the build failure, you can revise who is responsible, or claim all the responsibility for yourself!

People are assigned as being responsible for fixing a broken build in two ways:

- When a build fails, Bamboo automatically assigns all those who committed code to the failing build as responsible.
- You can manually assign people as being responsible.

Bamboo then sends notifications to whoever is assigned. Once the build is successful, Bamboo removes the responsible people from the build – they’re off the hook!

Note that notifications need to have been configured first, using the ‘Change of Responsibilities’ Event and the ‘Responsible User’ Recipient Type. See Configuring notifications for a plan and its jobs for more information.

### Related pages:
- Working with build results
- Working with comments
- notifications

### To assign responsibility for a broken build manually:

1. Go to the Build Result Summary for a plan.
2. Click Assign responsibility to make another member of your team responsible for fixing the build.
3. Click Claim full responsibility if you want to shoulder all the blame yourself.

People who are responsible for the broken build are displayed on the Build Result Summary.

Broken builds that are assigned to you are displayed on your My Bamboo page, available from the Dashboard.

#### Build result summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Responsible</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Completed: 03 Nov 2013, 11:42:04 PM – 16 hours ago</td>
<td>Brydie McCoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration: 161 minutes</td>
<td>Krystian Braużewicz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Marek Gardas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Marek Wierc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Przemek Buki</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring build results expiry for a plan

By enabling build expiry for a particular plan (described below), you override the global expiry settings that affect all plans in Bamboo. If you disable build expiry for a plan, that plan’s build result data will never be automatically deleted from your Bamboo server.

You can choose the build result data that will be kept for a plan and for how long this data will be kept (e.g. for reporting purposes), before Bamboo automatically deletes it.

Note that the build expiry event is a global event that runs periodically, regardless of whether you disable or enable build expiry in your plans. When this event occurs, the build results for your plan will be expired according to the settings below, or globally. To configure the global event and global build expiry settings, please refer to Configuring global expiry.

You can also delete the results of a plan build manually — see Deleting the results of a plan build.

#### Configure the expiry of build results for a plan

Ensure that you back up your build results data before its expiry date is reached.

Configure build expiry as follows:

1. Navigate to the configuration for the desired plan, as described on Configuring plans.
2. Click the Miscellaneous tab.
3. Select the Override global build expiry configuration checkbox. Configure expiry using the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do not expire anything for this plan</th>
<th>Select to disable expiry for all build results and artifacts for this plan – these will never be deleted automatically.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Build results</td>
<td>All build results data (including artifacts and build logs) are deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build artifacts</td>
<td>Only user-defined artifacts are deleted from the build results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build logs</td>
<td>Only build logs are deleted from the build results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expiry after</td>
<td>Specifies the period (days, weeks or months) for which you want to keep build results. E.g. specify '24 months' to keep all build results for the last two years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum builds to keep</td>
<td>Specifies the minimum number of build results you want to keep. For example, specify '50' to keep the latest 50 build results, even if they are older than the period specified with Expiry period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keep builds with the following labels</td>
<td>Specifies the build labels (not plan labels or job labels) applied to builds for which you want to keep build results, regardless of the Expiry period and Minimum builds to keep settings. Note that builds can be labeled either manually or automatically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Save.

Screenshot: Configuring build expiry

Deleting the results of a plan build

If the results of a plan builds are no longer required, you can completely remove the them from your Bamboo system. The results include all the results of all job builds that were processed as part of an individual plan build (with a specific build number). Note that you can also remove job build result data that reaches a particular age. See Configuring global expiry or Configuring expiry of a plan's job build results for more information.

Related pages:
- Deleting a job's current working files

Before you begin:
- The 'Admin' global permission or 'Admin' plan permission is required to delete plan build results.
- The result of a plan build cannot be deleted if that plan is currently being built. If you need to delete the result of a plan build, stop the plan's build first. Refer to Stopping an active job build for more information.

To delete the result of a plan build:

1. Click Dashboard and then the All Plans tab.
2. In the list of plans, click the name of the desired plan.
3. Click the History tab. A table of completed plan build results will be displayed, with the most recent builds at the top.
4. Locate the desired build result and click Delete. (see screenshot below).
5. Confirm the deletion. The plan build result and any artifacts generated as a result of the plan build’s execution will be deleted.

Screenshot: Build history of a plan showing individual plan build results
Working with comments

Comments are a useful way to record and share information about builds. There are two types of comments in Bamboo:

- Comments you make about a build result — these are comments that you make about a particular build result.
- Comments you make when you commit code — these comments are automatically copied into Bamboo from your source-code repository.

When you include JIRA issue keys in your build and commit comments, Bamboo will automatically convert these into hyperlinks to the respective JIRA issues, if Bamboo is integrated with JIRA. The issue key must be of the default JIRA issue key format (that is, two or more uppercase letters ([A-Z]+), followed by a hyphen and the issue number, for example BAM-123).

Comment on a build result

When you are logged in to Bamboo, you can comment on a build result to record relevant information for future reference, and to collaborate with your team. You can see other's comments there too, of course.

Simply navigate to a build result and enter your comment on the 'Build summary' tab:

Commit comments

If a build was triggered by a code change, the commit comment (or check-in comment) will be shown on the 'Build summary' tab of the build result:
Working with labels

A label is a convenient way to tag and group build results that are logically related to each other. Labels can also be used to define RSS feeds and to control build expiry. With Bamboo, you can label your build results in whatever way works best for your team. Labels are not restricted to a particular plan, so you can apply the same label to build results from different plans.

For example, it might not be practical for your QA team to review every build, and you need to know which builds they have reviewed. By using labels such as "qa_passed" and "qa_failed", Bamboo allows them to simply indicate which builds have passed and failed QA.

You can include JIRA issue keys in the label, as long as the key is of the default JIRA issue key format (that is, two or more uppercase letters \(^{1-2} \) \(^{A-Z} \) \(^{1-2} \) \(^{A-Z} \) \(^{+} \)), followed by a hyphen and the issue number, for example BAM-123).

Bamboo administrators can also configure automatic labeling of job build results.

Label a build result

You must be logged in to Bamboo before you can label a build result.

To label a particular build result, simply click the pencil icon ( ), beside Labels in the ‘Details’ section of the ‘Build summary’ tab. You can also label a build result using Instant Messaging. Click the x at the right of a label if you need to remove it.

Click Labels on the ‘Build summary’ tab to see the other labels that have been used for the plan’s builds. Click a label there to see all the projects, plans and build results where that label is used.

Label a plan

Bamboo allows you to label plans. Labeling a plan allows you to filter the plans displayed on the Dashboard or Wallboard. You may want to do this if you have set up a large number of plans in your Bamboo instance and want to highlight specific plans for attention.

For example, you may want to label all builds related to the release with a ‘release’ label. You can then filter your wallboard during your release, to display only these builds.

You must be logged in to Bamboo before you can label a plan.

Simply go to the plan you want to label and choose Actions > Modify plan label.

See also these Atlassian blog posts:

- Making your Bamboo dashboard quicker and more relevant using plan labels
- Get to know Bamboo’s build expiry and labels

Quarantining failing tests

There may be times when you want to prevent a failing test from causing the whole build to fail.

Possible scenarios where this may be useful include:

- You want to build an artifact despite there being a failing test, but can’t do this while the plan build is failing.
- In test-driven development (TDD), a test will fail until the functionality is implemented - you want to quarantine all but the relevant tests.
- A test may give unpredictable results, perhaps because of infrastructure issues or dependencies.
- You want to remove a test from a build, but don’t want to alter or delete the test source code because doing so could affect another Bamboo plan.

In Bamboo, you can temporarily disconnect any test’s results from the plan build results by quarantining the test. The test is still run whenever the plan is built, but the test’s results do not affect the plan’s build results.

You can always restore a test’s results to the build results when required, for example if the test is now passing.

All the quarantined tests for a plan are displayed on the Quarantined Tests tab of the plan summary. The status bar for each test shows the recent build history of the test.
To quarantine a failing test

You need plan administrator permission to quarantine a test.

1. Choose Dashboard > All Plans > #buildresult to go to the build result where the test is failing.
2. Click Quarantine for the failing test (in the ‘Build Result Summary’ screen).

To restore a quarantined test to a build

You need plan administrator permission to restore a test.

1. Choose Dashboard and click on a plan to go to the plan’s summary.
2. Click the Quarantined Tests tab.
3. Click Unleash for the test to be restored.

Screenshot: The quarantined tests for a plan, showing the Status bar.

Setting up plan build dependencies

You may want to trigger a plan build when another plan’s build has successfully completed. This ensures that changes to any job’s source code associated with one plan does not break the build of another dependent plan (known in this context as a 'child' plan).

For example, there could be two plans in Bamboo:

1. Acme – Core — which contains the core code for an application.
2. Acme – Plugin — which contains code for a plugin to the application.

In this scenario, the Acme – Plugin plan is a child of Acme – Core. Any changes to source code associated with the Acme – Core plan should trigger a build of Acme – Plugin.
1. Click Dashboard and then the All Plans tab.
2. Locate the plan in the list and click the edit icon to display the plan's Configuration pages.
3. Click the Dependencies tab.
4. Under 'Child Plans', begin typing a plan name in Search for plan to select child plans to trigger. You can set multiple plans to be triggered.
5. Click Save.

Automatic dependency management with Maven

Automatic Dependency Management is a feature for users who use Maven 3 and wish for their parent and child dependencies to be set up according to the dependencies in the Maven pom.xml. Every time the plan is run, the Bamboo Automatic Dependencies are updated to reflect any additions or removals of Maven dependencies.

To setup automatic dependency management:

1. Click Dashboard and then the All Plans tab.
2. Locate the plan in the list and click the edit icon to display the plan's configuration pages.
3. Locate the job that contains the pom.xml you wish to use to automatically update plan dependencies by analyzing a Maven pom file.
5. Click on the Tasks tab.
6. Click Add Task and add the Maven Dependency Processor task to the job. For best results, ensure that the task runs last by dragging it to the bottom of the task list. For more information on configuring tasks, see Configuring tasks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Override Project File</td>
<td>Optional. The location relative to the working directory or sub-working directory where the project file (pom.xml) is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working Sub Directory</td>
<td>Optional. The sub directory from which the Task should look for the project file (pom.xml)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternate location of settings.xml</td>
<td>Optional. Specify an alternate settings.xml to be used if the Task needs to resolve dependencies from specific Maven repositories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path to Maven local repository</td>
<td>Optional. Specify a full path to a local Maven repository for the Task to use to resolve dependencies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Click Save.
8. Use the Plan Navigator to return to the plan.
9. Click the Dependencies tab.
10. Select Automatic Dependency Management. You should see the name of the job for which you configured the Maven Dependency Processor appear.
11. Click Save.

Dependency blocking

Dependency blocking is an advanced feature of dependent build triggering that can be used to manage plan builds with parent build dependencies. This ensures that a "tree" of dependent builds always runs in tree hierarchy order, even if child plan builds are triggered independently of their parents. For more information, see Dependency blocking strategies. Please note, dependency blocking only works when the plan build is triggered because of source repository code updates.

Notes

Build dependencies work together with the trigger configuration of plans to trigger builds of these plans. For example, you can set up Plan A to poll its repository for changes as well as to be dependent on a parent plan (Plan B). In this case, builds of Plan A will be triggered when code changes are detected in its repository and also when builds of Plan B complete successfully.

If you want your builds to only be triggered by successful parent builds from your build dependencies, don't configure triggering for your child plans at all. See Running a plan build manually.

- If the child build uses the same source as the parent build (for example, the Subversion URL is the same), the child build will be forced to check out the same revision of source code as the parent build. This ensures that builds are consistent when triggering one build from another.
- Take care not to create circular dependencies, where your child build triggers one of its parent builds. Otherwise your plans may build continuously. See Running a plan build manually.

Dependency blocking strategies

Dependency blocking is an advanced feature of dependent build triggering that can be used to manage the builds of plans that have parent plans. This ensures that a 'tree' of dependent builds always runs in tree hierarchy order, even if child plan builds are triggered independently of their parents.

The three dependency blocking strategies are:
### Dependency Blocking Strategies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategy</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Do not block</strong></td>
<td>When triggered by a source code update, the plan will always be built, regardless of any parent plan build dependencies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Block build if parent builds are queued or in progress</strong></td>
<td>When triggered by a source code update, the plan will <em>not</em> be built if its parent plans are building or are waiting in the build queue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Block build if parent plans have unbuilt changes</strong></td>
<td>When triggered by a source code update, the plan will <em>not</em> be built if its parent plans are building, are waiting in the build queue, or have changes. When Bamboo finds parent plans with source repository changes, those plans will be triggered and your plan will be blocked.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that for the **Block build if parent plans have unbuilt changes** option, only the repositories of parent plans that are specified by triggers (that is, by the Polling the repository for changes or Repository triggers the build when changes are committed trigger types) are scanned for unbuilt changes; if there are repository changes (for parent plans), then the parent plans are triggered and the current plan is blocked.

⚠️ **Dependency blocking only works when the plan uses a trigger configuration based on source code updates** (i.e. Polling the repository for changes or Repository triggers the build when changes are committed). This feature will not work when a plan uses a trigger configuration based on a schedule or triggered via a parent build (when there are multiple parent plan builds in progress).

These dependence blocking strategies are illustrated in the flowchart below:

---

### Viewing test statistics for a job

Bamboo provides a summary of test results across all of a job's builds. This helps you to:

- **Troubleshoot** by identifying which tests fail most frequently, and which tests take longest to fix.
- **Manage your build duration** by identifying the plan's slowest running tests.
- **Ensure quality** by monitoring the number of tests over time: are your test cases growing with your code base?

**Related pages:**

- Reporting

**To view the test statistics for all of a job's builds:**

1. Navigate to the desired build result page, as described in Viewing a build result.
2. Click the Tests tab.
3. Click the sub-tabs to filter the rest statistics (see screenshots below).
   - To view a test's history, click the test name.

Screenshot: Test statistics for a job

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Time broken</th>
<th>Job</th>
<th>Most recent builds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Unit and Functional Tests</td>
<td>#758, #756</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Unit and Functional Tests</td>
<td>#758, #756</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Unit and Functional Tests</td>
<td>#741</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Unit and Functional Tests</td>
<td>#758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Unit and Functional Tests</td>
<td>#749, #645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Unit and Functional Tests</td>
<td>#760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Unit and Functional Tests</td>
<td>#751</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Unit and Functional Tests</td>
<td>#746</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Unit and Functional Tests</td>
<td>#748</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Unit and Functional Tests</td>
<td>#741</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reordering jobs in the build queue

Bamboo automatically assigns a plan's jobs to the build queue when the plan is triggered and no agents are available to run them. The build queue is displayed on the Current Activity tab of the Dashboard.

If you want to prioritize one job build over another in the build queue, you can manually reorder these jobs in the build queue. This will not force a job build to run immediately, but will promote it in the build queue. Your job build will still require an agent (which has the capabilities to meet the job's requirements) to become available. Similarly, you can demote a job build in the build queue if you do not need it to run urgently.

Bamboo administrators can reorder plans in the queue. To do this, use the icon to move the plan to its new position in the queue.

Stopping an active build

The instructions on this page describe how to stop a plan or job build that is running.

Note that if your Bamboo server runs on Windows, it may only be possible to stop an active build by going to the Windows Task Manager and ending the relevant processes.

To start a building a plan manually, see Running a plan build manually.

On this page:
- Stopping an active plan build
- Stopping an active job build

Related pages:
- Running a plan build manually
- Disabling or deleting a plan
- Disabling or deleting a job

Stopping an active plan build

To prevent Bamboo submitting a plan to the build queue, refer to Disabling or deleting a plan.

To stop an active plan build:
1. Click Dashboard and then the All Plans tab.
2. Click the 'Stop' icon next to the active plan you want to stop.

Stopping an active job build

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
To prevent Bamboo submitting a job to the build queue, refer to Disabling or deleting a job.

To stop an active job build:

1. Click Dashboard and then the All Plans tab.
2. Click the name of the plan.
3. Click the ‘Stop’ icon next to the active job you want to stop (in the ‘Current Activity’ section).

Deployment projects

What are deployment projects?

A deployment project in Bamboo is a container for holding the software project you are deploying: releases that have been built and tested, and the environments to which releases are deployed. Teams typically have QA, staging and production environments.

Why use deployment projects?

Continuous Integration was not designed for Continuous Delivery. Continuous Integration is designed to keep developers informed about the state of the latest code changes.

In Continuous Integration, historical build results (along with information such as issue and commits) are de-emphasized as more changes are made, since only the latest build is important to the developer.

Using a traditional Continuous Integration server for Continuous Delivery is less than ideal because:

- **Deployed builds are difficult to find** – Builds that were deployed only a few days ago are de-emphasized by the system. While this is good for a Continuous Integration workflow, the behavior makes it difficult for team members to identify which builds have been deployed and when, versus which have not. Teams can work around this with a system that uses labeling but it’s not immediately obvious how it should work unless team members are trained to use it correctly.
- **Difficult to find what changes were made between deployments** – Build results report commit and issue data between a specific build result and the one immediately before it. There can be many build results between two different deployments. Often the entire history has to be navigated between the two deployments to build a complete view of the changes between them. Sometimes, even other tools have to be used, such as version control systems.
- **Difficult to know what was deployed, and when and where it was deployed** – Builds do not have visibility of where code is deployed or what was previously deployed to an environment.
- **Lack of insight into the QA process** – Given a list of deployment candidates, builds offer no clear way (other than commenting or labeling) for QA to ‘sign off’ on a tested release or mark a release as broken or un-releasable.
- **Poor control over who can deploy** – While it can be controlled by permissions who can run, view or edit a build, they do not give enough fine-grained control over which people in the team can deploy to production or other sensitive environments. In essence, if someone has permission to run the build they can deploy the software any time they wish.

To solve these issues Bamboo provides the following concepts:

- **Deployment project** – Represents the software you are deploying (such as a web application), the releases of the software deployed and the environments that they will be deployed to throughout the lifecycle.
- **Environment** – Represents the servers or groups of servers where the software release has been deployed to, and the tasks that are needed for the deployment to work smoothly. Example environments could be named Development, QA, Staging or Production. Environments have permissions that allow fine-grained control of who can deploy, edit or view an environment and record the full history of releases deployed to it.
- **Release** – Identifies a snapshot of artifacts and its associated data such as commits, JIRA issues and the builds that were used to test it. As a release contains the information of the difference between itself and the release beforehand, it's very easy to see the changes between releases or to show the difference between the software deployed on two different environments. Releases also track what environments they have been deployed to.

How do deployment projects work?

Consider the following diagram:
What is Continuous Delivery?
Continuous Delivery is the practice where all changes made to a software project are automatically built, tested and made ready for deployment to users. In practice, once the project has been built and tested it is ‘staged’ somewhere where it can be manually verified and then made available to users.

Unlike Continuous Deployment (the process where code changes are automatically built, tested and deployed without human intervention), typically there is a decision made by a human being to whether or not the software is of sufficient quality or if it is the correct time for the business to make the software available to its users.

Artifacts
Create and test deployable artifacts with build plans. Ensure any artifacts you wish to deploy with Bamboo are flagged as "shared" to make them available to the deployment instructions of the environment.

Releases
Any artifact that has been successfully tested can be used to create a release; you can create as many releases as you like. Bamboo will add other metadata such as related commits and JIRA issues to each release which enable reporting and tracking as it moves through your environments.

Environments
Environments in Bamboo reflect the development, testing and production environments in your IT infrastructure – hostnames and authentication credentials for each environment reside at the task level inside your deployment jobs. At any point in time, you will be able to see which release is running in each environment, which release it replaced,
when it was deployed and who deployed it. You will also be able to see any associated JIRA issues.

Understanding deployment releases

Key to getting the most out of deployment projects is understanding what releases are, and how you should be using them.

It is also important to understand the difference and relationship between 'artifacts' - the results of a build plan - and 'releases' - a snapshot of artifacts at a specific time that can be deployed somewhere.

On this page:

- What are artifacts?
- What are deployment releases?
- Why use releases?
- How artifacts and deployment releases work together
- The next step

What are artifacts?

When the continuous integration process is triggered by a developer committing code, the first stage of the process compiles the code, runs tests and then assembles the code into binaries. These assembled binaries are known as 'artifacts'. The build process can produce build artifacts at any stage of the build that can then be shared with other builds or deployment projects.

Since Bamboo manages artifacts, any artifacts that are needed by builds or deployments are automatically transferred by Bamboo to a remote server as needed, so long as that build or deployment project declares that it needs the artifact to complete its work.

For more information, see Sharing artifacts.

What are deployment releases?

Releases are used to track exactly what software was deployed to an environment. In essence, a release is a snapshot of any number of artifacts that will be used in the deployment process and their associated metadata, such as JIRA issues, code changes and any test metadata that might be relevant to what is being deployed.

A release is created from the result of a single build. When you view a release, you can see all the code changes, JIRA issues and other metadata that were used when making the artifact for that build. This information can be used for purposes such as release notes, quality control and infrastructure planning, and allows you to compare any two releases to see the changes between them.

Why use releases?

In Bamboo, releases are tracked against environments, which represent a server or group of servers that you wish to deploy your software to. Because each environment can only host a single active release at any one time, Bamboo gives a unique release name to the software being deployed. By checking the environments for our project, we can quickly identify:

- Where releases have been deployed
- Which release is currently deployed
- The release deployment history
- The release deployment status.

Another key feature of releases is that as well as providing a deployable snapshot of your artifacts, they also collate the JIRA issues, commit record and test & build metadata for the specific series of changes associated with the release. This enables much smoother reporting and tracking as the release moves through your environments, and allows you to easily track changes between releases.

How artifacts and deployment releases work together

The relationship between artifacts and releases shows the 'hand-over point' between Bamboo builds and Bamboo deployments.
As the diagram shows, a developer who is responding to JIRA issues, commits a code change and triggers a build. This build produces a number of artifacts. In a deployment, these artifacts are assembled into a release, and the JIRA issue, commits and test/build metadata are added. This release then gets a unique identification name which serves as an identifier throughout the system. You can define the unique identifier according to your needs using the release naming system.

Once a release has been created, it is now ready to be deployed to an environment.

The next step

The next step is to examine and understand the deployment project workflow. Learn more about the deployment project workflow.

Deployment projects workflow

Deployment projects are an important feature of the continuous deployment philosophy. Identifying and understanding the key configuration steps for a deployment project will help you to gain a better insight into how a deployment project functions.

On this page:

- Deployment project prerequisites
- Step 1: Create a new deployment project
- Step 2: Decide on a release naming scheme
- Step 3: Decide who can view and edit the project
- Step 4: Create a deployment environment
- Step 5: Customize your deployment environment
- Step 6: Start deploying!

Deployment project prerequisites

There are a number of prerequisites that must be in place before you can start using deployment projects. The prerequisites are:

1. A build plan
2. Artifacts to deploy (these are produced by the build plan and shared)

Step 1: Create a new deployment project

Creating the deployment project is the first step. Here we will give the project a name and a description, but most importantly we associate the deployment project with an existing Bamboo build plan. This is why we must have a build plan available to associate with our new deployment project.

Learn more about creating a deployment project here.

Step 2: Decide on a release naming scheme

The next step is to configure the release naming scheme for the deployment project. The release naming scheme will define how Bamboo
names the releases that you create from your build artifacts for deployment. You can use either a simple release naming scheme, or a scheme that uses global or plan variables already defined in Bamboo.

Learn more about release naming schemes here.

Step 3: Decide who can view and edit the project

You need to decide who can view and edit the deployment project. This is done using the permission scheme. You can add or remove individuals or groups from the scheme, and give them access to either view and/or edit the project.

Learn more about the permissions scheme here.

Step 4: Create a deployment environment

The next step is to create a deployment environment. A deployment environment represents the servers or groups of servers where the software has been deployed, and any tasks needed for the deployment to go smoothly. You can call the deployment environment anything you like, though typical names are QA, Staging and Production.

Learn more about creating a deployment environment here.

Step 5: Customize your deployment environment

Once you have created your deployment environment, you need to set it up to reflect the needs of your project. You can control most aspects of the deployment environment, including:

- **Tasks** - Run executable tasks during the deployment process, for example downloading a needed artifact from a different plan
- **Triggers** - Decide which events or schedule points will trigger off deployment of your project to an environment
- **Permissions** - Decide who can view and edit your deployment environment
- **Agents** - Control which agents you will use to support your deployment process
- **Notifications** - Create a notification scheme to keep you informed about your deployment progress
- **Variables** - Assign variables for your deployment projects

Step 6: Start deploying!

Once you have set up your deployment project, you're ready to start the deployment process.

A sample deployment project

On this page we will examine a sample deployment project, and work through the steps required to get a deployment project up and running.

On this page:

- Step 1: Create a deployment project
- Step 2: Define the release naming scheme
- Step 3: Create a deployment environment
- Step 4: Add some environment tasks
- Step 5: Let's deploy!
- Step 7: Additional deployment environment options

Step 1: Create a deployment project

The first step in creating a deployment project is to associate the project with an existing build plan. This is done at the same time as creating the deployment project. To create a new deployment project, and associate an existing build plan with it:

1. Click **Create > Create deployment project** in the drop down menu from the header bar. The ‘Set up deployment project’ screen will appear.
2. Use the source build plan to select an existing build plan. Bamboo will identify any relevant build plans in the menu:
In this example we can see that the associated build plan is the one for project Bonsai
3. Complete the Name and Description fields as required
4. Click Create deployment project. Your deployment project will be created, and will automatically be associated with the build plan you selected above.

Step 2: Define the release naming scheme

The next step is to provide a version naming strategy for the deployment project. This will define how the deployment project will ascribe names to current and subsequent artifact bundles that it generates. See Naming versions for deployment releases for more information. To configure your version naming scheme:

1. From the deployment project configuration screen, click Release versioning to display the deployment project release versioning screen:

2. Complete the required fields according to your naming scheme. In this example we can see that a simple naming scheme has been adopted - the next name will be 1.0, and the subsequent 1.1 etc
3. Click Save to save your naming scheme.

Step 3: Create a deployment environment

Once we have defined our naming scheme, we need to create a deployment environment for the artifact(s) to be deployed into. Typically, deployment environments include Test, Staging, QA and Production, however there's no limit to creating useful deployment environments. Lets look at how it's done:

1. From the deployment project configuration screen, click Add environment to open the Set up environment screen:
2. Enter the name of the deployment environment, and a brief description. In this example we will call our environment Dev Sandbox, and give it a suitable description.

3. Click either Create and back or Continue to task setup to create the environment. The next stage will be to add some tasks, so clicking Continue to task setup will take us straight to the next step.

Step 4: Add some environment tasks

Tasks are activities that the deployment project will perform in order to run. These could be checking out some code from a repository, downloading an artifact from a server or running a script. Let's have a look at how to add a couple of tasks to the deployment environment:

1. If you continued to task setup from the environment creation process, then you will already be at the Set up tasks screen. alternatively, From the deployment project configuration screen, click Set up tasks:

2. Click Add task to display the list of tasks that are available to you:

In this example, we will add a simple script task to run as part of our build. Clicking on the task we wish to add adds it to the set up task setup.
tasks screen, and allows us to configure the individual task:

3. Click **Save** to save the individual task configuration, and then on **Finish deployment project** to complete configuration of the script task for the deployment environment. In reality, we would require a number of tasks, not least one to obtain an artifact for use in the deployment. The following task configuration for a production environment includes an artifact download, DB change script, a Tomcat deployment, source code checkout and a Maven 3.x task:

Step 5: Let's deploy!

Our sample deployment project now has all of the elements required to run. We can trigger the deployment project manually by clicking on the appropriate deploy icon on the projects page:
Step 7: Additional deployment environment options

But deployments don’t end here. This simple example is just a snapshot of how a deployment project is configured and works. Bamboo deployment projects feature a host of additional features to help you manage your development and deployment processes. These include:

- **Automated triggering** - choose to automatically deploy after a successful build plan completes, or at a scheduled time
- **Agents** - Assign specific agents, elastic agents or image configurations to execute the deployment for the environment
- **Variables** - Incorporate variables for use when deploying versions to environments
- **Permissions** - Define what users are allowed to view, edit and deploy in the environment
- **Notifications** - Define who and how notifications about events for the environment are made.

Creating and configuring a deployment project

Creating a deployment project from a plan is easy with Bamboo.

A deployment is a container that holds:

- Environments that represent the physical environments, such as QA, Staging and Production
- Releases which represent the actual software artifacts being deployed - these include the issues and commits which make up the release.

To create a new deployment project you must:

1. Provide a name and a description that represents your project
2. Associate the project with a build plan. The build plan will produce the artifacts you will snapshot into a release and deploy to the environment. Associating the deployment project with a build plan tells the deployment project which set of artifacts to use for the deployment.

If you are using plan branches, you will also need to associate the deployment with the plan branch. The plan branch represent a build for a branch within the version control system that inherits the configuration defined by the parent plan. Any new branch created is automatically built and tested using the same build configuration as the parent. When the plan branch build succeeds, it can be merged back into master.

Learn more about Deployments from branches.

On this page:

- Creating a new deployment project
- Editing the details of an existing deployment project
- Configuring release naming
- Configuring deployment project permissions
- Viewing a Bamboo deployment project in the YAML format

Related pages:

- Naming versions for deployment releases
- Deployments from branches

Creating a new deployment project

To create a new deployment project:

1. Click **Create > Create deployment project** in the drop down menu from the header bar. The ‘Setup deployment project’ screen will appear:
1. Complete the 'Set up deployment project' screen using the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Optional?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of your deployment project</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of your deployment project</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Build Plan</td>
<td>The name of the plan you wish to associate with the deployment project <em>Hint:</em> This field identifies the source of your deployment artifacts</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default plan branch</td>
<td>The plan branch that you wish to deploy. Bamboo will auto detect available plan branches for you. Choose a plan from the drop down menu.</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Click Create deployment project. The deployment project configuration screen will display:
Your deployment project has been created with the build plan relation, name and description you specified. It is now ready for configuration.

Editing the details of an existing deployment project

Bamboo allows you to edit the details of an existing deployment project.

To edit the details of an existing deployment project:

1. From the deployment project configuration screen, click the **Edit details** button. The **Update deployment project** screen will display:

   ![Update deployment project screen](image)

   - **Deployment project details**
     - **Name**: Deployment for Z Personal Branches
     - **Description**: DKTest deployment project
   - **Source plan for releases**
     - **Source build plan**: Z Personal Branches - PW test
       - **Start typing the plan name or use the down arrow to select a plan. The selected plan will be used as the source for artifacts that will be deployed as a branch**.
       - **Use the main plan branch**
         - **Currently**: main
       - **Use a custom plan branch**

   - **Save deployment project**  
   - **Cancel**

2. Complete the 'Update deployment project' screen using the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Optional?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Related Build Plan</strong></td>
<td>The name of the plan you wish to associate with the deployment project <em>Hint</em>: This field identifies the source of your deployment artifacts</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Name</strong></td>
<td>The name of your deployment project</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
<td>A brief description of your deployment project</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default plan branch</strong></td>
<td>The plan branch that you wish to deploy. This option will only display if your plan has a valid branch, as described above</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click on **Save deployment project** to save your changes.

Configuring release naming

Bamboo's release naming configuration allows you to control:

- What Bamboo will call the next release the deployment project generates
- Automatic incrementing of the release number each time a new release is created
- Automatic incrementing of the release number as specified by a global variable each time a new release is created.
See Naming versions for deployment releases for more information.

Configuring deployment project permissions

Bamboo gives you control over who has permission to View and Edit aspects of your deployment project.

To configure your permission strategy:

1. Click the Permissions button on the 'Deployment project configuration' screen to display the 'Edit permissions' screen:

2. Click the Add User or Add Group button to search for and add, users or groups
3. Check the relevant 'View' and 'Edit' permission boxes to assign your desired permission scheme
4. Click Save to save your permission scheme.

Viewing a Bamboo deployment project in the YAML format

Bamboo instance administrators can view the deployment configuration in the YAML format in Deployment project configuration

> Actions:

Naming versions for deployment releases

Bamboo provides a range of options that allow you to control your release naming scheme. You can specify how Bamboo handles release versioning, and control automatic incrementing between releases.

Bamboo allows you to use:

- Simple incremental numbering
- Advanced numbering based upon Bamboo variables

Bamboo also allows you to manually override automatic release settings when you create a new release.

On this page:

- Simple release versioning
- Release versioning using variables

Simple release versioning

Simple release versioning allows you to specify a starting release number, for example 1.0, which Bamboo will automatically increment. When using simple release versioning, Bamboo will increment the final number in the release name. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release name</th>
<th>Incremented release name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0.1</td>
<td>1.0.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To configure simple release naming:

1. Click the Release versioning button on the 'Deployment project configuration' screen to display the 'Release versioning' screen:

2. Complete the 'Release versioning' screen using the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Optional?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create release name</td>
<td>The identification for the next release name that Bamboo will create. In simple release naming, you should use something straightforward like 1.0.</td>
<td>☒</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically increment with each new release</td>
<td>Check the 'Numbers' check box to automatically increment the release number according to the 'Next release name' field, as defined above. If you leave this box unchecked, then no release number incrementing will occur.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preview</td>
<td>This field allows you to preview what the next release name will look like. To view the preview, click on the Generate preview button next to the 'Create release name' field. Note: In some cases a preview may not be available.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click Save to save your changes.

Release versioning using variables

Release versioning using variables allows you to develop more complex naming schemes, based upon variables set up within Bamboo. You can use global, plan and build variables in your releasing scheme.

For security reasons, you can't use password variables in version names.

Example

You may have a plan variable called 'planvar' with a value of 'm6'. By including this variable key within the 'Next release name' field, Bamboo will automatically add the variable value to the next release name, and increment it accordingly:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable Key</th>
<th>Variable Value</th>
<th>Next Release Name</th>
<th>Next Release</th>
<th>Subsequent Release</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>planvar</td>
<td>m6</td>
<td>1.0-${bamboo.planvar}</td>
<td>1.0-m6</td>
<td>1.1-m7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To configure release naming using variables:
1. Click the **Release versioning** button on the 'Deployment project configuration' screen to display the 'Release naming' screen:

![Release versioning: Deployment for Project Bonsai](image)

2. Complete the 'Create release name' field using the following data:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Optional?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Version</strong></td>
<td>The identification for the next release name that Bamboo will create. In simple release versioning, you should use something straightforward like 1.0.</td>
<td>![x]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click on the **Add variable to release name** link to display the Variables selection screen:

![Variables](image)

4. Click **Add variable** to include the variable in your release naming scheme. Click on **Close** to return to the 'Release naming' screen.

5. Complete the 'Release name' field using the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
6. Click Save to save your changes.

**Example release versioning schemes**

Bamboo also allows you to use combinations of simple and variable release naming. The following table provides examples of combined naming schemes, and demonstrates how careful control of the Numbers and Variables checkboxes can be used to customize your scheme.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Naming scheme</th>
<th>Next release field</th>
<th>Numbers checkbox</th>
<th>Variables checkbox</th>
<th>Variable value</th>
<th>Next release name</th>
<th>Subsequent release name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Static naming</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naturally unique variable</td>
<td>1.0-${bamboo.buildNumber}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1.0-13</td>
<td>1.0-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number incrementing</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number incrementing + static variable</td>
<td>1.0-${bamboo.appName}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$(bamboo.appName)</td>
<td>1.0-Awesome</td>
<td>1.1-Awesome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable incrementing</td>
<td>1.0-${bamboo.milestone}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$(bamboo.milestone)</td>
<td>1.0-m6</td>
<td>1.0-m7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number and variable incrementing</td>
<td>1.0-b${bamboo.appNumber}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$(bamboo.appNumber)</td>
<td>1.0-b1567</td>
<td>1.1-b1568</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Creating a deployment environment**

Once you have created and configured your new deployment project, you can create environments for it to deploy to. Bamboo allows you to create multiple deployment environments and also allows you to manage:

- Environment details such as name and description
- Tasks
- Triggers
- Permissions
- Agents
- Notifications
- Variables

To create a new deployment environment you will need to:

1. Provide a name that represents your environment e.g. Test or Production
2. Provide a description that describes the function of your environment.

On this page:
- Creating a new deployment environment
- Using the deployment environment panel
- Editing the environment details

**Related pages:**
- Tasks for deployment environments
- Triggers for deployment environments
- Agents for deployment environments
- Notifications for deployment environments
- Variables for deployment environments
- Permissions for deployment environments
- Requirements for deployment environments

Deployment environments are added from the Deployment project configuration screen:
Creating a new deployment environment

To create a new deployment environment:

1. Click the blue Add environment button from the 'Deployment project configuration' screen. The 'Set up environment' screen will display:

   **Set up environment for PWT**
   
   Environments represent where releases are deployed to.
   
   **Environment details**
   
   - **Environment name**
   - **Description**

   *Environment name*
   
   e.g. Staging, QA, or Production

   *Description*

   Click on **Continue to task setup** or **Create and back** to create the environment and return to the 'Deployment project configuration' screen.

   Note: Because no tasks have been defined for this environment, it will appear with a red exclamation mark:

   Alternatively, click on **Continue to task setup** to continue to task setup for your new environment:

2. Complete the 'Set up deployment project' screen using the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Optional?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Environment name</td>
<td>The name of the environment</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of your deployment project</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click on Create and back to create the environment and return to the 'Deployment project configuration' screen.

   Note: Because no tasks have been defined for this environment, it will appear with a red exclamation mark:
See Tasks for deployment environments for more information on task configuration.

Using the deployment environment panel

All deployment environments are managed from the Deployment project configuration screen. By default, when the screen loads, each environment panel is displayed in its collapsed state. Click Edit to expand the deployment environment panel:

When expanded, the environment panel shows three separate sub-panels:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sub-panel</th>
<th>Functionality</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Environment</td>
<td>• Deploy</td>
<td>• Manually deploys to the environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Actions</td>
<td>• Allows the user to View, Delete or Move down the environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Minimize</td>
<td>• Minimize the environment panel back to its collapsed state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How you want to deploy</td>
<td>• Edit tasks</td>
<td>• Allows the user to edit the tasks associated with the environment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Editing the environment details

Bamboo allows you to change both the environment name and the description. To edit these details:

1. Expand the environment panel and click the pencil icon next to the environment name. The 'Update environment' screen will display:

![Update environment screen](image)

2. Complete the 'Update deployment project' screen using the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Optional?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Environment name</td>
<td>The name of the environment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of your deployment project</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click **Save environment** to save your changes.

Tasks for deployment environments

Once you have created and configured your new deployment project and deployment environments, you can set up associated tasks for the deployment process. Bamboo allows you to execute a range of different tasks upon deployment including:

- Bash and other shell commands
- Bespoke written scripts
- SCP, SSH and Artifact handler tasks
- Ant executables
- Maven 1.x, 2.x & 3.x executables
- Tomcat executables
- Heroku deployments

### On this page:

- Add an environment task
- Some useful deployment tasks
  - Deploying with Tomcat
  - Copying and moving files with SCP
  - Integrating with Heroku
  - Deploying ASP.NET applications with MSDeploy
- Assign a final task

### Add an environment task

You can add tasks to a deployment environment either while you create the environment or afterwards. You can modify tasks any time after creating them.

1. Open your deployment project and expand the relevant environment panel.
2. Click **Edit tasks** (under 'How you want to deploy').
   - The 'Clean working directory' and 'Artifact download' tasks are included by default:
3. Click **Add task** and choose a task. Only tasks applicable to the deployment environment will be available for selection.

4. Configure the task according to the needs of your deployment project. Different tasks will have different requirements. Remember that capability and requirement matching is still in effect for deployment environments. If your task does not have the right capabilities it will not be executed, even if the relationship has been defined.

5. Click **Save** when you have finished.
6. Click **Back to deployment project** to return to the deployment project page.

**Some useful deployment tasks**

**Deploying with Tomcat**

You can use Bamboo to deploy and manage your Java web application with Tomcat 6 or 7, without having to directly interact with Maven, Ant or write special scripts.

See Using Tomcat with Bamboo for continuous deployment.

Copying and moving files with SCP
You can use the Bamboo SCP task to upload files from Bamboo directly to a remote server as part of a Bamboo job. The SCP task is able to copy multiple files and preserves the directory structure for the copied files.

See Using the SCP task in Bamboo.

Integrating with Heroku

You can use Bamboo to deploy your Java web application to the Heroku cloud platform.

See Using the Heroku task in Bamboo.

Deploying ASP.NET applications with MSDepl

You can use Bamboo to deploy your ASP.NET web application by using a Script task to run msdeploy.exe. The MSDepl command-line syntax is available at: http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd569106(v=ws.10).aspx

Assign a final task

Once all of your tasks have been configured, you may assign some or all of them to be Final Tasks. Final Tasks are always executed at the end of the build.

1. Open your deployment project and expand the relevant environment panel.
2. Click Edit tasks (under 'How you want to deploy').
3. To make a task final, simply drag the task below the 'Final tasks' bar:

4. Click Back to deployment project to return to the deployment project page.

Triggers for deployment environments

Use deployment triggers for automatic management of how and when Bamboo starts deployment projects.

Deployments can be triggered automatically based on:

- a successful build of a plan branch
- a successful deployment to some other environment
- a successful build of a plan stage
- a schedule (specific time and date, at an interval, or Crone-based)

Note: You can also start deployments manually.

When an automatic deployment starts, Bamboo creates a new release based on the latest successful build of the plan branch that is defined in the deployment trigger. If there is only one branch in the plan, it is selected by default.
**Configuring Bamboo deployment triggers**

You can customize the deployment by specifying the details of each trigger. Triggers configuration lives in the environment settings of a deployment project.

If you don't know where to find the trigger configuration in Bamboo, see [How to find deployment triggers configuration in Bamboo](#).

### Common parameters

The list of parameters that are the same for all deployment triggers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trigger description</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>A meaningful name of a trigger by which you can identify the trigger in the GUI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable this trigger</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>Select the check box to ignore the trigger in deployments.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Trigger-specific parameters

The list of parameters that are specific for each deployment trigger type.

#### After successful build plan

The trigger starts a deployment after a successful build of the specified plan branch. If there is only one existing plan branch, it is selected by default and the branch selection options are hidden.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Branch to trigger this deployment | yes      | Specifies the branch that must be successfully built before the deployment. You can specify the following:  
• use main plan branch: displays the name of the plan branch set as the main plan branch  
• use a custom plan branch: displays a selection list that is pre-filled with all branches in the deployment project |

#### After successful deployment

Starts a deployment after a successful deployment on another environment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Triggering environment</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>Specifies the environment on which a successful deployment must be performed to start the new deployment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### After successful stage

Starts a deployment after a successful build of the specified stage of a plan. If there is only one existing stage, it is selected by default.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plan stage to trigger this deployment</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>Specifies the stage on which a successful deployment must be performed to start the new deployment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Scheduled

Starts a deployment according to a customized schedule with artifacts from a specific branch.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Schedule                  | yes      | Click the pencil icon to open the schedule editor. You can select from:  
• Daily  
• Days per week  
• Days per month  
• Cron expression  
and provide the further details in the fields displayed following to the selection. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Branch to provide artifacts for this deployment</th>
<th>yes</th>
<th>Specifies the branch from which Bamboo provides artifacts for the deployment. You can specify the following:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• use main plan branch: displays the name of the plan branch set as the main plan branch</td>
<td></td>
<td>• use a custom plan branch: displays a selection list that is pre-filled with all branches in the deployment project</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**How to find deployment triggers configuration in Bamboo**

Deployment triggers are set as part of the of the environment configuration for a deployment project.

To get to the environment configuration details view:

1. Click **Deploy** in the top main Bamboo menu and select **All deployment projects**.
2. Click the name of an environment to display the environment details view.
3. Click the ellipsis (…) in the upper right corner of the view and select **Edit environment**: 

![Edit environment](image)

4. Once you are in the environment edit view, a list of all existing environments is displayed with expanded information about the environment that you want to edit.

If you want to edit an environment that is different from the expanded one, you can click **Edit** next to the name of the environment:

![Edit environment](image)

5. In the **Other environment settings** section, click **Triggers**: 

![Triggers](image)

6. In the **Edit triggers** you can add, remove, or configure triggers.

**Agents for deployment environments**

Bamboo offers a range of optional settings to make your deployment project function more smoothly. Bamboo allows you to assign specific agents, elastic agents or image configurations to execute the deployment for the environment.

**Important Note**

Assigning agents to deployment tasks may reduce your build capacity. When an agent is assigned, no other builds or deployments can run on it unless they are also explicitly assigned to use that agent or image configuration.
Configuring deployment agents

Deployment environment agents are configured as part of the Other settings section of the environment panel.

To configure your deployment agent:

1. Open your deployment project and expand the relevant environment panel. In the Other settings section, click on the Agents button. The 'Assigned agents' screen will display:

   ![Edit agents: Dev Sandbox](image)

   Dedicate specific agents or image configurations to execute all deployments for this environment. If you do not assign an agent to this deployment, one will be chosen at run time according to standard requirement/capability mappings.

   NOTE: By adding an agent to this list, it will no longer execute any build jobs. It will only execute deployments for this environment, and other environments that are explicitly configured to use this agent. One agent can be assigned to several deployment environments.

   ![Save Cancel](image)

   Only agents applicable to the deployment environment will be available for selection.

   Remember that capability and requirement matching still applies for deployment environments. If your agent does not have the right capabilities it will not be assigned at runtime even if the relationship has been defined.

2. Enter an agent name, or use the drop down menu to select an appropriate agent:

   ![Edit agents: Dev Sandbox](image)

   Dedicate specific agents or image configurations to execute all deployments for this environment. If you do not assign an agent to this deployment, one will be chosen at run time according to standard requirement/capability mappings.

   ![Save Cancel](image)

   You can remove an unwanted agent by clicking the associated cross on the right hand side of the screen.

Notifications for deployment environments

Bamboo offers a range of optional settings to make your deployment project function more smoothly. Notifications allow you to assign a specific notification scheme to events triggered by the deployment environment. Notification events include start and finish of a deployment, and may be delivered by any of:

- User or group notification
- Email
- Hipchat
- Instant Messaging

To set up a notification you will need to:

1. Select a triggering event
2. Configure a mechanism for delivering notifications
Configuring deployment notifications

Deployment environment notifications are configured as part of the Other settings section of the environment panel.

To configure your deployment notifications:

1. Open your deployment project and expand the relevant environment panel. In the Other settings section, click on the Notifications button. The 'Edit notifications' screen will display:

   ![](image)

2. Click the Add notification button. The 'Add a new notification' window will display:

   ![](image)

3. Complete the 'Edit notifications' screen by selecting the event to trigger the notification:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notification</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deployment started and finished</td>
<td>Notification issued when a deployment is started or finished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deployment finished</td>
<td>Notification issued only when deployment is finished</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

And configuring the notification delivery system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recipient Type</th>
<th>Data requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>Username of the user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hipchat</td>
<td>Hipchat API token, Hipchat room name, Room participants notification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
<td>Groupname</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Email Address | Email address
---|---
IM Address | Instant messaging address

**Note:** If you have not done so, you may need to set up an IM server for IM notifications to work correctly.

4. Click the Add button to add your notification
5. You can edit or remove notifications by clicking on the associated Edit or Remove link on the right hand side of the screen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Notification recipient</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deployment Finished</td>
<td><a href="mailto:davide@work.com">davide@work.com</a> (email address)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><a href="mailto:Brenda@work.com">Brenda@work.com</a> (im address)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><a href="mailto:Jane@work.com">Jane@work.com</a> (im address)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deployment Started and Finished</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Colin@work.com">Colin@work.com</a> (email address)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Variables for deployment environments**

**Deployment variables**

Bamboo manages a number of standard reserved variables that are available when deploying a project.

Variables later in the following list override the previous ones in case of repeating names:

- global variables
- release variables as defined below
- user variables defined at environment level
- the autogenerated variables in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.agentId</td>
<td>The id of the agent that the deployment is executed on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.agentWorkingDirectory</td>
<td>The path to the working directory on the agent. This is not the same as the Bamboo working directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.build.working.directory</td>
<td>The path to the working directory for Bamboo. This is used by both the build plan and the deployment project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.environment</td>
<td>The name of the environment that the release is to be deployed to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.project</td>
<td>The name of the deployment project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.rollback</td>
<td>True if the release being deployed is older than the release being replaced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.release</td>
<td>The name of the release that is being deployed. Either .release or .version can be used - both return the name of the release being deployed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.version</td>
<td>The name of the release that is being deployed. Either .release or .version can be used - both return the name of the release being replaced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.release.previous</td>
<td>The name of the release that is being replaced (if available). Either .release or .version can be used - both return the name of the release being replaced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.version.previous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.resultsUrl</td>
<td>The URL to the screen in Bamboo that displays build results.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For Bamboo variables to do with build plans, and releases, see [Bamboo variables](https://confluence.atlassian.com/display/BAMBOO/Bamboo+variables).

**Configuring variables for deployment environments**

Deployment environment variables are configured as part of the Other settings section of the environment panel.
To configure an environment variable:

1. Open your deployment project and expand the relevant environment panel. In the Other settings section, click **Variables**.
2. Enter a valid key and value into the relevant fields in the Variables screen.
3. Click on Add to add the variable scheme.
4. You can remove unwanted variables by clicking the relevant cross icon on the right of the Variables screen.
5. Click **Back to deployment project** to return.

Permissions for deployment environments

Bamboo offers a range of optional settings to make your deployment project function more smoothly. Deployment environment permissions allow you to configure which groups or individuals can view, edit or deploy a project.

Note that the global Bamboo permissions still take precedence. Where a user has environment permissions enabled but project permissions disabled, they will still be unable to access a deployment environment. Please see Bamboo permissions and Creating and configuring a deployment project for more information on managing deployment project permissions.

Configuring deployment environment permissions

Deployment environment permissions are configured as part of the Other settings section of the environment panel.

To configure your permission strategy:

1. Open your deployment project and expand the relevant environment panel. In the Other settings section, click on the **Permissions** button. The 'Edit permissions' screen will display:
2. Click the Add User or Add Group button to search for and add, users or groups.
3. Check the relevant 'View', 'Edit' or 'Deploy' permission boxes to assign your desired permission scheme.
4. Click Save to save your permission scheme.

Requirements for deployment environments

Specify requirements for deployment environments to route the deployment plan execution to agents with matching capabilities. This way, agents that aren't executing dedicated deployments will be available for other jobs.

To view and manage requirements for deployment environments:

1. Click Deploy in the top main Bamboo menu and select All deployment projects.
2. Click the name of an environment to display the environment details view.
3. Click the ellipsis (...) in the upper right corner of the view and select Edit environment:

4. Once you are in the environment edit view, a list of all existing environments is displayed with expanded information about the environment that you want to edit.

If you want to edit an environment that is different from the expanded one, you can click Edit next to the name of the environment.
5. To manage and view existing requirements, click Agents assignment:

In the Agents assignment view you can:

- add and remove capabilities required from an agent to deploy an environment
- check which agents and/or elastic images meet the requirements of your deployment environment
- view capabilities that are required based on the requirements of the deployment tasks specified for the environment
Managing deployment projects

Bamboo makes it easy to monitor and manage your deployment projects.

A single dashboard allows you to monitor deployment environments, deployment status, releases and time/date stamps. It also allows you to edit and deploy your projects.

On this page:
- Manage deployment projects
- View a particular deployment project
  - Project summary
  - Releases

Manage deployment projects

Deployment projects are viewed and managed from the 'All deployment projects' screen. Think of this as a dashboard for all your deployment projects.

Choose Deploy > All deployment projects from the Bamboo header:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deployment project</th>
<th>Environment</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>Completed</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo OnDemand</td>
<td>bdog.atlassian.net</td>
<td>bamboo-5.4-OD-8196-36</td>
<td>Logs</td>
<td>30 Jan 2014 05:36 AM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>master test</td>
<td>Never deployed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo Release Old</td>
<td>WWW</td>
<td>5.1-m1_5</td>
<td>Logs</td>
<td>20 Nov 2013 12:41 PM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basa 2.0 -</td>
<td>Planet Earth</td>
<td>Pattycake</td>
<td>Logs</td>
<td>22 Nov 2013 11:13 AM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demo - Deployment for Atlassian Plugins</td>
<td>Dogfodging 2.12 branch</td>
<td>atlassian-plugins-release-5.7</td>
<td>Logs</td>
<td>25 Sep 2013 07:07 AM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dogfodging 2.13 branch</td>
<td>Atlassian Plugins 2.13.3_(108)</td>
<td>Logs</td>
<td>30 Jan 2014 01:19 AM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Staging</td>
<td>atlassian-plugins-release-5.7</td>
<td>Logs</td>
<td>25 Sep 2013 07:15 AM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Production</td>
<td>Never deployed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The project list includes the following useful information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the deployment project.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Environment
The environment the release was deployed to.

### Release
The release artifact that Bamboo deployed, or attempted to deploy, to that environment.

### Result
The result of the deployment, and a link to the associated logs.

### Completed
The time and date stamp of the deployment, or the time spent deploying so far.

### Actions
Actions you can perform: Edit and Deploy

Broken deployments are indicated by a vertical red line beside the environment name and a red deployment icon.

#### View a particular deployment project

You can drill down into an individual deployment project from the 'All deployment projects' screen (described above) by clicking on the name of a project. You can check on the following:

- Associated environments
- Release history
- Project artifacts details

#### Project summary

The **Project summary** tab shows the status of the environments associated with the deployment project:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>Completed</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dogfooding 2.12 branch</td>
<td>atlassian-plugins-release-5.7</td>
<td>Logs</td>
<td>25 Sep 2013 07:07 AM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dogfooding 2.13 branch</td>
<td>Atlassian Plugins 2.13.3 (108)</td>
<td>Logs</td>
<td>30 Jan 2014 01:18 AM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staging</td>
<td>atlassian-plugins-release-5.7</td>
<td>Logs</td>
<td>25 Sep 2013 07:15 AM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production</td>
<td></td>
<td>Never deployed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Details include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Environment</td>
<td>The environment the release was deployed to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release</td>
<td>The release artifact that Bamboo deployed, or attempted to deploy, to that environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Result</td>
<td>The result of the deployment, and a link to the associated logs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>The time and date stamp for the deployment, or the time spent deploying so far.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actions</td>
<td>Actions you can perform: Edit and Deploy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Releases

The **Releases** tab provides details of the currently deployed release and the history of previous releases associated with the deployment project:
Manually starting a deployment

Bamboo can start deployments either by automated triggers, or by starting the process manually.

Manually executing the deployment gives you the ability to start the process at your convenience, without having to wait for a scheduled event or trigger to take place.

On this page:

- Manually starting a deployment

Manually starting a deployment

Deployment projects can be viewed and managed from the 'All deployment projects' screen. Think of this as a dashboard view of all of your deployment projects. You can also start deployments from this screen.

To manually start a deployment

1. From the 'All deployment projects' screen, click on the associated Deploy icon:

   🔄

   The 'Deployment preview' screen will display:
The deployment preview screen comprises a left hand 'settings' side and a right hand preview and information side. Bamboo will attempt to display a preview or information to reflect the choices made on the settings side.

2. Using the radio buttons, decide if you wish to create a new release from a build result or promote an existing release to the deployment environment.

3. If creating a new release from a build result:
   a. Check the Create new release from build result radio button
   b. Select the Plan branch you wish to use:

   ![Create new release from build result](image)

   c. Select the Build result you wish to use:

   ![Create new release from build result](image)

   You can only choose results from successful builds, and since (and including) the last release created on this particular branch.

   d. Check that the name of your release is correct:

   ![Create new release from build result](image)

   If you need more information about where the default name comes from, click on the 'i' icon.

   e. Click Start deployment

4. If promoting an existing release:
   a. Check the Promote existing release to this environment radio button
4. **b.** Select the **Plan branch** you wish to promote (optional):

![Plan branch dropdown]

- Create new release from build result
- Promote existing release to this environment

**Plan branch**

Filter releases by plan branch

- Master
- Atlassian Plugins 2.12
- Atlassian Plugins 2.13

- |

**Release**

- Atlassian Plugins 2.13-3_(51)
- Atlassian Plugins 2.13-3_(53)
- Atlassian Plugins 2.13-3_(52)
- Atlassian Plugins 2.13-3_(51)
- Atlassian Plugins 2.13-3_(50)
- Atlassian Plugins 2.13-3_(49)
- Atlassian Plugins 2.13-3_(48)
- Atlassian Plugins 2.13-3_(47)
- Atlassian Plugins 2.13-3 (46)
- |

4. **c.** Select the release that you wish to promote:

![Release dropdown]

- Create new release from build result
- Promote existing release to this environment

**Plan branch**

Filter releases by plan branch

- Master
- Atlassian Plugins 2.12
- Atlassian Plugins 2.13

**Release**

- Atlassian Plugins 2.13-3_(51)
- |

4. **d.** Click **Start deployment**

**Deployments from branches**

What are branch deployments?

Branching is an important tool in your development process, as it offers a very powerful way to let developers work in isolation on different aspects of a software project.

**Plan branches** represent a build for a branch in the version control system. The plan branch inherits all of the configuration defined by the parent plan, and any new branch created is automatically built and tested using the same build configuration as the parent. When the plan branch build succeeds, it can be automatically or manually merged back into master.

Branch deployments extend plan branches by allowing users to create a deployment release from any plan branch.

Learn more about branching strategies: **Bamboo Best Practice - Branching and DVCS**

---

**On this page:**

- What are branch deployments?
- Why should we use branch deployments?
- Branch deployment use cases
  - Manual branch deployment
  - Automated branch deployment

**Related pages:**

- Understanding deployment releases
- Creating and configuring a deployment project
- Manually starting a deployment
- Triggers for deployment environments

**Why should we use branch deployments?**
Bamboo deployments allow a plan branch to be deployed to a non-critical test environment before the feature code is merged back to master. This means that the feature code can be thoroughly tested and evaluated in a real server environment before the developer merges back the changes to master.

Developers should consider using branch deployments whenever they want to keep their in-progress development code separate from the master code, but want to test it within a deployable environment.

Learn more about deployment releases and how deployment releases work.

The following diagram shows a typical deployment branch example.

1. The developer creates a new branch off of the master and a plan branch is automatically created for the new branch in Bamboo
2. The developer commits code against the branch and the plan branch automatically builds the changes
3. Following a successful build, they then deploy the results of builds #3 and #4 into a test environment for thorough testing
4. When satisfied that all of the tests have been passed, the developer manually merges their feature branch back into master
5. Now that the changes are in master — sporting the new feature — a new release can be created and deployed to the mainline environments (e.g. QA, Staging and Production).

Branch deployment use cases

Branch deployments should only ever be triggered into safe testing environments - they should never be triggered into production-like environments such as Staging, QA or Production.

Learn more about Creating and configuring a deployment project.

There are two typical strategies for managing branch deployments:

1. Manual branch deployment
2. Automated branch deployment

Let's examine each strategy in more detail.

**Manual branch deployment**

Let's assume a developer is using a plan branch to work on a new feature for a product. They reach a point in development where the new code needs testing in a server environment.

1. The developer successfully builds and tests the code using Bamboo. Let's call this Build #1
2. When a successful build occurs, it's ready to deploy by creating a new release for Build #1 and deploying it to the testing environment
3. When deployed, the developer thoroughly tests their new code. When satisfied that all of the tests have been passed, the developer can merge the changes back into master.

Learn more about Manualy starting a deployment.

Automated branch deployment

Let's consider another developer who is also using a plan branch to work on a new feature for the product. They decide to automate the branch deployment so that it isn't triggered manually.

1. The developer successfully builds the code, including the new code they have been working on. Let's call this Build #2
2. The developer doesn't want to deploy manually, so uses Bamboo's automated triggering to set up a strategy to deploy the plan branch into a deployment test environment. Two options are available:

a. use Bamboo’s cron based scheduling to deploy at a specified time and date:

b. use Bamboo to trigger a deployment upon the successful completion of a build plan:
3. The developer sets up the triggering strategy to best match working practices. Once the trigger is reached, the plan branch build is deployed to the test environment.

4. When deployed, the developer thoroughly tests their new code. When satisfied that all of the tests have been passed, the developer can merge the changes back into master.

**Remember:** Plan branch code should only be merged back to master AFTER testing of the branch feature code is complete AND successful.

Learn more about [Triggers for deployment environments](#).

### Getting feedback

Getting immediate feedback about build results is the essence of continuous integration. Furthermore, getting reports on activity of your development team can give you deep insights into your process efficiencies and schedule risks.

#### Notifications

Bamboo can send notifications to your team about the success or failure of their builds in a number of ways:

- The Wallboard
- Email
- RSS feeds
- Instant messaging

#### Reports

Bamboo provides various reports about the build activity of your development team:

- Summary statistics for all users
- Build results for an author
- Comparison charts for authors
- Comparison charts for plans
- Clover code-coverage for a job
- Clover code-coverage for a build

### Notifications

Bamboo can send notifications about build results so that you can find out immediately about the success or failure of your builds.

You can get notifications in different ways:

| Bamboo Wallboard | Show build results on a dedicated monitor.  
| See [Displaying the wallboard](#). |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Email (e.g. GMail) | Get build results in your inbox.  
| See [Configuring notifications](#). |
Instant messaging (e.g. HipChat, Google Talk) | Send notifications to your dev chat room. See Configuring notifications.
--- | ---
RSS feeds | Get aggregated key information about your builds. See Subscribing to RSS feeds.

See also Changing your notification preferences.

Displaying the wallboard

A development team can benefit from setting up a dedicated monitor to display Bamboo’s latest build results using the Bamboo wallboard.

The Bamboo wallboard can display the latest results for:

- all plans that you have permission to see.
- just your favorite plans.
- plans filtered by plan label.

The branches wallboard displays the status of all the branches and the plan that the branches belong to.

On this page:
- How do I do that?
- Notes

Related pages:
- Getting feedback
- Using the Bamboo Dashboard

How do I do that?

Log in to Bamboo, if necessary.

Go to the Dashboard.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All plans</td>
<td>Wallboard &gt; All Plans</td>
<td>Alternatively, use the following URL in your browser, replacing ‘bambooserver’ with the real name of your Bamboo server: <a href="http://bambooserver:8080/bamboo/telemetry.action">http://bambooserver:8080/bamboo/telemetry.action</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Favorite plans</td>
<td>Wallboard &gt; Favorite Plans</td>
<td>Only users who have logged in to Bamboo can specify and access favourites. Alternatively, use the following URL in your browser, replacing ‘bambooserver’ with the real name of your Bamboo server: <a href="http://bambooserver:8080/bamboo/telemetry.action?filter=favourites">http://bambooserver:8080/bamboo/telemetry.action?filter=favourites</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filtered plans</td>
<td>Wallboard &gt; Filtered Plans</td>
<td>You need to have set up a plan filter first. See Using the Bamboo Dashboard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

- You will only be able to display those plans that you have permission to see.
• Once you are viewing the wallboard in your browser window, set your browser to 'full screen' mode to make the wallboard fill your entire screen. (Use F11 for common browsers on Windows and UNIX/Linux-based systems and Shift+Cmd+F for Firefox on Mac OS X.)
• If you are going to display the wallboard permanently, you may want to ask your Bamboo administrator to create a user who has only a limited set of permissions.
• If your wallboard is displayed on a touchscreen (such as an iPad) or its content can be accessed with a 'human interface device', such as a mouse, then touching or clicking a build result on the wallboard shows more information about that build.

Screenshot: More information from a build result on the wallboard

Acceptance Test JDK 1.6

Bamboo
12 hours ago

Tests: 203 passed
Duration: 71 minutes

Changes: Who: Marcin Gardias
Why: BAM-7227 - Not Built Chains should be shown on the build history tab

Who: Przemyslaw Bruski
Why: BAM-6835 - Performance degradation with EC2 agents

Configuring notifications for a plan and its jobs

Notifications in Bamboo are triggered by a range of events involving a plan and its jobs, including build completion, build outcomes and comments being posted against build results. You can configure whether notifications are sent for a particular event for each plan and job, and who they are sent to.

Bamboo users can choose whether to receive their notifications via email, IM, both or neither. In general, recipients do not require Bamboo user accounts.

Adding notifications for a plan or job

Before you begin:

On this page:
• Adding notifications for a plan or job
• Notification events
• Removing notifications from a plan or job

Related pages:
• Notifications
• Configuring plans
• Changing your notification preferences
• Granting plan permissions in bulk

• You must have the ‘Edit’ permission for a plan, to add or remove notifications for it.

• You need to configure Bamboo's SMTP email and/or instant messaging capabilities before Bamboo can send notifications. If you have not configured either or both of these, a note will display on the page prompting you to set up the appropriate server(s):
  • To configure an email server for Bamboo, click Add an Email Server in the note and enter the email server details in the window that displays. See Configuring Bamboo to send SMTP Email for more information.
  • To configure an instant messaging server for Bamboo, click Add an Instant Messaging Server in the note and enter the instant messaging server details in the window that displays. See Configuring Bamboo to use Instant Messaging for more information.

To add a notification for a plan or its jobs:
1. Navigate to the configuration for the desired plan, as described on Configuring plans.
2. Click the Notifications tab.
3. Set up a new notification in the 'Add Build Notification' section as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Event</td>
<td>Select the event type you want to be notified about. Refer to the list of events (below) for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recipient Type</td>
<td>User — Enter the username of the appropriate Bamboo user, or click the icon to select from a list of users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hipchat — Enter the Hipchat API Token and Room Name. See Integrating Bamboo with HipChat for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Group — Enter the name of the appropriate Bamboo group(s).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Email Address — You can use email to send notifications to a person who is not a Bamboo user. Type the appropriate email address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you specify the email address of an existing Bamboo user, the user will receive notifications even if they have elected not to receive notifications in their user preferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IM Address — This is useful if you need to send Instant Messenger (IM) notifications to a person who is not a Bamboo user. Type the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you specify a broadcast address (eg. '<a href="mailto:project-x@broadcast.chat.mycompany.com">project-x@broadcast.chat.mycompany.com</a>'), Bamboo will not know the context of relatedIM responses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you specify the IM address of an existing Bamboo user, the user will receive notifications even if they have elected not to receive notifications in their user preferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Responsible Users — The Bamboo users who have been assigned as being responsible for a broken build. See As signing responsibility for build failures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Committers — The Bamboo users who have committed code to a particular build since build was last checked out by Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Committers are notified based on the notification preferences of a Bamboo user associated with the commit's author and email, also known as source repository alias. If there's no user linked to the source repository alias, Bamboo will not be able to send notifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Watchers — The Bamboo users who have marked this plan as one of their favorites.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Add, then configure further notifications if required.
5. Click Save when you have finished.

**Screenshot: Plan build notifications**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Notification recipient</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All Builds Completed</td>
<td>Nathan Py (user)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failed Builds And First Successful</td>
<td><a href="mailto:bob@work.com">bob@work.com</a> (email address)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notification events**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan Events</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All Builds Completed</td>
<td>Bamboo will send a notification whenever the plan build finishes, regardless of the plan build's result. This notification is recommended for any plans whose latest build activity is critical for people to be informed about. This is a good plan-based notification to use if you are new to Bamboo. You can change it to a less obtrusive notification option as you become more confident with continuous integration and Bamboo's build processes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Change of Build Status

Bamboo will send a notification only when there has been a change in status of the plan's build activity over consecutive plan builds — for example, only whenever a plan's latest build changes from successful to failed or vice versa (i.e. 'fixed').

- This notification option is less obtrusive than the other plan notifications mentioned above.

Failed Builds And First Successful

Bamboo will send a notification whenever:
- a build of this plan fails.
- the plan is 'fixed' (that is, the plan's latest build is successful and the previous plan build failed).

- This notification is generally suitable for the majority of plans.

After X Failed Builds

This notification allows you to specify the Number Of Failures (i.e. number of failed builds of this plan), after which Bamboo will send a notification.

- This notification option minimizes the number of messages sent by Bamboo if the plan's builds fail on a frequent basis. You can also use this event to escalate plan build problems, for example, to notify a manager when a plan build fails five times.

Comment Added

Bamboo will send a notification whenever a comment is added to a build result. The email notification will contain all comments against the plan build, whereas IM notifications will only contain the comment that triggered this notification event.

- This notification can help improve collaboration between team members. Be aware that you will not receive notifications for any comments which you post yourself.

Change of Responsibilities

Bamboo will send a notification whenever someone is added to, or removed from, the list of those responsible for a broken build.

- This notification can help improve collaboration between team members.

Job Events

All Jobs Completed

Bamboo will send a notification whenever a job build of the plan finishes, regardless of the job build's result. This notification is recommended if the latest build activity of all jobs in this plan are critical for people to be informed about.

- This is a good job-based notification to use if you are new to Bamboo. You can change it to a less obtrusive notification option as you become more confident with continuous integration and Bamboo's build processes.

Change of Job Status

Bamboo will send a notification only when there has been a change in build activity status of the jobs within this plan over consecutive plan builds — for example, only whenever the latest build of any job in this plan changes from successful to failed or vice versa (i.e. 'fixed').

- This notification option is less obtrusive than the other job notifications mentioned above.

Failed Jobs And First Successful

Bamboo will send a notification whenever:
- a build of this job fails.
- the job is 'fixed' (that is, the job's latest build is successful and the previous job build failed).

First Failed Job For plan

If multiple jobs fail in a plan, Bamboo will only send a notification for the first failing job detected by the Bamboo system.

- This is a less obtrusive notification option that informs about a failing job (and hence, plan) in the shortest possible time.

Job Error

Bamboo will send a notification whenever an error occurs in one of the plan's job build processes (i.e. the activities that Bamboo performs to run a job build). This event is not related to failures of the actual build itself (see the Failed Jobs And First Successful and Failed Builds And First Successful events above). For example, a notification will be sent if Bamboo encounters an error when connecting to the repository, or detecting changes.

Job Hung

Bamboo will send a notification whenever it determines that one of the plan's job builds has hung, according to the hung job build criteria (read more about configuring your hung job build settings).

- Use this notification to ensure that the relevant people are informed when a job build becomes unresponsive.

Job Queue Timeout

Bamboo will send a notification whenever one of the plan's job builds has been waiting in the queue for longer than the build queue timeout criteria (read more about configuring your job's Build Queue Timeout settings).

- Use this notification to ensure that the relevant people are informed when a job build is stuck in the build queue for too long.

Job Queued Without Capable Agents

Bamboo will send a notification whenever one of the plan's job builds is queued and there are no agents capable of building it.

- Use this notification to ensure that people are notified when changes to agents adversely affect your job's builds.

Removing notifications from a plan or job

You must have the 'Edit' permission for a plan, to add or remove notifications for it.

1. Navigate to the configuration for the desired Plan, as described on Configuring plans.
2. Click the Notifications tab.
3. Click Remove for each of the notifications that you wish to remove.

Configuring Bamboo to send SMTP Email
Bamboo can send email notifications about its build results. There are two steps to setting this up:

1. Configure Bamboo to send SMTP email (see below).
2. Configure a plan to send SMTP email notifications about build results (see Configuring notifications for a plan and its jobs).

**On this page:**

- Configuring Bamboo to send SMTP email
- Configuring email notifications for Gmail
- Notes

**Related pages:**

- Configuring notifications for a plan and its jobs

### Configuring Bamboo to send SMTP email

**To configure Bamboo to send SMTP email:**

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Mail Server in the left navigation column (under 'Communication'). This will display the 'Mail Server Details' page (see screenshot below).
3. Edit the mail server settings as necessary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A display-name for the email address e.g. 'SMTP Server'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Address</td>
<td>The email address from which Bamboo notifications will be sent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Subject Prefix    | The text (if any) which will be added to the start of the email subject line. For example '[Bamboo]' will result in emails with subjects like:  
|                   | - [Bamboo] TEST build 1,001 has FAILED (77 tests failed, no failures were new) : Change made by jsmith  
|                   | - [Bamboo] TEST build 1,002 was SUCCESSFUL (with 77 tests) : Change made by jsmith  |
| Email Settings    | Choose either SMTP or JNDI. See the Notes about JNDI below.                  |
| SMTP Server       | The address of the email server that Bamboo will use to send notifications e.g. 'mail.myserver.com'. |
| Username          | The login name of the account that Bamboo will use to login to the SMTP server. |
| Password          | The password of the account that Bamboo will use to login to the SMTP server. |
| JNDI Location     | Depends on your application server, and on the location of the 'mail' resource within the JNDI tree you specify. E.g.  
|                   | 'java:comp/env/mail/BambooMailServer'                                      |

4. Type a test email address in the Test Recipient Address box.
5. Click Test, and verify that a test email is received.
6. Click Save.

*Screenshot: Email Server Details*
Configuring email notifications for Gmail

Gmail.com uses TLS (SSL). A JNDI connector needs to be configured. Unfortunately Bamboo does not yet support JNDI with TLS.

To enable Gmail as your mail server:

1. Install Bamboo.
2. Add the following configuration to your BambooInstall/conf/server.xml file:

```xml

<Context path="/bamboo" docBase="${catalina.base}/atlassian-bamboo" reloadable="true">
  <Resource name="mail/GmailSmtpServer" aut="Container">
    <ResourceParameter name="type" value="javax.mail.Session" />
    <ResourceParameter name="mail.smtp.host" value="smtp.gmail.com" />
    <ResourceParameter name="mail.smtp.port" value="465" />
    <ResourceParameter name="mail.smtp.auth" value="true" />
    <ResourceParameter name="mail.smtp.user" value="<your-name>@gmail.com" />
    <ResourceParameter name="password" value="<your-pw>" />
    <ResourceParameter name="mail.smtp.starttls.enable" value="true" />
    <ResourceParameter name="mail.smtp.socketFactory.class" value="javax.net.ssl.SSLSocketFactory" />
  </Resource>
</Context>
```

---

Documentation for Bamboo 5.15
Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
Make sure that the `javax.mail-X.X.X.jar` file exists only in `<Bamboo-Install>/lib`.

- If the `javax.mail-X.X.X.jar` file doesn’t exist in the `<Bamboo-Install>/lib` directory, you must move the `javax` file installed at `<Bamboo-Install>/lib` to `<Bamboo-Install>/lib`.
- If the `javax.mail-X.X.X.jar` file already exists in the `<Bamboo-Install>/lib` directory, simply delete the `javax` file shipped with Bamboo in `<Bamboo-Install>/atlassian-bamboo/WEB-INF/lib`.

In Bamboo 5.9 the `mail-X.X.jar` and `activation-X.jar` files were included in the download archive. Starting with Bamboo 5.10:

- the `mail-X.X.jar` file has been renamed to `javax.mail-X.X.X.jar` and must be moved to `<Bamboo-Install>/lib`
- the `activation.jar` file is not required

Configure Bamboo to use a JNDI Location of `java:comp/env/mail/GmailSmtpServer`. Note that the JNDI Location is case sensitive and must match the resource name specified in `server.xml`.

Notes

You can use a mail session as an alternative to specifying mail details directly in Bamboo. You configure the mail session in your application server (e.g. in the `server.xml` file — see Locating important directories and files), and then use JNDI to look up the preconfigured mail session. JNDI has the following advantages:

- **Centralized management** - mail details are configured in the same place as database details, and may be configured through your application server administration tools.
- **Better security** - mail details are not available to Bamboo administrators through the Bamboo interface, and aren’t stored in Bamboo backup files.
- **More SMTP options** - e.g. SSL. If you want to use SMTP over SSL you will need to use JNDI.

Configuring Bamboo to use Instant Messaging

Bamboo can send Instant Messaging (IM) notifications about its build results. There are two steps to setting this up:

1. Configure Bamboo to use Instant Messaging (see below).
2. Configure a plan to send IM notifications about its build results (see Configuring notifications for a plan and its jobs).

Please note, Bamboo supports XMPP protocol for messaging. This means Bamboo can be used with Gtalk or your enterprise XMPP server.

**Related pages:**

- Configuring notifications for a plan and its jobs
- Configuring Bamboo to use Google Talk for Instant Messaging

To configure Bamboo to use Instant Messaging:

1. Click the

   ![icon] in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.

2. Click **IM Server** in the left navigation panel (under "Communication").

3. Click **Edit**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Host</strong></td>
<td>The address of your IM server (for example, ‘chat.atlassian.com’).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Port</strong></td>
<td>The TCP port that your organization uses for IM traffic (or leave this field blank to have Bamboo either perform a DNS lookup or use the default port).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Username</strong></td>
<td>The login name of the IM account from which Bamboo notifications will be sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Change password</strong></td>
<td>Select this if you have specified a username different from the currently logged-in user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resource</strong></td>
<td>An identifying name for the connection if multiple clients use the same jabber account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Requires a TLS/SSL connection</strong></td>
<td>Select this if your IM server uses SSL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Force legacy SSL</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Test Recipient Address</strong></td>
<td>You can test this configuration by entering an address and clicking <strong>Test</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Save**.

**Screenshot: Instant Messaging server details**
Configuring Bamboo to use Google Talk for Instant Messaging

If your Bamboo server has access to the internet, it can use Google Talk to send IM notifications about build results.

Before you begin:

- Google Talk does not allow IM messages to be received unless the receiver has approved the sender. Please ensure that the Gmail user specified below is approved by each Google Talk recipient. That is, ensure that the 'Host' and 'Username' have previously sent messages to each other via Google Talk.
- The Google Talk service is hosted at talk.google.com. The default port is 5222. (Note: be aware that your firewall might be blocking traffic to this port.)
- TLS is required.
- The only supported authentication mechanism is SASL PLAIN. For additional information, please see: [http://code.google.com/apis/talk/open_communications.html](http://code.google.com/apis/talk/open_communications.html)

To configure Bamboo to use Google Talk for Instant Messaging:

1. Click the ![icon](image) in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click IM Server in the left navigation panel (under 'Communication').
3. Click Edit. Modify the settings as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>Type 'talk.google.com'. (If your IM Server uses an '@googlemail.com' account, type 'googlemail.com'.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>Leave blank. Bamboo will perform a DNS lookup to figure out which port to use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>Type the login name of the Google account from which IM notifications will be sent. Starting with Bamboo 3.4, you need to include the domain name, e.g. <code>atlassianbamboo@gmail.com</code> NOT <code>atlassianbamboo</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change password</td>
<td>Select this if you have specified a username different from the currently logged-in user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource</td>
<td>An identifying name for the connection if multiple clients use the same jabber account.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Modifying notification templates

If you want to customize the layout and content of your Bamboo notifications, you can customize the templates for each of the notification types (i.e. HTML email, text email, instant message) and events (e.g. Build Commented). The notification templates are written in Freemarker.

Some content in notifications can also be configured via system properties, such as the number of log lines to include in email notifications that display log information.

Changes to notification templates only take effect after a Bamboo restart.

On this page:
- Modifying a notification template
- Configuring notifications content via system properties
- Notes

Related pages:
- Configuring Bamboo to use Instant Messaging

Modifying a notification template

To modify a notification template:

1. Locate the default notification templates in WEB-INF/classes/notification-templates/
2. Copy the notification template that you wish to modify into the templates/notification-templates folder of your Bamboo home directory, e.g. HOME/templates/notification-templates
   The filename will have formatted as: `<event name><notification type>.ftl`, e.g. AfterXFailedHTMLEmail.ftl
3. Modify the copied template, as desired. Please see the section on Working with Freemarker below for tips on updating templates.
4. Save your changes to the template. You need to restart your Bamboo server for the template changes to take effect.

Working with Freemarker

The Bamboo notification templates are written in Freemarker. The Freemarker engine allows for dynamic content generation based on the Freemarker markup tags that are used in templates. This document does not describe the Freemarker language in detail. Please see the Freemarker Online Manual for full information on using this markup language.

Generating content via Freemarker involves merging a template (*.ftl file) with a context map. You can access any data in the context map from within the template using the Freemarker markup. For the notifications we have provided a specific subset of Bamboo objects that you can access. For example,

```freemarker
#{if buildSummary.successful}
${buildSummary.buildResultKey} was successful.
#{/if}
```

If you had a successful Bamboo build with build result, BAM-1234-1, the above markup would return the following text in your notification:

BAM-1234-1 was successful.

You can find more information on working with Freemarker, including Bamboo objects available from Freemarker templates, tips on writing Freemarker templates and examples in the Freemarker and notification templates document.

Configuring notifications content via system properties

The following system properties can be configured to control some of the content that is included in notifications (e.g. the number of log lines to include in email notifications that display log information). For instructions on how to configure a system property, please refer to the Starting Bamboo page.

Before you begin:

The system properties below do not add content to notifications. You still need to ensure that your notification templates contain the relevant entities to display the content. For example, changing the `bamboo.notifications.logLinesToInclude` property will not add log information to your notifications. It only modifies the number of log lines displayed in notification templates that already include logs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Requires a TLS/SSL connection</td>
<td>Select this.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force legacy SSL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test Recipient Address</td>
<td>You can test this configuration by entering an address and clicking Test.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
bamboo.notifications.logLinesToInclude | Specifies the number of log lines to include in email notifications that display log information. | 100

### Notes

- **Bamboo does not validate notification templates.** If you have incorrectly formatted the markup text in the template, Bamboo will still use the template to send out notifications. If this happens, your users may receive notifications with unreadable or missing information, as well as error messages. Errors will also be posted to your logs.

### Freemarker and notification templates

Notification templates in Bamboo can be modified to customize the format and content of your notifications. The templates are written in Freemarker. This page is intended to complement the Modifying notification templates page and contains information on the Bamboo objects available from Freemarker templates, tips on writing Freemarker templates and examples.

#### Changes to notification templates only take effect after a Bamboo restart.

**On this page:**
- Accessing Bamboo data
- Special considerations when working with Freemarker

**Related pages:**
- Configuring Bamboo to use Instant Messaging
- Modifying notification templates

### Accessing Bamboo data

Each individual notification has a different subset of data that can be accessed from the Freemarker templates. You can find information on the objects available in our javadocs below.

- Build Completed Notification ("All Completed Builds" and "Failed and First Success")
- After X Failed Builds Notification
- Build Commented Notification
- Build Hung Notification
- Build Error Notification

### Special considerations when working with Freemarker

#### Never assume data exists

Unfortunately Freemarker is not very forgiving if data does not exist or is null. Hence, you will need to check whether information exists before adding it to a page. The sample code below shows how you can validate for non-existent data.

```freemarker
[#if issue.jiraIssueDetails.summary?has_content][#/if]
[#if issue.jiraIssueDetails.summary??][#/if]
${issue.jiraIssueDetails.summary?if_exists}
${issue.jiraIssueDetails.summary!}
```

#### Check the encoding of your information

Freemarker has built-in utilities for escaping special characters. These could be characters that you deliberately do not want to be interpreted as HTML, or data that could potentially contain malicious content. The sample code below shows how you can escape characters in Freemarker.

```freemarker
${commit.comment?html} // for data to be encoded to be displayed as html
${commit.author?url} // for data to be encoded for a url
```

You can find more information on these utilities in the [official Freemarker documentation](https://freemarker.apache.org/docs/howto.html).

#### Use white space carefully

When editing text email content and instant message content, you need to be very careful with spacing and line breaks. Any spaces and line breaks that you have entered in the Freemarker template will also exist in the evaluated content. Freemarker provides you with some utilities to remove white space, so that you can still retain some formatting in the templates.

More information can be found in the [official Freemarker documentation](https://freemarker.apache.org/docs/howto.html).

### Freemarker examples

Below are some raw examples of additional information that you can add to your emails.
Please note, these examples are intended to demonstrate the use of Freemarker and how to access Bamboo objects. You will need to modify these examples to include your desired formatting and make it work with your data.

List files in a commit

```freemarker
[if buildSummary.commits.size() > 0]
    [list buildSummary.commits as commit]
        [if commit_index gte 3][break][/if] //only shows 3 commits
        Author: <a href="[@ui.displayAuthorOrProfileLink commit.author/]">
            ${commit.author.fullName?html}
        </a>
        <br/>
        Comment: ${commit.comment?html}
        <br/>
        [if commit.guessChangeSetId()?has_content]  
        Revision: ${commit.guessChangeSetId()?html}
        <br/>
        [/if]
    [/list]
[/if]

[if commit.files?has_content]  
Files:
    [list commit.files as file]
        ${file.cleanName} [if file.revision?has_content](${file.revision})
        <br/>
    [/list]
[/if]

[else]
    This build does not have any commits.
[/if]
```

Provide test error details
Working with Instant Messenger (IM) notifications

Bamboo can send you notifications about build results for a particular plan. Each plan's recipients are specified by a Bamboo administrator, but you can choose whether you would like to receive your Bamboo notifications via email and/or an instant messenger (IM) service such as Atlassian's HipChat. See Integrating Bamboo with HipChat.

As well as receiving IM notifications, you can interact with Bamboo using IM, as described on this page.

On this page:
- Labeling a build result using IM
- Commenting about a build result using IM

Related pages:
- Changing your notification preferences
- Configuring Bamboo to use Instant Messaging
- Getting feedback

Labeling a build result using IM

To label a build result using IM:
In your Instant Messenger client, type your comment in the following format:

```
label [build key] <labels>
```

Entering a build key is optional. If none is specified, Bamboo will look up the last time it corresponded with you and the build that was in context. The context gets updated when you specify a build key in your command, and when Bamboo sends you a notification about a particular build.

Commenting about a build result using IM

To comment on a build result using IM:
In your Instant Messenger client, type your comment in the following format:
Entering a build key is optional. If none is specified, Bamboo will look up the last time it corresponded with you and the build that was in context. The context gets updated when you specify a build key in your command, and when Bamboo sends you a notification about a particular build.

Screenshot: Interacting with Bamboo using IM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:07</td>
<td>bamboo</td>
<td>Test - Blah build 59 has FAILED (0 tests failed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://localhost:8085/browse/TST-BLAH-59">link</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:37</td>
<td>edwin</td>
<td>comment sorry guys, this one is my fault</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:37</td>
<td>bamboo</td>
<td>TST-BLAH-59 commented.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:37</td>
<td>edwin</td>
<td>label broken_by_me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:37</td>
<td>bamboo</td>
<td>TST-BLAH-59 labelled 'broken_by_me'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:06</td>
<td>bamboo</td>
<td>Test - Blah build 60 has FAILED (0 tests failed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://localhost:8085/browse/TST-BLAH-60">link</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:06</td>
<td>edwin</td>
<td>comment grrr this is still breaking!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:08</td>
<td>bamboo</td>
<td>TST-BLAH-60 commented.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:08</td>
<td>edwin</td>
<td>label broken_by_me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:08</td>
<td>bamboo</td>
<td>TST-BLAH-60 labelled 'broken_by_me'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:09</td>
<td>edwin</td>
<td>comment TST-BLAH-59 This is caused by a lot of stupidity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:39</td>
<td>bamboo</td>
<td>TST-BLAH-59 commented.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subscribing to RSS feeds

Bamboo aggregates key information about your builds into RSS feeds. You can subscribe to these feeds using any feed reader.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RSS feed scope</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Set up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All plans</td>
<td>• All build results</td>
<td>1. Go to the Dashboard's All Plans tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Failed build results</td>
<td>2. Locate the RSS icon at the bottom of the screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Right-click either all builds or all failed builds, and copy its URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4. Paste the URL into your RSS reader.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A specific plan</td>
<td>• All build results</td>
<td>1. Go to the plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Failed build results</td>
<td>2. Locate the RSS icon at the bottom of the screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Right-click either all builds or all failed builds, and copy its URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4. Paste the URL into your RSS reader.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build results with a particular label</td>
<td>• All build results</td>
<td>1. Go to the Dashboard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Failed build results</td>
<td>2. Go to any plan that has a label (this may involve trial and error).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Click on any label, near the top of the screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4. Click All Labels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5. Click the label of interest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6. Locate the RSS icon at the bottom of the screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7. Right-click Feed for builds labeled and copy its URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8. Paste the URL into your RSS reader.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
System level notifications

System level notifications in Bamboo are triggered by a small range of system level events. This means that you don't need to configure these notifications for each plan you are running, as they are applied globally across the Bamboo platform.

Bamboo users can choose whether to receive their notifications via email, IM, both or neither. In general, recipients do not require Bamboo user accounts.

On this page:

- Add system level notifications
- Change system notifications

Add system level notifications

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Select System notifications to display the System notification configuration screen.
3. Click Add notification to add a new notification:

Add a new notification

Event: Job Hung

Notification sent for any job that has hung while building. Can be configured globally and per plan.

Recipient type: User

User: Start typing to select

Use this notification to ensure that the relevant people are informed when a job build becomes unresponsive.

Use this notification to ensure that people are notified when changes to agents adversely affect your job's builds.

Use this notification to ensure that the relevant people are informed when a job build is stuck in the build queue for too long.

4. Complete the Event and Recipient type fields using the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Event Type</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job Hung</td>
<td>Bamboo will send a notification whenever it determines that one of the plan's job builds has hung, according to the hung job build criteria. Use this notification to ensure that the relevant people are informed when a job build becomes unresponsive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job queued without capable agents</td>
<td>Bamboo will send a notification whenever one of the plan's job builds is queued and there are no agents capable of building it. Use this notification to ensure that changes to agents adversely affect your job's builds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job queue timeout</td>
<td>Bamboo will send a notification whenever one of the plan's job builds has been waiting in the queue for longer than the build queue timeout criteria. Use this notification to ensure that the relevant people are informed when a job build is stuck in the build queue for too long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recipient Type</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>Enter the username of the appropriate Bamboo user, or click the icon to select from a list of users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hipchat</td>
<td>Enter the Hipchat API Token and Room Name. See Integrating Bamboo with HipChat for more information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Group** — Enter the name of the appropriate Bamboo group(s).

**Email Address** — You can use email to send notifications to a person who is not a Bamboo user. Type the appropriate email address. Note that:
- If you specify the email address of an existing Bamboo user, the user will receive notifications even if they have elected not to receive notifications in their user preferences.

**IM Address** — This is useful if you need to send Instant Messenger (IM) notifications to a person who is not a Bamboo user. Type the appropriate IM address. Note that:
- If you specify a broadcast address (e.g., `project-x@broadcast.chat.mycompany.com`), Bamboo will not know the context of related IM responses.
- If you specify the IM address of an existing Bamboo user, the user will receive notifications even if they have elected not to receive notifications in their user preferences.

**Responsible Users** — The Bamboo users who have been assigned as being responsible for a broken build. See **Signing responsibility for build failures**.

**Committers** — The Bamboo users who have committed code to a particular build since build was last checked out by Bamboo.

**Watchers** — The Bamboo users who have marked this plan as one of their favorites.

5. Click **Add** to confirm your configuration.

### Change system notifications

1. Click the **icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.**
2. Select **System notifications**:
   - Click the pencil symbol in the Actions column to edit the notification.
   - Click the cross symbol in the Actions column to remove the notification.

### Reporting

You are able to get reports about various kinds of activity in Bamboo:

| Summary statistics for all users | A list of summary build statistics for all Bamboo users, showing such things as the number of builds triggered, broken and fixed. See [Viewing build statistics for all users](#). |
| Build results for an author | Build results summaries for someone who has committed code to projects in Bamboo, including the last 10 builds, the last 10 broken and the last 10 fixed. See [Viewing build results for an author](#). |
| Comparison charts for authors | Create comparison charts of build activity for selected authors. See [Generating reports on selected authors](#). |
| Comparison charts for plans | Create comparison charts of build results for selected plans. See [Generating reports across multiple plans](#). |
| Clover code-coverage reports | See [Viewing the Clover code-coverage for a plan](#) and [Viewing the Clover code-coverage for a build](#). |

### Viewing build statistics for all users

The build statistics summary gives you an overview of the activity of Bamboo users.

#### To view summary statistics for all users:

1. Click **Reports > Authors** in the top menu bar
2. Click the **List Users** tab.

**Related pages:**
- Reporting
- Viewing build results for an author
1. **Screenshot: Users Summary**

2. **User and author statistics**

3. **Authors**

A listing of all authors who commit to projects in Bamboo. Broken means the build has failed but the previous build was successful. Fixed means that the build was successful but the previous build has failed. The Score is a difference of fixed and broken builds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Triggered</th>
<th>Failed</th>
<th>% failed</th>
<th>Broken</th>
<th>Fixed</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Adrien Ragot&quot;</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>24%</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Chris Fuller&quot; (Chris Fuller)</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>47%</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Matthias Schreck)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[unknown]</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>78%</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aatkins (Tony Atkins)</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhala (Arav Bhala)</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abutfield (Anna Buttfield)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>67%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adam Jakubowski <a href="mailto:jakubowski@atlassian.com">jakubowski@atlassian.com</a> (Adam Jakubowski)</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adam Jakubowski (Adam Jakubowski)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adecico (Adrian Decico)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>56%</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator <a href="mailto:Administrator@colkep">Administrator@colkep</a></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrih Decico</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>41%</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrian Decico</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>29%</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrian Hempel</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrien &lt;adrien@adrien-em3.(none)&gt;</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrien Ragot <a href="mailto:ragot@atlassian.com">ragot@atlassian.com</a> (Adrien Ragot)</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrian Decico</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrian Decico <a href="mailto:decoico@atlassian.com">decoico@atlassian.com</a> (Adrian Decico)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Viewing build results for an author**

An author's source-code repository login must have been associated with their Bamboo user profile before you can see their build results in Bamboo.

To view build results for a particular author:

1. Click **Reports** in the top menu bar, then **Authors**.
2. Click the **List Authors** tab.
3. Click an author's name to see statistics and recent build results for the author:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Details</th>
<th>The author's user details.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Builds Summary</td>
<td>A statistical summary of all the author's builds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last 10 Builds</td>
<td>The last 10 builds that were triggered by this author.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last 10 Broken</td>
<td>The last 10 builds that were triggered by this author, where the build failed and the previous build for the same plan was successful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last 10 Fixed</td>
<td>The last 10 builds that were triggered by this author, where the build was successful and the previous build for the same plan failed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. **Related pages:**

- Viewing build statistics for all users

6. **Generating reports on selected authors**

An **author** is any person who checks in code to a repository that is associated with a Bamboo **plan**. An author need not be a Bamboo user.

**Generating a report on selected authors**

To generate a report on selected authors:
1. Click **Reports** in the top menu bar, then **Authors**.
2. Click the **Statistics** tab.
3. Set the report parameters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Report</td>
<td>Choose from the available reports, described below. Additional reports may have been configured by your Bamboo administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authors</td>
<td>Choose the authors on whom you want to report. Use the &lt;Ctrl&gt; key to select multiple authors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group By</td>
<td>Choose the time scale for the horizontal axis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Submit**.

**On this page:**
- Generating a report on selected authors
- Selected author report types

**Related pages:**
- Viewing build results for an author
- Getting feedback
- Notifications

**Selected author report types**

The following standard report types are available.

**Build activity**

**Build Activity**

![Chart showing build activity over time for different authors](chart.png)

Number of build failures
Number of Build Failures

Number of builds broken

Number of builds fixed
Generating reports across multiple plans
Bamboo provides a report generator that enables you to compare build statistics across one or more plans, using a variety of different metrics.

**Generating plan reports**

To report on build statistics per plan:
1. Click **Reports** in the top menu bar.
2. Set the report parameters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Report</td>
<td>Choose from the available reports, shown below. Additional reports may have been configured by your Bamboo administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build plans</td>
<td>Choose the plans on which you want to report. You can use the &lt;Ctrl&gt; key to select multiple plans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group By</td>
<td>Choose the time scale for the horizontal axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date Filter</td>
<td>Choose the time period on which to report. Use <strong>Select Range</strong> to set a custom range.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click **Submit**.

**On this page:**
- Generating plan reports
- Plan report types
  - Build activity
  - Build duration
  - Percentage of successful builds
  - Time to fix
  - Number of tests
  - Number of build failures
  - Clover lines of code
  - Clover code coverage

**Related pages:**
- Generating reports on selected authors
- Viewing build results for an author
- Getting feedback

**Plan report types**

Some of the standard plan report types are illustrated below.

**Build activity**

**Build Activity**

How many builds are triggered in a given time period? This indicates the level of activity for the plan.

![Build Activity Chart](image-url)
Build duration

**Build Duration**

The report shows how long your build takes over time. Is it getting slower or faster?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build Duration Chart</th>
<th>Data Table</th>
<th>Builds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Percentage of successful builds

**Percentage of Successful Builds**

Comparing success percentages gives you an idea of how stable a plan is compared to one another. 100% means your plan is always rock solid. 0% means something is seriously wrong.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Percentage of Successful Builds Chart</th>
<th>Data Table</th>
<th>Builds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Time to fix

**Time to Fix**

How long does it take on average to fix problems? This provides an indication of how quickly breakages are resolved for the plan.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chart</th>
<th>Data Table</th>
<th>Builds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

![](chart1.png)

**Number of Tests**

How many tests does your build have? This provides a rough indication of the level of testing over time for the plan.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chart</th>
<th>Data Table</th>
<th>Builds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

![](chart2.png)
Number of build failures

Number of Build Failures
How many builds are being broken? A high value indicates a relatively unstable plan that tends to be broken often.

Clover lines of code

Clover Lines of Code
Provides an indication of the size of the code base for the build.
Viewing the Clover code-coverage for a plan

If you use Atlassian's Clover and your job specifies a Clover directory (see Enabling the Clover add-on), you will be able to view the Clover coverage summary for the plan.

To view the Clover coverage summary for a plan:

1. Locate the plan summary on the Bamboo Dashboard.
2. Click the Clover tab. The Code Coverage Summary information includes:
   - Latest coverage from the most recent build as a percentage and bar representation (aggregated results from all Clover-enabled jobs).
   - A link to detailed HTML reports.
   - Coverage History chart showing changes in percentage Code Coverage over time.
   - Lines of Code History chart showing changes in LOC over time.

Screenshot: the Clover tab for Bamboo 5.6.1 and later.
Code Coverage Summary

65%

Latest coverage

Coverage History

Lines of Code History

Note:

Screenshot: the Clover tab up to Bamboo 5.6.0.
1. Charts are only generated when build results from at least a 2-day span are available. Where shorter time spans are available, the user will receive a warning stating "Insufficient data in range to draw the chart."

2. Where your plan contains multiple jobs with Clover, then Code Coverage and Lines of Code values are aggregated from all these jobs.

3. **Bamboo 5.6.0 and older:** If your plan contains multiple jobs with Clover, the View latest Clover HTML report link will point to the default job only. In order to see other reports, you must go to the specific job summary, as described in Viewing the Clover code-coverage for a build.

### Viewing the Clover code-coverage for a build

If your organization uses the Atlassian Clover code-coverage tool, Bamboo can record code-coverage details (i.e. the percentage of code covered by tests) for each build result.

This is only available if the build's plan specifies a Clover directory (for details please refer to the Enabling the Clover add-on).

Bamboo also provides data on code-coverage trends for a plan over a period of time. For details see the Related pages at right.

**Related pages:**
- Working with build results
- Enabling the Clover add-on
- Generating reports across multiple plans

### Clover HTML report for a job

Where Clover generates an HTML report (created by default in automatic integration), you can examine the report in the build job summary page. To view the report:

1. Go to the plan summary.
2. Select the relevant build number.
3. Select the appropriate job.
4. Click the Clover tab to open the report. If a job produces more than one report, a list is shown and you can switch between them.

**Screen shot: the Clover tab for Bamboo 5.6.1 and later.**

---

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
Clover statistics report for a job

If your build generates a Clover XML report but not the HTML report, then the Clover Report artifact is not available on the Artifacts tab, however the build job summary page will contain a few code coverage statistics:

1. Go to the plan summary.
2. Select the relevant build number.
3. Select the appropriate job.
4. Click the Clover tab to open the report:

TIP: This usually happens for manual Clover integration. In case you want to see full Clover report, configure it as described on Enabling the Clover add-on page.

References

The content of the Clover HTML report is discussed in detail on the Clover Documentation Home - 4. Understanding Reports page. For completeness, an example Clover Code Coverage HTML report is shown below.
Troubleshooting

The Clover tab shows the directory listing instead of the HTML report

Please check which artifact handler you use. The Amazon S3 Artifact Handler serves files on a one-by-one basis, instead of exposing all files as a static web site. To change this, open Configure plan and on the Miscellaneous tab select the Use custom artifact handler settings check-box. Then select Server-Local Artifact Handler for shared and non-shared artifacts and finally re-run the build. See this bug report: CL OV-1560.

Integrating Bamboo with Atlassian applications

You can integrate Bamboo with the following Atlassian applications:

When Bamboo is integrated with a JIRA application, you can:

- See Bamboo development activity in JIRA applications. Learn more...
- View detailed Bamboo build result information
- View detailed Bamboo deployment information
- Run a Bamboo build when releasing a JIRA Software Server version
- Have Bamboo automatically link a plan branch with an issue
- View the JIRA application issues linked to a build result
- View the Bamboo builds that relate to a JIRA application project or version
When Bamboo is integrated with HipChat, you can get notifications from Bamboo for things like:

- when a build passes or fails
- when you are assigned responsibility for a breaking build
- when a build you are responsible for has been fixed
- when a manual stage of a build is ready to be run
- when a deployment starts, and completes

...and many other notification events.

When Bamboo is integrated with Bitbucket Server:

- Bamboo will automatically run a build when changes are pushed to the Bitbucket repository, without needing to configure polling.
- Bamboo will automatically update plan branches when a developer pushes a new branch to the repository (or deletes a branch).
- You can click through to Bitbucket to see the commit diff for all files that are part of the changeset.
- Bitbucket commits that are part of a build are displayed in Bamboo.
- Build results are notified to Bitbucket (and displayed for the associated commits and pull requests).

When Bamboo is integrated with Confluence, you can add the following Bamboo gadgets to a Confluence wiki page:

- Bamboo Charts
- Bamboo Plan Summary Chart
- Bamboo Plan Status

When Bamboo is integrated with FishEye, you can:

- view the code changes that triggered a build
- explore a failed build in FishEye and jump directly into the changeset that broke the build
- view the history of the changeset to see what the author was trying to fix
- analyze the change using the side-by-side diff view
- open the relevant files in your IDE.

When Bamboo is integrated with Clover, you can:

- View code-coverage details (i.e. the percentage of code covered by tests) for each build result
- View code-coverage trends for a job over a period of time
- View the code-coverage summary for the job.

See The big list of Atlassian gadgets.

**Linking to another application**

Application Links (sometimes called "AppLinks") is a bundled plugin that allows you to link Atlassian applications to each other. Linking two applications allows you to share information and access one application's functions and resources from within the other.

Atlassian recommends only using OAuth authentication for application links, because of the greater security inherent with that protocol. We no longer recommend the Trusted Applications and Basic authentication types.

Linking Bamboo to other applications allows you to include information from other applications in Bamboo builds. For example, if you link JIRA and Bamboo, you can create actionable JIRA issues from a Bamboo build, view the JIRA issues linked to a build result, and add Bamboo gadgets to a JIRA dashboard.

Create an application link

1. **Click the**
1. In the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Choose Application Links in the left navigation bar. You'll see any application links that have already been set up.
3. Enter the URL of the application you want to link to, then click Create new link.
   - If you check The servers have the same set of users... then this link will be configured using OAuth (with impersonation) authentication.
   - If you are not an admin on both servers you won't be able to set up a 2-way (reciprocal) application link. If you want to go ahead and create a 1-way link anyway, clear the I am an administrator on both instances checkbox.
4. Use the wizard to finish configuring the link. If the application you are linking to does not have the Application Links plugin, you must supply additional information to set up a link with OAuth authentication.

When you complete the wizard, the Application Links plugin will create the link between your applications using the most secure authentication method that is supported between the two applications. See the Application Links User Guide for more information.

The new link will appear on the "Configure Application Links" page, where you can:
- Edit the settings of the application link (for example, to change the authentication type of the link) using the Edit icon.
- Specify the default instance if you have multiple links to the same type of application (for example, to multiple JIRA servers) using the Make Primary link. See Making a primary link for links to the same application type for more information.

Impersonating and non-impersonating authentication types

**OAuth authentication**

OAuth authentication redirects a user to log in to the remote application, after which tokens generated on their behalf are used to authorize requests made from the local application. The remote application handling the request uses the access permissions of the account with which the user logged in on that remote application.

Typical scenarios include:
- You are setting up an application link between two applications that do not share the same set of users.
- You want to continue using a link to an application that now allows public sign-on and the link was previously configured with a shared userbase. You can update your application link by changing OAuth (impersonation) to OAuth when editing the application link.

See OAuth security for application links for more information.

**OAuth with impersonation**

Atlassian OAuth with impersonation makes it easy for your users to benefit from the deep integrations between Atlassian applications:
- they're automatically authenticated on the other application and don't get asked to authorize requests.
- they'll only see the information that they have permission to see.

Impersonating authentication makes requests on behalf of the user who is currently logged in.

Note that Atlassian OAuth with impersonation can only be used for application links between Atlassian applications. Furthermore, it should only be used when the two applications share the same userbase, typically managed with an external directory using LDAP.

A typical scenario is:
- You've set up an application link but your users still have to authenticate regularly. This can occur when the application link has been configured to not share the same userbase. If those applications do share the same userbase, you can update your application link by selecting OAuth (impersonation) when editing the application link.

See OAuth security for application links for more information.

**Troubleshooting**

Having trouble integrating your Atlassian products with application links? We've developed a guide to troubleshooting application links, to help you out. Take a look at it if you need a hand getting around any errors or roadblocks with setting up application links.

**Integrating Bamboo with JIRA applications**

Integrating Bamboo with Atlassian's JIRA applications combines Bamboo's continuous integration capabilities with your issue tracker to give you a unified view of your software development project.

Configuring Bamboo and JIRA applications to work together simply requires you to set up an application link (two-way) between a JIRA application and Bamboo.

Note that application links have nothing to do with using a JIRA application as a user directory for Bamboo; these 2 configurations can exist separately. See also Linking to another application.
Benefits

See Viewing Bamboo activity in a JIRA application for a full description of the benefits of integrating JIRA applications with Bamboo.

Briefly, these are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Integration feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Compatibility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Development panel</td>
<td>See Bamboo development activity</td>
<td>JIRA 6.2+ Bamboo 5.4+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build result dialog</td>
<td>View detailed Bamboo build result information</td>
<td>JIRA 6.2+ Bamboo 5.4+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deployment dialog</td>
<td>View detailed Bamboo deployment information</td>
<td>JIRA 6.2+ Bamboo 5.4+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run Bamboo builds</td>
<td>Run a Bamboo build when releasing a JIRA application version</td>
<td>JIRA 4.4+ Bamboo 3.0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linked plan branches</td>
<td>Have Bamboo automatically link a plan branch with an issue</td>
<td>JIRA 4.4+ Bamboo 3.0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JIRA issues view</td>
<td>View the issues linked to a build result</td>
<td>JIRA 4.4+ Bamboo 3.0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JIRA Projects</td>
<td>View the Bamboo builds that relate to a JIRA application project or version</td>
<td>JIRA 4.4+ Bamboo 3.0+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you are using an earlier version of Bamboo and/or a JIRA application, you can also download an older version of the JIRA Bamboo plugin from the Atlassian Plugin Exchange. However, we strongly advise you to upgrade JIRA to version 6.2 or later and Bamboo to version 5.4 or later, to get the most out of Bamboo - JIRA applications integration.

Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JIRA 6.2+</td>
<td>Earlier versions of JIRA do not support the Development panel feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo 5.4+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JIRA/Bamboo Applink</td>
<td>See below for details about application links.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permissions</td>
<td>Users will require the 'View development tools' permission in JIRA applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issue key</td>
<td>The issue key must be included in the commit message, and must use the default issue key format.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration

Integration of Bamboo and a JIRA application requires an application link between them. The application link needs both 2-legged (2LO) and 3-legged OAuth (3LO) authentication:

- 2LO is required for information from Bamboo to be included in the summaries in the Development panel.
- 3LO checks that a user has authenticated with Bamboo before they get to see the information in any of the details dialogs. Users who can see summarized data in the Development panel may not have permission to see all the information that contributed to those summaries and which is visible in the details dialogs. That is, the details dialogs respect the access permissions that users have in the connected Bamboo server.

When you create a new link between a JIRA application and Bamboo, both 2-legged (2LO) and 3-legged OAuth (3LO) are enabled by default.

You will need to set up a two-way link. That is, select the Create a link back to this server option when adding the application link.

An existing application link between JIRA and Bamboo may need to have 2LO authentication explicitly enabled.

An existing application link between a JIRA application and Bamboo (that perhaps used Trusted Apps authentication) needs to have 2-legged authentication (2LO) enabled for both outgoing and incoming authentication, so that information from the application can be included in the Development panel summaries.

When updating an older application link to use OAuth, 3-legged authentication is applied by default, but you need to explicitly enable 2LO. Enable 2-legged authentication for the application link from within JIRA as follows:

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
1. Go to the JIRA admin area and click Applications > Application Links.
2. Click Edit for the app link with the other application.
3. For both Outgoing Authentication and Incoming Authentication:
   a. Click OAuth
   b. Check Allow 2-legged OAuth.
   c. Click Update.

The application link update process will involve logging you into the other application for a short time to configure that end of the link, before returning you to JIRA application.

Note that:
- Application links must have Trusted Applications and Basic Access authentication disabled. The Development panel in JIRA only supports OAuth authentication.
- You will need to configure 2-legged OAuth enabled for both incoming and outgoing authentication in both JIRA application and Bamboo for your application link.
- See Configuring authentication for an application link for more information.
- If you are running Bamboo behind a proxy, you may need to configure the AJP connector.

Notes

Known issues
- JIRA applications and Bamboo cannot run in the same Tomcat instance due to a known issue with the Bamboo plugin for JIRA applications (see JIRA-19662).
- When integrating Bamboo with a JIRA application, you should not change the JIRA application project key format from the default, as Bamboo only supports the default project key format.

If you need further help, please raise a support request in our support system, in the Bamboo project. You may also want to view articles in the Bamboo Knowledge Base and browse our forums.

Viewing linked JIRA application issues

If your organization uses Atlassian's JIRA application and your administrator has integrated Bamboo with a JIRA application, you will be able to view the issues that have been linked to a build. This provides an easy way to jump to relevant issues in the JIRA application to see details about what the code is intended to achieve.

Linked issues can be viewed on:
- the Issues tab of the Plan Summary page, for all issues linked to the plan
- the Build Result Summary page, for just 2 of the issues linked to a build
- the Issues tab of the Build Result Summary page, for issues linked to a build.

Issue links can be created automatically by Bamboo when you specify an issue key in your build comments, labels or commit messages, or they can be added manually.

On this page:
- Viewing the JIRA issues linked to a plan’s builds
- Viewing issues for a build result

Related pages:
- Creating JIRA issues from a build
- Linking JIRA application issues to a build

Viewing the JIRA issues linked to a plan’s builds

To view the issues linked to all builds for a plan:

1. Navigate to the desired plan, as described on Configuring plans.
2. Click the Issues tab. A list of all of the issues linked to builds for the plan are displayed, sorted by build date. You can constrain the list using the build filter (e.g. ‘Showing last 25 builds’) next to the tabs.

- Click the issue key to view the issue in the JIRA application.
- Click the N related builds link (where N is a number of builds) to view the builds linked to that issue on the Builds tab in the JIRA application.
Viewing issues for a build result

To view the issues linked to a particular build result:

1. Navigate to the build results for the plan, as described in Viewing a build result.
2. Click the build number for the desired build result.
   - Build Summary tab — the ‘JIRA Issues’ section displays up to two of the issues linked to the build.
   - Issues tab — displays all of the JIRA issues linked to the build. Click Add linked issue to link this build to an issue in a JIRA application.

Screenshot: Issues for a build result — Build Summary tab
1. **Screenshot: Issues for a build result — Issues tab**

   ![Screenshot](image)

   **JIRA Issues**

   This page shows the JIRA issues that have been linked to this build. This includes issues specified in commit messages, labels or comments, as well as issues manually linked to this build.

   **Related Issues (2 issues)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Assignee</th>
<th>Fix versions</th>
<th>Related Builds</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BDEV-484</td>
<td>mvn release new image files and redeploy all images to the prod account</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
<td>Przemek Bruski</td>
<td>Milestone Discoveries</td>
<td>36 related builds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BDEV-498</td>
<td>Error with the Streams completion service</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
<td>Przemek Bruski</td>
<td></td>
<td>81 related builds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   **Linking JIRA application issues to a build**

   If your organization uses Atlassian's JIRA and your administrator has integrated Bamboo with JIRA:

   - Bamboo will automatically link JIRA issues to builds.
   - You can manually link an issue to a build.

   **Automatically linking issues to a build**

   Bamboo will automatically link an issue to a build if you specify a JIRA issue key in a Bamboo build comment or label, or in a code commit message.

   The issue key must be of the default JIRA issue key format (that is, two or more uppercase letters ([A-Z]) ([A-Z]+), followed by a hyphen and the issue number, for example BAM-123).

   **On this page:**
   - Automatically linking issues to a build
   - Manually linking issues to a build

   **Related pages:**
   - Creating JIRA application issues from a build
   - Integrating Bamboo with JIRA applications

   **Manually linking issues to a build**

   If an issue has not been linked automatically to your build, you can manually create a link from that issue to your build.

   **To manually link a JIRA Issue to a build result:**

   ![Related links](image)
1. Go to the plan in Bamboo.
2. Click on the build number for a build result.
3. Click the Issues tab in the 'Build Result Summary'. All of the JIRA issues linked to your build will be listed.
4. Click Add linked issue.
5. Enter the JIRA issue key of the issue you want to link to this build. Please note, the issue key must be of the default JIRA issue key format (that is, two or more uppercase letters \([A-Z] [A-Z]+\), followed by a hyphen and the issue number, for example BAM-123).
6. Click Save.

Screenshot: Adding a new JIRA issue link to a build

Creating JIRA application issues from a build

When Bamboo is integrated with JIRA Software Server, you can create new issues right from your Bamboo build result. You can easily:

- Capture critical infrastructure failures that are keeping your build from passing.
- Request that a successful build be deployed to the next environment.
- Create a searchable knowledge base of failure causes and solutions.
- Log time spent on build failures and use JIRA Software dashboard gadgets to discover trends over time.

When you create an issue from Bamboo, the issue in JIRA Software links back to the build result it was created from.

To create a new JIRA Software issue from a Bamboo build:

1. On the Build Result Summary, choose Actions > Create Issue.
2. Complete the form.
3. Click Create.
Viewing Bamboo activity in JIRA applications

Overview

When Bamboo is integrated with JIRA applications, Bamboo can pass important development information back to a JIRA application. Currently Bamboo can pass JIRA application information relating to:

- Build results
- Deployment statuses

With supported versions of Bamboo and a JIRA application, this information is collated within the Development Panel. This panel summarizes the status of all work related to an issue, and can assist in identifying where an issue's build is failing, and where it has been deployed.

Example

- If you are working on issue BAM-12443, then you can see if it has been deployed to a development server yet
- A QA can also check to see if it's on their QA server and ready for testing
- A manager can see if a bug has made it to production.

Linking JIRA applications and Bamboo has the benefit of improved information exchange during your development process.

See Integrating Bamboo with JIRA applications for information about permissions and configuration.

Related pages:
- Linking issues to a build

On this page:
- Overview
- The development panel
- Viewing build result information
- Viewing deployment information

The development panel

The Development panel provides an 'at-a-glance' development information resource, and is visible to anyone with the "View development tools" project permission. The panel replaces the Builds tab and Issue deployment panel, and summarizes an assortment of development data passed to JIRA applications, from Bamboo and other Atlassian products. Examples include:

- Feature branch creation from JIRA applications
- Viewing repository branches in Bitbucket Cloud or Bitbucket Server
• Viewing commits and pull requests to Git repositories managed by Bitbucket Cloud or Bitbucket Server
• Viewing commits, branches and reviews in FishEye/Crucible
• Viewing build result and deployment information in Bamboo

Viewing build result information

The Development panel shows the status of the latest Bamboo builds related to your linked issue. Using simple status icons builds are reported as:

- all the different builds (for example, unit tests, functional tests, deploy to staging) succeeded
- at least one run failed for any build by any linked instance of Bamboo.

A build is automatically linked to an issue if one of the build's commits includes the issue key in its commit message. The issue key must be included in the commit to activate this feature.

Click the associated builds link to see additional build details including the name of the plan branch and how many tests passed or failed:

FUSE-113: 1 build

Viewing deployment information

A deployment to an environment, such as Production or testing, is linked to an issue if a commit associated with the deploy contains the issue key in its commit message. The Development panel details the environments that associated Bamboo builds have been deployed to.

The issue key must be included in the commit to activate this feature.

Click the Deployed link to see deployment details including the deployment status, release date, and click through to view a particular deployment:
Integrating builds with your issues workflow

You can configure a workflow in JIRA applications, so that the workflow is actioned when a build completes successfully. For example, you can configure a workflow to automatically progress an issue from 'Building' to 'Resolved' status. You could also configure the same workflow to progress an issue from 'Building' to 'Build Broken' status if a build related to that issue fails. A build is related to an issue if the build involves a commit that had the issue key added to commit message.

On this page:
- Understanding the 'Builds Workflow'
- Using the 'Builds Workflow' in your projects
- Modifying the 'Builds Workflow'
- Integrating build transitions into your custom workflow

A Builds Workflow exists in JIRA applications and it incorporates the common statuses and transitions (see the Understanding the 'Builds Workflow' section below).

- If you are new to JIRA applications and Bamboo, we recommend that you use the 'Builds Workflow' as modifying an existing workflow is not a trivial task.
- If you have an existing workflow that you would like to modify to include build statuses and transitions, we recommend that you take a copy of the 'Builds Workflow' and modify it.
- If you want to integrate Bamboo transitions into your existing workflow, you can edit your workflow to add the transitions. We recommend that you avoid doing unless you have a good understanding of the workflows.

Understanding the 'Builds Workflow'

Diagram: The default Builds Workflow

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#</th>
<th>Transition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Start Progress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Stop Progress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Resolve Issue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Close Issue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Reopen Issue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Wait for Build</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Build Passed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Build Failed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The 'Wait for Build', 'Build Passed' and 'Build Failed' transitions are Bamboo-specific transitions:

- **'Wait for Build'** — This transition will be triggered when code is committed for this issue (and a build started) using the `#wait` or `wait-for-build` commit command. Note, you must manually enter the commit command in your commit message to trigger the transition, as described in Using Smart Commits.
- **'Build Passed'** — This transition will be automatically triggered when a build for this issue passes.
- **'Build Failed'** — This transition will be automatically triggered when a build for this issue fails.

**Using the 'Builds Workflow' in your projects**

The following instructions describe how to create a workflow scheme that uses the 'Builds Workflow', and then associate the workflow scheme with a project. If you want to add the 'Builds Workflow' to an existing workflow scheme, ignore steps 4-6 below and assign the workflow to your existing workflow scheme instead.

**Procedure**

1. Creating a workflow scheme that uses the Builds Workflow
   
   1. Log in as an admin for your site.
   2. In the administration console of a JIRA application, go to Workflows > Workflow Schemes. The 'Workflow Schemes' page will display.
   3. Click Add workflow scheme.
   4. Enter a Name and Description for your workflow scheme and click Add. Your workflow scheme will be created and you will see the page for editing the workflow.
   5. Click Assign a workflow.
   6. In the Issue Type dropdown, select the issue types that you want the 'Builds Workflow' to apply to. In the Workflow drop-down list, select Builds Workflow. Click Add.

2. Associating the workflow scheme with your project

   1. Log in as a user with the 'JIRA application Administrators' global permission.
   2. Go to the Project Summary page. Keyboard shortcut: g + g + start typing 'projects'.
   3. Click Workflows on the left of the 'Project Summary' page (you can also click the More link in the 'Workflows' section in the middle of the screen). The 'Workflows' page is displayed, indicating the current workflow scheme used by the project.
   4. Click Switch Scheme to display the 'Associate Workflow Scheme to Project' page.
   5. Select the relevant workflow scheme from the Scheme list and click Associate to begin the migration process. The 'Builds Workflow' will be associated with your project via your workflow scheme.
   6. Click Acknowledge to finish the process.
   7. Select the project you wish to use the 'Builds Workflow' with.

   Issues (of the issue types specified in your workflow scheme) will now use the 'Builds Workflow'. If you add the issue key of an issue to the commit message when committing, the issue will be automatically transitioned along the workflow when the build starts/succeeds/fails.

**Modifying the 'Builds Workflow'**

You cannot modify the 'Builds Workflow' itself because it is non-editable. However, you can copy it and edit the copy if the original 'Builds Workflow'...
Workflow' doesn't suit the needs of your project. You can then activate the new (copied) workflow by adding it to a workflow scheme and then associating that scheme with your projects.

**Copying and editing the 'Builds Workflow'**

1. Log in as an admin for your site.
2. In the JIRA administration console of a JIRA application, go to Schemes > Workflow Schemes. The 'Workflow Schemes' page will display.
3. Click View all workflows.
4. Locate the 'Builds Workflow' and click Copy in the 'Operations' column.
5. Enter a Name and Description for the new (copied) workflow scheme and click Copy. The new workflow will be created and displayed on the 'View Workflows' page.
6. You can now edit and activate your new workflow as needed. See Configuring Workflow and Activating workflow in the JIRA Server Administration documentation for more information on how to do this.

**Integrating build transitions into your custom workflow**

If modifying a copy of the 'Builds Workflow' is not feasible for your projects, it is possible to manually modify your existing workflow to include the Bamboo transitions. It is recommended that you avoid doing so unless you have a good understanding of the workflows.

To integrate build transitions into your existing custom workflow, edit your workflow and configure appropriate issue statuses and issue transitions as described below.

**Configuring your issue statuses**

We recommend that you set up issue statuses for your workflow to indicate when a build related to an issue is building or the build is broken (e.g. 'Building', 'Build Broken'). There is no technical restriction preventing you from incorporating Bamboo-specific build transitions into a workflow without these intermediate states, however, in practice it will cause problems.

For example, a developer may work on an issue, and commit several times over the course of a few days for that issue. Even if earlier commits cause the build to pass, the developer may not have finished working on the issue and will need to commit more code without successful builds resolving the issue. Hence, an intermediate state (e.g. 'Building') is required which a developer will only transition the issue into (i.e. using the #build commit command), if they want the issue to be resolved from that particular build.

**Configuring your issue transitions**

Automatic issue transitioning via builds is controlled by both commit commands and Bamboo-specific transition properties in JIRA applications, as described below:

- **Commit Command** — Commit commands are mapped to transition names. Hence, if you add the 'Waiting for Build' transition to your workflow, your users will be able to automatically trigger the transition by using the #wait or #wait-for-build commit command in their commit messages.

- **Bamboo-specific transition properties**— The Bamboo-specific transition properties on the transitions that you want to be triggered when a Bamboo build passes or fails. The following properties are supported:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>build.passed.transition</td>
<td>anything</td>
<td>A transition with this property will be triggered when a build for this issue passes, and the transition is available to the issue in its current state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build.failed.transition</td>
<td>anything</td>
<td>A transition with this property will be triggered when a build for this issue fails, and the transition is available to the issue in its current state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build.passed.resolution</td>
<td>any valid resolution, e.g. 'Fixed'</td>
<td>The issue resolution will be set as specified by this property, if the transition with this property is triggered by a build.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Please note, you cannot set up common transition properties in JIRA applications. You will need to manually re-enter the transition property on each transition that you want it added to.

**Integrating Bamboo with HipChat**

Bamboo can send notifications about build results to HipChat so you can find out immediately about the success or failure of your builds.

You get Bamboo notifications in your chat room for events such as:

- when a build passes or fails
- when you are assigned responsibility for a breaking build
- when a build you are responsible for has been fixed
- when a manual stage of a build is ready to be run
- when a deployment starts, and completes

...and many other notification events.

You can configure Bamboo to send notifications to rooms whether they're hosted by Atlassian on hipchat.com, or by your own organization's HipChat Server instance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related pages:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Instant Messenger (IM) notifications</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
Configure Bamboo plans to send notifications to a room in hipchat.com

Configure Bamboo plans to send notifications to your HipChat server

To get notifications in rooms hosted by Atlassian on hipchat.com:

1. Sign up for a HipChat account.
2. Set up plan notifications in Bamboo that use the 'HipChat' Recipient type.

Note that Bamboo does not yet support using HipChat as a global IM server. HipChat can only be used in the plan notifications area as shown here:

![Add a new notification dialog](image)

Configure Bamboo plans to send notifications to your HipChat server

You can get Bamboo plan notifications in rooms hosted by your own organization's HipChat Server instance:

1. Install the HipChat Server's SSL root or primary certificate in `<JAVA_HOME>/jre/lib/security/cacerts` on the Bamboo host machine and restart Bamboo. Applicable if you're using a self-signed or internally signed SSL certificate.
2. Specify the `hipchat.api.url` system property that is used when Bamboo is starting, by adding `-Dhipchat.api.url=<my_hipchat_api_url>` to your JVM arguments as per Configuring system properties.
3. Set up plan notifications in Bamboo that use the 'HipChat' Recipient type.
4. Use a HipChat V1 token in the API Token field.
5. Choose your Room Name or ID.
6. Check the Notify flag to send pop-up notification to the room.

For more information about setting up your own HipChat server, see System Requirements for HipChat Server.

Integrating Bamboo with Confluence

Integrating Bamboo with Atlassian’s Confluence combines Bamboo’s continuous integration capabilities with your wiki to give you a unified view of your software development project.

When Bamboo is integrated with Confluence, you can add the following Bamboo gadgets to a Confluence wiki page:

- Bamboo Charts
- Bamboo Plan Summary Chart
- Bamboo Plan Status

Configuring Bamboo and Confluence to work together simply requires you to set up an application link (two-way) between Confluence and
Before you begin

Version Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Version Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo</td>
<td>Version 5.2 or later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confluence</td>
<td>Version 3.5.9 or later</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Set up an application link

Before you begin:

- Security Considerations — The instructions below recommend setting up authentication for the application link between Confluence and Bamboo. Please ensure that you read the Security implications for each authentication type (Applinks documentation). For example, if you use basic HTTP authentication for the Confluence to Bamboo link, you must specify a user that Confluence uses to log in to Bamboo. Hence, this user's Bamboo permissions will be used (not the Bamboo permissions of the user who is currently logged into Confluence).

Follow the Linking to Another Application instructions to configure the application link in Confluence.

- You will need to set up a two-way link, i.e. select the 'Create a link back to this server' option when adding the application link.
- You will need to configure either OAuth or Trusted Apps authentication for your application link. See Linking to Another Application instructions.

Congratulations! You have successfully integrated Bamboo and Confluence.

Try your new configuration

You may wish to read about how to use these two applications together in the following pages:

- Add Bamboo gadgets to Confluence, see Registering External Gadgets (Confluence documentation).

Notes

If you need further help, please raise a support request in our support system, in the Bamboo project. You may also want to view articles in the Bamboo Knowledge Base and browse our forums.

Integrating Bamboo with Stash

When you integrate Bamboo with Atlassian's Bitbucket Server (formerly Stash) Git repository management solution, commit, branch, build and deployment information is shared for users of both applications.

On this page:

- Benefits of integration
- Configuration

Benefits of integration

We recommend integrating with Bitbucket Server.

Stash tells Bamboo when to build

- When a developer pushes to a repository the build is automatically started.

Stash tells Bamboo when to update plan branches to match changes in repository branches
When a developer pushes a new branch to a repository a branch plan is automatically created.
When a developer deletes a branch in a repository, the branch plan is automatically deleted or disabled.

Stash commits are displayed in the relevant Bamboo builds

- In Bamboo, you can view all of the commits involved in the build, allowing you to accurately track changes:

![Code commits](image)

- Simply click on a changeset to go to Stash, where you can see the commit diff for all of the files that are part of the build.

Bamboo notifies Stash automatically about build results

- Build notifications are automatically enabled when you link a build plan to a Stash repository.
- Notifications are sent to all linked Stash servers.
- You see the build results status for a commit when viewing any commit or pull request in Stash, so you can easily check the build status of a branch when deciding whether to merge changes:

![Commit build](image)

- Click a build status icon in Stash to see further details:
Stash displays the overall status of the build results. The status is 'passed' if all the different builds (for example, unit tests, functional tests, deploy to staging) have succeeded, and 'failed' if at least one run failed for any of those.

For example, when viewing the Commits tab for a Stash project, you will see icons that indicate the status of the latest build results. The red 'fail' icon is displayed if there is at least one failed build run for the commit.

Note that the legacy Stash notification type is deprecated – it is still available in Bamboo 5.6 but will be removed in Bamboo 5.7.

Configuration

There are just a few simple configuration steps to get the integrations described above with Bamboo (versions 5.6 and later) and Stash (versions 3.1 and later).

Bamboo will be automatically configured to respond to repository events published by Stash, and to notify Stash about build results – you don't have to configure repository polling for new commits anymore in Bamboo, or set up dedicated web hooks in your Stash instance.

1. Create an Application Link
   You only need to do this once for each pair of Stash and Bamboo instances.
   See Linking to another application.
   Once linked, all the Stash repositories are available to your plans in Bamboo.

2. Choose the Stash repository for the Bamboo plan
   Create a build plan (if necessary) and specify the repository in the plan (or job) configuration.
   See Bitbucket Server (formerly Stash) for more information about using Bitbucket Server source repositories in Bamboo.

3. Build!
Integrating Bamboo with FishEye

When Bamboo is integrated with Atlassian’s FishEye, you can:

- view the code changes that triggered a build
- explore a failed build in FishEye and jump directly into the changeset that broke the build
- view the history of the changeset to see what the author was trying to fix
- analyze the change using the side-by-side diff view
- open the relevant files in your IDE.

A Bamboo administrator can make links to individual source-code files available by connecting the plan to the source repository, as described below.

You can specify repositories at the following levels in Bamboo:

- global – repositories are available to all plans in Bamboo.
- plan – repositories are available to all jobs in the Bamboo plan.
- job – repositories are available to all tasks in the Bamboo job.

The recommended approach is to set up linked source repositories at the global level – see Linking to source code repositories.

Related pages:
- Integrating Bamboo with Atlassian applications
- Linking to Another Application

To integrate Bamboo with FishEye:

1. Navigate to the repository configuration for a linked repository, plan or job. See Linking to source code repositories.
2. Click on a repository name, and then click Advanced Options.
3. Choose Web Repository > FishEye.
4. Specify the FishEye URL, Repository Name and Repository Path.

Screenshot: Specifying a FishEye project in Bamboo

If links to FishEye are broken in Bamboo builds, make sure that the Repository Path configured in Bamboo matches the Repository Location (under ‘SCM Details’) in FishEye, for the specific repository.

Integrating Bamboo with Bitbucket Server

When you integrate Bamboo with Atlassian's Bitbucket Server Git repository management solution, commit, branch, build and deployment information is shared for users of both applications.

On this page:

- Benefits of integration
- Configuration

Benefits of integration

When Bamboo (versions 5.6 and later) and Bitbucket Server are integrated, you and your team get all the following advantages:

Bitbucket Server tells Bamboo when to build
• When a developer pushes to a repository the build is automatically started.

Bitbucket Server tells Bamboo when to update plan branches to match changes in repository branches

• When a developer pushes a new branch to a repository a branch plan is automatically created.
• When a developer deletes a branch in a repository, the branch plan is automatically deleted or disabled.

Bitbucket Server commits are displayed in the relevant Bamboo builds

• In Bamboo, you can view all of the commits involved in the build, allowing you to accurately track changes:

• Simply click on a changeset to go to Bitbucket Server, where you can see the commit diff for all of the files that are part of the build.

Bamboo notifies Bitbucket Server automatically about build results

• Build notifications are automatically enabled when you link a build plan to a Bitbucket Server repository.
• Notifications are sent to all linked Bitbucket servers.
• You see the build results status for a commit when viewing any commit or pull request in Bitbucket Server, so you can easily check the build status of a branch when deciding whether to merge changes.
• Click a build status icon in Bitbucket Server to see further details:

Bitbucket Server displays the overall status of the build results. The status is ‘passed’ if all the different builds (for example, unit tests, functional tests, deploy to staging) have succeeded, and ‘failed’ if at least one run failed for any of those.

For example, when viewing the Commits tab for a Bitbucket Server project, you will see icons that indicate the status of the latest build results. The red ‘fail’ icon is displayed if there is at least one failed build run for the commit.

Note that the legacy Bitbucket Server notification type is deprecated – it is still available in Bamboo 5.6 but will be removed in Bamboo 5.7.

Configuration

There are just a few simple configuration steps to get the integrations described above with Bamboo (versions 5.6 and later) and Bitbucket Server.

Bamboo will be automatically configured to respond to repository events published by Bitbucket Server, and to notify Bitbucket Server about build results – you don't have to configure repository polling for new commits anymore in Bamboo, or set up dedicated web hooks in your Bitbucket Server instance.
1. **Create an Application Link**

You only need to do this once for each pair of Bitbucket Server and Bamboo instances.

See [Linking to another application](#).

Once linked, all the Bitbucket Server repositories are available to your plans in Bamboo.

2. **Choose the Bitbucket Server repository for the Bamboo plan**

Create a build plan (if necessary) and specify the repository in the plan (or job) configuration.

To connect to a Bitbucket Server repository, select **Bitbucket Server / Stash** and provide the Bitbucket Server details.

You must **enable the SSH access** on Bitbucket Server, otherwise the integration features won't work and you will have to provide an alternative HTTP repository type to connect to the Bitbucket Server repository.

[BAM-15464](#): Provide HTTP(S) authentication method option for Stash type repository

See [Bitbucket Server](#) for more information about using Bitbucket Server source repositories in Bamboo.

3. **Build!**

## Managing your user profile

You can manage your user details, password, notifications preferences and other preferences using your user profile.

**To change your personal details:**

1. Go to your name (the 'Profile' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Profile**.
2. Click **Edit Profile**.
3. Update your personal details as required.
Note that if your user profile is managed using a single sign-on application, like Atlassian's Crowd, you will only be able to edit your Instant Messaging Address and Source Repository Alias.

**Related pages:**
- Changing your password
- Changing your notification preferences
- Associating your author name with your user profile

### Changing your password

**To change your Bamboo password:**

1. Go to your name (the 'Profile' menu) at the top of the page and choose Profile.
2. Click Change Password.
3. Complete the form.

*If your password is managed via a single sign-on application, like Atlassian's Crowd, this function will not be available.*

### Changing your notification preferences

Notifications in Bamboo are triggered by a range of events for a plan, including build completion, build outcomes and comments being posted against build results. You can choose whether to receive notifications by email, IM, both or neither.

You can see which notifications are currently applicable to you, in your user profile: go to your avatar (the 'Profile' menu) at the top of the page, choose Profile, and then click the Notifications tab.

You must have the 'Edit' permission for a plan to add or remove notifications for it.

**Related pages:**
- Configuring notifications for a plan and its jobs
- Managing your user profile

**To change your notification preferences:**

1. Go to your avatar (the 'Profile' menu) at the top of the page and choose Profile.
2. Click Notifications, then Edit notification preferences, on the right.
3. Choose an option from How would you like Bamboo to send you notifications. If you choose one of the IM options, you also need to specify an Instant messaging address on the Personal Details tab.
4. Choose an Email format option.
5. Click Save.

*Screenshot: User profile*

### Associating your author name with your user profile

An author is any person who checks in code to a repository that is associated with a Bamboo plan. An author need not be a Bamboo user. Your Author Name is your login name for the source-code repository. This is the identity that the SCM associates with tasks you perform on the repository. However, if this is not the login you use for Bamboo, then Bamboo may not be able to make the connection between your SCM login and your Bamboo login. See also Managing authors.

When your Bamboo user profile is associated with your author name, then Bamboo is able to:
- match your SCM activity with your Bamboo activity.
- show information about your recent builds on your 'My Bamboo' tab.
- show a User Details tab in your 'Author' information.

To associate your author name with your user profile:

1. Go to your name (the 'Profile' menu) at the top of the page and choose Profile.
2. Click Edit Profile.
3. Select your author name from the Source Repository Aliases list. If your name does not appear in the list, click Add Alias. Note that your author name (alias) need not be identical to your user name.
4. Click Save.

You can link more than one author name to a Bamboo user name.

Related pages:
- Managing your user profile
- Managing authors

Bamboo variables

Variables can be used to make values available when building plans in Bamboo.

- **Build-specific variables** are evaluated by Bamboo dynamically at build time. The source of a build-specific variable can either be a Bamboo property or one of the default plugins (assuming it is enabled).
- **Deployment variables** are available when deploying a project.
- **System variables** also apply across your entire Bamboo instance and inherit their values from system or environment variables of the same name.
- **Global variables** are defined across your entire Bamboo instance, and have the same (static) value for every plan that is built by Bamboo. See Defining global variables.
- **Plan variables** are similar to global variables, but are defined for specific plans. Plan variables override global variables with the same name. You can also override a plan variable for a build if you trigger the build manually. See Defining plan variables.

Using variables

Variables can be used in all fields of a task or deployment, with the exception of password fields. Use the following format when referencing a variable:

\${bamboo.variableName}\n
You can override a plan variable for a build, if you trigger the build manually. See Triggering a plan build manually.

⚠️ You cannot reference a variable from another variable in Bamboo, i.e. "double de-referencing". See this knowledge base article for more information.

Defining custom variables

You can define your own custom variables, using a similar format to that above, however you cannot create a variable name that is already in use by Bamboo.

For information on how to define your own variables in Bamboo, see:

- Defining global variables
- Defining plan variables
- Defining deployment environment variables

On this page:
- Using variables
- Defining custom variables
- Build-specific variables
- Build dependency variables
- Deployment variables
- Releases variables
- System variables
- JIRA applications variables
- Examples
- Specifying capabilities as variables
- Deprecated variables
Build-specific variables

The following build-specific variables are available by default:

- **System variables** apply across your entire Bamboo instance and inherit their values from system or environment variables of the same name.
- In the variable names from the table, `<position>` is an optional parameter that specifies the position of the repository in the plan's repository list. If omitted, the first repository in the list is used.
- Third-party repository plugins can expose their own variables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build-specific variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.buildKey</td>
<td>The job key for the current job, in the form PROJECT-PLAN-JOB, e.g. BAM-MAIN-JOBX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planKey</td>
<td>The key of the current plan, in the form PROJECT-PLAN, e.g. BAM-MAIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.shortPlanKey</td>
<td>The short key of the current plan (without project part), e.g. MAIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.shortJobKey</td>
<td>The short key of the current job (without project and plan parts), e.g. JOBX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.buildResultKey</td>
<td>The result key when this job executes, in the form PROJECT-PLAN-JOB-BUILD e.g. BAM-BOO-JOB1-8, where '8' is the build number. For deployment projects this variable will not have the JOB component e.g. PROJ-TP-6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.buildResultsUrl or bamboo.resultsUrl</td>
<td>The URL of the result in Bamboo once the job has finished executing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.buildNumber</td>
<td>The Bamboo build number, e.g. 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.buildPlanName</td>
<td>The Bamboo job name e.g. Some Project name - Some plan name - Some job name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planName</td>
<td>The current plan's name e.g. Some project name - Some plan name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.shortPlanName</td>
<td>The current plan's name without project part, e.g. Some plan name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.shortJobName</td>
<td>The current job's name without project and plan parts, e.g. Some job name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.buildTimeStamp</td>
<td>The time when build was started in ISO 8601 format e.g. 2010-01-01T01:00:00.000+01:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.agentId</td>
<td>The ID of the agent that the deployment is executed on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.agentWorkingDirectory</td>
<td>The path to the working directory on the agent, for example <code>&lt;HOME&gt;/xml-data/build-dir</code>. The agent working directory is not the same as the build working directory described below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.buildworking.directory</td>
<td>The working directory on which the build is being executed, for example <code>&lt;HOME&gt;/xml-data/build-dir/AVT-JOB1</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.ManualBuildTriggerReason.userName</td>
<td>The user who triggered the manual build.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Generic repository variables**

- bamboo.planRepository.<position>.branchName
  - The name of the branch in the repository (depends on availability from the VCS used) e.g. default
### bamboo.planRepository.<position>.name
The name of the repository, as shown in the repository for the plan e.g. Mercurial.

### bamboo.planRepository.<position>.revision
The revision used to build this release. Format depends on the VCS used.

### bamboo.planRepository.<position>.previousRevision
The previous revision number (this might not exist, for example for the initial build).

### bamboo.planRepository.<position>.type
The type of the repository, as defined by a repository plugin e.g. hg, svn, git

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subversion</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.username</td>
<td>User name, used for repository authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.repositoryUrl</td>
<td>The repository URL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CVS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.last.update.time</td>
<td>The last updated timestamp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.last.update.time.label</td>
<td>The last updated timestamp to be used as a label for post build result labeling. The spaces in the cvs version string are replaced with '_'.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perforce</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.revision.number</td>
<td>The change set number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.username</td>
<td>User name, used for repository authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.port</td>
<td>Port used for repository communication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.client</td>
<td>Client used for repository communication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Git</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.branch</td>
<td>The branch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.repositoryUrl</td>
<td>The repository URL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mercurial</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.repositoryUrl</td>
<td>The repository URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.branch</td>
<td>The branch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planRepository.&lt;position&gt;.username</td>
<td>User name, used for repository authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- System variables also apply across your entire Bamboo instance and inherit their values from system or environment variables of the same name.
- In the variable names from the table above, <position> is an optional parameter that specifies the position of the repository in the plan's repository list. If omitted, the first repository in the list is used.
- Third-party repository plugins can expose their own variables.

### Build dependency variables

The following build dependency variables are also available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build-specific variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.dependency.parent.#</td>
<td>Allows a child build to query the build key of the triggering parent build, where # represents the position in the build tree - 0 at the top, 1 the following, and so on. The <code>$(bamboo.dependency.parent.0)</code> variable can be viewed in the child plan's metadata tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.dependency.parent.total</td>
<td>The total # of parent builds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Deployment variables

Bamboo manages a number of standard reserved variables that are available when deploying a project.

Variables later in the following list override the previous ones in case of repeating names:

- global variables
- release variables as defined below
- user variables defined at environment level
- the autogenerated variables in the following table:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.agentId</td>
<td>The id of the agent that the deployment is executed on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.agentWorkingDirectory</td>
<td>The path to the working directory on the agent. This is not the same as the Bamboo working directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.build.working.directory</td>
<td>The path to the working directory for Bamboo. This is used by both the build plan and the deployment project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.environment</td>
<td>The name of the environment that the release is to be deployed to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.project</td>
<td>The name of the deployment project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.rollback</td>
<td>True if the release being deployed is older than the release being replaced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.release</td>
<td>The name of the release that is being deployed. Either .release or .version can be used - both return the name of the release being deployed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.version</td>
<td>The name of the release that is being deployed. Either .release or .version can be used - both return the name of the release being deployed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.release.previous</td>
<td>The name of the release that is being replaced (if available). Either .release or .version can be used - both return the name of the release being replaced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.deploy.version.previous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.resultsUrl</td>
<td>The URL to the screen in Bamboo that displays build results.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can generate variables of your own, using a similar format, however you cannot create a variable that is already in use by Bamboo. See [Defining deployment environment variables](#) for more information.

### Releases variables

Bamboo makes the following types of variables available for deployment releases:

- Snapshots of values for [global variables](#)
- Snapshots of values for [plan variables](#)
- Snapshots of values of repository variables
- The autogenerated release variables in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.buildNumber</td>
<td>The build result from which the release is created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.buildResultKey</td>
<td>The key of the build result from which the release is created e.g. KUNG-FOO-JOB1-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planKey</td>
<td>The key of the plan related to the release e.g. KUNG-FOO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.planName</td>
<td>The name of the plan related to the release e.g. Kung - Foo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.shortPlanKey</td>
<td>The short key of the plan related to the release (without project part), e.g. MAIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.shortPlanName</td>
<td>The plan's name without project part, e.g. Some plan name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that several of the variables in the above table are actually those associated with the build plan.

### System variables

The usage format for all system variables is:

```
${system.<variable>}
```

For example, if you have a system variable `MYPATH=C:\MyPath;` you can use a Bamboo system variable `system.MYPATH` which will inherit the same value as the system variable.

> **i** In older Bamboo versions using 'PATH' in the Environment Variables field (of a Script task) doesn’t set the windows PATH variable, whereas using 'Path' sets Path and PATH in cmd shell.

#### Using variables in bash

Bamboo variables are exported as bash shell variables. All full stops (periods) are converted to underscores. For example, the variable `bamb oo.my.variable` is `@bamboo_my_variable` in bash. This is related to File Script tasks (not Inline Script tasks).
JIRA applications variables

Note that these variables can be accessed from a Bamboo build only when that build was triggered by releasing a version in JIRA Software Server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JIRA variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>${bamboo.jira.baseUrl}</td>
<td>The URL of your JIRA application server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${bamboo.jira.projectKey}</td>
<td>The key of the triggering JIRA application project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${bamboo.jira.projectName}</td>
<td>The name of the triggering JIRA application project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${bamboo.jira.version}</td>
<td>The release version of the triggering JIRA application project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${bamboo.jira.username}</td>
<td>The username of the user who triggered the release build.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

Maven examples

For example, you may want your Maven 2 version to be determined by Bamboo. In Maven 2 pom.xml you may have:

```xml
...  
<groupId>com.atlassian.boo</groupId>
<artifactId>boo-test</artifactId>
<packaging>jar</packaging>
<version>1.1.${bambooBuildNumber}-SNAPSHOT</version>
...  
```

You can then specify the following in the Goal field of your build plan:

```
clean package -DbambooBuildNumber=${bamboo.buildNumber}
```

When the command runs, Bamboo will replace the buildNumber with the actual number (e.g. 1102), which will be passed to the underlying Maven build to use. The command will then produce a jar that looks like this: boo-test-1.1.1102-SNAPSHOT.jar.

Ant examples

You can then specify the following in the Target field of your build plan:

```
-f build.xml -DbambooBuildNumber=${bamboo.buildNumber}
```

When the command runs, Bamboo will replace the buildNumber with the actual number (e.g. 1102), which will be passed to the underlying Ant build to use.

Specifying capabilities as variables

You can also specify a capability to be used in a similar way to a global variable.

The format of the capability should be as follows:

```
${bamboo.capability.<capability_key>}
```

For example,
Using capabilities

Global and Build-Specific Variables can be used in a specific fields of your build plan, as specified above. For capabilities,

- **System Capabilities** are available to all of these fields, (i.e. global and build-specific).
- **Agent Capabilities** (i.e. agent-specific and shared/server capabilities) are available only to the build-specific fields. (i.e. not available to Repository URL, CVS Root or Branch name.)

For example,

If you wanted to specify a system variable, but have it set to different values on each agent, do the following:

- Set the following as a system environment variable field on the Builder tab:

`$\{bamboo.capability.that\_system\_variable\}`

- Specify the system environment variable as a custom capability on each of your agents, and set to the capability to the different values, as desired.

Deprecated variables

The following variables are deprecated and are subject for removal in future Bamboo releases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic repository variables</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>bamboo.repository.revision.number</code></td>
<td>The revision number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bamboo.repository.branch.name</code></td>
<td>The repository branch name (for Bamboo version 4.2 or later).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bamboo.repository.previous.revision.number</code></td>
<td>The previous revision number (might not exist, for example for the initial build).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subversion**

| `bamboo.custom.svn.revision.number` | The revision number. |
Documentation for Bamboo 5.15

1. Click the icon and select Global Variables.
2. Add, update or delete the global variables, as desired:
   - Click Add to add a new variable once you have entered the key and value for it.
   - Updates to existing rows will be saved as you move between cells in the table.
   - Click the cross icon to delete a variable. Bamboo will ask you to confirm its deletion.

Screenshot: Global variables
Note that if your new global variable contains the word 'password' then the value field will be automatically encrypted. If you change a variable to include the word 'password', then the value field will change from viewable text to an asterisk string.

**Defining plan variables**

When configuring a plan, you may want to specify variables to be used in the build process. For details on how variables are used, see Bamboo variables.

Plan variables are one type of variable that is available to you. A plan variable is defined for one specific plan, and has the same value every time that plan is built. If you want to define a variable across all plans rather than a single plan, define a global variable as described in Defining global variables.

Plan variables can be accessed by using `${bamboo.varName}`. Plan variables can also be overridden at runtime when running a manual build. For more information, see Running a plan build manually.

---

Before you begin:

- Note that plan variables override global variables with the same name.

**To define a plan variable:**

1. Click Dashboard, then the All Plans tab, then the name of the plan in the list, to get to the plan you want to edit.
2. Choose Actions > Configure Plan.
3. Click the Variables tab.
4. Add, update or delete plan variables, as desired:
   - Click Add to add a new variable once you have entered the key and value for it.
   - Updates to existing rows will be saved as you move between cells in the table.
   - Click the cross icon to delete a variable. Bamboo will ask you to confirm deletion.

*Screenshot: Adding a plan variable*
Passing Bamboo variables to a build script

Bamboo global and build specific variables can be referred to in build scripts or maven pom.xml. Bamboo variables are not directly available in the builder execution context however. They can be passed as parameters to the builder.

Maven

For example, you may want your Maven 2 version to be determined by Bamboo. In Maven 2 pom.xml you may have:

```xml
...<groupId>com.atlassian.boo</groupId>
<artifactId>boo-test</artifactId>
<packaging>jar</packaging>
<version>1.1.${bambooBuildNumber}-SNAPSHOT</version>
...
```

You can then specify the following in the Goal field of your build plan:

```
clean package -DbambooBuildNumber=${bamboo.buildNumber}
```

When the command runs, Bamboo will replace the `buildNumber` with the actual number (e.g. 1102), which will be passed to the underlying Maven build to use. The command will then produce a jar that looks like this: `boo-test-1.1.1102-SNAPSHOT.jar`.

Ant

You can pass Bamboo variables as ant parameters along with ant targets like:

```
clean test -Dbuild.key=${bamboo.buildKey}
```

In your ant build script just refer to this variable:

```
...<echo message="bamboo.buildKey = ${build.key}/>
...
```

Bamboo permissions

Bamboo provides the following types of permissions to allow fully customizable control of access to the continuous delivery workflow:

- Global permissions
- Build plan permissions
- Deployment permissions
  - Deployment project permissions
  - Deployment environment permissions

Permissions key:
Global permissions

Global permissions level control the ability to view the system, create a new build plan and use administration tools. Global application permissions are accessed from the Global permissions page within the Bamboo administration pages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User type</th>
<th>Access</th>
<th>Create plan</th>
<th>Create repository</th>
<th>Restricted admin</th>
<th>Admin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anonymous</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logged-in</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo evaluator*</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo-admin group</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Only enabled on the evaluation license

Key:
- Access - access Bamboo.
- Create plan - create a new plan in Bamboo.
- Create repository - create and manage linked repositories.
- Restricted admin - perform some administration operations and view all plans in Bamboo; this role excludes permissions that directly influence the host on which the Bamboo Server is located, however, all plan administration and agent administration is available to restricted admins.
- Admin - perform all operations and view all plans in Bamboo.

Build plan permissions

Build plan permissions allow a user to control access to the functions of the build plan. These include viewing, editing, building, cloning and administering a build plan. Build plan level permissions are accessed from the build plan configuration page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User</th>
<th>View</th>
<th>Edit</th>
<th>Build</th>
<th>Clone</th>
<th>Admin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anonymous</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logged-in</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Key:
- View - view the plan and its builds.
- Edit - view and edit the configuration of the plan and its jobs, not including permissions or stages.
- Build - trigger a manual build, or suspend and resume the plan.
- Clone - clone the plan.
- Admin - edit all aspects of the plan including permissions and stages.

Deployment permissions

Bamboo's deployments features allow you to control permissions for both deployment projects and deployment environments.

Deployment projects
Quick filters for Bamboo

Use quick filters for handy search shortcuts in your Bamboo build dashboard. Create filters based on configurable rules and never miss a build plan again.

Quick filters work only with plans displayed in Bamboo dashboard, which means that they don't include plan branches.

Configuration

Administrators can add, edit, and delete quick filters in Administration > Plans > Quick filters.

If you already have at least one filter, you can also click the cog icon in the quick filters menu:

A plan is displayed only if it matches all the rules specified for a filter.

Types of rules

Click a filter name in the build dashboard to display plans that match the rules assigned to the filter.

You can create filters with combinations of the following rules:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule type name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>By completion date</td>
<td>Displays plans that completed within a specific time frame. For example, you can display plans that completed in the last three days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By label</td>
<td>Displays plans with a specific label. You can define multiple labels. The plan is displayed when it has at least one label specified in the rule. To assign a label to a plan, click the name of a plan to display the plan summary and go to <strong>Actions &gt; Modify plan label</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By name</td>
<td>Displays plans with a specific name or plans that match a regular expression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By project</td>
<td>Displays plans that are assigned to a specific project. You can select one or more projects.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| By result status  | Displays plans that have completed with a specific result. You can select from:  
  - Successful  
  - Failed  
| By status         | Displays plans based with a specific status. You can select from:  
  - Enabled  
  - Disabled  

**Unpacking large .ZIP archives**

We noticed that the TrueZIP archiver used by Bamboo might be incompatible with some binaries for archives exceeding 4 GB. In order to extract files from a large archive, use the following script:
TrueZIP extractor

#!/bin/sh

TRUEZIP_JAR=truezip-samples-7.7.9-jar-with-dependencies.jar

if [ ! $# -eq 1 ]; then
echo "Usage:"
echo "$0 [bambooCloudExportFile]"
ext 1
fi

BAMBOO_EXPORT_FILE=$1

if [ ! -f $BAMBOO_EXPORT_FILE ]; then
echo Can not access $BAMBOO_EXPORT_FILE
exit 1
fi

if [ ! -f $TRUEZIP_JAR ]; then
echo Downloading TrueZip JAR ...
curl -s https://repo1.maven.org/maven2/de/schlichtherle/truezip/truezip-samples/7.7.9/$TRUEZIP_JAR o $TRUEZIP_JAR
fi

if [ -d bamboo-home ]; then
echo Directory bamboo-home exists, please remove it before proceeding
exit 1
fi

if [ -d database ]; then
echo Directory database exists, please remove it before proceeding
exit 1
fi

echo Unzipping Bamboo HOME directory ...
java -jar $TRUEZIP_JAR cp $BAMBOO_EXPORT_FILE/bamboo-home bamboo-home

echo Unzipping Bamboo database ...
java -jar $TRUEZIP_JAR cp $BAMBOO_EXPORT_FILE/database database

Bamboo best practices

Bamboo is a fantastic tool for continuous integration and deployment. It offers a powerful tool for automating software development, however knowledge of some of the tips and tricks that our Bamboo masters use can help reduce friction within your own development cycles.

This user guide has information about how to get the best out of Bamboo, and includes a number of scenarios and best practice approaches. Please see Using Bamboo for more information on specific Bamboo installation, configuration and usage.
Best practice topics

Using stages
Branching & DVCS
System Requirements
Sharing artifacts
Using Agents

Installing

Bamboo upgrade guide
Installing Bamboo on Linux
Installing Bamboo on Mac OS X
Installing Bamboo on Windows
Connecting Bamboo to an external database
Bamboo remote agent installation guide
Supported platforms

Bamboo Best Practice - System Requirements

The recommendations in this guide may not fit all situations and your mileage may vary.

System requirements & considerations

Note that Atlassian currently only supports Bamboo on x86 and 64 bit x86 derived hardware platforms.

Hardware considerations

CPU and memory

For Bamboo, the minimum CPU and memory requirements depend on the size and complexity of your plans. You need to consider:

- Will your builds have functional tests as part of the plans?
- Are your plans executed simultaneously? If so, how many plans will be running at any given time?
- What are the requirements for your running builds, for example do they need large amounts of memory/disk/swap space?
- How many users will be using Bamboo at any given time?
  Like any web application, the system resource needed is proportional to the load experienced by the server.
- How many local agents do you plan on running?
1. System requirements & considerations
   - Hardware considerations
     - CPU and memory
     - Storage
   - Software requirements
     - Browser
     - Java
     - Application server
     - Database
   - Other considerations
     - Database connection pool size
     - Local agents considerations
     - Remote and elastic agent considerations

See also:
- Supported platforms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User scenario</th>
<th>Usage profile</th>
<th>Bamboo server</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Individual user/Small team</td>
<td>• 10 - 20 plans</td>
<td>4 core, 2 GB RAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Little concurrent building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Light server use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium team</td>
<td>• 10 - 20 plans</td>
<td>8 core, 4 GB RAM, remote agent use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Medium concurrency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Light server use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple small teams/Large team</td>
<td>• 20 - 100s plans</td>
<td>8 core, 8 GB RAM, more remote agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Plan branches</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• High concurrency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Medium server use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple large teams/Department/Division</td>
<td>• 1000s of plans</td>
<td>16 core, 8 GB RAM, all remote agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Frequent plan branches</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• High concurrency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• High server use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Storage

The Bamboo installation size is approximately 140MB, however, Bamboo's storage requirements depend upon its usage pattern during use. The usage pattern depends on factors such as:

- How many plans you will run
- How many tests each plan will execute
- How many artifacts you are going to have and their size

Atlassian recommends that you allocate about 20GB on top of the Bamboo installation size, and evaluate your usage patterns. Where usage is likely to grow, consider adding additional storage.

Software requirements

Bamboo is a pure Java application and should run on any platform, provided all the JDK requirements are satisfied.

The Supported Platforms page lists the server and client software, and their versions, supported by Bamboo 5.15.

Browser

Disabling JavaScript in your browser, or using a script blocking tool like NoScript, will limit access to Bamboo's full functionality. JavaScript should be enabled.

Java

Bamboo requires the full Java Developers Kit (JDK) platform to be installed on your server's operating system.

Application server

Bamboo is a web application that requires an application server. Currently Apache Tomcat is supported. Tomcat is a stable, lightweight and fast performing application server, however, please note the following:
1. Deploying multiple Atlassian applications in a single Tomcat container is not supported. We do not test this configuration and upgrading any of the applications (even for point releases) is likely to break it. There are also a number of known issues with this configuration (see this FAQ for more information).

2. We also do not support deploying multiple Atlassian applications to a single Tomcat container for a number of practical reasons. Firstly, you must shut down Tomcat to upgrade any application and secondly, if one application crashes, the other applications running in that Tomcat container will be inaccessible.

3. Finally, we recommend not deploying any other applications to the same Tomcat container that runs Bamboo, especially if these other applications have large memory requirements or require additional libraries in Tomcat’s lib subdirectory.

Database

Bamboo requires a relational database to store its data. Bamboo supports most popular relational database servers, so we suggest using the one that you are most comfortable with administering. Bamboo ships pre-configured with an integrated HSQL database for evaluation purposes only. Since HSQLDB is prone to database corruption, we recommend configuring an external database for production environments.

Hence, if you intend to use Bamboo in a production environment, we strongly recommend that you connect Bamboo to a supported enterprise database system.

Other considerations

Bamboo also requires a number of services for efficient operation. You need to consider:

- The database connection pool size.
- The number of local agents.
- The number of remote or elastic agents.

Database connection pool size

The number of database connections available to Bamboo is the lower of two values: your DBMS connection limit and the configured Bamboo connection pool size. From Bamboo 4.2 and later, the Bamboo connection pool size has a default value of 100.

For a small to medium instances (~5 concurrent users, ~5 busy/building local agents, 20 remote agents, 50 plans), the default values are sufficient.

You should increase the connection limit if you notice UI freezes or general sluggish UI performance. Do not decrease the number of available connections below 25.

Note: having too many connections available to Bamboo carries no performance penalty as long as your DBMS can handle the load.

Example: How to estimate the number of db connections

The following formula gives a rough estimate of the number of database connections that will be required:

\[(\text{Concurrent users})/5 + (\text{Busy remote agents})/5 + (\text{Local agents})*1.1 + (\text{Amount of concurrent change detections})\]

For example, an instance with:
- 5 concurrent users
- 30 busy remote (or elastic) agents
- 30 busy local agents
- 60 plans with repository polling set to 60 second intervals (assume 3 seconds per change detection)

would require \(1 + 6 + 33 + 3 = 43\) connections.

Bamboo ships with a pre-configured connection limit, however this can be modified by editing the following value in your bamboo.cfg.xml file:

```xml
<property name="hibernate.c3p0.max_size">100</property>
```

Local agents considerations

If you run more than 5 concurrently building local agents, you’ll probably need to adapt the connection limit because each busy local agent requires a live database connection.

Also, note that large amounts of busy (building) local agents can negatively influence the performance of a Bamboo server (and other services running on that host).
Remote and elastic agent considerations

Remote and elastic agents do not require special database connection settings.

**Bamboo Best Practice - Using stages**

**Overview**

The basic process for continuous delivery is Build > Test > Publish, which can be repeated multiple times before a release candidate is identified and shipped.

This page describes two approaches to using stages in Atlassian Bamboo. Many people will find that the first approach, 'Continuous integration', will meet their requirements, and we recommend that as a starting point. When you have that operating, you can build on it using more advanced methodologies.

- Overview
- Fail fast – detect failures as early as possible
- Artifact promotion – ship the tested binary

**Fail fast – detect failures as early as possible**

'Fail fast' is used here in the context of 'continuous integration'. It's a development paradigm that emphasizes the early detection, notification and correction of build failures. Early detection allows early correction, so reducing impact on the project. Furthermore, if we detect problems early, we won't need to execute the rest of the build process, so saving time and resources.

**Example Scenario**

Let's consider the following simple scenario that uses a series of tasks within a single job. We only need a single stage for this. Typically, unit tests exist in close association with the source files, and are run at, or soon after, compile time.

**Task 1 – Check out:** We need to check out the relevant code from the repository. Best practice with Bamboo is to set up a linked repository that can be referenced by several plans and that can be updated in just one place. See Checking out code.

**Task 2 – Compile:** We can configure a 'builder' task to compile the code. If syntax errors are detected, there is no point in performing the unit tests. See Configuring a builder task.

**Task 3 – Run unit tests:** Unit tests rapidly identify problems with how code runs. This quickly identifies semantic errors. See Configuring a test task.

**Task 4 – Create artifact:** Often, you will want Bamboo to keep build artifacts, such as reports and binaries, that can be used later. See Sharing artifacts.
Artifact promotion – ship the tested binary

The promotion of build artifacts, especially binaries for use in later phases of the pipeline, is a key concept in continuous integration. Not only can this save time and resources, but crucially, it ensures that a release candidate that could potentially ship to customers contains exactly the code that was tested throughout the pipeline.

In Bamboo, artifact sharing between stages is the mechanism used to promote artifacts.

**Example scenario**

Let's consider the following scenario that adds further stages compared with the Fail Fast scenario above. These extra stages are used to add functional and integration testing, and to provide a manual stage to provide control over when publishing happens.

**Stage 1 – Fail fast:** This is just the continuous integration stage described in the earlier scenario. The generated artifacts are marked for sharing in later stages. See Sharing artifacts.

**Stage 2 – Run functional and integration tests:** We can split these tasks into multiple jobs so they will run in parallel, so reducing the time taken. Each job uses the same artifacts generated in Stage 1. If any job fails, then later stages will not be run.

**Stage 3 – Publish:** We introduce a manual stage here for this example, but this could an automated stage. A manual stage gives us a control point that pauses the pipeline, to allow us, for example, to make a business decision about whether the release candidate should be published, and when. We only run this stage when it has been approved.
Bamboo Best Practice - Branching and DVCS

General overview

No matter how scary it may seem, branching your code is unavoidable - and also a very powerful way to let developers work in isolation on different aspects of your project.

The simplest branching model is that of a master branch and a development branch. The master (or mainline) branch contains the production versions for release. Parallel to master runs the development branch, where developers work on features that will be merged back into master. When sufficient new features have been developed, they will be merged back into master and form the next production release.

The simple model can be extended with other branches to make development work more flexible. These include:

- Feature branches
- Release branches
- Hotfix branches

Best practice approaches

- Feature branching with Bamboo plan branches
- Approaches to branching
- Branching with JIRA integration

See also:

- Bamboo Best Practice - Sharing artifacts
- Bamboo Best Practice - Using stages

But because a developer isn't constantly merging changes from master into their development branch, there may be uncertainty about whether the code will work when it is eventually merged back into master. The last thing you want is to pollute your master with non-functioning code from the branch.

Bamboo offers a number of useful tools for tackling branches. This best practice guide explores some of the ways that Bamboo handles branching to improve your development practices.

You may also want to refresh your Git knowledge with the Atlassian Git tutorials page before you read any further.

Best practice approaches
Feature branching with Bamboo plan branches

Objectives and learning outcomes

Understand what feature branching is, and how it can be useful as a development process. After completing this section, you will understand:

1. How feature branching works
2. How feature branches improve quality by eliminating risky merges

What is feature branching?

Feature branching is a lightweight way for a developer to make changes to a software project without having to worry about sharing those changes if they are uncompleted.

The main reasons to use feature branching are to ensure accurate conflict mitigation and to reduce the possibility of pushing code into the master branch or to other people until you are ready to do so. Utilizing rapid, regular code merges assists in reducing code drift across the development process.

Bamboo uses a concept called plan branches to help teams easily test branches using continuous integration and to avoid "merge hell".

Example scenario

Let's examine the following scenario for traditional feature branching:

1. A developer assigns an issue to themselves and creates a new branch (the feature branch) from master.
2. The developer works on the code, makes regular local commits to the feature branch, reaches a finishing point and pushes the commits to the repository.
3. When the issue is completed, the feature branch is merged back into master.

So, what's wrong with this? The developer hasn't run their builds on the feature branch and it is unknown whether the tests pass or not and any defective code from the feature branch will reach the rest of the team when it's merged to master.

Now let's see how it works using JIRA and Bamboo plan branches:

1. A developer assigns the issue to themselves in JIRA and creates a new branch from master. The name of the branch starts with the issue key so that it can be easily identified and tracked by both Bamboo and JIRA.
2. Bamboo detects the new feature branch and creates a new plan branch. A plan branch is created automatically for any build that has plan branching enabled.
3. The developer works on the code, makes regular local commits and pushes the commits to the repository.
4. Bamboo identifies the changes and builds the corresponding plan branch.
5. Optionally, to ensure that the branch and master will work together when merged, Bamboo can then merge the contents of master (including any new changes the team has made) into the the feature branch and have the build run.
6. If the tests pass, Bamboo pushes the updated feature branch back to the repository.
7. When the issue is completed, the feature branch is merged back into master with the knowledge that their new feature will not break on master.

We can already see that the Bamboo plan branch helps us by running build plan tests against the newly merged code. Only if the tests are passed is the code pushed, which prevents incorporating defective code. If the build fails, the merge is thrown away and the developer is notified.

Extending feature branching

We can usefully extend the concept of feature branching to include an integration branch workflow. This concept mirrors the approach of feature branching in that it also advocates frequent merging. However, it provides an integration branch during development of a particular story. When the story is completed, it is merged into master, but offers two different approaches to working around the integration branch:

1. Some teams merge their code into the integration branch while the story development is in progress; when the story is complete, it is then merged directly into master and closed.
2. Other teams may work exclusively around the integration branch during their code development, but will wait until the very end when their stories are tested and validated before merging integration onto master.

Conclusion

Feature branching offers a flexible and accurate conflict mitigation tool for developers. By using frequent and regular code merges, code drift and defective code implementation across the project is minimized. Feature branching works particularly well when developers have permission to toggle auto merging on and off to suit their individual development cycle. And of course, Bamboo provides an ideal environment to give developers access to these permissions.

Approaches to branching

Objectives and learning outcomes

Identify and describe how Bamboo can use feature and plan branches. After completing this section, you will understand:
Overview

Feature (or topic) branches are used to develop new features for an upcoming or future release. A feature branch exists only as long as the feature is being developed, and will eventually be merged back into the development branch.

Plan branches represent a branch in the version control system for development of a specific feature. The plan branch inherits all of the configuration defined by the parent plan, but may be built against any other specified plan. Any new branch created can be automatically built and tested using the same build configuration as that of the parent plan. Alternatively you can override the parent plan and individually configure the branch plan. When the branch succeeds, it is merged back into master.

There are two ways in which plan branches can be merged with the master branch.

Example scenario

Let's consider the following branch scenarios:

Scenario 1: Gatekeeper

The gatekeeper method works in the following way:

1. Both master and feature branch are checked out from the repository
2. Changes are merged into master from the feature branch
3. The build plan is run against the merged code, and held in memory by Bamboo
4. If successful, the merged code is pushed to master

You should use the Gatekeeper strategy when you want to:

1. Automatically merge your feature branch back into the master branch after a successful build of the merged changes
2. Quickly identify when a build of combined changes fails, preventing the feature branch from being merged back into the master branch

Scenario 2: Build Updater

The build updater is an alternative approach where changes flow in the opposite direction. It works in the following way:

1. Both master and a feature branch are checked out from the repository
2. Changes are merged into the plan branch from master
3. The build plan is run against the merged code and held in memory by Bamboo
4. If successful, the merged code is pushed to the feature branch
1. You should use the Build Updater strategy when you want to:
   1. Automatically merge changes from the team's master branch into your feature branch, either after a successful build of the master branch, or at the start of builds against the feature branch.
   2. Get notified when the changes on your feature branch are no longer compatible with the team's master branch.

Now we know how plan branching works, but how do we implement it using Bamboo? Bamboo actually makes it very easy for us. Let's have a look at another example:

**Scenario 3: Plan branching in DVCS**

This is a typical high level DVCS plan branching scenario:

**Step 1: Create branch** - Use your version control system's branching feature to create a new branch in your repository

**Step 2: Branch detection** - Bamboo will auto detect the new branch for Git, Mercurial and SVN. Perforce and CVS users will have to manually create the branch on Bamboo's behalf. This can be done from the Branches tab in your build plan's configuration screen.

**Step 3: Plan cloning** - Bamboo automatically clones all plans associated with the repository and connects the clones to the new branch

**Step 4: Configure plan variables** - The configuration of plans pointing to the master branch will be inherited by the plan branches. Jobs, stages, and artifact sharing work exactly as defined in the original plan. Variables, notifications and triggers may be customized for each plan branch. Other configuration options for plan branches include:
   1. Merge strategies (see gatekeeper and build updater above)
   2. Toggling auto cleanup on/off
   3. Branch removal after a defined inactivity period

**Step 5: Branch build** - The feature branch is built in accordance with its triggers. The optional merge strategies are applied at build time.

**Conclusion**

Feature and plan branching offers a range of flexible methods for developers to branch and work on different code segments during the development process. The Gatekeeper and Branch Updater methods allow alternative approaches to branching your code, while plan branching in DVCS allows Bamboo to automatically detect new branches in Git, Mercurial and SVN repositories.

---

**Branching with JIRA integration**

**Objectives and Learning Outcomes**

Understand how JIRA integration can be used to track development changes branching, and how it improves oversight of a development project. After completing this section, you will understand:
1. What JIRA integration is
2. How it can be used to track changes within the code development

Overview

JIRA integration in plan branches relies on including a JIRA issue key as part of the branch name. Bamboo and JIRA work together to ensure that JIRA issues are attached to development branches, allowing developers and other interested parties to examine which issue has informed the code development within the branch.

Example Scenario

Let's examine the following scenario for JIRA integration:

1. A developer picks up a JIRA issue and creates a feature branch for it
2. Bamboo creates a link between the issue and the branch, and all the branch's builds
3. The developer works on the issue, making regular pushes to the feature branch, which are built by the corresponding plan branch/ies in Bamboo
4. The JIRA issue shows the current build status of the feature branch
5. When work on the feature branch is complete, it can be merged to master manually through the version control system, or automatically, by enabling Bamboo's gatekeeper merge strategy

Why use JIRA integration?

By including a related JIRA issue as part of the branch name, Bamboo can link the issues to the related builds and to the branch itself. This makes oversight of individual stories much easier:

- Product owners can view the development of user stories from within the JIRA issue
- QA can select an artifact for testing from within JIRA, and identify which issues have informed its development
- Developers can examine builds and artifacts, and see which JIRA issues have informed the development process.

The JIRA Bamboo plugin

The JIRA Bamboo plugin provides enhanced information sharing between JIRA and Bamboo, allowing you to view the status of all builds and branches associated with an issue from within the issue itself. Apart from DVCS and branching, the plugin also surfaces deployment information for issues when Bamboo's deployment projects are used.

Learn more about the JIRA Bamboo plugin here.

Conclusion

JIRA integration with branching provides an effective mechanism for tracking changes in code development and identifying what issues have informed the process. JIRA integration also provides an effective way for interested parties to track progress and locate relevant artifacts.

Bamboo Best Practice - Sharing artifacts

General overview
We've already had a look at techniques such as 'fail fast' and 'artifact promotion' as ways of improving your Bamboo processes in the using stages Best Practice guide, but here we're going to dig a little deeper and look at some ways that you can get artifact sharing to work for you.

Best practice approaches

Sharing build artifacts with downstream processes

See Artifact promotion for a description of this technique.

How do I configure artifact sharing between jobs?

In Bamboo, artifact sharing between jobs is configured using the Artifacts tab on the plan's configuration:

Check out Sharing artifacts between jobs to learn how to configure your Bamboo server to take advantage of artifact sharing between jobs.

Sharing artifacts between plans

Objective

Identify and describe how artifact sharing between plans can be achieved

Learning Outcomes

After completing this section, you will understand how to share an artifact between plans

Overview

We discussed above how we can achieve significant time benefits from capturing and sharing artifacts to downstream processes rather than checking out and compiling each time the artifact is required. Generating an artifact at the top of the development pipeline, and passing it to successive downstream processes also has the benefit of ensuring the integrity of the code is maintained throughout the pipeline, because we know it is the exact same code that we tested earlier on. We also discussed how we can manage passing artifacts within a build plan, but let's suppose that we want to pass artifacts between two plans? Easy: We use the download artifact task to make the artifact available from one plan to another.

Example scenario

Let's consider the following artifact sharing example:

Imagine that we have a build plan that creates and uses an artifact - Artifact A. Now let's suppose that we also have a child plan, and we would like to use Artifact A in this plan for some other purpose. Bamboo doesn't technically allow you to share artifacts between plans (but watch this space), so we can use a workaround to get our artifact shared into the child plan: We copy it from the parent plan to a remote
storage location, then use the artifact download task to obtain it for the new plan. **Note:** This approach differs significantly to the process for sharing artifacts between jobs.

**Parent Plan**

**Step 1: Checkout & compile** - We need to check out the relevant code from the repository and compile it into an artifact. Our artifact is now defined and available for use by downstream jobs. Let’s give it a name - Artifact A - and specify its location, so downstream jobs can find it, though of course only jobs in downstream stages can consume it

**Step 2: Testing** - We can use some Fail Fast methodology and run some tests on our artifact before we go any further. We can conduct short and rapid unit tests and longer functional testing on our artifact. But we already know that artifact sharing can be used to increase testing speed in both cases

**Step 3: Deployment** - When testing is complete, the artifact can be deployed to a QA environment by a consuming job that runs a deployment script against it, but we still need to share it with the child plan

**Step 4: Copy artifact out** - The final step of this plan is to use a task to copy the artifact out to a remote location such as Nexus or Artifactory, using the applicable Bamboo plugins. Alternatively, simply run a script task to copy the artifact to a remote file server location on your own network

**Child Plan**

**Step 1: Copy artifact in** - The first step of the child plan is to use a task to copy the artifact in from where the parent plan left it. Depending on the method you used to copy it out, you may require a task that utilizes a Bamboo plugin.

**Step 2: Business as usual** - Now that we have copied the artifact in, we can perform regular Bamboo operations as part of an ongoing build plan. These could be additional tests, or deployments into different environments

---

**Extending artifact sharing**

And of course, once we have our artifact neatly stored in remote storage, the artifact download task means that it can associated with any build plans that we may want to run.

**Conclusion**

Artifact sharing is a powerful technique for making single artifacts available. Artifact sharing across plans allows us to make artifacts available for different build plans from one checkout and compile. We know that we will always be using a consistent artifact which reduces the time overhead of multiple checkout and compile steps.

**How do I configure artifact sharing between jobs?**

Artifact sharing between jobs is configured using the artifact downloader task:

---

**Developed by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.**
Bamboo Best Practice - Using Agents

General overview

We've already had a look at how we can improve Bamboo's efficiency in the Using stages and Sharing artifacts best practice guides, so here we're going to have a look at how we can improve raw build speeds using Bamboo agents.

Let's consider this simple Bamboo scenario:

Imagine a set of plans that we have developed and are queued, awaiting a build agent to become available to execute the build. This is great, and exactly what Continuous Integration is all about, but we notice that certain plans seem to sit and wait consistently longer than others. This has the effect of slowing our progress, and may be felt later down our development streamline. But why is it happening? And what can we do about it?

• General overview
• Best practice approaches
  • Using remote agents
    • Why use remote agents?
    • Unknown capabilities
    • Adding remote agents
  • Using local agents
    • Why use local agents?
    • Adding local agents
  • Monitoring agents
    • Build Queued Duration
    • Build times plugin
    • Agent utilities plugin

See also:
• Bamboo Best Practice - Using stages
• Bamboo Best Practice - Sharing artifacts
• Bamboo Best Practice - Branching & DVCS
Let's examine exactly what's going on.

Each build agent offers a set of capabilities, and each plan will have capability requirements that the build agent must meet. These could include a range of executables, tasks and JDKs. Build agents are tailored to match specific plan requirements and as a result not all agents can build all plans. Often, only a small subset of agents will meet all of the requirements for a specific plan. Typically, plans that demonstrate consistently long wait times, are the ones that are waiting for a specific combination of capabilities to become available.

The Build Queued Duration report tells us the average time that a plan sits in the queue until build agents become available to execute it. By examining the report, we can identify which builds are too slow, and also if we are sporting wasted capacity on our systems. So how does this help us, and how can we even out our wait times? Adding required capabilities to a greater number of agents helps to improve parallel builds and even out our build loading. We can achieve this in a number of ways.

Best practice approaches

Using remote agents

Why use remote agents?

Adding popular capabilities to more agents is one way to tackle our wait time problem, however we can also take advantage of remote agents to boost our capabilities. By increasing the number of remote agents to the maximum allowed by our license tier, we can add significant amounts of available build capability which will in turn lead to reduced wait times. We could also consider using elastic agents on AWS.

The following graph shows how adding additional remote agents helped the Bamboo team to reduce build wait times for building Bamboo itself:

![Build Queued Duration graph](image)

When build wait times approached 27 minutes in late 2011, adding additional remote agents with well defined capabilities reduced wait times to less than 10 minutes. The same is also true when wait times approached 33 minutes - additional remote agents ultimately reduced wait times back to less than 10 minutes.

Unknown capabilities

Sometimes remote agents have capabilities that are unknown, so Bamboo will not automatically utilize these when it's looking for agents for a build. Luckily, even if Bamboo doesn't know about these capabilities, we can quickly and easily detect them. Simply:

**Bamboo admin > Agents > $(AGENT) > Detect Server Capabilities**

to identify the capabilities available on a remote agent.

Adding remote agents

Add remote agents using the Agents panel of the Bamboo Admin page:

**Bamboo admin > Agents > Install remote agent**
Using local agents

Why use local agents?

If your license doesn't allow the addition of any more remote agents, then adding a small number of local agents can also help. A sound strategy is to add one or two local agents in the first instance, then evaluate the effect they have had on your build wait times.

Remember: too many local agents can start to impact Bamboo's performance because local agents run inside the same JVM as Bamboo itself. Unless you have 8 cores and 64GB RAM, ~3 local agents is about as many as you can accommodate comfortably.

Adding local agents

Add local agents using the Agents panel of the Bamboo Admin page:

Bamboo admin > Agents > Add Local Agent
Agents

An agent is a service that executes Bamboo builds and deployments. You can use this page to view, add and delete agents. You can also use this matrix to determine which agents can execute which build plans.

Local agents

Local agents run on the Bamboo server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local Agent</td>
<td>Idle</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release</td>
<td>Idle</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting agent</td>
<td>Building - BAM-CIPL-JOB1-1314</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remote agents

Remote agents run on computers other than the Bamboo server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agent-03-01.buildeng.atlassian.com (2)</td>
<td>Idle</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Learn more about adding additional local agents in the Creating a local agent guide.

Monitoring agents

**Build Queued Duration**

The Build Queued Duration report shows how long each build is spending in the build queue, and is an important tool for evaluating build wait times. The build queued duration report also allows you to compare build wait time between different plans.

You can access the report by clicking **Reports > Reports > Build Queued Duration** and selecting the appropriate build plan for analysis.

Custom Reports and Statistics

Compare trends between different plans. You can choose the different reports and the plans you wish to compare in the form below.

Report parameters

**Build times plugin**

Atlassian doesn't provide support for the plugin in any Bamboo version.
The Build Times for Bamboo plugin provides a visual representation of the relative build times of each job in a build, as well as which agent each job was built by:

![Graph showing build times](image)

The visualization display can report:

- A bar graph of relative build and queue times of jobs in a build
- Which agent each job ran on
- Each job's status (red or green)
- Jobs that didn't run

The Build Times plugin is an official Atlassian Labs production, and is available from the Atlassian Marketplace.

Learn more, and obtain the plugin [here](link).

**Agent utilities plugin**

The plugin is supported only for Bamboo Server 3.4 - 4.4.8.

The Agent Utilities plugin for Bamboo allows the ability to use Server Notifications to monitor Bamboo Agents. The plugin can be configured to generate notifications when agents:

- Go offline
- Are disabled/enabled
- Have capabilities changed

**System Notifications**

This page allows you to configure system-wide notifications. Recipients will get notified regardless of which plan may have caused an event to happen.

![Notification settings](image)
The Build Times plugin is a third party production by ProNetBeans.com, and is available from the Atlassian Marketplace. Learn more, and obtain the plugin here.

Administering Bamboo

Bamboo is a continuous integration (CI) and deployment server. Bamboo assists software development teams by providing:

- automated building and testing of software source-code status.
- updates on successful/failed builds.
- reporting tools for statistical analysis.
- visibility into, and control over, release artifacts and environments.

This administration guide has information about managing the Bamboo server itself. Please see Using Bamboo for help with setting up CI builds and deployments.

**Administering**

**System settings**
Configuring the Bamboo server.

**Agents and capabilities**
Setting up services, including Elastic Bamboo, to perform builds.

**Users and permissions**
Managing users, groups and their permissions.

**Add-ons**
Extending Bamboo.

**Data and backups**
Managing databases, data and backups.

**Security**
Managing security for agents and Elastic Bamboo.

**Installing**

Installing Bamboo on Linux

Bamboo installation guide for Mac OS X

Installing Bamboo on Windows

Connecting Bamboo to an external database

Bamboo remote agent installation guide

Supported platforms
System settings

You can view system information for Bamboo from the administration console.

The system information contains useful data for you to send to Atlassian when requesting support.

See Locating important directories and files for more information.

Viewing your Bamboo system information

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click System Information (under 'System') in the left navigation panel.

Screenshot: Bamboo system information (cropped)
## System properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System date</td>
<td>Tuesday, 07 Jan 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System time</td>
<td>10:10:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Up time</td>
<td>14 minutes, 28 seconds (since Tue Jan 07 09:55:49 EST 2014)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>atlassian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User timezone</td>
<td>Australia/Sydney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User locale</td>
<td>English (United States)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System encoding</td>
<td>Mac Roman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system</td>
<td>Mac OS X 10.8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system architecture</td>
<td>x86_64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available processors</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application server</td>
<td>Apache Tomcat/6.0.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host name</td>
<td>tardigrade.syd.atlassian.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP address</td>
<td>172.22.200.226</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Java / JVM information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Java version</td>
<td>1.6.0_65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Java vendor</td>
<td>Apple Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVM spec. version</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVM spec. vendor</td>
<td>Sun Microsystems Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVM version</td>
<td>20.65-b04-462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVM vendor</td>
<td>Apple Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVM name</td>
<td>Java HotSpot(TM) 64-Bit Server VM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JRE version</td>
<td>1.6.0_65-b14-462-11M4609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JRE name</td>
<td>Java(TM) SE Runtime Environment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Memory statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total memory</td>
<td>609 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free memory</td>
<td>139 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used memory</td>
<td>471 MB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Bamboo version information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>5.4-SNAPSHOT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build number</td>
<td>4205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build date</td>
<td>1/7/14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
Configuring system settings

For information on configuring system settings, see the following topics:

- Updating your Bamboo license details
- Specifying Bamboo's title
- Specifying Bamboo's URL
- Logging in Bamboo
- Enabling GZIP compression
- Enabling Bamboo's Remote API
- Starting Bamboo
- Configuring your system properties
- Configuring Gravatar support
- Tracking changes to your Bamboo server

Updating your Bamboo license details

When you upgrade or renew your Bamboo license, you will receive a new license key. You will need to update your Bamboo server with the new license key.

Please see the Licensing FAQ if you have questions to do with licensing.

To update your Bamboo license key:

1. Click the \(\text{icon}\) in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click License Details (under ‘System’) in the left navigation panel. This will display your existing Bamboo license details.
3. Paste your new license into License Key.
4. Click Save New License.

Specifying Bamboo's title

Bamboo's name is the displayed title of this installation of Bamboo. It will appear throughout Bamboo (e.g. on the Dashboard), and in the window title of your users' browsers.

To specify Bamboo's title:

1. Click the \(\text{icon}\) in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click General Configuration (under 'System') in the left navigation column.
3. Type the display title for your Bamboo server (e.g. "MyCompany's Bamboo") into the Name field.
4. Click Save.

Specifying Bamboo's URL

This is the base URL of this installation of Bamboo. All links created (for links in Bamboo email notifications etc.) will be prefixed by this URL.

To specify Bamboo's URL:

1. Click the \(\text{icon}\) in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click General Configuration (under ‘System’), in the left navigation panel.
3. In the Base URL field, type the URL address of your Bamboo server (for example, "http://keg:8080/bamboo").
4. Click Save.

Notes

- **Accessing Bamboo from Outside a Firewall** — When accessing Bamboo through a web browser, most Bamboo URL links (which provide navigation throughout the product) will use the base URL that was originally entered into your browser's URL field. For example, to access Bamboo through a web browser on the same machine running Bamboo itself, you may have entered the base URL:
http://localhost:8085/...

into your browser’s URL field. Consequently, most Bamboo URL links will use the base URL:

http://localhost:8085/...

However, URL links to a Bamboo instance that are provided in Bamboo email notifications and by some Bamboo plugins, will use the base URL set on this 'General Configuration' page. Hence, if you configure the Base URL field above to one that can only be accessed internally, behind a firewall, then you may have problems accessing this Bamboo instance externally.

Logging in Bamboo

Bamboo generates the following sets of logs:

**Build logs**
The build logs are generated each time a plan is executed. All information specific to the build is stored in these logs, which can be downloaded as an artifact (see Viewing a build's artifacts). You cannot change the logging configuration for the build logs.

The build logs are located in the `<Bamboo-Home>/xml-data/builds/` sub-directories.

**Bamboo server logs**

Bamboo records all server activity in the `atlassian-bamboo.log`. The location of the `atlassian-bamboo.log` file can be viewed in Bamboo's System Information under the 'Bamboo Paths' section.

In case of a Tomcat webapp deployment, the logs are piped out to catalina.out file.

**atlassian-bamboo logs for elastic agents**

Elastic agent activity is logged inside the elastic instance where the elastic agent runs. To access the elastic agent logs (atlassian-bamboo.log and bamboo-elastic-agent.out) use ssh to log in to your elastic instance as described in Viewing an elastic instance and retrieve the logs.

**atlassian-bamboo logs for remote agents**

All agent activity is recorded in `atlassian-bamboo-agent.log` file stored on the agent machine. These are generated in the running directory of the agent. The running directory can be viewed in the remote agent's system properties under the 'Bamboo Paths' section.

See Locating important directories and files for information on where to find other important files in Bamboo.

Configuring the level of logging on the Bamboo server

Bamboo uses the log4j library for logging during runtime. The logging levels can be changed by editing the `<Bamboo-Install>/atlassian-bamboo/WEB-INF/classes/log4j.properties` file. There are five logging levels available: 'DEBUG', 'INFO', 'WARN', 'ERROR' and 'FATAL'. Each logging level provides more logging information that the level after it:

```
DEBUG > INFO > WARN > ERROR > FATAL
```

i.e. DEBUG provides the most verbose logging and FATAL provides the least verbose logging.

You can adjust the logging levels for the different Bamboo packages on the fly, using the runtime log4j configuration tool in the Bamboo administration console. The default log settings are still stored in the log4j.properties file. When you view the log settings page for the first time you will see the default log settings as defined in log4j.properties. All changes to the log settings via the runtime log4j configuration tool will not be persisted and are valid during Bamboo runtime only.

Before you begin:

- Note, you do not need to restart your Bamboo server for any logging changes to take effect.

**Change the level of logging on your Bamboo server**

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click **Log Settings** (under "System") in the left navigation panel. The 'Bamboo Log Settings' page will display showing the Bamboo packages being logged (see screenshot below).
   - To change the logging level of a package that is already being logged, locate the Bamboo package, select the desired logging level from the list next to it and click **Save**.
   - To start monitoring a package in the Bamboo logs, enter the class name in the text box at the top of the page, select the desired logging level from the list next to it and click **Add**.
   - To stop logging a package, locate the Bamboo package and click **Delete** next to it.

**Screenshot: Bamboo log settings**

### Configuring the level of logging on remote agents

The runtime log4j configuration tool in the Bamboo administration console can only be used to modify the logging levels for the Bamboo server. To configure the logging levels for your remote agents, you will need to update the `log4j.properties` file manually.

You can control the logging for each of remote agents separately from the Bamboo server. To do this, simply repeat the process described below for multiple remote agents, so that each remote agent has a `log4j.properties` file that overrides the `log4j.properties` file on the Bamboo server.

#### Change the level of logging on your remote agent

1. Configure a `log4j.properties` file for your remote agent. This can be any `log4j.properties` file. If you do not already have a `log4j.properties` file, you can take a copy of the `log4j.properties` file from the server, copy it to your remote agent and configure it as desired.

   `log4j.properties` file example:
log4j.rootLogger=INFO, console
log4j.appender.console=org.apache.log4j.ConsoleAppender
log4j.appender.console.layout=org.apache.log4j.PatternLayout
log4j.appender.console.layout.ConversionPattern=%d %p [%t] [%c{1}] %m%n
log4j.category.com.atlassian.bamboo=DEBUG

1. The rootLogger property in the log4j.properties file controls the verbosity of logs being generated at the top level. By default, the root level logging is set to 'INFO'. To change the root level logging, find the following lines in <Bamboo-Install>/webapp/WEB-INF/classes/log4j.properties file and update the value of log4j.rootLogger to the desired logging level:

```
# Change the following line to configure the bamboo logging levels (one of INFO, DEBUG, ERROR, FATAL)
log4j.rootLogger=INFO, console, filelog
```

2. Modify the logging level for any of the individual packages in the log4j.properties as desired, e.g. log4j.category.webwork=WARN

3. To change the directory that the atlassian-bamboo logs are generated to, you must set the environment variable for the target location of the logs, as seen below:

```
log4j.appender.fileLog.file=/my/path/to/atlassian-bamboo.log
```

Note that the new log file location applies to both the server and remote agents. If using an absolute path this may result in aggregated logs.

**Enabling GZIP compression**

You can enable GZIP compression in order to reduce the size of Bamboo's web pages. This is useful if Bamboo is being run over slow networks. There is a slight performance penalty, and note that GZIP may not work for languages other than English.

To enable GZIP compression:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click General Configuration (under 'System') in the left navigation panel.
3. Select Apply gzip compression to reduce the size of Bamboo's web pages?
4. Click Save.

**Enabling Bamboo's Remote API**

Please note, the Bamboo Remote API has been deprecated in favor of the new Bamboo REST API.

You can access Bamboo's data from an external program by using Bamboo's REST-style remote API.
Starting Bamboo

Configuring Bamboo system properties

The default settings on a number of Bamboo functions can be configured by setting the appropriate system properties.

Bamboo on UNIX-based operating systems (such as Solaris, Linux or Mac OS X) can be started by using the `setenv.sh` script.

Bamboo on Windows-based operating systems can be started by running the `setenv.bat` file from the command line (which is the same as running the 'Start in Console' option from the Windows Start menu) or as a Windows Service.

On this page:
- Configuring Bamboo system properties

Related pages:
- System settings
- Configuring your system properties

Please see Configuring your system properties for more information on configuring your Bamboo system properties.

Configuring your system properties

This page describes how to set Java properties and options on startup for Bamboo.

On this page:
- Linux
- Windows (starting from .bat file)
- Windows service
- Changing the Bamboo start port
- List of startup parameters

Linux

To configure system properties in Linux installations

1. From `<bamboo-install>/bin`, open `setenv.sh`
2. Find the section `JVM_SUPPORT_RECOMMENDED_ARGS=`
3. Refer to the list of parameters below.

   [i] Add all parameters in a space-separated list, inside the quotations.

Windows (starting from .bat file)

To configure system properties in Windows installations when starting from the .bat file

1. From `<bamboo-install>/bin`, open `setenv.bat`
2. Find the section `set JVM_SUPPORT_RECOMMENDED_ARGS=`
3. Refer to the list of parameters below.

   [i] Add all parameters in a space-separated list, inside the quotations.

Windows service

There are two ways to configure system properties when starting Bamboo as a service, either via the command line or in the Windows registry.

Setting properties for Windows services from the command line

1. Identify the name of the service that Bamboo is installed as in Windows (Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services):
2. Open a command prompt from Start > Run > type ‘cmd’ > Enter.
3. Change directory to the bin directory of your Bamboo installation directory.
4. Run:

```
tomcat8w //ES//%SERVICENAME%
```

In the above example, it would be `tomcat8w //ES//Bamboo`

5. Click on the Java tab to see the list of current start-up options:
6. Append any new option on its own new line by adding to the end of the existing Java Options. Refer to the list of parameters below.

If you want to change the heap size configured for the JVM, use the Initial memory pool and Maximum memory pool fields instead of adding the -Xms and -Xmx parameters to the list of Java options.

Setting properties for Windows services using the Windows registry

In some versions of Windows, there is no option to add Java variables to the service. In these cases, you must add the properties by viewing the option list in the registry.

To set properties for Windows services using the Windows registry

1. Go to Start > Run, and run "regedit32.exe".

2. Find the Services entry:
   - 32-bit: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE >> SOFTWARE >> Apache Software Foundation >> Procrun 2.0 >> Bamboo
   - 64-bit: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE >> SOFTWARE >> Wow6432Node >> Apache Software Foundation >> Procrun 2.0 >> Bamboo
3. To change existing properties, especially increasing Xmx memory, double-click the appropriate value.

4. To change additional properties, double-click options.

5. Refer to the list of parameters below. Enter each on a separate line.

Changing the Bamboo start port

1. Stop Bamboo.
2. Edit `<Bamboo install directory>/conf/server.xml`
3. Update the following so that `Connector port` is set to the port value you require:

   ```xml
   <Service name="Catalina">
     <Connector port="8085"
       maxThreads="150"
       minSpareThreads="25"
       connectionTimeout="20000"
       enableLookups="false"
       maxHttpHeaderSize="8192"
       protocol="HTTP/1.1"
       useBodyEncodingForURI="true"
       redirectPort="8443"
       acceptCount="100"
       disableUploadTimeout="true"/>
   </Service>
   ```

4. Restart Bamboo.
List of startup parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Memory Property</th>
<th>Notes</th>
<th>Related Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-Xmx</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tuning the Java heap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Xms</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tuning the Java heap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX:MaxPermSize</td>
<td>These properties are pre-existing. See related pages for instructions.</td>
<td>Tuning the Java heap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring Gravatar support

Bamboo is configured to support Gravatars by default. This means that Bamboo will attempt to use user’s emails to retrieve profile pictures from the Gravatar service. The profile pictures will be displayed against user activity, e.g. comments, in Bamboo.

You must have set up an external Gravatar server if you want to specify your own server

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click General Configuration in the left navigation panel
3. Select the Enable Gravatar Support checkbox
4. Enter the URL of your Gravatar server in the URL field, or leave as default if you wish to use the default Gravatar service
5. Click Save.

Disabling Gravatar support:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click General Configuration in the left navigation panel
3. Uncheck the Enable Gravatar Support checkbox
4. Click Save.

Tracking changes to your Bamboo server

Tracking configuration changes

You can track changes to the configuration of your Bamboo server, as well as track changes to any plans it may be running.

To track changes, you must enable Audit logging. To enable Audit logging:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Select Audit Log (under “System”) in the left navigation column.
3. Select Enable audit logging

The Audit log will record details of changes made to the configuration of the Bamboo server. It will record:

- the time and date
- the user
- the changed field
- the old value and
- the new value

The Audit log does not record change of permissions.

Audit logging will also record details of changes made to any plans, including:

- Plan branch creation
- Plan deletion
Deleting Audit Logs

You may wish to delete audit logs, particularly when the plans or configuration changes have expired.

To delete your configuration change history, select **Delete all global audit logs**.

To delete all audit logs, including any plan audit logs, select **Delete all audit logs**.

**Screenshot: Audit logging**

### Agents and capabilities

An agent can run a job if its capabilities match the requirements of a job. Each job inherits the requirements from individual tasks that it contains.

On this page:
- **Capabilities**
- **Viewing the agents and plans related to a capability**

#### Capabilities

You can define the following capabilities for an agent:
- an executable (e.g. Maven)
- a JDK
- a Version Control System client application (e.g. Git)
- a custom capability. This is a key-value property which defines a particular characteristic of an agent (e.g. "operating.system=WindowsXP" or "fast.builds=true").

Capabilities typically define the path to an executable that has already been installed, and must be defined in Bamboo before Bamboo or its agents can make use of those.

Capabilities can be defined specifically for an agent, or they can be shared between all remote agents. Note that the value of an agent-specific capability overrides the value of a shared capability of the same name (if one exists).

See also:
- **Configuring capabilities**
- **Viewing a capability's agents and jobs**
- **About capabilities and requirements**

**Viewing the agents and plans related to a capability**
To view the agents and plans related to a capability, see Viewing a capability's agents and jobs.

Configuring agents

A Bamboo agent is a service that can run job builds. There are the following types of Bamboo agents:

- **local agents** run as part of the Bamboo server.
- **remote agents** run on computers, other than the Bamboo server, that run the remote agent tool.
- **elastic agents** run in the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2).

Local agents run in the Bamboo server's process, i.e. in the same JVM as the server. Each remote agent runs in its own process, i.e. has its own JVM.

Each agent has a defined set of capabilities and can only run builds for jobs whose requirements match the agent's capabilities.

If you are looking for information on elastic agents, please refer to the documentation on Working with Elastic Bamboo.

**On this page:**
- Creating a new agent
- Configuring an agent's capabilities
- Disabling or deleting an agent
- Notes

Creating a new agent

To create a new agent, see:

- Creating a local agent, or
- Creating a remote agent.

Configuring an agent's capabilities

To configure an existing agent's capabilities, see:

- Configuring capabilities
- Configuring remote agent capabilities

Disabling or deleting an agent

To disable or delete an agent, see Disabling or deleting an agent.

Notes

- A **capability** is a feature of an agent. A capability can be defined on an agent for:
  - an executable (e.g. Maven)
  - a JDK
  - a Version Control System client application (e.g. Git)
  - a custom capability. This is a key-value property which defines a particular characteristic of an agent (e.g. `operating.system=WindowsXP` or `fast.builds=true`).

Capabilities typically define the path to an executable that has already been installed, and must be defined in Bamboo before Bamboo or its agents can make use of those.

Capabilities can be defined specifically for an agent, or they can be shared between either all local agents or all remote agents. Note that the value of an agent-specific capability overrides the value of a shared capability of the same name (if one exists).

Viewing a Bamboo agent's details

A Bamboo agent is a service that can run job builds. There are the following types of Bamboo agents:

- **local agents** run as part of the Bamboo server.
- **remote agents** run on computers, other than the Bamboo server, that run the remote agent tool.
- **elastic agents** run in the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2).

Local agents run in the Bamboo server's process, i.e. in the same JVM as the server. Each remote agent runs in its own process, i.e. has its own JVM.

Each agent has a defined set of capabilities and can only run builds for jobs whose requirements match the agent's capabilities.
On this page:
- Viewing an agent's details
- Viewing the agents that can build jobs
- Editing an agent's name or description

Viewing an agent's details

To view an agent's details:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Agents in the left panel to display the 'Agents' page, which lists all local and remote agents that currently exist in your Bamboo system.
3. Click the name of the desired agent. The agent's page will be displayed.
4. Click one of the following tabs to see corresponding details for the agent:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tab</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capabilities</strong></td>
<td>Displays a list of all agent-specific and shared capabilities. The capabilities in each of those sections are grouped into the following subsections:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Custom — custom capabilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Executable — executable capabilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• JDK — JDK capabilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Perforce, Mercurial, Git — VCS capability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You'll only see a subsection if a capability of that type is defined in Bamboo. To define a new capability, see Configuring capabilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executable jobs</td>
<td>Displays a list of jobs, arranged by plan, that the agent can build.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System properties</td>
<td>Displays information about the agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit logs</td>
<td>Displays a record of changes that have been made to the agent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Viewing the agents that can build jobs

To view which agents can build which jobs:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Agent Matrix in the left navigation panel.

Editing an agent's name or description

To edit an agent's name or description:

1. Navigate to the desired agent, as described above.
2. Click Edit Details.
3. Update the details for the agent.
4. Click Save.

Creating a local agent

A Bamboo agent is a service that can run job builds. There are the following types of Bamboo agents:

- **local agents** run as part of the Bamboo server.
- **remote agents** run on computers, other than the Bamboo server, that run the remote agent tool.
- **elastic agents** run in the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2).

Local agents run in the Bamboo server's process, i.e. in the same JVM as the server. Each remote agent runs in its own process, i.e. has its own JVM.

Each agent has a defined set of capabilities and can only run builds for jobs whose requirements match the agent's capabilities.

Note that one local agent, with the default name of 'Default Agent', is automatically created after installing Bamboo.
To create a new local agent:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Agents in the left panel (under 'Build Resources') to display a list of all local and remote agents that currently exist in your Bamboo system.
3. Click Add Local Agent.
4. Enter details for the agent. The name is displayed on the dashboard. The description is only visible to administrators.
5. Click Add.

Note that your new local agent:

- will be enabled by default.
- will inherit all local server capabilities that are defined in your Bamboo system.
- will be able to run builds for all jobs whose requirements are met by the agent's capabilities (see Configuring a job's requirements).

Disabling or deleting an agent

Bamboo allows you to disable or delete an agent, to prevent that agent from running any further builds.

- **Disabling an agent** lets you keep the agent in Bamboo, but stops it from running builds.
  
  **Tip:** If you need to prevent Bamboo from building any plans at all (e.g. while you re-index Bamboo), you can disable all agents. By doing so, all builds will wait in the queue until you re-enable the agents.

- **Deleting an agent** removes it from Bamboo altogether. If you need to use the agent again in future, you will need to recreate it (see Creating a local agent and Creating a remote agent for more information).

Note that you can also delete/disable individual plans and/or their jobs. This prevents the plans and/or their jobs from being submitted to the build queue. See Disabling or deleting a plan and Disabling or deleting a job.

Related pages:

- Disabling or deleting a plan
- Disabling or deleting a job
- Creating a remote agent
  - Creating a local agent

To disable (or delete) an agent:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Agents in the left panel to display the 'Agents' screen, which lists all agents that currently exist in your Bamboo system. The 'Status' column indicates which agents are currently enabled or disabled. Scroll down if you require remote agents.
3. Select the check box for the agent (or agents) you wish to disable or delete.
4. Click the Disable (or Delete) button above the table.

Screenshot: Agent — Delete or Disable Remote agent
Dedicating an agent

Bamboo allows you to dedicate an agent, to run, for example, only specific build projects, deployment projects or associated activities. You must dedicate an agent to a type of activity and a specific entity of that type.

Note that when you dedicate an agent, then no other activity will be able to use it, unless it is dedicated to that activity as well. Similarly, no other agent will be able to build this plan other than the agent(s) that are dedicated to build it.

Related pages:
- Disabling or deleting an agent

To dedicate an agent:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Agents in the left panel to display the ‘Agents’ screen. This displays all local and remote agents currently available to your Bamboo system. The ‘Status’ column indicates which agents are currently enabled or disabled.
3. Click Image configurations for EC2 elastic agents.
4. Select the agent you wish to dedicate, and click on the Dedicate agent tab.
5. Using the menu, select the type of activity you wish to dedicate the agent to. Available choices are:
   - Build project
   - Build plan
   - Build job
   - Deployment project
   - Deployment environment
6. Select an entity to assign the dedicated agent to. This will be a specific project, plan, job or environment. Use the menu or type-ahead field to locate a suitable entity.
7. If required, click Add to add an additional entity dedication.
8. Click Save to dedicate your agent.

Monitoring agent status

You can monitor your agents’ status to check that all agents are functioning as expected.

Online versus Offline agents:
- An ‘Online’ agent is an agent which is currently available for use by Bamboo. Local agents are always online, although remote agents may be either online or offline.
An 'Offline' agent is a remote agent which has been registered with the Bamboo server, was online, but is now unavailable for builds because:

- The Bamboo remote agent process (running on the remote hardware) was stopped.
- The Bamboo server (for whatever reason) cannot communicate with the remote hardware that is running the Bamboo remote agent process.

Bamboo administrators can manually 'disable' an online agent to prevent it from being used in build generation. The agent will still be online and it can be 'enabled' at a later point in time. It is not possible to disable offline agents.

Related pages:
- Bamboo remote agent installation guide

To monitor the status of your agents:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Agents** in the left panel. This will display the 'Agents' screen, showing lists of all local agents and all remote agents that currently exist in your Bamboo system (see screenshot below).

Agents can have one of the following statuses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Idle</td>
<td>Available to execute builds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building</td>
<td>Currently executing a build.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canceling</td>
<td>Currently canceling a Job build</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Not available to execute builds (see Disabling or deleting an agent).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabled - Building</td>
<td>Currently executing a build, but disabled so cannot execute further builds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabled - Canceling</td>
<td>Currently canceling a build, and disabled so cannot execute further builds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that to see the jobs that are currently being built, look at the **Current Activity** tab on the dashboard.

**Configuring capabilities**

A capability is a feature of an agent. A capability can be defined on an agent for:

- an executable (e.g. Maven)
- a JDK
- a Version Control System client application (e.g. Git)
- a custom capability. This is a key-value property which defines a particular characteristic of an agent (e.g. 'operating.system=WindowsXP' or 'fast.builds=true').

Capabilities typically define the path to an executable that has already been installed, and must be defined in Bamboo before Bamboo or its agents can make use of those.

Capabilities can be defined specifically for an agent, or they can be shared between either all local agents or all remote agents. Note that the value of an agent-specific capability overrides the value of a shared capability of the same name (if one exists).

See also **Configuring agents**.

On this page:
- Defining a new capability
- Editing and deleting a capability
- Renaming a capability
- Notes

**Defining a new capability**

To define a new capability, see:
- Defining a new executable capability
- Defining a new JDK capability
- Defining a new custom capability
- Defining a new version control capability
- Defining a new Docker capability

**Editing and deleting a capability**

To edit an existing capability, see **Modifying and deleting capabilities**.

**Renaming a capability**
To rename an existing capability, see Renaming a capability.

Notes

- A requirement is specified in a job or a task. A requirement specifies a capability that an agent must have for it to build that job or task. A job inherits all of the requirements specified in its tasks.

  Together, capabilities and requirements control which agents can execute builds for particular jobs. Each job can only be built by agents whose capabilities match the job's requirements. See Configuring a job's requirements for more information.

About capabilities and requirements

A capability is a feature of an agent. A capability can be defined on an agent for:

- an executable (e.g. Maven)
- a JDK
- a Version Control System client application (e.g. Git)
- a custom capability. This is a key-value property which defines a particular characteristic of an agent (e.g. 'operating.system=WindowsXP' or 'fast.builds=true').

Capabilities typically define the path to an executable that has already been installed, and must be defined in Bamboo before Bamboo or its agents can make use of those.

Capabilities can be defined specifically for an agent, or they can be shared between either all local agents or all remote agents. Note that the value of an agent-specific capability overrides the value of a shared capability of the same name (if one exists).

See Configuring capabilities for more information.

**On this page:**

- How do capabilities work with requirements?
- How are builds distributed to agents?
- How do capabilities affect the distribution of builds to agents?

**Related pages:**

- Configuring capabilities
- Configuring agents
- Remote agents
- Working with Elastic Bamboo

How do capabilities work with requirements?

A requirement is specified in a job or a task. A requirement specifies a capability that an agent must have for it to build that job or task. A job inherits all of the requirements specified in its tasks.

Together, capabilities and requirements control which agents can execute builds for particular jobs. Each job can only be built by agents whose capabilities match the job's requirements. See Configuring a job's requirements for more information.

How are builds distributed to agents?

An agent will consume a single job at a time and will block any other Bamboo jobs from being processed until that job build is complete. If you would like to build multiple jobs simultaneously on the Bamboo server, then simply set up multiple local agents. If the agents are remote, then you will need to install that number of agent instances on the machine. Separate installations are required because each remote agent will need its own home and log directories.
Plan ACME submits build number 123 to the Build Queue.

The Build Queue forwards build no. ACME-123 to the next available agent whose capabilities meet Plan ACME's requirements.

How do capabilities affect the distribution of builds to agents?
Modifying and deleting capabilities

Depending on the capability type, you can edit parameters such as Path, Java Home and Value for the capability.

Note that:

- Because each agent can only run builds for jobs whose requirements are met by the agent's capabilities (see Configuring a job's requirements), modifying or deleting a capability may mean that some plans can no longer be built.
- Renaming a capability involves changing its key. See Renaming a capability.

On this page:
- Modifying an agent-specific capability
- Modifying a local server capability
- Modifying a shared remote capability

Related pages:
- Configuring capabilities
- Renaming a capability
Modifying an agent-specific capability

To delete an agent-specific capability:

1. Navigate to the desired agent.
2. Click either Edit or Delete for the capability you wish to modify.

Modifying a local server capability

To delete a local server capability:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Server Capabilities in the left navigation panel.
3. Click either Edit or Delete for the capability you wish to modify.

Modifying a shared remote capability

To delete a shared remote capability:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Agents in the left navigation column.
3. Click Shared Remote Capabilities in the top right of the 'Remote Agents' section.
4. Click either Edit or Delete for the capability you wish to modify.

Renaming a capability

To rename a capability you have to change its key value.

Renaming an agent-specific capability

To rename an agent-specific capability:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Agents in the left panel (under 'Build Resources').
3. Click View for the agent that has the capability you wish to rename. A list of agent-specific capabilities and shared capabilities for that agent is displayed.
4. Click View for the capability you wish to rename.
5. Click Rename Capability. The 'Rename Capability' page will display.
6. Enter a value for New key and click Rename Capability.

On this page:
- Renaming an agent-specific capability
- Renaming a local server capability
- Renaming a shared remote capability

Related pages:
- Configuring capabilities

Renaming a local server capability

To rename a local server capability:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Server Capabilities in the left panel (under 'Build Resources').
3. Click View for the capability you wish to rename.
4. Click Rename Capability. The 'Rename Capability' page will display.
5. Enter a value for New key and click Rename Capability.

Renaming a shared remote capability

To rename a shared remote capability:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click **Agents** in the left panel (under 'Build Resources').
3. Click **Shared Remote Capabilities** in the 'Remote Agents' section.
4. Click **View** for the capability you wish to rename.
5. Click **Rename Capability**. The 'Rename Capability' page will display.
6. Enter a value for **New key** and click **Rename Capability**.

**Screenshot: Renaming a custom capability**

### Rename capability

Update the label of this capability. Jobs with it as a requirement will be updated and all agents with this capability will be updated accordingly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capability type</th>
<th>Custom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Old key</td>
<td>crowd.functionalTests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Button] Rename capability [Cancel]

### Viewing a capability's agents and jobs

You can view a capability to see the following information about it:

- which **agents** have/inherit the capability. Click one of the listed agents to show further information about that agent:
  - **Executable Jobs** tab — all the jobs whose requirements match the capabilities of this agent
  - **Capabilities** tab — the capabilities of the agent itself
  - **System Properties** tab — system information about this agent
  - **Recent Activity** link — recent builds for the agent
- which **jobs** have the capability specified as a requirement.

- which elastic images have this capability and the Bamboo plans that rely on this capability. See also Viewing an elastic image.

On this page:
- Viewing an agent-specific capability
- Viewing a local server capability
- Viewing a shared remote capability

**Related pages:**
- Configuring capabilities
- Renaming a capability
- Modifying and deleting capabilities

### Viewing an agent-specific capability

To view an agent-specific capability:

1. Navigate to the desired agent.
2. Click the **Capabilities** tab.
3. Click **View** for the capability you wish to view.

### Viewing a local server capability

To view a local server capability:

1. Click the ![icon]
   icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Server Capabilities** in the left navigation panel.
3. Click **View** for the capability you wish to view.

### Viewing a shared remote capability

Before you begin:

- Shared remote capabilities are **not shared** with elastic agents.

To view a shared remote capability:

1. Click the ![icon]
   icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Agents** in the left navigation column.
3. Click **Shared Remote Capabilities** in the top right of the 'Remote Agents' section.
4. Click **View** for the capability you wish to view.

## Defining a new executable capability

An **executable** is an external program that Bamboo uses during the build process. Bamboo supports the following executables:

- Ant
- Maven
- Grails
- NAnt
- devenv.com
- msbuild.exe
- PHPUnit
- Custom command (e.g. 'make')
- Script

On this page:
- Defining an agent-specific executable capability
- Defining a local server executable capability
- Defining a shared remote executable capability
- Notes

Executables must be defined as capabilities (that is, 'registered') in Bamboo before they can be used by tasks in a Bamboo job. At least one capability was automatically defined when you installed Bamboo, but you can define additional capabilities for other executables.

You can define an executable capability that is:

- for a specific local or remote agent
- shared by all local agents
- shared by all remote agents.

Once you have defined a new executable capability in your Bamboo system, its label (e.g. 'Ant') will appear in the Executable list when you use the executable in a task (see Configuring tasks). The executable you select will be used every time the task is run during a build. That is, the task can only be run by agents which have a capability that matches the executable specified in the task’s Executable list.

Note that agent-specific capabilities override any shared capability of the same name.

### Defining an agent-specific executable capability

An **agent-specific capability** applies to one agent only. Note that the value of an agent-specific capability will override the value of a shared capability of the same name (if one exists).

**To define a new agent-specific executable capability:**

1. Navigate to the desired agent.
2. In the 'Agent-Specific Capabilities' section of the **Capabilities** tab, click **Add Capability**. The 'Add Capability' page is displayed.
3. Choose **Capability Type** > **Executable**.
4. Select the appropriate executable from the **Type** list.
5. In the **Executable Label** field, type a name/label for the executable. Bamboo uses this name in the **Executables** list whenever a task's executable is configured.
6. In the **Path** field, type the path to the installed executable. This will vary depending on the **Type** you selected in the previous step. 

   For Ant and Maven, Bamboo requires the path to be the location of the executable installation folder.
7. Click **Add**. This will verify whether the executable and path you have specified are valid.

### Defining a local server executable capability

Local server capabilities are inherited by all local agents. This means that local agents can all make use of the executables installed on the Bamboo server machine.

**Before you begin:**

- If you want to run multiple Maven agents on your local server, you will need to configure repository isolation for your Maven executables. See Configuring repository isolation for Maven executables for details.

**To define a new local server executable capability:**

1. Click the **Server Capabilities** icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Choose **Capability Type** > **Executable** in the 'Add Capability' section at the end of the page.
3. Select the appropriate type of executable from the **Type** list.
4. In the **Executable Label** field, type a name/label for the executable, which Bamboo presents in the **Executables** list whenever a Task 's executable is configured.
5. In the **Path** field, type the appropriate path. This will depend on the **Type** you selected in the previous step.
Note that for Ant and Maven, Bamboo requires the path to be the location of the executable installation folder.
7. Click Add.

**Defining a shared remote executable capability**

Shared remote capabilities are inherited by all remote agents. However, Bamboo remote agents inherit only the paths of the shared executable capabilities, not the actual executable files. This means that every time you define a capability for an agent, you must make sure that the executable (for example, Ant or Maven) has actually been installed in that location on the remote server on which the remote agent will run.

Note that the value of a shared capability will be overridden by the value of an agent-specific capability of the same name (if one exists).

Shared remote executable capabilities are **not shared** with elastic agents.

To define a shared remote executable capability:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Agents** in the left navigation panel.
3. In the 'Remote Agents' section, click **Shared Remote Capabilities** at the right.
4. Choose **Capability Type > Executable** in the 'Add Capability' section.
5. Select the appropriate type of executable from the **Type** list.
6. In the **Executable Label** field, type a name/label to help you identify this executable.
7. In the **Path** field, type the appropriate path. This will depend on the **Type** you selected in the previous step.
   * Note that for Ant and Maven, Bamboo requires the path to be the location of the executable installation folder.
8. Click **Add**.

**Notes**

- **Pre-defined executables** — The executable that was automatically defined when you installed Bamboo depends on the system environment variables (e.g. `'ANT_HOME=/opt/java/ant'`) that were present on the machine that Bamboo was installed on.
  * On the Bamboo server, environment variables that were present during installation were saved as **local server capabilities** in Bamboo.
  * On remote agents, environment variables that were present during installation were saved as **agent-specific capabilities** in Bamboo.
- **Using other executables** — If you need to use an executable that is not natively supported by Bamboo, a number of third-party **plugin modules** are available (e.g. NoseXUnit). You can also create your own executable plugin (see the **Bamboo Plugin Guide** for details).
  - **msbuild.exe** — You will need to install the .NET framework SDK and reference the default path for `msbuild.exe`, (e.g. `C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v2.0.50727`), to use this executable.
  - **PHPUnit** — You will need to install PHPUnit and reference the path to your PHP command-line interpreter, (e.g. `usr/bin/phpunit` on Ubuntu), to use this executable.

Viewing your executable capabilities

You can view all of the executable capabilities that have been defined in Bamboo on the 'Executables' page. These include local server capabilities, local agent-specific capabilities and remote agent-specific capabilities.

An executable is an external program that Bamboo uses during the build process. Generally, executables compile source code to generate compiled executable files (referred to as artifacts in Bamboo). Ant, Maven, MSBuild or PHPUnit are just some examples of executables that can be used as part of your build process.

New executables can be defined as **capabilities** in Bamboo. Once an executable has been defined in Bamboo, it can be configured as part of a **task**.

On this page:

- Viewing and configuring executable capabilities
- Notes

Related pages:

- Configuring capabilities

Viewing and configuring executable capabilities

To view and configure the executable capabilities defined in Bamboo:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Executables** in the left navigation panel.
3. Click a specific executable's tab to see the agents and jobs related to this executable capability.
   * View more details about an agent with this executable capability — click the linked name of the agent in the 'Agent' column.
   * This will show you the complete list of capabilities and jobs associated with that agent.
   * Edit the executable path of an agent with this capability — click **Edit** in the 'Operations' column for the agent you wish to configure. See **Defining a new executable capability**.
- Remove this executable capability from an agent — click **Delete** in the 'Operations' column for the agent that currently possesses this executable capability.

  Be aware that you can only remove a executable capability from all local agents, not from individual local agents. See the note below for more information.

- View details about (and configure) an elastic image with this executable capability — click the linked name of the elastic image in the 'Elastic Image Configuration' column.

- Configure a job that relies on or requires this executable capability — click the linked name of the job in the 'Plan' column.

- If you are currently viewing a Maven (2.x or later) executable capability, you can configure repository isolation for it by clicking **Edit Capability Configuration**. Please refer to Configuring repository isolation for Maven executables for more information.

- To add a new executable as a local server capability, click **Add executable to server capabilities** to navigate to the 'Server Capabilities' page.

---

### Executables

The following table lists the executables that have been defined as capabilities in Bamboo. You can add a executable as a server capability on this page (shared by all local agents), or delete any of the existing executable capabilities listed. A executable can only be added as an agent-specific capability on that agent's page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Executable</th>
<th>Path</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ant</td>
<td>Volumes/Pharlap/opt/java/tools/ant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2.1 (Maven 2.x)</td>
<td>/usr/share/ant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2 (Maven 2.x)</td>
<td>/opt/apache-ant-1.7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bash (Command)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 1 (Maven 1.x)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Script (Script)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ant

The screen shows the summary of a capability. You can see which jobs have a requirement on this capability and which agents have the capability.

### Agents with capability

The following agents have this capability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Path</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All local agents</td>
<td>Volumes/Pharlap/opt/java/tools/ant</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kozak.atlassian.pl</td>
<td>/usr/share/ant</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tardigrade sydney.atlassian.com</td>
<td>/opt/apache-ant-1.7.0</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Elastic Image Configurations with capability

2 elastic image configurations have this capability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elastic Image Configuration</th>
<th>Path</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>/opt/apache-ant-1.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean instance</td>
<td>/opt/apache-ant-1.7.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Jobs with requirement

2 jobs rely on this capability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan</th>
<th>Path</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Personal Branches › Jess's test build › HGTest</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal Branches › New Plan › Default Job</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Notes**

- **Bamboo's automatic detection of executables** — When you install the Bamboo server application or the Bamboo Remote Agent application on another machine, either of these applications will automatically look for existing executables installed on the same machine (based on a combination of the machine's environment variables and other conditions). A 'executable capability' will be created for each executable that either of these Bamboo applications find.

The environment variables and conditions that Bamboo uses to automatically detect and create executable capabilities are listed below. With the exception of the 'Command' executable, the paths for each automatically detected executable are based on the path 'string' values found within these environment variables.
Ant — the `ANT_HOME` environment variable

Maven — the `MAVEN_HOME` environment variable (Maven 1) or `M2_HOME` or `GRAILS_HOME` environment variable (Maven 2.x)

Grails — `GRAILS_HOME` environment variable

Command — the existence of the `/bin/bash` file

PHPUnit — the existence of the `phpunit` file anywhere within the machine's `PATH` environment variable value

**Local agents and executable capabilities** — Since Bamboo automatically looks for executables installed on the same machine and creates a 'executable capability' for each executable installation it finds, all existing and subsequent local agents that you create will possess these executable capabilities. Hence, when you access the 'Executables' page and view these executable capabilities, all local agents will be grouped together in the 'All local agents' category and you will only be able to remove these executable capabilities from all local agents, not from individual local agents.

### Configuring repository isolation for Maven executables

Bamboo allows you to isolate Maven (2.x or later only) executables on an agent-specific basis. If you configure repository isolation for a particular Maven executable capability, each agent that uses this executable will have its own private Maven 2.x artifacts directory, thereby allowing you to avoid these jar and dependency file corruptions. Each isolated repository directory has the path:

```
$BAMBOO_HOME/.m2/AGENT-${bamboo.agentId}/repository
```

**Related pages:**
- Defining a new executable capability

You may want to configure repository isolation for Maven executables, if you run multiple Maven executables on one server machine which run under the same user account on that server, but belong to different Bamboo agents. In this case, the agents will use the same default Maven artifacts directory: `$HOME/.m2/repository` (or `%USERPROFILE%\m2\repository` for Windows-based servers). This is the directory to which Maven dependency jars are downloaded and where project artifacts are installed during the "install" phase of a Maven build.

Hence, problems can arise if Bamboo uses these multiple Maven executables simultaneously. For example, if multiple agents on a single computer, each with a different Maven executable capability, start to run Maven builds simultaneously from the queue, the different Maven executables may attempt to download the same dependency to the same artifacts directory location, resulting in corruption of the downloaded jar and dependency files.

**Before you begin:**
- This feature is not available for Maven 1.x executables.
- When configuring any Maven executables in Bamboo in which you want to force local repository isolation, ensure that the executable label you use is one that identifies it as such — for example, 'Maven 2.x with local repository isolation'.

**To configure a new local server Maven capability with repository isolation:**

1. Click the ![icon](https://example.com/icon.png) in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Server Capabilities** in the left navigation panel.
3. In the 'Add Capability' section, choose your executable and enter its details as described:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capability Type</th>
<th>Select Executable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Select one of the Maven options (2.x or later)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executable Label</td>
<td>Enter 'Maven with local repository isolation'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path</td>
<td>Enter the path for your Maven executable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Add**.
5. Click the label for the executable you have just added. The executable capability summary screen will be displayed (see 'Maven 2.x Executable' screenshot below).
6. Click **Edit Capability Configuration**. The 'Configure Capability' screen will be displayed (see 'Maven 2.x Repository Isolation' screenshot below).
7. Select the **Local repository isolation** check box.
8. Click **Save**.

**Screenshot: Maven Executable**
**Maven 2 with local repository isolation**

The screen shows the summary of a capability. You can see which jobs have a requirement on this capability and which agents have the capability.

**Agents with capability**

The following agents have this capability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Path</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All local agents</td>
<td>/Volumes/Pharlsp/opt/dev/tools/maven</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bambooperf-sydney.atlassian.com</td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Apache-maven-3.1.0</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Elastic Image Configurations with capability**

3 elastic image configurations have this capability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elastic Image Configuration</th>
<th>Path</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KBTEST</td>
<td>/opt/maven-2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>/opt/maven-2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2.1 Image</td>
<td>/opt/maven-2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jobs with requirement**

28 jobs rely on this capability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan</th>
<th>Path</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Artifact Sharing Dogfooding » Artifact sharing » Consumer</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artifact Sharing Dogfooding » Artifact sharing » Final</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Capability Configuration**

Local repository isolation: Yes

- Rename Capability
- Edit Capability Configuration

**Executables > Maven 2**

**Configure capability**

Update specific features of this capability.

- Local repository isolation

  When enabled, executable will use per-agent private Maven local repository.

  - [Save]
  - [Cancel]
Defining a new JDK capability

A JDK must be installed, and defined in Bamboo as a capability, before Bamboo can make use of it when building jobs.

At least one JDK was automatically defined when you installed Bamboo. You can define additional JDK capabilities that are:

- for a specific local or remote agent
- shared by all local agents
- shared by all remote agents.

On this page:

- Defining a JDK capability on an agent
- Defining a local server JDK capability
- Defining a shared remote JDK capability
- Notes

Once you have defined a new JDK capability in your Bamboo system, its label (e.g. ‘1.5’) will appear in the Build JDK list when you configure a job’s builder (see Configuring tasks). The JDK you select will be used for every one of that job’s builds. That is, the job can only be built by agents which have a JDK capability whose label is specified in the job’s Build JDK field.

Note that if an agent has its own specific JDK capability, that value will override the value of a shared JDK capability of the same name (if one exists).

**Defining a JDK capability on an agent**

To define a new agent-specific JDK capability:

1. Click the icon and select Overview.
2. Click Agents in the left panel.
3. Click the name of the required agent.
4. Click the Capabilities tab, and then Add capability (to the right of 'Agent-Specific capabilities').
5. Choose Capability type > JDK.
6. In the JDK label field, type a name/label for the JDK. Bamboo displays this in the Build JDK list whenever a job’s builder is configured.
7. In the Java home field, type the location of the JDK Home Directory.
8. Click Add.

---

**Defining a local server JDK capability**

Local server capabilities are inherited by all local agents.

To define a new local server JDK capability:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Server Capabilities in the left navigation panel.
3. Choose Capability Type > JDK in the 'Add Capability' section at the end of the page.
4. In the JDK Label field, type a name/label for the JDK. Bamboo displays this in the Build JDK list whenever a job’s builder is configured.
Defining a shared remote JDK capability

Shared remote JDK capabilities are not shared with elastic agents.

To define a new shared remote JDK capability:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Agents in the left navigation panel.
3. In the 'Remote Agents' section, click Shared Remote Capabilities at the right.
4. Choose Capability Type > JDK in the 'Add Capability' section at the end of the page (see screenshot below).
5. In the JDK Label field, type a name/label for the JDK. Bamboo displays this in the Build JDK list whenever a job's builder is configured.
6. In the Java Home field, type the location of the JDK Home Directory.
7. Click Add.

Notes

- Configuring generic JDK capabilities — If you want to indicate that an agent is capable of running builds for a set of related JDKs (e.g. all point versions of JDK 1.5), you set up generic JDK capabilities to encompass these JDKs. For example, you can set up the following JDK capabilities for your Bamboo agent(s):
  - JDK (where 'JDK Label' = 'JDK' and 'Java Home' = '/usr/java/jdk1.5.0_07') — this JDK capability indicates that an agent(s) is capable of running builds with any JDK requirement.
  - JDK 1.5 (where 'JDK Label' = 'JDK 1.5' and 'Java Home' = '/usr/java/jdk1.5.0_07') — this JDK capability indicates that an agent(s) is capable of running builds with a JDK 1.5 requirement or any point version of JDK 1.5, e.g. 1.5.0_07, 1.5.0_08, etc.
  - JDK 1.5.0_07 (where 'JDK Label' = 'JDK 1.5.0_07' and 'Java Home' = '/usr/java/jdk1.5.0_07') — this JDK capability indicates that an agent(s) is only capable of running builds with a JDK 1.5.0_07 requirement.

- If you wish to find redundant JDK capabilities, you can view the list of JDK capabilities set up in Bamboo and delete any unwanted JDK capabilities.

- Automatically defined capabilities – This depends on the system environment variables (e.g. 'JAVA_HOME=/opt/java/jdk1.5') that were present on the machine on which Bamboo was installed:
  - On the Bamboo server, environment variables that were present during installation were saved as shared local capabilities in Bamboo.
  - On remote agents, environment variables that were present during installation were saved as agent-specific capabilities in Bamboo.

Viewing your JDK capabilities

You can view all the JDK capabilities that have been defined in your Bamboo system on the JDKs page. These include local server capabilities, local agent-specific capabilities and remote agent-specific capabilities.

Note the following:

- Bamboo's automatic detection of JDKs — When you install either Bamboo or the Bamboo Remote Agent, it will automatically look for an existing JDK installed on the same machine (based on the machine's JAVA_HOME environment variable) and create a 'JDK capability' for that JDK installation, with its path being the value of JAVA_HOME.

- Local agents and JDK capabilities — Since Bamboo automatically looks for an existing JDK installed on the same machine and creates a 'JDK capability' for it, all existing and subsequent local agents that you create will possess this JDK capability. Hence, when you access the 'JDKs' page and view this JDK capability, all local agents will be grouped together in the 'All local agents' category and you will only be able to remove this JDK capability from all local agents, not from individual local agents.

Related pages:

- Defining a new JDK capability

To view and configure the JDK capabilities defined in Bamboo:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click JDKs (under 'Build Resources') in the left navigation panel.
3. Click the tab for a specific JDK to see the agents and jobs related to this JDK capability.
   - View the capabilities and jobs associated with an agent with this JDK capability — click the linked name of the agent in the 'Agent' column. See Viewing a capability's agents and jobs.
   - Edit JAVA_HOME for an agent — click Edit in the 'Operations' column for the agent you wish to configure. See Defining a new JDK capability.
- Remove this JDK capability from an agent — click **Delete** in the ‘Operations’ column for the agent that currently possesses this JDK capability.
  - **⚠️** Be aware that you can only remove a JDK capability from all local agents, not from individual local agents. See the note above for more information.
- View details about (and configure) an elastic image with this JDK capability — click the name of the elastic image in the ‘Elastic Image Configuration’ column. See **Viewing an elastic image**.
- Configure a job that relies on this JDK capability — click the name of the job in the ‘Plan’ column.
- To add a new JDK as a local server capability, click **add a JDK as a server capability** at the top of the page. This opens the ‘Server Capabilities’ page at the ‘Add Capability’ section, with the JDK selected as the **Capability Type**.

**Screenshot: Viewing the JDKs in Bamboo**

### JDK 1.6

The screen shows the summary of a capability. You can see which jobs have a requirement on this capability and which agents have the capability.

#### Agents with capability

The following agents have this capability:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Java Home</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All local agents</td>
<td>/System/Library/Frameworks/JavaVM.framework/1.6.0/Home</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>172.20.3.214</td>
<td>/System/Library/Frameworks/JavaVM.framework/CurrentJDK/Home</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo perf-PC.sydney.atlassian.com</td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.6.0_21</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo perf2.sydney.atlassian.com</td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.6.0_22</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barnard.sydney.atlassian.com</td>
<td>/System/Library/Frameworks/JavaVM.framework/CurrentJDK/Home</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Elastic Image Configurations with capability

14 elastic image configurations have this capability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elastic Image Configuration</th>
<th>Java Home</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clean instance</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Image</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium Test</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PostgreSQL 8.4</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S3 Maven Repository</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Image S3 i386</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MySQL 5.1</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Jobs with requirement

8 jobs rely on this capability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan</th>
<th>Java Home</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+core+ Bamboo &gt; WebDriver Tests &gt; Default Job</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+core+ Bamboo Plugins &gt; Bamboo Sandbox Plugin Dogfood Test &gt; Dummy Private Deploy</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+core+ Bamboo Plugins &gt; Bamboo Sandbox Plugin Dogfood Test &gt; Dummy Public Sandbox Deploy</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo Plugins &lt;non core&gt; &gt; Support Tools Plugin &gt; Integration Tests</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td>Edit Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting &gt; OpUp report &gt; Default Job</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speakeasy &gt; Trunk &gt; Default Job</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZZ pstefaniak &gt; clone of empty plan &gt; Default Job</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZZ pstefaniak &gt; empty plan for ssaasen &gt; Default Job</td>
<td>exists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Renamed Capability*
Defining a new version control capability

Version control capabilities let Bamboo know where the client application for a version control system is located, so that Bamboo can perform a checkout while building. Bamboo requires that a capability for at least one of the following version control repositories be set so that Bamboo can check out source code from that repository type:

- Bitbucket Cloud
- Git
  If no capability is provided, Bamboo will use its built-in Git implementation. Note that the built-in Git implementation does not support symbolic links, submodules, automatic branch detection or automatic merging.
- Mercurial
- Perforce

Note that there is no need to create a SVN capability as SVN support is built into every Bamboo agent.

Example version control executable paths

For the version control systems that require capabilities to be set on agents, the following table offers example paths for both Linux and Windows systems.

Note that these paths may differ on your actual system's configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capability type</th>
<th>Example paths</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Git</td>
<td>/usr/bin/git</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Git\git.exe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercurial</td>
<td>/usr/local/bin/hg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Mercurial\hg.exe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To define a new version control capability

1. Navigate to the desired agent.
2. Select either a local or remote agent.
3. Choose the version control type you require from Capability Type.
4. Provide the full path to client executable on the agent machine.

If you install a new agent on a machine that has Git already installed, the agent will find the Git client automatically.

Defining a new custom capability

Custom capabilities can be used to control which jobs will be built by a particular agent, since agent capabilities are required to match job requirements. For example, if the builds for a particular job should only run in a Windows environment, you could create a custom capability `operating.system=WindowsXP` for the appropriate agent(s), and specify it as a requirement for this job. (See Configuring a job's requirements.)

You can define a custom capability that is:

- for a specific local or remote agent
- to be shared by all local agents
- to be shared by all remote agents.

Note that the value of an agent-specific capability overrides the value of a shared capability of the same name (if one exists).

On this page:

- Defining an agent-specific custom capability
- Defining a local server custom capability
- Defining a shared remote custom capability

Defining an agent-specific custom capability

To define a new agent-specific custom capability:

1. Navigate to the desired agent.
2. Click Add capability in the top right of the 'Agent-Specific Capabilities' section.
3. Choose Capability type > Custom.
4. Specify values for Key and Value.
5. Click Add.
Defining a local server custom capability

Local server capabilities are inherited by all local agents.

To define a new local server custom capability:

1. Click the 
   
   ![Icon](image)
   
   icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Server Capabilities in the left navigation panel (under 'Build Resources').
3. Locate the 'Add Capability' section at the bottom of the screen (see screenshot below).
4. Choose Capability Type > Custom.
5. Specify values for Key and Value.
6. Click Add.

Defining a shared remote custom capability

Shared remote custom capabilities are not shared with elastic agents.

To define a new shared remote custom capability:

1. Click the 
   
   ![Icon](image)
   
   icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Agents in the left navigation panel (under 'Build Resources').
3. Locate the 'Remote Agents' section.
4. Click Shared Remote Capabilities.
5. Locate the 'Add Capability' section at the bottom of the screen (see screenshot below).
6. Choose Capability Type > Custom.
7. Specify values for Key and Value.
8. Click Add.

Defining a new Docker capability

You need to define (that is, 'register') a Docker capability in Bamboo before you can use a Docker task in Bamboo builds and deployments.

If you're using a Windows Bamboo server, you can't run Docker commands directly from the Windows command line.

To use the Docker task with a Windows Bamboo server, run Docker Machine.

A capability typically defines the path to a module or executable that has already been installed, and must be defined in Bamboo before Bamboo or its agents can make use of that.

For Bamboo 5.8, and later versions, stock images already provide Docker, but you might still need to add the capability manually if you have upgraded from Bamboo 5.7 or an earlier version. See Existing stock images require manual update if new capabilities are needed for more details.

Note that Bamboo requires Docker 1.7.1 or later.

Define a Docker capability on an elastic image
1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.

2. Click Image configurations in the left navigation panel (under ‘Elastic Bamboo’).

3. Click Capabilities (under ‘Operations’) for the relevant elastic image.

4. Use the ‘Add Capability’ panel at the end of the page to add the new Docker capability to the image:
   • From Capability type, choose Docker.
   • For Path, enter the path to the Docker executable, for example /usr/bin/docker.

5. Click Add.

**Define a Docker capability on an agent**

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.

2. Click Agents in the left panel.

3. Click the name of the required agent.

4. Click the Capabilities tab, and then Add capability (to the right of ‘Agent-Specific capabilities’).

5. In the ‘Add Capability’ panel:
   • From Capability type, choose Docker.
   • For Path, enter the path to the Docker executable, for example /usr/bin/docker.

6. Click Add.

**Define a Docker capability on the Bamboo server**

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.

2. Click Server capabilities in the left navigation panel.

3. Use the ‘Add Capability’ panel at the end of the page to add the new Docker capability to the server:
   • From Capability type, choose Docker.
   • For Path, enter the path to the Docker executable, for example /usr/bin/docker.

4. Click Add.

**Remote agents**

For information about installing and using remote agents, see the following pages:

- Bamboo remote agent installation guide
- Configuring remote agent capabilities using bamboo-capabilities.properties
- Disabling and enabling remote agents support

**Disabling and enabling remote agents support**

**Remote agent support**

Disabling remote agent support in Bamboo will disable all remote agents and prevent any users from creating new remote agents. This function will not delete any remote agents that you have already created. To delete a remote agent, see Disabling or deleting an agent.

Note that remote agent support must be enabled to use Elastic Bamboo. Disabling remote agent support will disable Elastic Bamboo.

To enable, or disable, remote agent support:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.

2. Click Agents (under ‘Build Resources’)

3. Click either Enable Remote Agent Support or Disable Remote Agent Support.
Additional remote agent options

This page describes additional options for running a Bamboo remote agent.

Changing where the remote agent stores its data

By default, the remote agent will store its data in a USER_HOME/bamboo-agent-home. If you wish to specify a different directory, add the following command line parameter before the JAR file name:

```
-Dbamboo.home=RemoteAgentHome
```

where RemoteAgentHome is the path to the Bamboo agent home directory you created in step 1.1.

Your command line will look something like this:

```
java -Dbamboo.home=RemoteAgentHome -jar
atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer-X.X-SNAPSHOT.jar
http://bamboo-host-server:8085/agentServer/
```

The name of the jar file (e.g. atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer-2.2-SNAPSHOT.jar) will vary depending on the version of Bamboo you are running.

Disabling auto-capability detection for the remote agent

There may be situations where you want to prevent Bamboo from automatically detecting and adding capabilities (such as JDKs) to the remote agent, or where you don't want to run the remote agent with default capabilities.

To update the property for a remote agent, add the following line to the <bamboo-agent-home>/conf/wrapper.conf file:

```
wrapper.java.additional.3=-DDISABLE_AGENT_AUTO_CAPABILITY_DETECTION=true
```

Then restart the agent with regular command `java -jar agent.jar URL_TO_SERVER SECURITY_TOKEN`

Specifying a custom log4j file for the remote agent

You can specify a custom log4j file in the wrapper.conf file. The file is located in <bamboo-agent-home>/conf/wrapper.conf.

Find the `wrapper.java.additional.3=-Dlog4j.configuration=` line, uncomment it and provide path to log4j.properties file at your disk. Then restart the agent with regular command `java -jar agent.jar URL_TO_SERVER SECURITY_TOKEN`.

Changing the logging on the remote agent

By default, the remote agent will use the same logging level as the Bamboo server. However, you can control the level of logging of your remote agent independently of your Bamboo server by setting up a separate logging configuration file.
Please see Logging in Bamboo for further details.

- **Accepting self-signed certificates installed on the server**
  Use the text-based keytool utility or GUI-based Portecle to add the self-signed certificate to the trusted certificates in your keystore.

- **Disabling hostname verification for certificates**
  If you are connecting to your Bamboo server via https (SSL is enabled) using a hostname or IP address that does not match the Common Name of your Bamboo server's certificate (or any of its Subject Alternative Names) you need to disable hostname verification:

  Add the following parameter to the remote agent's command line:

  ```
  -Dbamboo.agent.ignoreServerCertName=true
  ```

  Your command line will look something like this:

  ```
  java -Dbamboo.agent.ignoreServerCertName=true -jar
  atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer-X.X-SNAPSHOT.jar
  https://bamboo-host-server:8085/agentServer/
  ```

  Please note that this **reduces the security of your configuration**, as the identity of your Bamboo server will not be authenticated by the remote agent.

- **Running Bamboo without the Remote Agent Supervisor**
  The remote agent supervisor is included in the remote agent JAR bundled with Bamboo. The appropriate remote agent supervisor for the operating system of your remote machine, will be automatically installed when you run the default remote agent start-up command line.

  The remote agent supervisor cannot be installed on a small number of operating systems (i.e. the remote agent will start without the remote agent supervisor). If the remote agent supervisor fails to install, please check the operated systems list on the remote agent supervisor page. If your operating system is on the list and the remote agent supervisor still fails to install, please raise a support request in the Bamboo project.

  If you need to run the remote agent without running the remote agent supervisor, you can execute the 'classic' version of the remote agent JAR.
  The 'classic' agent jar is available from Bamboo's agent installation page for download. Follow the steps below to run the 'classic' version of the remote agent:

  1. Browse to:

     ```
     http://<host>:8085/admin/agent/addRemoteAgent.action
     ```

  2. Click the the **direct agent JAR is available at bamboo-agent-2.2.2.jar** link and save 'classic' agent jar.

  3. Start the agent with:

     ```
     java -jar bamboo-agent-2.2.2.jar http://<host>:8085/agentServer/
     ```

     *The name of the jar file (e.g. bamboo-agent-2.2.2.jar) will vary depending on the version of Bamboo you are running*

- **Running the remote agent with different start-up commands**
  The remote agent supervisor is executed by default when you run the default remote agent start-up command line. The remote agent supervisor is implemented via a Java Service wrapper. The wrapper allows you to execute a number of general start-up commands when the remote agent is run. These commands are appended to the end of the default remote agent start-up command line:

  ```
  java -jar atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer-2.2-SNAPSHOT.jar
  http://bamboo-host-server:8085/agentServer <wrapper_command>
  ```

  where `<wrapper_command>` is one of the keywords described below:
• console — runs the remote agent in the foreground, i.e. display all of the commands on the screen. The agent home directory will be populated only if it is empty. This parameter is used by default.
• start — runs the remote agent in the background, i.e. no commands are displayed on screen. If you have installed the remote agent as a Windows service, this command will work with the service.
• stop — stops a remote agent that is running. If you have installed the remote agent as a Windows service, this command will work with the service.
• status — (non-Windows OS only) returns the status of the remote agent, e.g. "Remote agent is not running."
• install — installs the files for the remote agent, but does not start it. This will overwrite any changes that have been made to the wrapper.conf file. The agent home directory will be populated, regardless of whether it is empty or not, i.e. existing files will be overwritten. You may wish to use this option, if you want to customize the remote agent files before starting it.

The name of the jar file (e.g. atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer-2.2-SNAPSHOT.jar) will vary depending on the version of Bamboo you are running.

Installing the remote agent as a Windows service (Windows only)

The remote agent supervisor is executed by default when you run the default remote agent start-up command line. The remote agent supervisor is implemented via a Java Service wrapper. The wrapper allows you to install or uninstall the remote agent as a service in Windows (i.e. start the Bamboo remote agent automatically when the machine boots). This is done by appending the appropriate wrapper commands to the end of the default remote agent start-up command line:

```
java -jar atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer-2.2-SNAPSHOT.jar
http://bamboo-host-server:8085/agentServer <wrapper_command>
```

where `<wrapper_command>` is one of the keywords described below:

• installerntservice — (Windows only) installs the remote agent as a Windows service.
• uninstallntservice — (Windows only) uninstalls the remote agent as a Windows service.

The name of the jar file (e.g. atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer-2.2-SNAPSHOT.jar) will vary depending on the version of Bamboo you are running.

If you have installed the NT service, you will be able to use the start and stop start-up console commands with the service.

Working with Elastic Bamboo

Elastic Bamboo allows you to use computing resources from the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) to run builds. Elastic Bamboo uses a remote agent AMI (Amazon Machine Image) to create instances of remote agents in the Amazon EC2.

The following pages and sub-pages describe how to work with Elastic Bamboo:

• About Elastic Bamboo — Elastic Bamboo concepts.
• Getting started with Elastic Bamboo — setting up Elastic Bamboo for the first time. It contains instructions on enabling Elastic Bamboo for your Bamboo installation and running your first build.
• Configuring Elastic Bamboo — changing settings for Elastic Bamboo. This includes instructions on how to use Amazon’s Elastic Block Storage to persist build information for your builds on Elastic Bamboo.
• Managing your elastic images
• Managing your elastic instances
• Managing your elastic agents
• Elastic Bamboo FAQ — running your builds using Elastic Bamboo.
• Elastic Bamboo Security — setting up secure communication between Bamboo and the EC2.
On this page:

- Conceptual Overview
- Key Terms
- Setting Up Elastic Bamboo

Conceptual Overview

Elastic Bamboo allows you to use computing resources from the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) to run builds. Elastic Bamboo uses a remote agent AMI (Amazon Machine Image) to create instances of remote agents in the Amazon EC2.

Elastic Bamboo Conceptual Overview

A Bamboo build job can be run on an elastic agent, provided that the capabilities of the elastic agent meet the requirements of the job. Bamboo will assign the relevant job to an available elastic agent from the build queue automatically. The elastic agent must already be running for a job to be assigned to it.

An elastic agent is started by creating a new instance of an elastic image. Creating this new elastic instance automatically runs an elastic agent process in the instance. The agent inherits the capabilities of the image it was created from. Only one agent process can be run in an instance, although multiple instances can be created from the same image.

Once a job has completed running on an elastic agent, its results are made available (like those of any other job executed on a non-elastic agent). The elastic agent and instance will continue to run until they are shut down. Shutting down an elastic instance will terminate the agent, not take it offline. However, Bamboo will store historical information about the terminated elastic agent, such as the job which it has run.

An Amazon Web Services (AWS) account is required to use Elastic Bamboo. Elastic Bamboo Costs are charged by Amazon, separate to Bamboo license costs, as Elastic Bamboo is powered by Amazon resources.

Did you know you can configure Bamboo to start and shut down elastic instances automatically, based on build queue demands? Please refer to Configuring Elastic Bamboo for more information.

Key Terms
Elastic Image

An elastic image is an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that is stored in one of Amazon data centers for use with the Elastic Bamboo feature. An elastic image is used to create elastic instances, which in turn create elastic agents. Conceptually, an elastic image is equivalent to an operating system running on a computer’s boot hard drive and elastic instances would be the software that runs on this operation system.

Each elastic image registered with the Amazon Web Services (AWS) has its own unique identifier, known as an AMI ID. You can associate multiple elastic images with a Bamboo server. One default shared image is maintained by Atlassian in AWS, and is available to all Elastic Bamboo users.

You can also create your own custom elastic images.

Elastic Instance

An elastic instance is a running instance of an elastic image. One elastic instance is created whenever an elastic image is started. Hence, starting one elastic image multiple times, results in the creation of multiple elastic instances. Each time an elastic instance is created, one elastic agent is created on that instance.

Conceptually, an elastic instance can be thought of as a computer. The elastic agent's processes are run on this computer and the elastic image is the boot hard drive. Unlike computers, however, elastic instances are temporary and stateless. When an elastic instance is shut down:

- Any changes that an elastic instance makes to the boot hard drive (e.g. agent log file) will not persist
- Any customizations to the instance itself will also be lost.

The Amazon Elastic Block Store can provide persistent storage for your elastic instances.

Elastic Agent

An elastic agent is an agent that runs in the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2). An elastic agent process runs in an elastic instance of an elastic image. An elastic agent inherits its capabilities from the elastic image that it was created from.

Setting Up Elastic Bamboo

If you would like to set up Elastic Bamboo for your Bamboo installation, please read Getting started with Elastic Bamboo. This document guides you through the initial configuration of Elastic Bamboo and running your first Job build.

Elastic Bamboo Costs

This page provides high level guidelines to Elastic Bamboo costs. As usage patterns vary from user to user, these guidelines are only intended to provide a picture of how Elastic Bamboo operates, not to make definitive pricing statements.

The Bamboo pricing page on the Atlassian website details the costs for Elastic Bamboo. This page is intended to complement that information.

Amazon EC2 Pricing Information

You can use Elastic Bamboo to run remote agents on elastic instances in the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2). If you choose to do this, you will be charged by Amazon for your EC2 compute usage. These charges will be billed to the AWS account that you provide.

Please note, if you do not have an AWS account, you must register for one on the AWS registration page before you can enable Elastic Bamboo.

Full details on Amazon EC2 pricing is available on the Amazon EC2 pricing page. Please also note the following important information, which is relevant to EC2 usage by Elastic Bamboo:

- You are responsible for all EC2 usage costs incurred on your AWS account.
- Elastic Bamboo creates “High-CPU Medium” Instances by default, however you can configure the EC2 instance type. Read Managing your elastic image configurations for instructions on how to change your default instance type. Please note the different costs for different instance types.
- You are responsible for creating and shutting down resources required to run agents in EC2.
- You can track your EC2 usage in near real-time on the AWS Account page.
- Your Elastic Bamboo compute usage will not be distinguishable from your non-Bamboo EC2 compute usage in your AWS billing.

General Notes about EC2 Usage and Costs

The following information is based on our usage of Elastic Bamboo at Atlassian. These points are intended to be guidelines to EC2 usage and costs only.

- The bulk of EC2 costs from using Elastic Bamboo is for the uptime of EC2 instances. We strongly recommend that you shut down your instances when not in use.
- The costs for storing and moving data in and out of the EC2 will vary. However these costs are minimal (e.g. storing image) compared to instance uptime costs. Using the Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS) with Elastic Bamboo can significantly reduce the data transfer (and associated costs) in and out of the EC2. Read more about configuring elastic instances to use EBS.
- The costs for using the Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS) is minimal, relative to instance uptime costs.

Elastic Bamboo Security
**Elastic Bamboo** is a feature in Bamboo that allows Bamboo to dynamically source computing resources from the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2).

All traffic sent between the agents located in EC2 and the Bamboo server is tunnelled through an SSL-encrypted tunnel. The tunnel will be initiated from the Bamboo Server to the EC2 instance, which means that you don't need to allow any inbound connections to your server. You will need to permit outbound traffic from the server on the tunnel port, however - the default port number is 26224. On the EC2 instance, only the tunnel port needs to be open for inbound traffic.

SSL tunneling is not implemented for VCS (Version Control System) to EC2 traffic though. You will need to make your VCS available for access from EC2 to use Elastic Bamboo. Please see the section on setting up your VCS for Elastic Bamboo, which contains guidelines on securing your VCS.

Please be warned that just as with a regular host accessible from the Internet, if one of your remote agent instances is compromised, your Bamboo installation may be exposed to number of security vulnerabilities. These include confidential data (e.g. source code, VCS credentials) being stolen, malicious code being injected into elastic agents, unauthorized access to build queues and false information being submitted to Bamboo servers. Given that all Bamboo-related traffic is sent through a single encrypted connection, the risk of that happening is not high and can be further mitigated by setting up a VPC (Amazon Virtual Private Cloud). In a VPC, your elastic instances typically have no public IPs which means they are inaccessible from the internet other than through a regular, industry-standard VPN connection.

The sections below explain the default access rules for remote agent instances and how to change these rules, if desired.

**Diagram above: Elastic Bamboo security architecture**

### Default EC2 Access Rules

When you first use Elastic Bamboo, i.e. start an elastic instance, an 'elasticbamboo' security group will be set up for you on your AWS account. This security group is essentially a set of IP addresses that are permitted access to the EC2. By default, the security group will contain two rules — one to allow connections for Elastic Bamboo itself, and another to allow connections via SSH.

The EC2 security groups can be accessed via the AWS management console (see "Security Groups" in the left-hand menu under 'Configuration').
Changing the Default EC2 Access Rules

If you wish to permit additional connections to your EC2 instance, you can do this by adding entries to the 'Allowed Connections' section for the 'elasticbamboo' security group. See the previous section on 'Default EC2 Access Rules' for instructions on how to access your EC2 security groups.

Using VPCs with Elastic Bamboo

VPC functionality is available with Bamboo 4.3. Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) lets you provision a private, isolated section of the Amazon Web Services (AWS) Cloud where you can launch AWS resources in a virtual network. By default, the instances running in that network will have no public IPs and will not be accessible to the computers outside of your VPC. You can also create a Hardware Virtual Private Network (VPN) connection between your company datacenter and your VPC and leverage the AWS cloud as an extension of your company datacenter. You can read more about VPCs on Amazon Web Services VPC page.

Using a VPC means that your agents (and other instances launched in the VPC) will not be available on the Internet. There are several basic scenarios that can be realised using a VPC:

- Secure access to your company datacenter - agents can securely access resources from your internal network through a VPN connection. In this way, you can safely use your Version Control System or other internal resources such as databases from your Elastic Agents - without making them publicly accessible.
Setting up your Version Control System (VCS) for Elastic Bamboo

We recommend that you take the following steps to ensure that your Version Control System is set up securely for Elastic Bamboo:

1. **Make your Version Control System accessible to the public internet**
2. **Use VCS authentication and access control**
3. **Use encrypted connections to VCS**

### 1. Make your Version Control System accessible to the public internet

You only need to do this if you are not using a VPC for agent connectivity. See using Bamboo with VPCs for more information.

As SSL tunnelling is not implemented for VCS to EC2 connections, you will need to make your VCS accessible to the public internet to use Elastic Bamboo. If your VCS is behind a firewall this will involve configuring an access point in your firewall. Please consult the documentation for your firewall software for details on how to do this.

### 2. Use VCS authentication and access control

We highly recommend that you secure access to your VCS by enabling the authentication and access control features on your VCS. Please consult the documentation for your VCS for details.

### 3. Use encrypted connections to VCS

We also highly recommend that you use encrypted connections for your VCS (e.g. SSL). Please consult the documentation for your VCS for details.

### Getting started with Elastic Bamboo

Elastic Bamboo allows you to use computing resources from the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) to run builds. Elastic Bamboo uses a remote agent AMI (Amazon Machine Image) to create instances of remote agents in the Amazon EC2.

**On this page:**

1. Read important documents
2. Enable and configure Elastic Bamboo
3. Start an Elastic Instance
4. Run a plan build
5. Shut down your Elastic instance

### 1. Read important documents

If you are using Elastic Bamboo for the first time, we highly recommend that you start by reading the following important documents:

- **About Elastic Bamboo** — This high-level overview explains the key concepts behind the Elastic Bamboo feature.
- **Elastic Bamboo Security** — *We strongly recommend* that you read this document to understand the security implications of enabling Elastic Bamboo. This includes important information on securing your version control system (VCS) for use with Elastic Bamboo.
- **Elastic Bamboo Costs** — Elastic Bamboo sources resources from the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) which are charged separately to your Bamboo license fee. We recommend that you read this document to understand how you will be charged for using Elastic Bamboo.

### 2. Enable and configure Elastic Bamboo

Once you have understood the concepts, security implications and costs of Elastic Bamboo, you can enable and configure Elastic Bamboo for your Bamboo installation. You will also need to make your version control system (VCS) available to Amazon for Elastic Bamboo to work correctly.

#### 2.1. Enabling Elastic Bamboo

**To enable Elastic Bamboo:**

1. Enable remote agent support in Bamboo — if you have disabled remote agent support, you must enable it before you can enable Elastic Bamboo. The Disabling and enabling remote agents support documentation also contains instructions on how to enable remote agent support.
2. In Bamboo, click **Administration** in the top menu bar.
3. Click **Configuration** in the left navigation panel (under 'Elastic Bamboo'). The 'Elastic Bamboo Configuration' screen will display.
4. Click **Enable**.

### 2.2. Configuring Elastic Bamboo

Before you can use Elastic Bamboo, you must configure it as detailed in the 'Configuring Elastic Bamboo' document. This is a simple three-step process:

1. Provide your Amazon Web Services account details
2. Configure your Elastic Bamboo global settings
3. Configure your elastic instance settings
   - **Read the Configuring Elastic Bamboo document.**

### 2.3. Providing access to your VCS

You need to make your version control system available to Amazon to run job builds using Elastic Bamboo. This has security implications, particularly if your VCS is behind a firewall.

- **Read the Elastic Bamboo Security document for further instructions**, if you have not read it already.

### 3. Start an Elastic Instance

Now that you have enabled and configured Elastic Bamboo for your Bamboo installation, you can try building a plan with Elastic Bamboo. You can manually start an elastic instance using the Bamboo administration console. Starting an elastic instance will automatically start an elastic agent process on it.

- **Read about starting an elastic instance**

### 4. Run a plan build

To run a plan build on your elastic agent, you must set up a plan with its Default Job (plus any other optional jobs) all of whose requirements can meet your elastic agent's capabilities. Elastic agents inherit the capabilities of the image they are started from. We recommend that you use the Bamboo default image to start with.

- **Read about the capabilities of the default image.**

For the purposes of this guide, you should set up your plan so that its jobs' requirements can only be met by the elastic agent's capabilities. This will ensure that the jobs' builds run on your elastic agent. If you cannot set up your jobs' requirements to meet your elastic agent's capabilities, you can customize your elastic agent's capabilities to add a unique custom capability, e.g. `elastic=true`.

- **Read about configuring the capabilities of elastic agents.**

Job builds on elastic agents are run just like job builds on any other agent. You will see the progress of your build on your dashboard and can view the build result when it has completed.

**Tip:** You can significantly reduce the costs and time taken to run a job build by configuring Elastic Bamboo to use Amazon's Elastic Block Store (EBS).

### 5. Shut down your Elastic instance

When your job builds successfully, shut down your elastic instance. As described in Elastic Bamboo Costs, the bulk of your Elastic Bamboo costs are from instance uptime. We strongly recommend that you shut down your elastic instances when not in use.

- **Read about shutting down an elastic instance.**

Please note, that when you shut down an elastic instance, the agent process it is running is terminated. This means that elastic agents are not present on the 'Agents' page in Bamboo unless they are online. If you wish to view information about a terminated elastic agent, you can find the agent in the elastic agent usage history.

- **Read about viewing your elastic agent usage history.**

Congratulations! You have successfully set up and run a job build with Elastic Bamboo.

Further information
You may be interested in reading the following related topics below to help you manage and improve Elastic Bamboo's handling of job builds:

- **Managing your elastic images**, **Managing your elastic instances**, **Managing your elastic agents** — information hubs for managing Elastic Bamboo images, instances, and agents.
- **Elastic Bamboo FAQ** — general questions about running builds using Elastic Bamboo.
- **Configuring elastic instances to use the EBS** — information on configuring Elastic Bamboo to use the Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS) to improve job build times.

**Configuring Elastic Bamboo**

Elastic Bamboo allows you to use computing resources from the [Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2)](http://aws.amazon.com/ec2) to run builds. Elastic Bamboo uses a remote agent AMI (Amazon Machine Image) to create instances of remote agents in the Amazon EC2.

Builds run on these 'elastic agents' in a similar way to how they run on local and remote agents.

> **If you have disabled remote agent support, you must enable it before you can enable Elastic Bamboo. Refer to [Disabling and enabling remote agents support](#) for instructions on how to enable remote agent support.**

To configure your Amazon Web Services (AWS) account details or settings for Elastic Bamboo:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. In the left navigation panel, go to **Elastic Bamboo > Configuration**.
3. Click **Edit configuration**.
4. Configure settings as described in the sections below.
5. Click **Save** when finished.

**On this page:**
- AWS account settings
- Global settings
- EC2 spot instances
- AWS settings
- Automatic elastic instance management

**Related pages:**
- AWS account for Bamboo
- Configuring elastic instances to use the EBS
- Disabling Elastic Bamboo

**AWS account settings**

Before you use Elastic Bamboo for the first time in your Bamboo instance, you must enter your [Amazon Web Services (AWS)](http://aws.amazon.com) account details into the Bamboo application. If you do not have an AWS account, you must register for one on the [AWS registration page](http://aws.amazon.com) before you can enable Elastic Bamboo.

Before you begin:

- Please note, Elastic Bamboo dynamically creates and runs remote agents in the [Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2)](http://aws.amazon.com/ec2). Hence, if you choose to use Elastic Bamboo, **you will be charged by Amazon for your EC2 compute usage** (separately to your Bamboo license fee). These charges will be billed to the AWS account that you provide. Please read Elastic Bamboo Costs for more details.
- Please note, if you change your AWS account details, Bamboo will **stop all elastic agents** that are currently running.

To set your AWS account details:

You can enter or update your AWS Access Key ID and AWS Secret Access Key as follows:

1. Go to your account: choose **My account/console** from your user menu at the top right.
2. Click **Security credentials**.
3. Enter, or update, your AWS Access Key ID.
4. Select the **Change AWS Secret Access Key?** checkbox, and enter or update your AWS Secret Access Key.
5. Click **Save**.

Note that your AWS Access Key ID and AWS Secret Access Key are used together to identify you when accessing Amazon EC2 services. If you are unsure what your AWS Account ID and AWS Secret Access Key are, please refer to the Amazon documentation on AWS access identifiers.

**Global settings**

Elastic Bamboo provides you with a number of global configuration options to help you optimize EC2 usage for your Bamboo job builds. These settings control how the Bamboo server operates and how it manages its elastic instances and agents.
Maximum Number of Elastic Instances | The number of elastic instances that can be running at any one time. You may wish to decrease this value if you are concerned about EC2 compute costs, and you have a large number of concurrent job builds that cannot be supported by your non-elastic agents.

Automatically terminate elastic instance when elastic agent process ends | Controls whether your elastic instances will automatically shut down after the elastic agent processes running on them terminate.

  * Shutdown Delay — controls how long an elastic instance will wait before shutting down, after its elastic agent process terminates.

**EC2 spot instances**

Elastic Bamboo provides support for Amazon EC2 Spot Instances. Amazon spot instances allow you to bid on unused EC2 capacity and use it, as long as your bid exceeds the current "Spot price". You can configure Elastic Bamboo to bid for a spot instance of a particular type, and fall back to a regular instance after a set amount of time if no instances are available.

| Enable support for spot instances | Select this checkbox to enable support for spot instances.

| Fallback to a regular instance after | The time (in minutes) after which Elastic Bamboo will fall back to using a regular instance, if a spot instance has not become available.

| Your current bid levels (per hour) | Fill out this table with your bids. The bids are categorized by EC2 instance type and operating system.

**AWS settings**

These settings allow you to specify your AWS configuration settings in Bamboo so that Bamboo can operate elastic instances through your AWS account. This section includes settings that are used to configure elastic instances to work with the Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS).

Using EBS with your elastic instances can significantly reduce the amount of data transfer required to run a job build, compared with starting a clean elastic instance. To find out more about this feature and how to set it up in Elastic Bamboo, read Configuring elastic instances to use the EBS.

| Upload AWS account identifiers to new elastic instances | Select to upload the AWS Account Private Key File and Account Certificate File to all new elastic instances started. This is mandatory if you wish to use EBS to store job build information in a snapshot. However, you can also check this option if you are not using EBS (e.g. if you wish upload the AWS account identifiers in order to use Amazon's AWS command line tools).

| Key files location | Choose how private key and certificate will be provided.

| Account Private Key File | You must specify the location of this file to use the Amazon EBS with Elastic Bamboo. This file is generated by Amazon.

| Account Certificate File | You must specify the location of this file to use the Amazon EBS with Elastic Bamboo. This file is generated by Amazon.

ℹ️ If you haven't downloaded an AWS private key file or certificate file to your Bamboo server yet, see IAM best practices on the Amazon page.

**Automatic elastic instance management**

The Automatic Elastic Instance Management feature allows Bamboo to start and shut down elastic instances automatically (based on build queue demands), so that you do not have to perform these actions manually. This feature reduces Bamboo administration overhead and can help minimize your overall elastic instance usage costs.

If a job's requirements cannot be met by any available online agents, this feature will start any elastic instance whose elastic agent has the capabilities to execute the job, so that the job's build can be generated. Regardless of how an elastic instance was started, all elastic instances will be shut down based on the settings specified below.
### Elastic Instance Management
Choose from the following elastic instance management presets. Each of these presets define values for the five criteria described in the 'Custom' user-defined options (below). (Bear in mind that both the 'Aggressive' and 'Passive' presets have trade-offs.)

- **Default** — Balances build queue clearance rates with elastic instance usage costs.
- **Aggressive** — Favors higher build queue clearance rates but with higher elastic instance usage costs.
- **Passive** — Favors lower instance usage costs but with lower build queue clearance rates.
- **Custom** — Choose your own settings, as described below.
- **Disabled** — Disables Bamboo's automatic elastic instance management feature.

### Idle Agent Shutdown Delay
Specify the number of minutes that an elastic agent must be idle before Bamboo shuts down the elastic instance running that agent.

*Elastic instances running in the Amazon EC2 compute cloud are charged in hourly blocks from the time they are started. To maximize usage of elastic instances in a cost-effective manner, Bamboo only performs these checks just prior to the expiry of each hourly block.*

### Allowed non-Bamboo instances
The maximum number of elastic instances allowed on your AWS account that are not controlled by this Bamboo instance. When this limit is exceeded, Bamboo will not start any new instances.

### Maximum Number of Instances to Start at Once
The maximum number of elastic instances that Bamboo can start in one go. Bamboo only starts this maximum number of elastic instances on a 'per minute' basis.

### Number of Builds in Queue Threshold
The total number of builds in a queue. When this and all other thresholds have been reached, new elastic instances will be started.

### Number of Elastic Builds in Queue Threshold
The number of builds in the queue that can be executed on elastic instances. When this and all other thresholds have been reached, new elastic instances will be started.

### Average Queue Time Threshold
The average number of minutes that job builds have been waiting in a queue. When this and all other thresholds have been reached, new elastic instances will be started.

### Generating your AWS Private Key File and Certificate File
There are several security mechanisms associated with Amazon Web Services (AWS) and EC2:

- The AWS Access Key ID and Secret Access Key that are used by the Bamboo server to authenticate with AWS.
- A login key pair that you can use to log in to EC2 instances that have been started by Bamboo. The key pair is automatically generated, either the first time you use Elastic Bamboo, or if you delete the key pair. The key pair is listed as 'elasticbamboo' in your AWS console. Bamboo does not use this key pair.
- The AWS private key file and certificate file that are generated by Amazon and used together to allow Elastic Bamboo to securely access some of the AWS services, such as EBS for elastic instances and the Amazon command line tools. These are described below.

**On this page:**
- AWS private key file and certificate file
- Generating the files
- Downloading the files
- Notes

**Related pages:**
- Configuring Elastic Bamboo

---

**AWS private key file and certificate file**

These settings were used for older Bamboo setup. Since then, we've introduced a simplified mechanisms for working with instances as described above.

The Amazon Web Services (AWS) private key file and certificate file are generated by Amazon and work together to allow Elastic Bamboo to securely access your AWS account. These are required to enable certain features, such as EBS for elastic instances and the Amazon command line tools.

- The **certificate file** contains the public key associated with your AWS account. This file is kept by Amazon, (not on your Bamboo server).
- The **private key file** contains the private key that is used to authenticate requests to AWS. This file must be stored on your Bamboo server, if you are using EBS for elastic instances or the Amazon command line tools.
- The public key and private key from these files together form an **X.509 certificate**.

**Generating the files**
The certificate file will be kept by Amazon (to inject into your elastic instances) and the private key file will be downloaded to your Bamboo server in your Bamboo Home directory. If you are setting up Elastic Bamboo on multiple Bamboo servers using the same AWS account, you can simply copy the private key file across from the original Bamboo server. You should not need to regenerate the private key file and certificate file unless your private key file is lost or corrupted.

If you do need to regenerate the private key file and certificate file, please follow the instructions in the Amazon X.509 Certificates documentation. The Amazon documentation also contains instructions on using your own certificate, if you wish.

**Downloading the files**

We recommend that you store the files in the Home directory of your Bamboo server.

**Notes**

- If you wish to use this security mechanism with multiple Bamboo installations using the same AWS account (e.g. you have configured your elastic instances on each installation to use EBS), you will need to copy the AWS private key file and certificate file to each Bamboo server.
- You can only download the AWS private key file at the time it is generated. If the private key file has already been generated for your AWS account, you will not be able to download it from AWS again (for security purposes). You will have to copy it from wherever it was previously downloaded to. Otherwise you will have to generate a new private key file and certificate file to go with it.
  - If you regenerate a new private key file and certificate file, any Bamboo servers using the old private key file and certificate file will no longer be able to access the Amazon EC2, as only one X.509 certificate can be associated with your AWS account.
- You can download the AWS certificate file as many times as you want. This file does not need to be regenerated.

**Configuring elastic instances to use the EBS**

The Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS) provides ‘EBS volumes’ which can attach to EC2 instances. EBS volumes (and the ‘EBS snapshots’ created from these volumes) provide persistent storage for your elastic instances.

If you have relatively static resources required for building your Bamboo jobs (such as, source code checkouts and Maven repository artifacts), you can add these to an EBS volume. From this volume, you can create an EBS snapshot, which effectively records the ‘state’ of an EBS volume at a given point in time.

After setting up an EBS snapshot, you can then associate it with an elastic image configuration. When this elastic image is started:

- its elastic instance will be started, along with the EBS volume (derived from the EBS snapshot associated with the elastic image) and
- this EBS volume will be attached to this elastic instance

Any build resources (added to the EBS volume prior to creating its snapshot) will be available to this elastic instance.

**Why should I use the EBS with Elastic Bamboo?**

Because an elastic instance is stateless, so also is the elastic agent that runs on it. Hence, every time an elastic instance is restarted from the same image:

- Any resources that its elastic agent must retrieve externally (for example, Maven repository artifacts), must be downloaded in their entirety.
- Full checkouts must be performed by elastic agents when new Jobs are built.

Therefore, you can use the EBS to store these external resources in an EBS volume and snapshot so that they do not have to be downloaded or source code checked out each time you start up an elastic instance from an image. If your jobs rely heavily on downloading such resources and/or you are not performing clean builds each time, the EBS may significantly improve your build times.

Additionally, the EBS provides an easy mechanism for customizing elastic agents, rather than you having to create a custom elastic image from scratch (with your own elastic agent capabilities). For example, you could upload files and scripts to your EBS volume that would install resources such as PostgreSQL databases for your elastic agents, which will be available when the agent's elastic instance is started.

**Creating your first EBS snapshot**

To create your first EBS snapshot:

1. Download Amazon Web Services (AWS) account identifiers to your Bamboo server — You will need to store the AWS private key file and certificate file on your Bamboo server to use Elastic Bamboo with EBS. If you haven't downloaded an AWS private key file or certificate file to your Bamboo server yet, please see Generating your AWS Private Key File and Certificate File for instructions.
2. Update your Bamboo configuration settings with the location of the AWS account identifier files you have downloaded. This will ensure that these files are uploaded to any new elastic instances started. See the Elastic Instance Settings section on the Configuring Elastic Bamboo for instructions (you will need to update the Upload AWS account identifiers to new elastic instances (mandatory if EBS Snapshot ID specified) checkbox and Account Private Key File and Account Certificate File fields described on this page).
4. Access your elastic instance via SSH (see Accessing an elastic instance for instructions).
5. Log in as administrator, such as root in Linux and, in Linux, make sure to load the root user’s environment as below:

```
sudo su -
```

In this case, the '-' or the '-l' or the '-login' parameters is required, otherwise some of the scripts may fail.

6. Follow the steps below to create an EBS volume and attach it to the elastic instance (steps a & b), upload content to the EBS volume (steps c & d), and generate the snapshot (step e & f):

   - All the scripts mentioned below are available in /opt/bamboo-elastic-agent/bin on Bamboo stock images. You can also download them from here (choose the latest version).
   - Run `createInitialVolume.sh <volume size>` — This script creates a EBS volume (where `<volume size>` is the size of the volume), attaches the volume and mounts it on the elastic instance. For example, createInitialVolume.sh 100 will create a 100GB EBS volume and attach and mount it on the elastic instance.
   - Run `rewarmEbsSnapshot.sh` — This script sets up the standard structure for Elastic Bamboo on the EBS volume. The directories and files for this standard volume structure are detailed in the Important EBS Directories and Files section below.
   - (Optional) Populate your EBS volume — Your EBS volume can now be populated with any files and scripts that you wish to make available to the elastic instances that use the EBS volume. For example, you may want to upload maven repository data, source code, scripts and files to install databases on your elastic agents, etc. You must upload your files to the `/mnt/bamboo-ebfs` folder or its subfolders, if you want them to be included in the snapshot. We recommend that you read Populating your EBS volume for guidelines on how to populate your EBS volume effectively.
   - Run `chown -R bamboo:bamboo <filename>` — This command sets the owner of a file by executing the following command: `chown -R bamboo:bamboo <filename>`
   - Execute the `killall java` command — This command kills all processes on the instance, such as agent processes, so that the volume can be unmounted to be snapshotted.
   - Run `generateSnapshot.sh` — This script unmounts and detaches the volume, before creating a snapshot based on the volume. The time taken to create the snapshot will vary depending on the amount of content that you have uploaded to the EBS volume. The Snapshot ID for the snapshot will be available in the logs for the elastic instance. See Accessing an Elastic Instance for instructions on how to access the logs for your elastic instance.
   - The device cannot unmount if any terminals are currently in the mounted volume.

7. Shut down your elastic instance. See Shutting down an elastic instance for instructions.

**Configuring an elastic image to use an EBS snapshot**

Once you have set up an EBS snapshot, the final step is to add the snapshot details to an elastic image configuration, so that any instances started from that image will have EBS volumes attached to them. You can associate different snapshots with different elastic image configurations.

To configure Elastic Bamboo to use an EBS snapshot:

1. Determine the Snapshot ID of the EBS snapshot you have just created. The Snapshot ID should be recorded in the logs of the elastic instance you created it on. You can also view your EBS snapshots in the AWS Console by clicking the Snapshots menu item.
2. Click the **Edit** icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
3. In the menu on the left, go to Elastic Bamboo > Image Configurations.
4. Click **Edit** in the 'Operations' column for the elastic image configuration that you would like to add your EBS snapshot to. The 'Edit Elastic Image Configuration - <imagename>' screen will display (see screenshot below).
5. Check **Automatically attach an Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS) volume to new elastic instances.**
6. Enter the Snapshot ID of your EBS snapshot in the **EBS Snapshot ID** field.
7. Check **Use legacy EBS handling** to resolve EBS issues for images older than two years.
8. Click **Save.** A new EBS volume will be created from the specified snapshot and attached to any new elastic instances started from that image.

**Updating your EBS snapshot**

If you are currently using EBS with Elastic Bamboo and want to update your snapshot, follow the instructions below. These are similar to the instructions for creating a new EBS snapshot.

**To update your EBS snapshot:**

1. Start a single elastic instance via Bamboo. See **Starting an elastic instance** for instructions.
2. **(optional)** Run a build on the elastic agent of the instance to populate the attached EBS volume. We recommend that you read Populating your EBS volume for guidelines on how to populate your EBS volume effectively.
3. Access your elastic instance via SSH (see **Accessing an elastic instance** for instructions) and do the following:
   
   - **All the scripts described below are bundled with Bamboo.**
   - Log in as and administrator, such as **root** in Linux and, in Linux, make sure to load the root user’s environment as below:

     ```
     sudo su -
     ```
   
   In this case, the ‘-l’ or the ‘-i’ or the ‘-login’ parameters is required, otherwise some of the scripts may fail.
     
   - **(optional)** Upload any additional content to the attached EBS volume via Secure Copy (SCP). You must upload your files to the `/mnt/bamboo-ebs` folder or its subfolders, if you want them to be included in the snapshot.
   - Execute `killall java` — This command kills all agent processes, so that nothing is using the mounted volume.
   - Execute `jps -v1` — This command displays a list of all java processes running on your instance. There should be no java processes running.
   - Run `generateSnapshot.sh` — This script unmounts and detaches the volume, before creating a snapshot based on the volume.
   
   - The device can not unmount if any terminals are currently in the mounted volume.
   - Check the elastic instance logs for the Snapshot ID of the snapshot you just created. See **Accessing an Elastic Instance** for instructions on how to access the logs for your elastic instance.
   - Update the new Snapshot ID in your Elastic Bamboo configuration, as described in **Configuring an Elastic Image to use an EBS snapshot** above.

**Important EBS directories and files**

By convention, Bamboo will attach an EBS device at `/dev/sdh`. This will be mounted at `/mnt/bamboo-ebs`. The contents of the standard structure are:

- `bin/customiseInstance.sh` - This script is run on startup of an elastic instance. We recommend that you do not customize this script, as it is overwritten when `rewarmEbsSnapshot.sh` is run.
- `bin/customise-extras.sh` - This script is run on startup of an elastic instance as the root (as opposed to being run as the Bamboo user). This script is safe to customize, as it will never be overwritten. You can customize this script to automate processes such as setting up your database, move files to custom locations on the instance, etc.
- `profile-extras.sh` - This script gets appended to the profile that is run under the Bamboo user (as opposed to being run as the root). It is useful for setting up environment variables.
- `bamboo-agent/bamboo-agent.cfg.xml` - This configuration file modifies the build working directory to point to build working directory on the EBS volume.
- `bamboo-agent/build-dir` - This is the build working directory.
- `maven/build.properties` - This properties file is copied to `/home/bamboo` on startup of an elastic instance. It points the Maven 1 default repository to `/mnt/bamboo-ebs/maven/.maven`.
- `maven/.m2/settings.xml` - This configuration files is copied to `/home/bamboo/.m2` on startup of an elastic instance. It points the Maven 2 default repository to `/mnt/bamboo-ebs/maven/.m2/repository`.
- `tmp-extras` - The contents of this directory is copied to `/tmp` on startup of an elastic instance.

---

1. Start a single elastic instance via Bamboo. See **Starting an elastic instance** for instructions.
2. Access your elastic instance via SSH (see **Accessing an elastic instance** for instructions).
3. 

```
sudo su -
```
In this case, the '-' or the '-l' or the '-login' parameters is required, otherwise some of the scripts may fail. Follow the steps below to create an EBS volume and attach it to the elastic instance (steps a & b), upload content to the EBS volume (step c & d), and generate the snapshot (step e & f):

*All the scripts mentioned below are available in /opt/bamboo-elastic-agent/bin on Bamboo stock images. You can also download them from here (choose the latest version).*

a. Run `createInitialVolume.sh <volume size>` — This script creates a EBS volume (where `<volume size>` is the size of the volume), attaches the volume and mounts it on the elastic instance. For example, `createInitialVolume.sh 100` will create a 100GB EBS volume and attach and mount it on the elastic instance.

**Populating your EBS volume**

This page is intended to complement the instructions for Configuring elastic instances to use the EBS. It lists different methods of for populating your EBS volume, depending on the data you wish to have available in your snapshot.

### On this page:
- [Uploading Maven 2 repository data](#)
- [Uploading Ant repository data](#)
- [Setting up PostgreSQL for elastic agents](#)
- [Setting up Selenium on elastic agents](#)

### Related pages:
- [Configuring elastic instances to use the EBS](#)

#### Uploading Maven 2 repository data

You can upload Maven 2 repository data to your EBS volume, so that it does not have to be downloaded every time an elastic agent (running on an instance which uses the EBS volume) is started.

To populate your EBS snapshot with your Maven repository data, we recommend that you upload it via SCP (see step 5c of the 'Creating your first EBS snapshot' section in Configuring elastic instances to use the EBS). In most cases, you will have a modified settings.xml file if you are using Maven 2. This means that you will need to upload this file and Maven repository data to your EBS volume, rather than populating your volume by running a build.

#### Uploading Ant repository data

You can upload Ant repository data to your EBS volume, so that it does not have to be downloaded every time an elastic agent (running on an instance which uses the EBS volume) is started.

To populate your EBS snapshot with your Ant repository data, we recommend that you run a build on an elastic agent with a blank EBS volume attached to the elastic instance (see step 2 of the 'Updating your EBS snapshot' section in Configuring elastic instances to use the EBS). This is a faster and more reliable method of populating your volume, if you are using Ant.

#### Setting up PostgreSQL for elastic agents

You can upload scripts to your EBS volume so that the elastic agent started on any elastic instances which use this EBS volume, will have PostgreSQL automatically installed.

*These elastic instances must be started from an elastic image which is associated with an EBS snapshot derived from this EBS volume.*

To set up the automatic installation of PostgreSQL on your EBS volume for elastic agents, you will need to create the following script:

```
#!/bin/sh
yum install -y postgresql-server
service postgresql initdb
cat > /var/lib/pgsql/data/pg_hba.conf << EOF
local all all trust
host all all 127.0.0.1/32 trust
EOF
/etc/init.d/postgresql start
```

This script uses the package management tools provided by Fedora to install and configure PostgreSQL on the agent when it starts.

1. Uses yum to install the PostgreSQL server packages. Details on the yum tool can be found in the Fedora Software Management Guide.
2. Initializes the PostgreSQL server environment by creating the database directories and default config files.
3. Creates a new pg_hba.conf file which trusts all local connections and all connections coming from localhost.
4. Starts PostgreSQL.
You then need to update the `customise-extras.sh` file on your EBS volume (see Important EBS Directories and Files) to invoke this script.

Finally, you need to add a custom capability (e.g. `postgres=true`) to the elastic agents with PostgreSQL installed. You can do this by updating the elastic image configuration that the agents inherit their capabilities from. Read Configuring elastic agent capabilities for detailed instructions.

**Setting up Selenium on elastic agents**

You can upload scripts to your EBS volume so that the elastic agent started on any elastic instances which use the EBS volume, will be able to run Selenium tests. These elastic instances must be started from an elastic image which is associated with an EBS snapshot derived from this EBS volume.

To set up elastic agents to support Selenium tests, you will need to create the following script:

**setupSelenium.sh**

```bash
#!/bin/sh

centosMajorVersion=5
centosVersion=$(centosMajorVersion)
cat >/etc/yum.repos.d/centos-$centosVersion.repo <<<EOF
[centos-base]
name=CentOS - Base
mirrorlist=http://mirrorlist.centos.org/?release=$centosVersion&arch=$basearch&repo=os
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=http://mirror.centos.org/centos/RPM-GPG-KEY-CentOS-$centosMajorVersion
enabled=0

[centos-update]
name=CentOS - Updates
mirrorlist=http://mirrorlist.centos.org/?release=$centosVersion&arch=$basearch&repo=updates
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=http://mirror.centos.org/centos/RPM-GPG-KEY-CentOS-$centosMajorVersion
enabled=0

EOF

yum -y --enablerepo=centos-base install firefox

yum -y install xorg-x11-server-Xvfb xterm xorg-x11-server-utils xorg-x11-fonts-ISO8859-1-75dpi xorg-x11-fonts-Type1

/usr/bin/killall Xvfb

# Start virtual screen
Xvfb :100 -ac -screen 0 1024x768x24 &
```

This script uses the package management tools provided by Fedora to install Mozilla's Firefox and enough of X to get a VNC (Virtual Network Computing) server running.

1. **Uses yum** to install the following packages. Details on the yum tool can be found in the Fedora Software Management Guide.
   - `vnc-server` — the vnc server used by the selenium test server.
   - `xorg-x11-server-Xvfb` `xterm` `xorg-x11-server-utils` `twm` `xorg-x11-fonts-` — these packages cover the xorg dependencies to get Firefox to run.

2. The script then copies some prepared VNC authentication files into the bamboo home directory and sets their permissions accordingly. These files are:
- vncpasswd — this is the password file used by the VNC server (copied to /home/bamboo/.vnc/passwd)
- vncxstartup — this is the script executed by the VNC server when a connection is made (copied to /home/bamboo/.vnc/xstartup)

3. The last step of this script is to manually install Firefox into /opt/firefox (we manually install Firefox because the package that would be installed by the Fedora 8 package management appears to be outdated).
   - The tar is extracted to the appropriate directory
   - The .bashrc file is customized to include the Firefox directory when searching for libraries. This is so Firefox will be able to find its libraries.

You then need to update the customise-extras.sh file on your EBS volume (see Important EBS Directories and Files) to invoke this script.

Finally, you need to add a custom capability (e.g. selenium=true) to the elastic agents with PostgreSQL installed. You can do this by updating the elastic image configuration that the agents inherit their capabilities from. Read Configuring elastic agent capabilities for detailed instructions.

Managing Elastic Bamboo

The following pages and the related sub-pages contain information on managing your elastic image, instances and agents.

- Managing your elastic images — please see this page and the related sub-pages for detailed information about Elastic Bamboo images in Bamboo. This includes instructions on how to view and customize the capabilities of your Elastic Bamboo images.
- Managing your elastic instances — please see this page and the related sub-pages for detailed information about Elastic Bamboo instances in Bamboo. This includes instructions on how to view, start, stop and access an elastic instance.
- Managing your elastic agents — please see this page and the related sub-pages for detailed information about Elastic Bamboo remote agent instances in Bamboo. This includes instructions on how to view and disable an elastic instance.

Managing your elastic images

An elastic image is an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that is stored in one of Amazon data centers for use with the Elastic Bamboo feature. An elastic image is used to create elastic instances, which in turn create elastic agents. Conceptually, an elastic image is equivalent to an operating system running on a computer’s boot hard drive and elastic instances would be the software that runs on this operation system.

Each elastic image registered with the Amazon Web Services (AWS) has its own unique identifier, known as an AMI ID.

You can associate multiple elastic images with a Bamboo server. One default shared image is maintained by Atlassian in AWS, and is available to all Elastic Bamboo users.

You can also create your own custom elastic images.

If you haven't provided your AWS details in Bamboo, you must set them before you can work with elastic instances. For more information, see Configuring Elastic Bamboo.

- To view an elastic image, including the image properties, capabilities and the jobs that an image can build, see Viewing an elastic image.
- To associate an elastic image with your Bamboo installation, see Managing your elastic image configurations.
- To customize the capabilities of an elastic image, see Configuring elastic agent capabilities.
- To create your own custom elastic image, see Creating a custom elastic image.

Viewing an elastic image

An elastic image is similar to an agent, so the 'Image' page closely resembles the 'Agent' page. A number of functions available for agents are also available for images.

- Viewing an elastic image's capabilities — your image has capabilities, similar to how agents have capabilities. Read more about viewing an agent’s capabilities.
- Viewing the jobs that an image can build — you can also view the jobs that an image is capable of building (using the elastic agent created from the image), in a similar way to how you view the jobs that an agent is capable of building. Read more about viewing the jobs that an agent can build and determining which agents can build which jobs.

Related pages:

- Managing your elastic images

To view an image:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Image Configurations in the left navigation panel (under 'Elastic Bamboo').
3. Click the name, or View, for the image that you want to view.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMI ID</td>
<td>The Amazon Machine Image identifier that uniquely identifies the image.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EBS Snapshot ID  The ID of the EBS Snapshot that you have associated with this image. See Configuring elastic instances to use the EBS and Managing your elastic image configurations for more information on how to use EBS with Elastic Bamboo.

Instance Type  The instance type of new instances started from this image. Read more about Amazon instance types.

Availability Zone Preference  New instances started from this image will be run in the Amazon availability zone named here.

Active Instances  The number of currently active instances that were started from this image.

---

**Manage Elastic Image Configurations** > Maven 2.1 Image

### Elastic Image Configuration

| Name       | Maven 2.1 Image
|------------|----------------|
| AMI ID     | ami-0ab64563
| EBS Snapshot ID | snap-082040c00
| Instance Type  | High-CPU Medium
| Availability Zone Preference | Default (chosen by EC2)
| Active Instances | 13

Start Instances | Disable | Edit

---

#### Elastic Image Capabilities

A capability is a feature of an agent. There are 3 types of capabilities: builders, JDKs and custom. You can use this page to view, add and delete capabilities associated with this Elastic Image Configuration. Any existing elastic instances will need to be restarted to pick up these changes.

The following capabilities exist on Elastic Agents running on an instance of this image:

**Custom**

Custom capabilities are key-value pairs that define particular characteristics of an agent (e.g., 'operating.system=Windows\XP', 'fast.builds=true'). For an agent to be able to build a job, both the 'Key' and 'Value' must match the job's requirements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.functionalTest</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Builder**

Builder capabilities define the builders which are available to your build plans.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Builder Label</th>
<th>Path</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ant (Ant)</td>
<td>/opt/apache-ant-1.7.1</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2 (Maven 2.x)</td>
<td>/opt/maven-2.0</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2.1 (Maven 2.x)</td>
<td>/opt/maven-2.1</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2.2 (Maven 2.x)</td>
<td>/opt/maven-2.2</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5/au/).
Managing your elastic image configurations

An elastic image is an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that is stored in one of Amazon data centers for use with the Elastic Bamboo feature. An elastic image is used to create elastic instances, which in turn create elastic agents. Conceptually, an elastic image is equivalent to an operating system running on a computer's boot hard drive and elastic instances would be the software that runs on this operation system.

Each elastic image registered with the Amazon Web Services (AWS) has its own unique identifier, known as an AMI ID.

You can associate multiple elastic images with a Bamboo server. One default shared image is maintained by Atlassian in AWS, and is available to all Elastic Bamboo users.

You can also create your own custom elastic images.

**On this page:**
- Associating custom elastic images with Bamboo
- Creating elastic images with custom agent capabilities

**Related pages:**
- Managing your elastic images

Associating custom elastic images with Bamboo

Associating a custom elastic image with your Bamboo installation allows you to start elastic instances with capabilities that are different from those inherited from the default image. For example, you may wish to associate a Ubuntu operating system-based elastic image with your Bamboo installation, so that you can run Ubuntu-related tests on the instances started from that image.

Once you have associated a custom elastic image with Bamboo, the settings for your elastic image are stored as an elastic image configuration.

**To associate a custom image with Bamboo:**

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Image Configurations in the left navigation panel (under 'Elastic Bamboo').
3. Enter the details of your custom elastic image in the panel under 'Create Elastic Image Configuration':
**Name**
The name of your custom elastic image. If you created your own custom image, you should have named it in step 6 of the Creating a custom elastic image instructions. You can also view the AMI IDs of elastic images via the AWS console.

**Description**
A description for your image, which is used in Bamboo only.

**AMI ID**
The AMI ID obtained as an output from step 6 of the Creating a custom elastic image instructions. You can also view the AMI IDs of elastic images via the AWS console.

**Automatically attach an Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS) volume to new elastic instances**
Select this option if you want the elastic instances started from this image to use the EBS. Read more about Configuring elastic instances to use the EBS.

**EBS Snapshot ID** — Specify the EBS Snapshot ID of the EBS volume that you wish to attach to new instances.

**Instance Type**
The instance type for new instances started from this image. Read more about Amazon EC2 instance types.

**Virtual Private Cloud Subnet**
The Subnet of the Virtual Private Cloud where your Elastic Bamboo agent will start up. Choose multiple subnets from the list to enable Bamboo to automatically switch between Availability Zones when starting agents. This reduces the chance of a build failing because of a lack of available resources in a particular zone. For more about VPC, see the Amazon VPC FAQ.

**Availability Zone**
The availability zone used to start your new instances from this image in (e.g. if you wish to use Elastic Bamboo with reserved instances). We recommend that you select "Default (chosen by EC2)" to allow Amazon to select the best zone for your instance. Read more about Amazon EC2 availability zones.

**Product**
The EC2 product name.

**Screenshot: Manage your Elastic Image Configurations**

Creating elastic images with custom agent capabilities

You can customize the agent capabilities of an elastic image that is already associated with Bamboo. The initial process is similar to that of associating a custom elastic image with Bamboo (above). Here, however, you use the AMI ID of an image already associated with Bamboo — most commonly the default image.

**To create an elastic image with customized agent capabilities:**

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Image Configurations in the left navigation panel (under 'Elastic Bamboo').
3. Click the name, or View, for the image that you want to view.
4. Enter the details of your custom elastic image in the panel (under 'Create Elastic Image Configuration').

---

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
Creating a custom elastic image

Atlassian doesn't provide support for customized images. Bamboo provides flexibility to use customized machine images, but it's impossible for us to support all individual configurations.

Use Bamboo stock images as the base for all image customizations to ensure a minimal level of consistency of your Elastic Bamboo setup.

An elastic image is an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that is stored in one of Amazon data centers for use with the Elastic Bamboo feature. An elastic image is used to create elastic instances, which in turn create elastic agents. Conceptually, an elastic image is equivalent to an operating system running on a computer's boot hard drive and elastic instances would be the software that runs on this operation system.

Each elastic image registered with the Amazon Web Services (AWS) has its own unique identifier, known as an AMI ID.

You can associate multiple elastic images with a Bamboo server. One default shared image is maintained by Atlassian in AWS, and is available to all Elastic Bamboo users.

At a high level, the process for creating a custom elastic image consists of taking one of the existing Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) available on Amazon EC2, starting an instance of the AMI, customizing the instance and then creating an image from the customized instance. This image can then be used as an elastic image in your Bamboo installation.

Instead of creating a custom image (Linux/UNIX only) consider:

- Using the "Instance setup script" feature to run commands (executed as the root user) before the agent is started. This field is available for every image from the Administration > Image Configurations page. Click the "Edit" link under Operations for the image you want to use.
- Customizing an existing Bamboo image by using Amazon's Elastic Block Store (EBS), as described in Configuring elastic instances to use the EBS.

The options above are much simpler than creating a new custom image. If you are having problems, please don't hesitate to contact us for further help.

Before you begin:

- This is not a trivial procedure and chances are you don't need it.
- Please note, Atlassian does not support custom elastic images. Consider customizing the elastic agents started from your stock images instead.
- A number of the EC2 commands in the steps below can be completed using the AWS console rather than command line tools (e.g. registering an image). You should use the method you feel most comfortable with.

On this page:
1. Requirements
2. Selecting an existing AMI
3. Starting an instance
4. Accessing your instance
5. Customizing your instance
6. Creating an image of your customized instance
7. Next steps
8. Need more help?

1. Requirements

First ensure that you have set up the following:

- Amazon Web Services (AWS) account with EC2 — if you are already using Elastic Bamboo, you should already have an AWS account with EC2 set up. If not, please read Getting started with Elastic Bamboo.
- Amazon EC2 API Tools — you must install the EC2 API tools on your local machine, otherwise you will not be able to start and access your AMI instance. Note: you need Java Runtime Environment to run these tools. You can install the EC2 API tools by executing the following commands:

```
wget http://s3.amazonaws.com/ec2-downloads/ec2-api-tools.zip
unzip ec2-api-tools.zip
```

- Environment Variables — you must set up the following environment variables on your local machine before creating a custom elastic image:
  - EC2_HOME — set this to the path to the installed EC2 API Tools
  - EC2_CERT — set this to the path to the certificate assigned to EC2 account
1. EC2_PRIVATE_KEY — set this to the path to the private key assigned to your AWS account

2. Registered Key Pair — you need a registered EC2 key pair, which consists of a private key file and certificate file, to use the EC2 API tools with your AMI instance. If you have previously generated and registered an EC2 key pair (e.g. to use the EC2 API tools), you can re-use it. If you need to generate a new key pair, you can use the following command to do so:

   ```
   ec2-add-keypair <key_pair_name>
   ```

   The content of the private key will be displayed in the command-line output on your console. Save this content in a file, starting with the line:

   "--BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY--"

   and ending with the line:

   "--END RSA PRIVATE KEY--"

   This private key file will be used to access your AMI instance. Set up the appropriate permissions on the private key file by executing the following command:

   ```
   chmod 600 <private_key_file>
   ```

2. Selecting an existing AMI

   We strongly recommend that you select an existing Linux/UNIX AMI to customize, rather than starting with a blank AMI. When choosing an AMI, decide whether you want to launch 32-bit or 64-bit instances from your custom elastic image and select an existing AMI matching your choice.

   We recommend the following existing Linux/UNIX AMIs for customization (in order of preference):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>AMI list</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atlassian</td>
<td>One of the stock images provided by Atlassian. It is an Amazon image, for</td>
<td>Available on your Bamboo instance under Administration/Image Configurations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>either Linux or Windows, updated and prepared for Bamboo, i.e. you will not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have to install any Bamboo prerequisites.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon</td>
<td>CentOS-based image provided by Amazon. It does not have any Bamboo</td>
<td>Amazon's site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prerequisites installed. Typically, you will be better off using the Atlassian AMI.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canonical(Ubuntu)</td>
<td>An official Ubuntu image provided by Canonical (the company behind the</td>
<td>Canonical's site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ubuntu Linux project). It does not have any Bamboo prerequisites installed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Atlassian's AMIs (and hence, their IDs) may change with each release of Bamboo, including both major and minor releases. To quickly access Atlassian's AMI IDs for your currently-running version of Bamboo, open that Bamboo site in a web browser and access its 'Image Configurations' page (see Managing your Elastic Image Configurations for more information). The AMI IDs of Atlassian's AMIs are labeled with "(stock image)".

   If you want to find out the AMI IDs for a version of Bamboo you don't have running or you're starting an image from scratch and you need the image baseline:

   1. Open the following URL: https://maven.atlassian.com/content/repositories/atlassian-public/com/atlassian/bamboo/atlassian-bamboo/ in a web browser.
   2. On the resulting directory page, click the link that represents the version of Bamboo you are currently running. For example, if you are running Bamboo 5.9.7, click on the 5.9.7 link. Another directory page opens, listing a .pom and some additional checksum files.

   Do not click on a version number link that contains 'mX', 'rcX' or 'betaX' (where 'X' is a number), since these relate to publicly available developmental releases of Bamboo.

   3. Open the atlassian-bamboo-x.x.x.pom file (where x.x.x is your version of Bamboo). The image version/baseline is stored in the elastic-image.version tag. For example, this value is "4.2" for Bamboo version 5.9.4.
   4. Open the following URL: https://maven.atlassian.com/content/repositories/atlassian-public/com/atlassian/bamboo/atlassian-bamboo-elastic-image/ in a web browser.
   5. Click on the image version/baseline you found in the elastic-image.version tag.
   6. On the resulting directory page, the file with .ami extension contains all stock image AMI IDs.

3. Starting an instance

   After you have selected an existing AMI to customize, the next step is to start an instance of the AMI.

3.1 Starting an instance of Atlassian's default AMI
If you chose to customize Atlassian’s default AMI, you will have to start the instance from the admin section of Bamboo. See Starting an elastic instance.

Note that Atlassian’s default AMI cannot be started using the command line ec2 tools. This is because, on start up, the Bamboo agent on Atlassian’s AMI checks to see if it was started from a Bamboo server, and immediately shuts itself down if it was not.

Once started, see Accessing an elastic instance for details on how to access the running instance.

3.2 Starting an instance from the command line

Use the `ec2-run-instances` command to start your instance, as follows:

```
ec2-run-instances <image_name> -k <key_pair_name>
```

where `<image_name>` is the name of the AMI selected in the previous step and `<key_pair_name>` is the name of the registered key pair generated in '1. Requirements'. The public certificate of this key will be injected into your instance.

For example, if you wanted to start an instance of image `ami-e55bbd8c` using key pair `my-keypair`, you would run the following command:

```
ec2-run-instances ami-e55bbd8c -k my-keypair
```

This command would produce the following command-line output:

```
INSTANCE        i-25b86743   ami-e55bbd8c     running   my-keypair
```

`i-25b86743` is the name of the new instance in the above example. You should note down the name of your new instance, as you will need that to access your instance in the next step.

### Don’t forget to shut down unused instances

Please note that once you start an instance, you will be billed by Amazon for instance uptime. If you decide to abandon the setup of a custom elastic image after this step, please ensure that you shut down your instance via the AWS console.

3.3 Starting an instance from Bamboo

You can also start a fresh, uncustomized image from Bamboo and begin customization. The drawback of this approach is that you have only 40 minutes before Bamboo shuts down your instance. The advantage is that you can customize the agent in a single step (as opposed to having to customize/create image/start from Bamboo/save image again).

4. Accessing your instance

If you started the instance from Bamboo, see Accessing an elastic instance for details on how to access the running instance.

Once your instance is running, you will need to obtain the address of the instance so you can access it. To do this, use the following command:

```
ec2-describe-instances <instance_name>
```

For example, if you wanted to find the address of instance `i-25b86743`, you would enter:

```
ec2-describe-instances i-25b86743
```

This command would produce the following command-line output similar to this:
The address of the instance in the above example is `ec2-174-129-94-241.compute-1.amazonaws.com`

You can then use this address to access the instance via SSH. See Accessing an elastic instance for instructions. If you are using the example command text from that document, you will need to adjust it as follows:

- replace `/opt/bamboo/home/xml-data/configuration/elasticbamboo.pk` in the example command text with the private key file you generated in 1. Requirements.
- replace `ec2-68-111-185-197.compute-1.amazonaws.com` in the example command text with the address of your instance.

5. Customizing your instance

Now that you have a running instance, customization steps heavily depend on the operating system you’re using. We’ve prepared separate pages with Linux-specific instructions and Windows-specific instructions.

6. Creating an image of your customized instance

The process of creating a new image varies depending whether you based your image on an instance-store or EBS-root image. You can check your image type via AWS console or using `ec2-describe-images`.

**Creating an image from EBS-root instances**

See here for instructions: Amazon Tutorial

**Creating an image from instance-store (S3) instances**

The final step is to create an image from your customized instance. To do this, you will require the following information:

- Amazon Account Number
- Access Key ID
- Secret Access Key
- Amazon S3 bucket name that will be used to store image (if you don’t have access to Amazon S3, you can sign up on this page.)

1. **Transfer Amazon private key file and certificate to your instance**

Transfer the key files to your instance by running these commands on your local machine:

```
scp -i <private_key_file> $EC2_PRIVATE_KEY root@<instance_address>:/mnt
scp -i <private_key_file> $EC2_CERT root@<instance_address>:/mnt
```

where `<private_key_file>` is the private key file from your local machine created in step ‘Registered Key Pair’ of 1. Requirements and the `<instance_address>` is the address of your instance from ‘4. Accessing your instance’.

2. **Set up EC2_HOME and JAVA_HOME environment variables**

Set up these environment variables by running the following commands on your instance:

```
export EC2_HOME=<location of your EC2 tools installation>
export EC2_PRIVATE_KEY=/mnt/<ec2_private_key_file>
export EC2_CERT=/mnt/<ec2_certificate_file>
export JAVA_HOME=<path to JRE used to start the agent>
```

3. You can create an image of your customized instance by using the `ec2-bundle-vol` command, as follows:
4. Once the image is created, you need to upload it to Amazon S3 by running the command below:

```
ec2-upload-bundle -b <s3_bucket_name> -m /tmp/<elastic_image_name>.manifest.xml -a <access_key_id> -s <secret_access_key> --retry --debug
```

where `<s3_bucket_name>`, `<access_key_id>` and `<secret_access_key>` are the Amazon S3 bucket name, Access Key ID and Secret Access Key described previously, and `<elastic_image_name>` is the name that you want to assign to your custom image (e.g. ‘CustomImage1’).

You will then need to register your image with Amazon EC2 by using the `ec2-register` command:

```
ec2-register <s3_bucket_name>/<elastic_image_name>.manifest.xml
```

where `<s3_bucket_name>` is the Amazon S3 bucket name described previously and `<elastic_image_name>` is the name that you want to assign to your custom image (e.g. ‘CustomImage1’). The output of this command will show the AMI ID of your custom image.

7. Next steps

Now that you have created a custom elastic image, there are two more steps that you will need to complete before you can use it.

First, you will need to associate your custom elastic image with your Bamboo installation by creating an Elastic Image Configuration. Please note the AMI ID of your new custom image and read Managing your Elastic Image Configurations for further instructions.

Secondly, you will need to configure the capabilities of the elastic agents that will run on instances started from your image. This is done by adding the appropriate builder, JDK, Perforce and custom capabilities to your elastic image configuration, so that it reflects what your custom elastic image actually can do. For example, if you have created a custom elastic image with JDK 1.6 and Maven 2 installed, you will need to add capabilities for JDK 1.6 and Maven 2 to the elastic image configuration. Read Configuring Elastic Agent Capabilities for further instructions.

8. Need more help?

If you need more help, there are a number of resources that you can take advantage of:

- **AWS Support Center** — if you are having problems with any of your Amazon services, not specifically related to Bamboo, you can obtain basic support from the AWS Support Center. Note, you will need to sign up for Premium Support to get access to web/phone support.
- **AWS Resource Center** — the AWS Resource Center has links to online documentation, code samples and tools for AWS services.
- **Bamboo Developer Forums** — please feel free to discuss any useful tips or issues regarding this process in the Bamboo Developer Forums.

---

**Creating a custom elastic image - Linux**

**Atlassian doesn’t provide support for customized images.** Bamboo provides flexibility to use customized machine images, but it’s impossible for us to support all individual configurations.

Use Bamboo stock images as the base for all image customizations to ensure a minimal level of consistency of your Elastic Bamboo setup.

5. Customizing your instance
Customizing your instance is the most complicated part of creating a custom elastic image. You need to install the packages that are prerequisites for Bamboo onto your instance (if you didn’t choose the Elastic Bamboo stock images as your base AMI), add your customizations, deploy Bamboo onto your instance and set up an EC2 environment on your instance.

5.1 Installing Bamboo prerequisite packages

If you selected Atlassian’s AMI as your base AMI in ‘2. Selecting an Existing AMI’, you can skip this step and go to ‘5.2 Adding Customizations’ as this image has been pre-configured for Bamboo. If you have selected a different AMI, you will need to install the following packages onto your instance using the commands shown below:

Amazon EC2 API tools

```
wget http://s3.amazonaws.com/ec2-downloads/ec2-api-tools.zip
unzip ec2-api-tools.zip
mv ec2-api-tools-* /opt/ec2-api-tools
```

Note: if your distribution already contains ec2-api-tools package, you can install it instead.

Java JRE

You need to install a JRE (or JDK) on your instance to be able to run the agent. The preferred way of doing this is to install a package that came with your distribution. For a list of supported JREs, see supported platforms.

5.2 Adding user customizations to your instance

Adding your own customizations is quite a simple process, once you have made it this far.

To add user customizations to your instance:

1. Log into your elastic instance (as previously described in ‘4. Accessing your Instance’).
2. Once you have logged into your elastic instance, you can treat it as a standalone machine and install anything you want. For example, if you want to install Tomcat on an Ubuntu instance you would run 'sudo apt-get install tomcat6', configure it, ensure that your startup scripts are in place, etc, just as you would when installing Tomcat on a standalone machine.

⚠️ Please note however, you cannot customize the operating system of a running instance. If you want to create an instance with a customized operating system (e.g. Ubuntu), you will need to select an AMI with that operating system installed (as previously described in ‘2. Selecting an Existing AMI’).
3. Everything that you install will be saved in snapshot image created at the end of these instructions (see ‘6. Creating an Image of your Customized Instance’). Any instances started from this image will have all of your user customizations automatically installed.

5.3 Deploying Bamboo onto your instance

Once you have installed the Bamboo pre-requisites on your instance and added your customizations, you can deploy Bamboo elastic bootstrap files onto your instance.

5.3.1 Creating Bamboo user

First, you need to create a ‘bamboo’ user on your instance by running the following command:

```
useradd -m bamboo
```

5.3.2 Downloading agent installer to the instance

Then, install Bamboo Agent binaries as described below. In this case we're using image version 2.2, you should use the latest version available at https://maven.atlassian.com/content/repositories/atlassian-public/com/atlassian/bamboo/atlassian-bamboo-elastic-image/.

```
imageVer=2.2
wget https://maven.atlassian.com/content/repositories/atlassian-public/com/atlassian/bamboo/atlassian-bamboo-elastic-image/${imageVer}/atlassian-bamboo-elastic-image-${imageVer}.zip
sudo mkdir -p /opt/bamboo-elastic-agent
sudo unzip -o atlassian-bamboo-elastic-image-${imageVer}.zip -d /opt/bamboo-elastic-agent
sudo chown -R bamboo /opt/bamboo-elastic-agent
sudo chmod -R u+r+w /opt/bamboo-elastic-agent
```

5.4 Instance configuration

At this stage, you should have a customized instance with Bamboo deployed onto it. The last step in creating a customized instance is to set up an EC2 environment on your instance. Carry out the following steps to set this up:
1. Run the following command on your instance to set permissions on the bamboo user directory:

```
chown -R bamboo:bamboo /home/bamboo/
```

2. **Configure path variables**

Create a file `profile.sh` in your instance's `/mnt` directory. This file contains the default Elastic Bamboo path configuration settings, as seen below:

```
export JAVA_HOME=<path to JRE used to start the agent>
export EC2_HOME=<location of your EC2 tools installation>
export EC2_PRIVATE_KEY=/root/pk.pem
export EC2_CERT=/root/cert.pem
export PATH=/opt/bamboo-elastic-agent/bin:$EC2_HOME/bin:$JAVA_HOME/bin:$M2_HOME/bin:$MAVEN_HOME/bin:$ANT_HOME/bin:$PATH
```

If all of the tools on this page were installed in recommended locations, no changes are required. Otherwise, you can update the file as required.

Once `profile.sh` is correctly customized for your instance, you need to copy it to the `/etc/profile.d` directory by running the following command on your instance in the `/mnt` directory:

```
mv profile.sh /etc/profile.d/bamboo.sh
```

3. **Configure automatic startup of the Bamboo agent**

You will need to configure your instance to start the Bamboo agent automatically when the instance is started. You can do this by sourcing Bamboo rc.local file in `/etc/rc.local` file:

```
. /opt/bamboo-elastic-agent/etc/rc.local
```

Make sure you add this line before the "exit 0" line in your `/etc/rc.local`.

4. **Final settings and cleanup**

Finally, create a Bamboo welcome screen and clean up keys on your instance by running the following command:

```
cp /opt/bamboo-elastic-agent/etc/motd /etc/motd
echo bamboo-<x.x.x>  >> /etc/motd
rm -f /root/firstlogin /etc/ssh/ssh_host_dsa_key
/etc/ssh/ssh_host_dsa_key.pub
/etc/ssh/ssh_host_key /etc/ssh/ssh_host_key.pub
/etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key
/etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key.pub /root/.ssh/authorized_keys
touch /root/firstrun
```

where `<x.x.x>` is the Bamboo version you are running (e.g. 4.1.2).

5. **Now, follow the instructions from section “Creating an image of your Customized Instance” to create an AMI.**
6. **Start the image from Bamboo.** The agent should come up and download all necessary data to the EC2 instance.
7. Run `/opt/bamboo-elastic-agent/bin/prepareInstanceForSaving.sh`.
8. **Now, follow the instructions from section “Creating an image of your Customized Instance” to create an AMI.** That's it, the newly created AMI contains everything you need to start Bamboo Agents.

Note: if you started your instance from Bamboo right at the start, instead of steps 5 & 6, you can just run:

```
su -c /opt/bamboo-elastic-agent/bin/bamboo-elastic-agent - bamboo
```
Creating a custom elastic image - Windows

Atlassian doesn't provide support for customized images. Bamboo provides flexibility to use customized machine images, but it's impossible for us to support all individual configurations.

Use Bamboo stock images as the base for all image customizations to ensure a minimal level of consistency of your Elastic Bamboo setup.

To perform the tasks listed below, log in to your instance with an Administrator account using Remote Desktop Client.

Setting up the user account

Create the user account that will be used by the Bamboo agent. The account name is up to you, I will use Bamboo in the examples below. All builds running on your machine will use this account. It can be a regular user (i.e. it does not need to be a Power User or Administrator, unless your builds require it). Set up a password for that user. The default user on a Windows image has a user name of Bamboo with a password of Atlassian1.

Important: by default, a newly created user should be denied remote login rights (which is as we want it to be). To be on the safe side, please make sure that you indeed cannot log in using that user's credentials (unless you change the credentials to non-default ones).

If your builds are not headless (i.e. they show/manipulate windows, like Selenium does), click here for additional instructions

You'll need to set up autologin for your Bamboo account (don't worry, this will not let remote users in). To do this, run control userpasswords2 and uncheck User must enter a user name and password to enter this computer:

Setting the firewall

Reconfigure the Windows firewall to accept TCP connections on port 26224. No other inbound connections are necessary for Bamboo.

You don't need to worry about changing the EC2 security group setting for this port. Bamboo will set it up automatically:
Installing the required software

1. Install a supported Oracle Java version. See Supported platforms.
2. Download the latest version of agent installer zip from this location (at the time this guide was written, the latest version was this). Unpack it to a desired location, we suggest using C:\opt\bamboo-elastic-agent to match stock images distributed with Bamboo.
3. A batch file should launch with your Windows instance startup. In order to do this, use the Windows Task Scheduler (Start > Administrative Tools > Task Scheduler), and set up a new Action task of “Start a program” with the <PATH TO YOUR BATCH FILE> as the Details:

```
Start a program
C:\opt\bamboo-elastic-agent\bin\bamboo-elastic-agent.bat
```
Remember to select **Run whether user is logged on or not** in the “General” tab:

![Task settings screenshot]

And appropriately define the Trigger task so that the agent starts up only after the network connection is up and running:

![Trigger settings screenshot]

The task manager will warn you that the account needs to be able to log in as a batch job. Make sure the “Log on as batch job” policy is set for the user. This policy is accessible by opening the **Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy**. In the Local Security Policy window, click **Local Policies > User Rights Assignment > Log on as a batch job**.

### Enabling EBS usage on the instance

Starting with Bamboo 5, you’ll be able to use custom Elastic Block Storage with your Windows instances. To do that, you need to change the SAN policy on your instance, otherwise the disks will be attached in ‘Offline’ state with status text “the disk is offline because of policy set by an administrator”.

You can change the SAN policy using the Diskpart utility. Run `Diskpart`, type

```
  san policy=OnlineAll
```

and press Enter. You can then quit Diskpart; the new policy will now be active.
Testing

The easiest way to check if everything is set up correctly is to run the task you've defined using Windows Task Scheduler (Start > Administrative Tools > Task Scheduler). Right-click on the task and select Run. Always test the script using the Task Scheduler; if you run the script manually, you'll use Administrator account, which is not what we want.

Look for the `%USERPROFILE%/bamboo-elastic-agent.out` file. If it exists and contains an error message stating that agent was not run within an EC2 instance started by Bamboo Server, you've successfully completed the customization.

Run `c:\opt\bamboo-elastic-agent\bin\prepareInstanceForSaving.bat`

Bundle your instance. Make a note of the AMI id of the new image.

Start your image from Bamboo

If you fail to complete the following steps within ~40 minutes, Bamboo will shut down your instance, so remember to save your work if you're running out of time (i.e. create an interim image).

In Bamboo, define an image configuration for the image you've just created, and start it from Bamboo. If everything went well, the agent will start together with the instance. It will perform the following steps:

- Update/create `/opt/bamboo-elastic-agent` directory structure by creating additional directories. If they appeared, Java is working correctly on that machine and the connection to S3 is working.
- Start the agent, which will create the Bamboo Agent Home directory and populate it with data pulled from the Bamboo server.

If everything went well, you should see the agent appear in the Bamboo instance list. Congratulations, you have a working Bamboo agent.

Because the agent has just synchronized itself with the Bamboo server (because it has downloaded all the jars exactly matching what you have on your server), as an extra step, you may want to save that state to speed up future instance startup and reduce bandwidth usage.

To do that, run

`c:\opt\bamboo-elastic-agent\bin\prepareInstanceForSaving.bat`

save the image, define a new image configuration, kill the instance, and try running it from Bamboo.

Upgrading the agent for your custom elastic image

The instructions below are valid if you were using Bamboo 3.4 or newer. If you're upgrading from an earlier version, you should first
If you customized your instance according to Creating a custom elastic image, your instance will keep itself updated across Bamboo. The synchronization process takes a while and the time required increases as your image gets older. If you notice slow startup, you may want to refresh your image. You can either customize the instance from scratch, as when you created your customized image, or update just the agent data, which is much faster.

### To refresh your agent data:

1. Start your instance from Bamboo.
2. Log into your instance.
3. Run `/opt/bamboo-elastic-agent/bin/prepareInstanceForSaving.sh`.
4. Create an Image of your Customized Instance.

The final step is to create an image from your customized instance. To do this, you will require the following information:
- Amazon Account Number
- Access Key ID
- Secret Access Key
- Amazon S3 bucket name that will be used to store image (if you don't have access to Amazon S3, you can sign up on this page.)

You can create an image of your customized instance by using the `ec2-bundle-vol` command, as follows:

```
/usr/local/bin/ec2-bundle-vol -c $EC2_CERT -k $EC2_PRIVATE_KEY -u <amazon_account_number> -p <elastic_image_name> --batch --debug
```

where `<elastic_image_name>` is the name that you want to assign to your custom image (e.g. 'CustomImage1')

Once the image is created, you need to upload it to Amazon S3 by running the command below:

```
/usr/local/bin/ec2-upload-bundle -b <s3_bucket_name> -m /tmp/<elastic_image_name>.manifest.xml -a <access_key_id> -s <secret_access_key> --retry --debug
```

where `<s3_bucket_name>`, `<access_key_id>` and `<secret_access_key>` are the Amazon S3 bucket name, Access Key ID and Secret Access Key described previously, and `<elastic_image_name>` is the name that you want to assign to your custom image (e.g. 'CustomImage1')

You will then need to register your image with Amazon EC2 by using the `ec2-register` command:

```
$EC2_HOME/bin/ec2-register <s3_bucket_name>/<elastic_image_name>.manifest.xml
```

where `<s3_bucket_name>` is the Amazon S3 bucket name described previously and `<elastic_image_name>` is the name that you want to assign to your custom image (e.g. 'CustomImage1')

The output of this command will show the AMI ID of your custom image.

5. Associate the new Custom Image with Bamboo.

Finally, you will need to associate your custom elastic image with your Bamboo installation by creating an Elastic Image Configuration. Please note the AMI ID of your new custom image and read Managing your elastic image configurations for further instructions.

### Updating elastic images for Bamboo upgrades

Various updates to default packages and capabilities are made to the default image with each major release of Bamboo.

Therefore, if you are using either a:
- custom elastic image, or
- an elastic image with customized agent capabilities

then to ensure this elastic image acquires these package/capability updates, use the flow chart below to update your elastic image.

⚠️ Use this flowchart only after Bamboo has been upgraded. For each elastic image you wish to update, follow this flow chart from the...
Elastic Images with Customized Capabilities:
This flow chart assumes that all elastic images with customized agent capabilities are based off the default image. Please check the default image page to identify the packages and related capabilities available in the default image for Bamboo 5.15.

Viewing the list of Bamboo stock images
Bamboo provides a collection of Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) that are ready for use or further customization. Each AMI is identified by its unique ID. For more information about the parameters of the stock images, see stock images.

- Atlassian AMIs and their IDs may change with each minor or major Bamboo release.
  - Viewing a list of AMI IDs available for a release
    - Troubleshooting

Viewing a list of AMI IDs available for a release

To generate a list of AMI IDs for a Bamboo version:
1. Save the following script as a .sh file:

```bash
if [ $# -eq 0 ]; then
    echo "Usage: `basename $0` [5.8.3] (Your Bamboo version)"
    exit 0
fi

BAMBOO_VERSION=$1
echo For Bamboo version: $BAMBOO_VERSION
ELASTIC_VERSION="$(curl --silent https://maven.atlassian.com/content/groups/public/com/atlassian/bamboo/atlassian-bamboo/$BAMBOO_VERSION/atlassian-bamboo-$BAMBOO_VERSION.pom 2>&1 | grep <elastic-image.version> | sed -e 's/<[^>]*>//g' -e 's/^[[:space:]]*//' -e 's/^[[:space:]]*$//' )"

echo "Elastic bamboo version is $ELASTIC_VERSION"

```

You can also get the script file from this repo.

2. In the terminal, go to the directory where you saved the file and run it with the following command:

```bash
./<name-of-your-file>.sh <your-bamboo-version>
```

Example

```bash
./amis.sh 5.9.3
```

If you get the "Permission denied" error, you can modify the permissions of the .sh file with the following:

```bash
chmod +x <name-of-the-file>.sh
```

Results

Click the example to see the full script output.

Example

For Bamboo 5.9.3, the results can be the following:
For Bamboo version: 5.9.3

Elastic bamboo version is 4.2

> GET /content/repositories/atlassian-public/com/atlassian/bamboo/atlassian-bamboo-elastic-image/4.2/atlassian-bamboo-elastic-image-4.2.ami
HTTP/1.1
image.US_EAST_1.EBS.i386.linux.Amazon\ Linux=ami-489bd620
image.US_EAST_1.EBS.x86_64.linux.Amazon\ Linux=ami-949bd6fc
image.US_EAST_1.S3.i386.linux.Amazon\ Linux=ami-b69dd0de
image.US_EAST_1.S3.x86_64.linux.Amazon\ Linux=ami-889dd0e0
image.EU_CENTRAL_1.EBS.x86_64.linux.Ubuntu=ami-fac5f7e7
image.US_WEST_2.EBS.x86_64.linux.Ubuntu=ami-f7a686c7
image.US_EAST_1.EBS.x86_64.linux.Ubuntu=ami-1c247d74
image.ASIA_PACIFIC_SE_1.EBS.x86_64.linux.Ubuntu=ami-f6a691a4
image.EU_WEST_1.EBS.x86_64.linux.Ubuntu=ami-dfd969aa
image.ASIA_PACIFIC_NE_1.EBS.x86_64.linux.Ubuntu=ami-8946a989
image.US_WEST_1.EBS.x86_64.linux.Ubuntu=ami-95c92dd1
image.ASIA_PACIFIC_SE_2.EBS.x86_64.linux.Ubuntu=ami-0f0c7d35
image.SOUTH_AMERICA_1.EBS.x86_64.linux.Ubuntu=ami-e3972eef
image.US_EAST_1.EBS.x86_64.windows.Windows\ 2008=ami-976edafe
image.ASIA_PACIFIC_SE_1.EBS.x86_64.windows.Windows=ami-c21a2390
image.SOUTH_AMERICA_1.EBS.x86_64.windows.Windows=ami-f550d6e8
image.US_EAST_1.EBS.x86_64.windows.Windows=ami-50697038
image.EU_CENTRAL_1.EBS.x86_64.windows.Windows=ami-0f4cafda
image.EU_WEST_1.EBS.x86_64.windows.Windows=ami-f750268
image.US_WEST_2.EBS.x86_64.windows.Windows=ami-77764b47
image.ASIA_PACIFIC_NE_1.EBS.x86_64.windows.Windows=ami-b4f520b4
image.ASIA_PACIFIC_SE_2.EBS.x86_64.windows.Windows=ami-6b3bd22f

Troubleshooting

If the script above doesn’t work, you can also find the list of Bamboo stock images in the following way:

1. In the following URL:

   https://maven.atlassian.com/content/repositories/atlassian-public/com/atlassian/bamboo/atlassian-bamboo/$BAMBOO_VERSION/atlassian-bamboo-$BAMBOO_VERSION.pom

   change $BAMBOO_VERSION to the Bamboo version number for which you want to list the AMIs.

   **Example**

   For Bamboo 5.9.3:

   https://maven.atlassian.com/content/repositories/atlassian-public/com/atlassian/bamboo/atlassian-bamboo/5.9.3/atlassian-bamboo-5.9.3.pom

2. Open the URL in a browser.
3. In the atlassian-bamboo-$BAMBOO_VERSION.pom file (where $BAMBOO_VERSION is your version of Bamboo), find the elastic image version for the release. The image version (baseline) is stored as an elastic-image.version property.
Example

For the version 5.9.7 (atlassian-bamboo-5.9.7.pom), the elastic image version was 4.2:

```xml
<elastic-image.version>4.2</elastic-image.version>
```

4. In the following URL:

```plaintext
```

change $ELASTIC_VERSION to the Bamboo elastic version number from Step 3.

Example

For Bamboo elastic version 4.2, which is the baseline for Bamboo 5.9.3:

```plaintext
https://maven.atlassian.com/content/repositories/atlassian-public/com/atlassian/bamboo/atlassian-bamboo-elastic-image/4.2/atlassian-bamboo-elastic-image-4.2.ami
```

5. Open the URL in a browser.
6. The .ami file that opens contains the list of all stock AMI IDs available for the selected version of Bamboo.

Make sure you choose the image from the correct region. For example:

```plaintext
image.US_EAST_1.EBS.x86_64.linux.Ubuntu=ami-1c247d74
```

Related topics

- Creating a custom elastic image
- stock images

Managing your elastic instances

An elastic instance is a running instance of an elastic image. One elastic instance is created whenever an elastic image is started. Hence, starting one elastic image multiple times, results in the creation of multiple elastic instances. Each time an elastic instance is created, one elastic agent is created on that instance.

The following list directs you to details on managing elastic instances manually in Bamboo. However, you can configure Bamboo to automatically manage your elastic instances. Please refer to Automatic Elastic Instance Management for more information.

- To view a running elastic instance, see Viewing an elastic instance.
- To access your elastic instance via a client, see Accessing an elastic instance.
- To start one or more elastic instances, see Starting an elastic instance.
- To shut down one or more elastic instances, see Shutting down an elastic instance.
- To configure your Elastic Bamboo settings for elastic instances, see the Elastic Instance Settings section in the Configuring Elastic Bamboo document.

Viewing an elastic instance

An elastic instance is a running instance of an elastic image. One elastic instance is created whenever an elastic image is started. Hence, starting one elastic image multiple times, results in the creation of multiple elastic instances. Each time an elastic instance is created, one elastic agent is created on that instance.

Conceptually, an elastic instance can be thought of as a computer. The elastic agent’s processes are run on this computer and the elastic image is the boot hard drive. Unlike computers, however, elastic instances are temporary and stateless. When an elastic instance is shut down:

- Any changes that an elastic instance makes to the boot hard drive (e.g. agent log file) will not persist
- Any customizations to the instance itself will also be lost.

The Amazon Elastic Block Store can provide persistent storage for your elastic instances.
You can also view information about your elastic instances on the AWS Management Console. Please note, we strongly recommend that you use the console for viewing instance information only. You may experience errors if you attempt to manage your instances outside of Bamboo.

### Related pages:
- Managing your elastic instances

### To view an elastic instance:

1. Click the ![Elastic Instances](image) icon and select Elastic Instances.
2. Click the name of the instance that you want to view, e.g. 'i-05ff716c'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Current status</strong></th>
<th>The status of the elastic instance. Values include, ‘Pending’ (instance starting up), ‘Running’ and ‘Shutting down’.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Public DNS</strong></td>
<td>The public DNS address of the elastic instance. The IP address of the elastic instance is displayed here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Start Time</strong></td>
<td>The start time of the instance, based on the Amazon EC2 timezone (US Eastern Time for Elastic Bamboo). Start time is the time when you sent the request to start an instance, not the time when the instance progresses to ‘Running’ status. Up time of the instance (including the time taken for the instance to start up) is shown in brackets after the start time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Elastic Agent</strong></td>
<td>The elastic agent process currently running on your elastic instance. Currently, Elastic Bamboo only supports one elastic agent per elastic image. Click the link to view the elastic agent. If the agent is running a job, the job's key will be shown in brackets after the elastic agent name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current Availability Zone</strong></td>
<td>The availability zone that your elastic instance is running in. Read more about Amazon EC2 availability zones. Your availability zone preference is shown in brackets after the current availability zone. For instructions on how to set the availability zone for your instances, please see Managing your elastic image configurations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Attached Volumes</strong></td>
<td>The IDs of the attached EBS volumes, if you have configured your elastic instances to use EBS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Configuration</strong></td>
<td>The name of the elastic image configuration that was used to create this elastic instance. Click the name to configure the elastic image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AMI ID</strong></td>
<td>The ID of the elastic image (i.e. Amazon Machine Image) that the elastic instance was created from (as part of the elastic image configuration).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EBS Snapshot ID</strong></td>
<td>The ID of the EBS snapshot that was used to create the EBS volumes attached to your instance, if you have configured your elastic instances to use EBS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Instance Type</strong></td>
<td>The instance type of your instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SSH Access</strong></td>
<td>Please see Accessing an elastic instance for information on using this function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Accessing Logs</strong></td>
<td>Please see Accessing an elastic instance for information on using this function.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Screenshot: Viewing an elastic instance**

#### Elastic Bamboo ◀ Instances ◀ i-07ec936b

**Information**

This is an instance running on the Amazon EC2 compute cloud. You can get more extensive information about this instance from the Amazon AWS Web Console.

- **Current status**: Running
- **Public DNS**: ec2-184-72-31-22.compute-1.amazonaws.com IP: 184.72.81.22
- **Start Time**: 14/02/11 10:57 AM (41 minutes ago)
- **Elastic Agent**: Elastic Agent on i-07ec936b (Idle)

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
Accessing an elastic instance

It is possible to connect directly to a running elastic instance to access logs or upload files. Access is available via SSH (secure shell) and file transfer is enabled via SCP (secure copy).

Please note, you can only access elastic instances that are running. You may need to configure the automatic termination of elastic instances.
Using SSH

To access your elastic instance using SSH:

1. Navigate to the desired elastic instance, as described on Viewing an elastic instance.
2. Copy the command text listed under the 'SSH Access' section. It will be similar to the following example command text:
   
   ```bash
   ssh -i /opt/bamboo/home/xml-data/configuration/elasticbamboo.pk root@ec2-68-111-185-197.compute-1.amazonaws.com
   ```
3. Execute the text in your terminal and you will have full SSH access to the Elastic Instance.

   You can also download the private key via the link in the 'SSH Access' section to access your elastic instance via SSH. Click 'here' in the following text on screen to download the key: 'You can also download the SSH private key file from here and use the private key to access the EC2 instance.'

Using SCP

Note, you can also use SCP to upload files to your elastic instance.

To access your elastic instance using SCP:

1. Navigate to the desired elastic instance, as described on Viewing an elastic instance.
2. Copy the command text listed under the 'Accessing Logs' section. It will be similar to the following example command text:
   
   ```bash
   scp -i /opt/bamboo/home/xml-data/configuration/elasticbamboo.pk root@ec2-68-111-185-197.compute-1.amazonaws.com:/home/bamboo/bamboo-elastic-agent.out ./
   ```
3. Execute the text in your terminal to download the logs from your elastic instance.

Notes

- Permission issues for SSH access — If you are experiencing permission issues when attempting to access your elastic instance via SSH, you may need to use the root user or modify permissions on your Elastic Bamboo private key file. See this FAQ for further details.

Starting an elastic instance

An elastic agent process runs in an elastic instance and will automatically start when an instance is started. If you want to run a Job build on an elastic agent, you can start an elastic instance for the agent to run in. The elastic agent will inherit the capabilities of the image that the instance is started from.

Limitations on the number of elastic instances — An elastic agent is counted as a remote agent for licensing purposes. Hence, if starting an elastic instance (and hence an elastic agent) causes you to exceed the total number of remote agents allowed under your license, you will not be able to start the instance.

To start an elastic instance:

1. Click the icon and select ElasticInstances.
2. Click Start New Elastic Instances.
   
   - Use Number of instances to specify the number of new instances you would like to start.
   - Use Elastic Image Configuration Name to select the elastic image configuration that you would like your instances to use.
3. Click Submit. The 'Manage Elastic Instances' page will be displayed, showing your new instances starting:
   
   a. A note will display stating that the elastic instances (and corresponding agents) are starting.

   b. Your elastic instances will then display with a status of 'Pending' while they start up. This generally takes a few minutes.

   c. Once your elastic instances have started up, they will progress to 'Running' status. An elastic agent process will then start.
up for each instance. They will display a status of 'Pending' while they start.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instance</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Up Time</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>instance i-2204914b</td>
<td>Running</td>
<td>1 minute</td>
<td><a href="#">View</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elastic Agent on i-2204914b</td>
<td>Pending</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Once the elastic agents have started, they will display a status of 'Online'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instance</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Up Time</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>instance i-2204914b</td>
<td>Running</td>
<td>10 minutes</td>
<td><a href="#">View</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elastic Agent on i-2204914b</td>
<td>Online</td>
<td></td>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

What if my elastic agent doesn't start? Bamboo has a set period of time that it waits for the agent to start on an elastic instance. If no response is received by the end of this time period, Bamboo will shut down the elastic instance.

You can configure this time period by modifying the following system property (default is 600):

```
bamboo.agent.elastic.startupTimeoutSeconds
```

Read [Starting Bamboo](#) for instructions on how to set a system property.

Scheduling your elastic instances

You can schedule the startup and shutdown of elastic instances in Bamboo. For example, you may wish to shut down all elastic instances on weekends or start up additional instances to help cope with job builds during regular busy periods.

On this page:
- Managing your elastic instance schedules
- Adding a new elastic instance schedule

Related pages:
- Managing your elastic instances

Managing your elastic instance schedules

To manage your elastic instance schedules:

1. Click the <icon> in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Instance Schedules in the left navigation panel (under 'Elastic Bamboo').
3. Do any of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add a new schedule</td>
<td>Click Add Elastic Instance Schedule to create a schedule from new.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Click Copy to use an existing schedule as a template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See the Adding a New Elastic Instance Schedule section below for further instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit an existing schedule</td>
<td>Click Edit for an existing schedule. You can also Delete existing schedules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable existing schedules</td>
<td>Click Enable for a particular schedule, or click Enable All.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable existing schedules</td>
<td>Click Disable for a particular schedule, or click Disable All.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also view the configuration for the elastic image that the instances will be created from, by clicking the image configuration name (e.g. 'Default') in the table of schedules.

Screenshot: Viewing elastic instance schedules
View Elastic Instance Schedules

Configure when to start up or shut down elastic instances of a particular elastic image.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Next Scheduled Run</th>
<th>Cron Expression</th>
<th>Image Config</th>
<th>Active Instances</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trigger disabled</td>
<td>Each Saturday at 4:30 am</td>
<td>Stop all elastic instances</td>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger disabled</td>
<td>Each Monday at 9:00 am</td>
<td>Stop all elastic instances</td>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adding a new elastic instance schedule

1. Click the 
   icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Instance Schedules in the left navigation panel (under 'Elastic Bamboo').
3. Click either Add Elastic Instance Schedule to create a schedule from new, or Copy for an existing schedule to use it as a template.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enabled</th>
<th>Clear if you do not want this schedule to be enabled when you create it.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trigger On</td>
<td>Choose when this schedule should start:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Next Bamboo startup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A cron schedule — edit Schedule as required. For information on constructing cron expressions, see this FAQ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On Trigger Bamboo Should</td>
<td>Choose the action Bamboo should perform:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Stop all elastic instances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Adjust number of active instances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image Config</td>
<td>Choose which image the elastic instances should be started from. The elastic agents running on the instances will inherit the capabilities from the image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Instances</td>
<td>Choose the logical operator and specify a value for the number of active instances.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Screenshot: Adding an elastic instance schedule
Add Elastic Instance Schedule

Choose when your schedule will run and how many elastic instances of a particular configuration you want active at any point in time. When bringing the number of instances down, idle instances will be shut down preferentially. Instances with busy agents will be brought down after the builds they are running have completed.

Schedule Details

- **Enabled**
- Trigger On:
  - Next Bamboo startup
  - A cron schedule
- **Schedule** Daily at 11:50 pm
- On Trigger Bamboo Should:
  - Stop all elastic instances
  - Adjust number of active instances
- **Image Config** KBTEST
- **Active Instances** exactly 1
  Number of instances that Bamboo will attempt to adjust to.

---

Shutting down an elastic instance

Before you begin:

- Please ensure that the agent on an elastic instance is not running a job build, before shutting down the instance. Any job builds running on the agent **will be abandoned** when you shut down the elastic instance.

To shut down an elastic instance:

1. Click the
   icon and select **Elastic Instances**.
2. Click **Shut Down** for the instance that you wish to shut down (in the 'Operations' column).
3. Click **Confirm**. In the 'Manage Elastic Instances' screen, the elastic instance that you have shut down will show a 'Shutting down' status for a few minutes, before it shuts down and disappears from this screen.
Shut Down Instance

You are attempting to shut down elastic instance i-211f614d. If you continue, all builds running on the elastic agent for this instance will be abandoned.

Confirm  Cancel

Shutting down all elastic instances

Before you begin:

- Please ensure that the agent on an elastic instance is not running a Job build, before shutting down the instance. Any Job builds running on the agent will be abandoned when you shut down the elastic instance.

To shut down all elastic instances:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Instances in the left navigation panel. The 'Manage Elastic Instances' screen will display.
3. Click Shut Down All Instances. The 'Shut Down All Instances' screen will display.
4. Click Confirm. The 'Manage Elastic Instances' screen will display again. The elastic instances will display 'Shutting down' status for a few minutes, before they shut down and disappear from this screen.

Configuring automatic shutdown of instances after agent termination

To configure Elastic Bamboo to automatically shut down instances when agents are terminated:
Please refer to Configuring Elastic Bamboo and follow the instructions for setting the Automatically shut down elastic instance when elastic agent process ends option in the 'Elastic Bamboo Global Settings' section.

Shutting down elastic instances using the AWS Console

We strongly recommend that you manage your instances using the Elastic Bamboo user interface. If your elastic instances become orphaned from your Bamboo server, you may need to shut your elastic instances down directly in the Amazon Web Services (AWS) console.

Your elastic instances can become orphaned from your Bamboo server, for example if you restart your Bamboo server without shutting down your elastic instances first.

Please refer to How do I shut down my elastic instances if I have restarted my Bamboo server for further details.

Managing your elastic agents

An elastic agent is an agent that runs in the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2). An elastic agent process runs in an elastic instance of an elastic image. An elastic agent inherits its capabilities from the elastic image that it was created from.

- To view your elastic agents, see Viewing your elastic agents.
- To view elastic agents that have terminated, see Viewing your elastic agent usage history.
- To configure your elastic agent's capabilities, see Configuring elastic agent capabilities.
- To disable an elastic agent, see Disabling an elastic agent.

Viewing your elastic agents

An elastic agent is an agent that runs in the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2). An elastic agent process runs in an elastic instance of an elastic image. An elastic agent inherits its capabilities from the elastic image that it was created from.

An elastic agent will always have an 'Online' status, (i.e. 'Online' or 'Online (Disabled)'). If you disable an elastic agent, the elastic instance will remain online. However, if you shut down the elastic instance, then the elastic agents process is killed and will not appear in the remote agents list. Hence, an elastic agent will never have an 'Offline' status.

Related pages:

- Managing your elastic agents

To view your elastic agents:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click **Agents** in the left navigation panel.

The agents for your Bamboo instance will be displayed (see screenshot below). Any elastic agents that are running will be listed in the 'Remote Agents' section. The elastic agent name will be prefixed with 'Elastic Agent', e.g. 'Elastic Agent on i-2204914b'.

### Viewing your elastic agent usage history

When you shut down an elastic instance, the agent process for that instance is killed. Consequently, the elastic agent will not display an offline status, but will be removed altogether from your available elastic agents in Bamboo.

However, information about these elastic agents is recorded in Bamboo and can be viewed on the 'Elastic Agent History' page.

**Related pages:**
- Managing your elastic agents

#### To view the history of an elastic instance that has been shut down:

1. Click the **agent** icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Agent History** in the left navigation panel.
3. To view the usage history of the elastic agent, click the agent name, or **View** next to the agent. The 'Elastic Agent History' page (see screenshot) will show the following information:
   - Elastic instance — the elastic instance that the elastic agent ran in.
   - Last startup time — the last time that the elastic agent was started. This is based on the Bamboo server time.
   - Last shutdown time — the last time that the elastic instance was stopped. This is based on the Bamboo server time.
   - Up time — the total time that the elastic agent was online.
   - Build History — this table lists the job builds run by the elastic agent and information about the job build, such as the status, duration, test results, etc. You can access the full results by clicking the build number.

**Screenshot: Elastic agent history**

---

**Elastic Agent History > Elastic Agent on i-e9ec9385 (elastic)**

Elastic agent on instance i-e9ec9385, configuration: Maven 2.1 Image

You can view historical information for this elastic agent in this page. This agent is offline and will never come back alive.

**Agent Details**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elastic instance</th>
<th>Instance i-e9ec9385 (Maven 2.1 Image</th>
<th>The elastic instance this agent is/was running on.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Last startup time</td>
<td>14/02/2011 11:05:39 AM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last shutdown time</td>
<td>14/02/2011 12:56:22 PM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Up time</td>
<td>1 hour, 50 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Build History**

The agent was building for **28.15%** of the up time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Reason</th>
<th>Completed</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Test Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="checkmark" alt="Green Check" /> Bamboo Testing &gt; Remote Agent Functional Tests on JDK 1.6 2055 Default Job</td>
<td>Scheduled build</td>
<td>Mon, 14 Feb, 11:52 AM</td>
<td>21 minutes</td>
<td>13 passed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="x" alt="Red X" /> Bamboo Main &gt; Stable CI Tests #243, Func Test Repository</td>
<td>Manual build by James Dumay</td>
<td>Mon, 14 Feb, 11:14 AM</td>
<td>6 minutes</td>
<td>No tests found</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Configuring elastic agent capabilities**

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5/au/).
An **elastic agent** is an agent that runs in the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2). An elastic agent process runs in an **elastic instance** of an elastic image. An elastic agent inherits its capabilities from the elastic image that it was created from.

You can customize the capabilities of your elastic agents by configuring the capabilities on the relevant elastic image.

You may want to configure the capabilities on your elastic image to force your job builds to run on particular elastic agents (e.g. running slow acceptance tests on your most powerful elastic agents). You may also need to configure the capabilities on any custom elastic images that you have created and/or associated with your Bamboo installation.

Please note that adding a builder, JDK or version control capability to the image does not install the actual builders, JDKs or VCS modules on the image. Please take particular note of this, if you are adding capabilities to a custom image.

### Related pages:
- Managing your elastic agents

### To configure the capabilities on an elastic image:

1. Click the ![icon](image) in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Image configurations** in the left navigation panel (under 'Elastic Bamboo').
3. Click **Capabilities** (under 'Operations') for the relevant elastic image.
4. Use the 'Add Capability' panel at the end of the page to add new capabilities to the image. Please see the following pages for further information:
   - Defining a new executable capability
   - Defining a new JDK capability
   - Defining a new version control capability
   - Defining a new custom capability
   - Defining a new Docker capability

You can also edit, rename or delete a capability from an elastic image. Please see the following pages for further information:
- Configuring capabilities
- Renaming a capability

You can also view the agents and elastic image configurations with a particular capability and the jobs with the related requirement by clicking **View** for the capability.

Any changes that you have made to elastic image capabilities will only be reflected in new agents started after the changes were made. You will need to restart any existing agents, if you want them to pick up your changes.

**Screenshot: Configuring elastic agent capabilities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elastic Image Capabilities</th>
<th>Executable Jobs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Elastic Image Capabilities</strong></td>
<td>**Add Capability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A capability is a feature of an agent. There are 3 types of capabilities: builders, JDKs and custom. You can use this page to view, add and delete capabilities associated with this Elastic Image Configuration. Any existing elastic instances will need to be restarted to pick up these changes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The following capabilities exist on Elastic Agents running on an instance of this Image:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Custom</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Custom' capabilities are key-value pairs that define particular characteristics of an agent (e.g. <code>operating system=WindowsXP</code>, <code>fast build=true</code>). For an agent to be able to build a job, both the 'Key' and 'Value' must match the job's requirements.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Key</strong></td>
<td><strong>Value</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.functionalTest</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Builder</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Builder' capabilities define the builders which are available to your build plans.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Builder Label</strong></td>
<td><strong>Path</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5/au/).
Disabling an elastic agent

An elastic agent is an agent that runs in the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2). An elastic agent process runs in an elastic instance of an elastic image. An elastic agent inherits its capabilities from the elastic image that it was created from.

If you would like to stop an elastic agent, you can disable it in Bamboo. This will abandon any job build it is running and prevent it from running any further job builds.

Please note, disabling an elastic agent will not shut down the elastic instance it is running on (i.e. you will still be charged for the instance uptime). You can permanently stop an elastic agent and instance by shutting down the elastic instance.

The Bamboo server also “supervises” your elastic agents. If the Bamboo server detects that an elastic agent is offline, it will automatically terminate the elastic instance.

To disable an elastic agent:

1. Navigate to the desired elastic agent, as described in Viewing your elastic agents.
2. Click Disable in the ‘Operations’ column for the elastic agent. The elastic agent will display with a status of ‘Online (Disabled)’. Re-enable the elastic agent by clicking Enable.

Elastic Bamboo FAQ
This page provides answers to common questions about running builds using Elastic Bamboo. If you are using Elastic Bamboo for the first time, we highly recommend that you read Getting started with Elastic Bamboo for instructions on setting up Elastic Bamboo and running your first build.

What job builds can I run on Elastic Bamboo?
You can run any of your job builds on any elastic agent (which in turn runs on an elastic instance), provided that the elastic agent’s capabilities meet the job’s requirements. An elastic agent inherits the capabilities of the elastic image it was created from. Hence, you can see which of your jobs can run on elastic agents by checking that your job’s requirements match your elastic image’s capabilities.

You can view your elastic image and the job builds that meet its requirements on the Agents and plans matrix.

On this page:
- What job builds can I run on Elastic Bamboo?
- How do I run a plan build and its jobs on an elastic agent?
- How do I automatically start or shut down elastic instances for job builds?
- How do I know whether my job build was run on an elastic agent?
- How do I customize the capabilities of my elastic agents?
- How much does it cost to run a build?
- What is EBS and how does it affect my job builds?

How do I run a plan build and its jobs on an elastic agent?
An elastic agent operates in a similar way to a non-elastic agent. The Bamboo server will determine if any job builds in the queue can be built on any of the available agents (including elastic agents), based on whether or not the capabilities of these agents meet the requirements of these jobs.

If an available elastic agent (like any other available agent) has capabilities which meet the requirements of a build in the build queue, the Bamboo server will assign the job build to that elastic agent.

If you do not have any free elastic agents running, you can configure Bamboo to automatically start up elastic instances whose elastic agents are capable of running job builds in the queue, or you can start up an appropriate elastic instance manually. (When an elastic instance is started, its elastic agent is also started, automatically.) For more information about starting elastic instances manually, refer to Starting an elastic instance.

If you do not use Bamboo’s Automatic Elastic Instance Management feature and prefer to manage your elastic instances manually, then we strongly recommend that you shut down any elastic instances (running your elastic agents), when they are not in use. Minimizing unutilized elastic instance uptime will help reduce costs. Read Shutting down an elastic instance for instructions on how to shut down an elastic instance.

How do I automatically start or shut down elastic instances for job builds?
Bamboo can automatically start elastic instances based on demand from the build queue and shut them down once the elastic agents running on them have been idle for a specified period of time. For more information, please refer to the Automatic Elastic Instance Management section of the Configuring Elastic Bamboo topic.

While Bamboo’s Automatic Elastic Instance Management feature is the easiest and most effective method of managing elastic instances in Bamboo, you can also manage elastic instances using the Bamboo REST API. For example, you could implement cron jobs to intelligently start and stop elastic instances, so that elastic agents are available at key times for your job builds.
How do I know whether my job build was run on an elastic agent?

The name of the image and elastic agent that ran a job build can be viewed as part of the build result. Please see the Viewing a build result page for more information.

How do I customize the capabilities of my elastic agents?

You may want to customize the capabilities of your elastic agents to suit certain jobs in your plans. For example, if you want to force certain job builds to only run on elastic agents, you can add a custom capability of elastic=true to your elastic agents and add the same requirement to these jobs.

To customize the capabilities for your elastic agents, you need to customize the capabilities of the image that they are created from. Read Configuring elastic agent capabilities for instructions.

How much does it cost to run a build?

As Elastic Bamboo usage varies from customer to customer, we cannot provide a definitive cost estimate for running a job build using Elastic Bamboo. We do provide high level guidelines for Elastic Bamboo costs, based on our own experience of using Elastic Bamboo at Atlassian, on the Elastic Bamboo Costs page.

You can significantly reduce the costs and time taken to run a job build by configuring Elastic Bamboo to use Automatic Elastic Instance Management and Amazon's Elastic Block Store (EBS).

What is EBS and how does it affect my job builds?

The Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS) provides persistent storage volumes that can be attached to EC2 instances. Elastic Bamboo can use the EBS to store snapshots of relatively static build information, such as checkouts of source code and Maven repository data. You can choose a snapshot to create EBS volumes from. These volumes can then be attached to your elastic instances when they start up.

Disabling Elastic Bamboo

If you do not want to execute Plan builds and their Jobs in the Amazon EC2 anymore, you can disable Elastic Bamboo for your Bamboo installation. Your AWS account details will be preserved when you disable Elastic Bamboo, so you can just enable it if you want to start using it again.

Before you begin:

- Please ensure that you do not require your elastic agents before disabling Elastic Bamboo, as they will be stopped immediately.

To disable Elastic Bamboo:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Configuration in the left navigation panel (under 'Elastic Bamboo').
3. Click Disable. Elastic Bamboo will be disabled and a confirmation message will be displayed.

Quick filters

Use quick filters for handy search shortcuts in your Bamboo build dashboard. Create filters based on configurable rules and never miss a build plan again.

Quick filters work only with plans displayed in Bamboo dashboard, which means that they don’t include plan branches.

Configuration

Administrators can add, edit, and delete quick filters by clicking the cog icon in the quick filters menu:

The configuration view is also available from Administration > Plans > Quick filters.
Quick filters are available on the build dashboard for all users of a Bamboo instance.

Types of rules

Click a filter name in the build dashboard to display plans that match the rules assigned to the filter.

A plan is displayed only if it matches all the rules specified for a filter.

You can create filters with combinations of the following rules:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>By completion date</td>
<td>Displays plans that completed within a specific time frame. For example, you can display plans that completed in the last three days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By label</td>
<td>Displays plans with a specific label. You can define multiple labels. The plan is display when it has at least one label specified in the rule. To assign a label to a plan, click the name of a plan to display the plan summary and go to Actions &gt; Modify plan label.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By name</td>
<td>Displays plans with a specific name or plans that match a regular expression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By project</td>
<td>Displays plans that are assigned to a specific project. You can select one or more projects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By result status</td>
<td>Displays plans that have completed with a specific result. You can select from:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Successful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By status</td>
<td>Displays plans based with a specific status. You can select from:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Users and permissions

There are several options for managing your Bamboo users and groups:

- Manage locally in Bamboo
- Manage with Atlassian’s JIRA applications or Crowd
- Manage with an external user repository, such as LDAP.

On this page:

- Choose a user management option
- About users and authors
- About groups
- Bamboo permissions

Note that the information on this page does not relate to application-level security for Bamboo – see Security instead.

Choose a user management option

To choose how you want to manage users in Bamboo:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Navigate to User repositories (under ‘Security’).
3. Choose one of the user management options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manage locally in Bamboo</td>
<td>Managing users&lt;br&gt;Managing groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage with Atlassian’s JIRA applications</td>
<td>Allowing Other Applications to Connect to JIRA applications for User Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage with Atlassian’s Crowd</td>
<td>Integrating Bamboo with Crowd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Manage in a custom external user directory

4. Click **Save**.

About users and authors

An *author* is any person who checks in code to a repository that is associated with a Bamboo *plan*. An author need not be a Bamboo user. Depending on your organization’s requirements, you can configure Bamboo to **grant access to non-users**. However, only Bamboo users can:

- view the My Bamboo tab on the Dashboard.
- belong to a group.

About groups

Bamboo groups are used to specify which *users* will have **global permissions** and **plan permissions**. They can also be used to specify which users will receive **notifications about a plan's build results**. You can create and delete as many groups as you need. You will typically create at least one group per **project**.

A special group called **bamboo-admin** is automatically created when you install Bamboo. Members of this group have Bamboo administration rights.

Bamboo permissions

Bamboo permissions control access to plans, builds and administration functions. See Managing permissions.

A **plan permission** is the ability to perform a particular operation on a **plan** and its **jobs**. For each plan, different permissions can be granted to particular groups and/or users. A **global permission** is the ability to perform a particular operation in relation to Bamboo as a whole.

Managing users

This page describes procedures for managing your Bamboo users locally in Bamboo.

For an brief overview of other options for managing your Bamboo users see Users and permissions.

On this page:

- Create a new user account
- Change a user's password or details

See also:

- Deleting or deactivating a user
- Granting administration rights to a user
- Changing usernames

Create a new user account

Bamboo users can:

- view the My Bamboo tab on the Dashboard.
- belong to a group.

Depending on your organization’s requirements, you can also configure Bamboo to **grant access to non-users**.

To create a Bamboo user:

1. Click the **icon** in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Users** in the left navigation panel (under 'Security').
3. Complete the ‘Add User’ form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>Username cannot be changed after the user is created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The user can easily change their password later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>The address to which notifications are sent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Instant Messaging Address

If no IM address is specified, Bamboo will not be able to recognize the user's context when interacting using IM.

## Source Repository Aliases

If the user is a Bamboo author, click Add Alias to enter the user's login name for their source-code repository.

If you don't know their login name, they can specify it themselves later.

---

### Change a user's password or details

#### To change a user's password or details:

1. Click the ![icon](image)
   icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Users in the left panel (under 'Security').
3. Locate the user by typing part of their username, full name or email, and clicking Search.
4. Click Edit for the required user.
5. Edit the user's details or password as necessary.
   - If you have configured SMTP email on your Bamboo server, the user will automatically receive an email containing their new password.
   - The user can easily change their password later.
6. Click Save.

#### Note that:

- Users who have forgotten their passwords can click the Forgotten your password? link on the Bamboo login screen. This will automatically generate a new password and email it to them (provided the Bamboo server has been configured to send SMTP email).
- Logged-in users can change their own password and details, as described in Managing your user profile.
- See Associating your author name with your user profile for information about Source Repository Aliases.

### Deleting or deactivating a user

Deleting a user removes their Bamboo user account. Deactivating a user prevents them from logging in to Bamboo.

#### Deleting a Bamboo user

Before you begin:

- Deleting a Bamboo user will not delete their author data — that is, their author statistics and code check-in comments will still exist in Bamboo.
- You cannot delete a user who has created labels or comments about build results. You may want to deactivate them instead.
- You cannot delete the user account with which you are currently logged in to Bamboo.

#### On this page:

- Deleting a Bamboo user
- Deactivating a Bamboo user

#### Related pages:

- Managing users

#### To delete a Bamboo user:

1. Click the ![icon](image)
   icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Select Users in the left navigation panel.
3. Use the Delete link in the 'Operations' column.
Deactivating a Bamboo user

You can deactivate a user, which means that they won't receive any email or IM notifications and they won't be able to log in to your Bamboo instance.

Deactivated users can't recover their passwords, but they can still can trigger builds by committing to repositories.

To deactivate a Bamboo user:

1. Go to Administration > User management.
2. Find the user that you want to deactivate.
3. Click Edit.
4. Unselect the Active user check box.
5. Click Save.

Alternative scenario:

1. Go to Administration > User management.
2. Find the user that you want to deactivate.
3. Click Edit.
4. Enter a new password for the user.
5. If you have configured SMTP email on your Bamboo server, the user will automatically receive an email containing their new password.
6. To get around the email problem, enter an invalid email address in the Email field, for example foobar@foobaremialaddress.foobar.
7. Delete the user's Instant Messaging Address so that he or she does not receive notifications on build events.
8. Click Save.

Granting administration rights to a user

In Bamboo, there are two types of administrators:

- Global administrators — that is, people with the 'Admin' global permission. These people can access the Bamboo Administration menu. They can also administer every plan.
- Plan administrators — that is, people with the 'Admin' and 'Edit' plan permissions. These people can administer a particular plan.

Grant global administration rights

To grant global administration rights to a user:

- Either grant the 'Admin' global permission to the user explicitly (as described in Granting global permissions to users or groups); OR:
- Add the user to a group which has the 'Admin' global permission (as described in Changing members of groups).
Grant plan administration rights

- Either grant the 'Admin' and 'Edit' plan permissions to the user explicitly (as described in Granting plan permissions in bulk);
- OR:
- Add the user to a group which has the 'Admin' and 'Edit' plan permissions (as described in Changing members of groups).

Changing usernames

The script below has been used by an Atlassian customer to change a username in Bamboo 3.1. No guarantees are implied by its presence here.

```sql
update ACL_ENTRY set SID='newusername' where SID='oldusername';
update ACL_OBJECT_IDENTITY set OWNER_SID='newusername' where OWNER_SID='oldusername';
update AUDIT_LOG set USER_NAME='newusername' where USER_NAME='oldusername';
update AUTHOR set LINKED_USER_NAME='newusername' where LINKED_USER_NAME='oldusername';
update AUTHOR set AUTHOR_NAME='newusername' where AUTHOR_NAME='oldusername';
update AUTH_ATTEMPT_INFO set USER_NAME='newusername' where USER_NAME='oldusername';
update BUILDRESULTSUMMARY_CUSTOMDATA set CUSTOM_INFO_VALUE='newusername' where CUSTOM_INFO_VALUE='oldusername' && CUSTOM_INFO_KEY='ManualBuildTriggerReason.userName';
update BUILDRESULTSUMMARY_LABEL set USER_NAME='newusername' where USER_NAME='oldusername';
update LABEL set NAMESPACE='newusername' where NAMESPACE='oldusername';
update NOTIFICATIONS set RECIPIENT='newusername' where RECIPIENT='oldusername';
update REMEMBERME_TOKEN set USERNAME='newusername' where USERNAME='oldusername';
update USER_COMMENT set USER_NAME='newusername' where USER_NAME='oldusername';
update external_entities set name='newusername' where name='oldusername';
update users set name='newusername' where name='oldusername';
```

Managing groups

Bamboo groups are used to specify which users will have global permissions and plan permissions. They can also be used to specify which users will receive notifications about a plan's build results. You can create and delete as many groups as you need. You will typically create at least one group per project.

A special group called bamboo-admin is automatically created when you install Bamboo. Members of this group have Bamboo administration rights.

Read more about managing groups for your users:

- Creating a group
- Deleting a group
- Changing members of groups

Creating a group

Bamboo groups are used to specify which users will have global permissions and plan permissions. They can also be used to specify which users will receive notifications about a plan's build results. You can create and delete as many groups as you need. You will typically create at least one group per project.

A special group called bamboo-admin is automatically created when you install Bamboo. Members of this group have Bamboo administration rights.
To create a group:

1. Click the 
   ![icon](image)
   in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Groups (under 'Security') in the left navigation panel.
3. Type a name for your new group into Group Name (in the 'Create Group' section). Note that the group name cannot be changed after the group is created.

In Bamboo, a group name can only contain characters from the following set: a-z, @, . , _ , - , 0-9. You can't create groups that contain invalid character. Similarly, if you try to import of groups that contain invalid characters from an external source, the import of that group will fail.

4. Select relevant users from the Users to add list. Hold <Ctrl> to select multiple users. You can also add or remove users from the group later if required.
5. Click Save.

Screenshot: Creating a Bamboo group

Deleting a group

Note that the bamboo-admin group cannot be deleted.

To delete a group:

1. Click the 
   ![icon](image)
   in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Groups in the left navigation panel. The 'Manage Groups' screen will be displayed.
3. Click Delete for the relevant group, in the 'Operations' column.

Changing members of groups

Bamboo groups are used to specify which users will have global permissions and plan permissions. They can also be used to specify which users will receive notifications about a plan's build results. You can create and delete as many groups as you need. You will typically create at least one group per project.

A special group called bamboo-admin is automatically created when you install Bamboo. Members of this group have Bamboo administration rights.

To change the members of a group:

1. Click the
1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.

2. Click Groups in the left navigation panel. The 'Manage Groups' screen will be displayed.

3. Click Edit for the relevant group, in the 'Operations' column. The 'Edit Group Details' screen will be displayed. Users who already belong to the group are shown in blue; users who do not currently belong to the group are shown in white.

4. Press the <Ctrl> key and hold it while you select (or deselect) the users whom you want to add to (or remove from) the group. Click Save.

Related pages:
- Managing groups

Connecting to external user directories

Bamboo provides a number of options for connecting to external user directories for user management:

- Manage users and groups in Atlassian's JIRA or Atlassian's Crowd — see Integrating Bamboo with Crowd.
- Connect to a custom external user directory, such as an LDAP server — see Integrating Bamboo with LDAP.

You can also manage users and groups within the Bamboo server itself.

Integrating Bamboo with Crowd

Atlassian's Crowd identity management system can be integrated with Bamboo. This allows you to use Crowd as a user directory manager for Bamboo.

The integration process requires you to configure Crowd to talk to Bamboo, then configure Bamboo to talk to Crowd. Hence, the instructions below reference the Crowd documentation. Ensure that you are referring to the correct version of the Crowd documentation.

If you have JIRA 4.3 or later, you can also manage your users via JIRA. The process for connecting Bamboo to JIRA for user management is the same as the process for connecting Bamboo to Crowd for user management (described below).

Bamboo 3.2 should work with versions of Crowd from 2.1 onwards. We recommend Crowd 2.3 or later for performance reasons. Versions earlier than 2.1 are not supported.

On this page:
- Step 1. Configuring Crowd to Talk to Bamboo
- Step 2. Configuring Bamboo to Talk to Crowd
- Notes

Related pages:
- Connecting to external user directories
- Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo

Step 1. Configuring Crowd to Talk to Bamboo

For instructions on how to configure Crowd to talk to Bamboo, please refer to the Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo for the latest version of Crowd, which can be found in the Crowd Administrator's Guide. If you are using an older version of Crowd, find the documentation from the Crowd documentation homepage.

Step 2. Configuring Bamboo to Talk to Crowd

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.

2. Select User Repositories (under 'Security').

3. Choose Users and groups from JIRA or Crowd and configure the connection settings, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server URL</th>
<th>Enter the URL of your Crowd server:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If using Crowd 2.1 or older versions: <a href="http://localhost:8095/crowd/services/">http://localhost:8095/crowd/services/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If using Crowd 2.2 or newer versions: <a href="http://localhost:8095/crowd/">http://localhost:8095/crowd/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If your Crowd server's port is configured differently from the default (8095), set it accordingly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application Name</th>
<th>Enter the application name that you specified when configuring Crowd in Step 1 above.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| Application Password | Select Change password and set the password that you specified when configuring Crowd in Step 1 above. |
2.1 Configure External User Management in Bamboo

If you are connecting Bamboo to an external user management system and do not have rights to update user attributes there, you will need to prevent users from being updated in Bamboo. In this case, you should ensure that the Read-only External User Management? check-box is checked. For example, if Crowd directory permissions don't allow any remote changes, then Bamboo will give an error message if an attempt is made to change user account settings. We are tracking this bug:

BAM-12002 - Bamboo should allow changing the IM address of a user from Crowd

To configure the external user management option in Bamboo:

1. Navigate to Administration > Security Settings.
2. Click Edit.
3. Select the Read-only External User Management? checkbox. The table below outlines the correct configuration for Bamboo, depending on your external user management setup:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>External User Management Setup</th>
<th>Read-only External User Management? check-box</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo integrated with — Crowd using the Crowd database (i.e. Internal Directories)</td>
<td>Unchecked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo integrated with — Crowd connected to a read-only LDAP</td>
<td>Checked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo integrated with — Crowd connected to a read-write LDAP</td>
<td>Unchecked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo integrated with — Crowd with authentication-only delegated to LDAP.</td>
<td>Unchecked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Save.

2.2 (Optional) Enable Single Sign-On

Single sign-on (SSO) is optional when integrating Bamboo and other Atlassian products with Crowd. To use centralized authentication without SSO, skip the steps below.

To enable single sign-on (SSO), you will configure Bamboo's authentication and access request calls to use Seraph. To configure Seraph-based authentication:

1. Shut down Bamboo.
2. Edit the `\BAMBOO\atlassian-bamboo\WEB-INF\classes\seraph-config.xml`
3. Comment out the authenticator node:

```xml
<!--<authenticator
class="com.atlassian.bamboo.user.authentication.BambooAuthenticator"/>
-->```

4. Add a new authenticator, by adding the following tag:

```xml
<authenticator
class="com.atlassian.crowd.integration.seraph.v25.BambooAuthenticator"/>
```

5. Start Bamboo. Bamboo's authentication and access request calls will now be performed using Seraph.

Notes
Test times for synchronizing Bamboo-Crowd — As a guideline, we were able to synchronize 5000 users in six seconds in our internal tests using Crowd 2.3.1. Older versions of Crowd took three minutes to complete the same task.

If you want to configure the Bamboo-Crowd connection settings manually (e.g. to change the proxy settings), you can find the crowd.properties and atlassian-user.xml files in the $BAMBOO_HOME/xml-data/configuration/ directory.

Integrating Bamboo with LDAP

Bamboo can be integrated with LDAP for the authentication and authorization of LDAP users. The instructions below describe how you can set this up. Please note that Bamboo does not currently support multiple LDAP servers. If you need to connect to multiple LDAP servers, please consider using Atlassian’s Crowd.

If you choose to integrate Bamboo with LDAP, please note that you cannot manage LDAP accounts or user groups from Bamboo. Please refer to the instructions on this page for details on how to manage your users and groups.

⚠️ In Bamboo version 1.2.2 and later, XML backups of your Bamboo instance do not include LDAP user data.

⚠️ Please note that once LDAP has been enabled, reverting back to local user management is not possible.

On this page:
- Integrating Bamboo with LDAP
- External User Management
- Delegated LDAP
- Caching
- Notes

Related pages:
- Connecting to external user directories
- Knowledge Base articles

Integrating Bamboo with LDAP

Step 1 — Prerequisites

You will need to confirm that your LDAP server is compatible and set up correctly before integrating it with Bamboo. Please check your LDAP server against the requirements below:

- **Check your LDAP server version** — Supported versions are v2 and v3. Supported LDAP servers include OpenLDAP, Microsoft Active Directory, Novell eDirectory, and any server that uses Java JNDI-LDAP mapping.
- **Check whether your LDAP or Active Directory server supports static groups** — Your LDAP or Active Directory server must support static groups. This means that the user DNs must be stored against a membership attribute inside an LDAP group. An example of a static group is shown below:

  ```
  Dn: CN=Sales and Marketing,CN=Users,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com
  objectClass: top; group;
  cn: Sales and Marketing;
  distinguishedName: CN=Sales and Marketing,CN=Users,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com;
  name: Sales and Marketing;
  ...
  member: CN=John Smith,CN=Users,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com
  member: CN=Sally Smith,CN=Users,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com
  ...
  
  The membership attribute in this case is `member`, but this is not required. Note that the full DNs of John Smith and Sally Smith are listed. If the values against `member` are not full DNs, but are just usernames, then you need to add the flag `<useUnqualifiedUsernameForMembershipComparison>true</useUnqualifiedUsernameForMembershipComparison>` to your LDAP configuration. Open Directory on OS X uses this configuration.
- **Ensure that you do not have an LDAP group called 'bamboo-admin'** — The `bamboo-admin` group is reserved by Bamboo.
- **Ensure that you do not have duplicate users in your LDAP directory** — If you have users in your LDAP directory that are also on Bamboo, the first repository definition in your atlassian-user.xml file will take precedence.
- **Ensure that you do not have duplicate groups in your LDAP directory** — If you have groups in your LDAP directory that are also on Bamboo, this may cause unpredictable behavior when you attempt to integrate your LDAP server with Bamboo.

Step 2 — Backup your data

We strongly recommend that you **backup your data** before attempting LDAP integration.

Step 3 — Configure Connection Details

The LDAP server connection is specified by manually editing the file atlassian-user.xml.
To configure your connection details:

1. Edit the file `.../{BAMBOO-HOME}/xml-data/configuration/atlassian-user.xml` and configure the connection AD or LDAP.
2. Check your configuration against the example connection details shown below.

```
<ldap key="ldapRepository" name="LDAP Repository@hecate.atlassian.com" cache="true">
    <host>hecate.atlassian.com</host>
    <port>389</port>
    <securityPrincipal>cn=admin,dc=atlassian,dc=private</securityPrincipal>
    <securityCredential>secret</securityCredential>
    <securityProtocol>plain</securityProtocol>
    <securityAuthentication>simple</securityAuthentication>
    <baseContext>dc=atlassian,dc=private</baseContext>
</ldap>
```

You can use the `verifySslCertificateHostname` setting to verify that the SSL certificate of the LDAP server has the same host as the LDAP connection settings:

```
<ldap key="ldapRepository" name="LDAP Repository@hecate.atlassian.com" cache="true">
    <host>ldap.company.com</host>
    <securityProtocol>ssl</securityProtocol>
    <verifySslCertificateHostname>true</verifySslCertificateHostname>
</ldap>
```

If the verification fails, the following error is returned in the logs:

```
Host verification in the LDAP certificate failed. Check whether the hostname in the LDAP connection settings matches the hostname in the server certificate. To disable the validation, set the `verifySslCertificateHostname` property to 'false' in `atlassian-users.xml`.
```

Host verification works only for LDAPS connections, so the `securityProtocol` setting of the LDAP connection must have an `ssl` value.

3. Please ensure that the following line is also active in your `atlassian-user.xml` (it should be there by default):

```
<hibernate name="Hibernate Repository" key="hibernateRepository" description="Hibernate Repository" />
```

Step 4 — Map LDAP Data Tree

To map the LDAP Data Tree:

1. To configure the mappings in `atlassian-user.xml` for either AD or LDAP, see:
   * Connecting to an LDAP directory
   * Understanding user management in Confluence
2. Check your configuration against the example connection details shown below.
<baseUserNamespace>dc=staff,dc=perftest,dc=atlassian,dc=private</baseUserNamespace>
<baseGroupNamespace>dc=groups,dc=perftest,dc=atlassian,dc=private</baseGroupNamespace>

<usernameAttribute>cn</usernameAttribute>

<userSearchFilter>(objectClass=inetorgperson)</userSearchFilter>

<firstnameAttribute>givenname</firstnameAttribute>

<surnameAttribute>sn</surnameAttribute>

<emailAttribute>mail</emailAttribute>

<membershipAttribute>member</membershipAttribute>

<groupnameAttribute>cn</groupnameAttribute>

<groupSearchFilter>(objectClass=groupOfNames)</groupSearchFilter>

<groupSearchAllDepths>true</groupSearchAllDepths>

<timeToLive>0</timeToLive>

If you want to override these default values, you can specify any or all of them by adding them to the end of the atlassian-user.xml file. For example, to add your own value for the <initSize> setting, you would add an extra line before the </ldap> line shown in 'Stage 3'.
above:

```xml
...<groupNameAttribute>cn</groupNameAttribute>
<groupSearchFilter>(objectClass=groupOfNames)</groupSearchFilter>
<membershipAttribute>member</membershipAttribute>
<initSize>20</initSize>
</ldap>
```

It is important that the connection pool timeout value be set to 0, as this will force Atlassian User (via the JNDI layer) to clean up lingering connections that have lived past one request. For more information about LDAP pools please see [http://java.sun.com/products/jndi/tutorial/ldap/connect/config.html](http://java.sun.com/products/jndi/tutorial/ldap/connect/config.html).

**External User Management**

You cannot manage LDAP accounts or user groups from Bamboo. Bamboo will continue to use local users and groups, even when LDAP is enabled. If you need to assign LDAP users to particular groups referenced by Bamboo (e.g. for permissions or notifications), the workaround is to assign your LDAP users to local Bamboo groups, and reference these groups rather than LDAP groups.

⚠️ Please note that once LDAP has been enabled, *reverting back to local user management is not possible.*

1. Click the **icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.**
2. Select **User Repositories** (under 'Security').
3. Choose **Custom user repository.**
4. Click **Save.**

**Step 1 — Configuring Bamboo for External User Management**

Please ensure that *Read-only External User Management* is turned **OFF** in Bamboo before assigning LDAP users to Bamboo groups. The *Read-only External User Management* check-box in Bamboo controls whether users and groups in Bamboo are editable. Setting this option to **ON** will make users and groups in Bamboo read-only (i.e. the implication being that you will be managing your users and groups externally).

ℹ️ If you are using Crowd together with an LDAP, please read the documentation on *Integrating Bamboo with Crowd* to see our recommended settings for the *Read-only External User Management* check-box.

**To disable Read-only External User Management:**

1. Click the **icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.**
2. Select **Security Settings** (under 'Security') in the left navigation panel.
3. Clear the **Read-only External User Management** check-box.
4. Click **Save.**

**Step 2 — Assigning LDAP Users to Bamboo Groups**

Once Bamboo is started with *’Read-Only External User Management’* disabled, you can assign LDAP users to Bamboo groups. Please see [Changing members of groups](#).

⚠️ Please note, the ‘View Users’ and ‘View Groups’ screens in Bamboo currently will not list all of your LDAP users/groups (please see [BAM -1963](#) for details).

**Delegated LDAP**

Bamboo does not currently support native delegated LDAP functionality, however an LDAP functionality compromise exists if you are an Atlassian Crowd customer:

1. Configure Crowd to use a [Delegated Authentication Directory](#)
2. Configure Crowd for Integration with Bamboo using Crowd as the directory for Bamboo.

Note that when using this approach, users will still be required to log in to Crowd at least once before Bamboo is able to read or authenticate from Crowd.

Find out more about [Atlassian Crowd, licenses and pricing](#), or download a 30 day free trial.

**Caching**

LDAP caching is not enabled by default in Bamboo. To learn more about enabling this type of caching, see [Configuring the caching of your...](#)
LDAP repository.

Notes

- To check whether the atlassian-user.xml file is correctly configured, please run the Paddle tool to debug the LDAP configuration in your atlassian-user.xml file. For further reference, please visit the Paddle usage page.

Configuring the caching of your LDAP repository

The instructions on this page describe how to configure the caching of your LDAP repository.

If you have caching turned on Bamboo will, by default, set the cache to eternal (elements will never expire), and set the maximum number of elements stored to 500. These can be configured to speed up user retrieval, reduce memory usage or reduce the load on the LDAP repository.

On this page:
- Controlling the caching of users
- Configuring the LDAP caches

Related pages:
- Integrating Bamboo with LDAP
- Testing LDAP or Active Directory connectivity with Paddle

Controlling the caching of users

By default, caching is activated for your LDAP users. We recommend that you do not disable caching of your LDAP users, as your LDAP repository may be overloaded by the high volume of requests by Bamboo.

To control the caching of users:

1. Edit the `<bamboo-home>/xml-data/configuration/atlassian-user.xml` file
2. To disable caching, set the property `cache="false"` on your LDAP repository, as shown in the example below:

   ```xml
   <ldap key="myLdapRepository" name="LDAP Repository@hecate.atlassian.com" cache="false">
     <host>hecate.atlassian.com</host>
     <port>389</port>
   </ldap>
   ```

3. To enable caching, set the property `cache="true"` on your LDAP repository as shown in the example below:

   ```xml
   <ldap key="myLdapRepository" name="LDAP Repository@hecate.atlassian.com" cache="true">
     <host>hecate.atlassian.com</host>
     <port>389</port>
   </ldap>
   ```

Configuring the LDAP caches

Bamboo uses a number of caches for managing an LDAP repository, each of which can be configured differently. You must enable caching, as described above, before configuring the caches. The caches used by Bamboo are:

- Configuring caches for users
- Configuring caches for user groups

Each cache can be configured by following the instructions below:

To configure a cache:

2. Find the cache that you wish to edit. Examples of each of the caches are described in the Configuring Caches for Users and Configuring Caches for User Groups sections below.
3. Modify the cache, as desired. The following properties can be configured for each cache:

   - `maxElementsInMemory` (mandatory) - Sets the maximum number of objects that will be created in memory
   - `eternal` (mandatory) - Sets whether elements are eternal. If eternal, timeouts are ignored and the element is never expired.
   - `timeToIdleSeconds` (optional) - Sets the time to idle for an element before it expires. i.e. The maximum amount of time between accesses before an element expires. This is only used if the element is not eternal. A value of 0 means that an Element can idle for infinity. The default value is 0.
   - `timeToLiveSeconds` (optional) - Sets the time to live for an element before it expires i.e. The maximum time between creation time and when an element expires. This is only used if the element is not eternal. A value of 0 means that an Element can live for infinity. The default value is 0.

Configuring caches for users
In each of the examples below, replace `myLdapRepository` with the key of the repository specified in `atlassian-user.xml`

- **LDAPUserManagerReadOnly.*,users**

  `LDAPUserManagerReadOnly.*,users` stores the individual users, if you have difficulties with Bamboo picking up new user additions in the LDAP repository you will need to alter the configuration of this cache. In the example below, the users will expire after 5 minutes.

  ```xml
  <cache
    name="com.atlassian.user.impl.ldap.LDAPUserManagerReadOnly.myLdapRepository.users"
    maxElementsInMemory="500"
    eternal="false"
    timeToIdleSeconds="300"
    timeToLiveSeconds="300"
  />
  ```

- **LDAPUserManagerReadOnly.*,users_ro**

  `LDAPUserManagerReadOnly.*,users_ro` stores whether or not the users are read only. This will have no effect on the functionality of Bamboo, but you may wish to modify this cache for performance and memory tuning purposes.

  ```xml
  <cache
    name="com.atlassian.user.impl.ldap.LDAPUserManagerReadOnly.myLdapRepository.users_ro"
    maxElementsInMemory="500"
    eternal="false"
    timeToIdleSeconds="300"
    timeToLiveSeconds="300"
  />
  ```

- **LDAPUserManagerReadOnly.*,repository**

  `LDAPUserManagerReadOnly.*,repository` stores which repository the user belongs to. Bamboo does not yet support multiple repositories, so modifying this cache will have no effect on functionality. However, you may wish to modify this cache for performance and memory tuning purposes.

  ```xml
  <cache
    name="com.atlassian.user.impl.ldap.LDAPUserManagerReadOnly.myLdapRepository.repository"
    maxElementsInMemory="500"
    eternal="false"
    timeToIdleSeconds="300"
    timeToLiveSeconds="300"
  />
  ```

**Configuring caches for groups**

In each of the examples below, replace `myLdapRepository` with the key of the repository specified in `atlassian-user.xml`

- **LDAPGroupManagerReadOnly.*,groups**

  `LDAPGroupManagerReadOnly.*,groups` stores the available groups in LDAP. If you wish Bamboo to pick up changes made to groups, then you will need to configure this cache appropriately.
LDAPGroupManagerReadOnly.*.groups_hasMembership and LDAPGroupManagerReadOnly.*.groups_getGroupsForUser caches store the associations between users and groups. If you wish Bamboo to pick up changes made to group memberships then you will need to configure these caches appropriately.

LDAPGroupManagerReadOnly.*.repositories stores which repository the group belongs to. Bamboo does not yet support multiple repositories, so modifying this cache will have no effect on functionality. However, you may wish to modify this cache for performance and memory tuning purposes.

Testing LDAP or Active Directory connectivity with Paddle

Paddle is a tool that will test the LDAP or Active Directory settings in your atlassian-user.xml.

Using Paddle

You do not need to have Bamboo running to run this tool. The steps are:

1. Download into a directory where you have permissions to create files.
2. Copy your atlassian-user.xml into that directory - this is found in your .../BAMBOO-HOME/xml-data/configuration/ directory.
3. Run `java -jar paddle-x.x.jar` (where x.x is the version of Paddle you downloaded).

### Parameters

Paddle currently supports the following parameters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>debug</code></td>
<td><code>java -jar paddle-x.x.jar debug</code></td>
<td>Prints DEBUG messages to the console as well as paddle.log.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>limit</code></td>
<td><code>java -jar paddle-x.x.jar limit=100</code></td>
<td>Sets the limit on the number of results returned by user and group queries. Defaults to 10.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sample output

This is an example of a successful run:

```
#############################################################################
# LDAP Support Tool version 1.1
# #############################################################################
# Connection to LDAP/Active Directory Server at ldap://192.168.0.86:389
# SUCCESSFUL.
#-----------------------------------------------------------------
# TEST 1: Search and list 10 users
#-----------------------------------------------------------------
User: CN=Administrator
Member of:
  (1) CN=Schema Admins
  (2) CN=Enterprise Admins
  (3) CN=Domain Admins
  (4) CN=Group Policy Creator Owners

User: CN=Guest
  Does not belong to any LDAP groups.

User: CN=SUPPORT_388945a0
Member of:
  (1) CN=HelpServicesGroup

User: CN=IUSR_MALTSHOVEL
  Does not belong to any LDAP groups.

User: CN=IWAM_MALTSHOVEL
Member of:
  (1) CN=IIS_WPG

User: CN=ASPNET
  Does not belong to any LDAP groups.
```
User: CN=krbtgt
Does not belong to any LDAP groups.

User: CN=John\, Smith
Member of:
(1) CN=Domain Users
(2) CN=Sales and Marketing

User: CN=Matt Ryall
Member of:
(1) CN=Enterprise Admins
(2) CN=Domain Admins

User: CN=Justin Koke
Member of:
(1) CN=Domain Controllers
(2) CN=Enterprise Admins

Found more than 10 results.

-----------------------------------------------------------------
TEST 2: Search and list 10 groups
-----------------------------------------------------------------

Group: CN=HelpServicesGroup
Members:
(1) CN=SUPPORT_388945a0,CN=Users,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com

Group: CN=TelnetClients
No members in this group.

Group: CN=IIS_WPG
Members:
(1) CN=S-1-5-20,CN=ForeignSecurityPrincipals,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com
(2) CN=S-1-5-6,CN=ForeignSecurityPrincipals,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com
(3) CN=S-1-5-18,CN=ForeignSecurityPrincipals,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com
(4) CN=IWAM_MALTSHOVEL,CN=Users,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com

Group: CN=SQLServer2005SQLBrowserUser$MALTSHOVEL
Members:
(1) CN=S-1-5-18,CN=ForeignSecurityPrincipals,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com

Group: CN=SQLServer2005MSSQLServerADHelperUser$MALTSHOVEL
Members:
(1) CN=S-1-5-20,CN=ForeignSecurityPrincipals,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com

Group: CN=SQLServer2005SQLAgentUser$MALTSHOVEL$MSSQLSERVER
Members:
(1) CN=S-1-5-18,CN=ForeignSecurityPrincipals,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com

Group: CN=SQLServer2005MSSQLUser$MALTSHOVEL$MSSQLSERVER
Members:
(1) CN=S-1-5-18,CN=ForeignSecurityPrincipals,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com

Group: CN=SQLServer2005MSFTEUser$MALTSHOVEL$MSSQLSERVER
Members:
(1) CN=S-1-5-18,CN=ForeignSecurityPrincipals,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com
Group: CN=SQLServer2005MSOLAPUser$MALTSHOVEL$MSSQLSERVER
Members:
   (1) CN=S-1-5-18,CN=ForeignSecurityPrincipals,DC=ad,DC=atlassian,DC=com

Group: CN=SQLServer2005NotificationServicesUser$MALTSHOVEL
No members in this group.
Managing permissions

Controlling access to build plans

You can use global permissions to control the users and groups that have access to build plans, and the actions they can perform.

Common global permissions tasks are:

- Granting plan permissions in bulk — control the users and groups that can perform actions on plans (e.g. edit, build, clone).
- Granting global permissions to users or groups — control the users and groups that can create plans, delete plans, and administer Bamboo.
- Allowing anonymous access to Bamboo — allow people not logged in to Bamboo to generate reports, and view plans and build results.

You can also change the permissions for an individual plan: see Configuring a plan's permissions.

Controlling access to the Bamboo server

Global security and permission properties allow a Bamboo system administrator to configure security- and permission-related properties that apply to Bamboo at a site-wide level.

Read more about configuring Bamboo's global security and permission properties:

- Allowing public signup
- Displaying full details about users
- Using Captcha for failed logins
- Granting plan permissions in bulk

A plan permission is the ability to perform a particular operation on a plan and its jobs. For each plan, different permissions can be granted to particular groups and/or users.

- People who have the ‘Admin’ global permission can 'bulk edit' permissions for multiple plans at the same time, as described below.
- People who have the ‘Admin’ plan permission for one or more plans, but do not have the ‘Admin’ global permission, can only edit one plan at a time, as described in Configuring a plan's permissions.

Note that it is recommended that you grant permissions to groups rather than to individual users.

To grant bulk plan permissions to a user or group:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. In the Plans section of left navigation panel, click Bulk Edit Plan Permissions.
3. Select the plans whose permissions you wish to edit, then click Next (at the bottom of the screen).
4. You can set plan permissions for the categories of users in the table below.
5. Select the check box for each permission that you wish to grant to the user or group.
6. Click Save.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User category</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logged in Users</td>
<td>Users who are logged in to Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anonymous Users</td>
<td>Users who are not logged in to Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
User | A user already created in the Bamboo system.  
---|---
To edit plan permissions for an existing user:
1. In the Grant permission to list, select User.  
2. Type the username into the box, or click the icon to select from a list.  
3. Click Add. The user will be added to the list on the screen, and you can then select permissions for them.

Group | A group already created in the Bamboo system.  
---|---
To edit plan permissions for an existing group:
1. In the Grant permission to list, select Group.  
2. Type the group name into the box, or click the icon to select from a list.  
3. Click Add. The group will be added to the list on the screen, and you can then select permissions for the group.

Screenshot: Bulk Edit Plan Permissions Wizard

Granting global permissions to users or groups
Global permissions control which users and groups have access to build plans and the Bamboo server, and what actions they can perform.

Note that if you remove all permissions for a user or group, that user or group will disappear from the Permissions tab for all plans.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Users</th>
<th>View</th>
<th>Edit</th>
<th>Build</th>
<th>Clone</th>
<th>Admin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✗️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logged in users</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✗️</td>
<td>✗️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anonymous users</td>
<td>✗️</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Grant permission to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User</th>
<th>Add</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Permission types
- View: User can view the plan in Bamboo, including its builds.
- Edit: User can view and edit the configuration of the plan and its jobs. This does not include the ability to change a plan's permissions or its stages.
- Build: User can trigger a manual build on the plan, as well as suspending and resuming the plan.
- Clone: User can clone the plan.
- Admin: User can administrate all components of this plan including the stages and the plan's permissions.

Note:
Users with the global 'admin' permission have all of the above permissions for this plan.

To change global permissions:
1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Global Permissions in the left navigation panel, and then Edit Global Permissions.
3. You can set plan permissions for the categories of users in the table below.
4. Select (or clear) the check box for each permission that you wish to change for a user or group.
5. Click Save.

Related pages:
- Configuring a plan's permissions
- Managing users
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User category</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logged in Users</td>
<td>Users who are logged in to Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anonymous Users</td>
<td>Users who are not logged in to Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>A user already created in the Bamboo system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To edit plan permissions for an existing user:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. In the <strong>Grant permission to</strong> list, select <strong>User</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Type the username into the box, or click the icon to select from a list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Click <strong>Add</strong>. The user will be added to the list on the screen, and you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>can then select permissions for them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
<td>A group already created in the Bamboo system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To edit plan permissions for an existing group:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. In the <strong>Grant permission to</strong> list, select <strong>Group</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Type the group name into the box, or click the icon to select from a list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Click <strong>Add</strong>. The group will be added to the list on the screen, and you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>can then select permissions for the group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can grant the following global permissions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Global permission</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Can be granted to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access</td>
<td>Permission to view the Bamboo system.</td>
<td>• a particular user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The ability to view build plans and build results is subject to individual</td>
<td>• a particular group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plan permissions.</td>
<td>• all logged-in users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• anonymous users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Plan</td>
<td>Permission to:</td>
<td>• a particular user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• create new build plans</td>
<td>• a particular group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• configure linked repositories</td>
<td>• all logged-in users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create repository</td>
<td>Permission to:</td>
<td>• a particular user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• create new repositories</td>
<td>• a particular group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Only users with Admin permissions on the global level can create repositories</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by default. Plan administrators can only select from linked repositories or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>must be granted the Create repository permission explicitly. See also:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plan permissions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin</td>
<td>Permission to:</td>
<td>• a particular user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• access the Bamboo Administration menu</td>
<td>• a particular group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• create plans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• delete plans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• configure linked repositories</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The 'Admin' global permission also includes all plan permissions, for every</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Screenshot: Global Permissions**
Global permissions

You can edit your global application level permissions here. Permissions can be granted to specific users or groups. Please note these are global application permissions. For plan level permissions, please go to the plan configuration page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Access</th>
<th>Create</th>
<th>Create</th>
<th>Admin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo-admin</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Access</td>
<td>Create</td>
<td>Create</td>
<td>Admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All logged in users</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anonymous users</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Allowing anonymous access to Bamboo

Allowing anonymous users to access your Bamboo system means that people who aren't logged in to Bamboo will be able to perform functions such as generating reports, and viewing plans and build results — subject to individual plan permissions.

Note that people who aren't logged in to Bamboo do not have a 'My Bamboo' tab on their Dashboard.

To allow anonymous users to access Bamboo:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Global permissions (under 'Security'), and then Edit Global Permissions.
3. Check in the Access column for 'Anonymous users'.
4. Click Save.

Anonymous users will now be able to access your Bamboo system. However, they will only be able to view plans and build results for plans where the 'Access' plan permission has been granted to 'Anonymous users'.

Allowing public signup

If you enable signup for your Bamboo system, visitors can create their own Bamboo user accounts. Public signup is enabled on your Bamboo site if you see the 'Signup' link at the top-right of the Bamboo user interface.

To enable (or disable) signup:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Security Settings (under 'Security') in the left navigation panel to open the 'Global Security and Permission Properties' page.
3. Click Edit on this page.
4. Select, (or clear) the Enable Signup? check box.
5. Select Enable Captcha On Signup if you require an additional security measure to prevent brute force attacks.
6. Click Save.
7. Log out of Bamboo and verify that the top menu bar now contains (or does not contain) a Signup link.
Displaying full details about users

If you enable the display of contact details on your Bamboo system, the full contact details for all users, including email address, IM address, and group membership, will be visible to any visitors to Bamboo. The email addresses of administrators on the 'Contact Administrators' page will also be visible.

To enable (or disable) the display of contact details:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Security Settings (under 'Security') in the left navigation panel to open the 'Global Security and Permission Properties' page.
3. Click Edit on this page.
4. Select (or clear) the Enable contact details to be displayed? check box.
5. Click Save.

Using Captcha for failed logins

Captcha is a tool that prevents brute force attacks on the Bamboo login screen. A brute force attack occurs when an attacker uses malicious code to make automated, repeated login attempts on a Bamboo site with the aim of gaining access to that Bamboo site.

A Bamboo system administrator can configure Bamboo to block automated login attempts. Once a certain number of failed login attempts has been reached (the default is three) Bamboo’s Captcha feature will be activated. When Captcha is activated, users will need to recognize a distorted picture of a word and must type the word into a text field. This is easy for humans to do, but very difficult for computers.

To enable (or disable) Captcha for Bamboo:
1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Security Settings (under 'Security') in the left navigation panel to open the 'Global Security and Permission Properties' page.
3. Click Edit on this page.
4. Select (or clear) the Enable Captcha check box.
5. If required, specify the number of failed login attempts permitted by Bamboo before Captcha is activated. (This field is mandatory and requires a value of 1 or more.)
6. Click Save.

Managing authors

An author is any person who contributes to a build by checking-in code to a repository that is associated with a Bamboo plan. Bamboo extracts the author name from the code repository; an author need not be a Bamboo user.

Bamboo allows you to associate an author with a user. Association is with either the username or email address, and can be automatically or manually configured. This is useful for identifying who has made a particular commit, providing system notifications and apportioning blame. Author association also allows a user to quickly identify their commits on the MyBamboo tab.

On this page:
- To manage Bamboo authors
- To associate an author with a user
- To disassociate an author with a user

Related pages:
- Managing permissions
- Associating your author name with your user profile

To manage Bamboo authors

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Select Authors from the side panel. The Manage Authors screen will display:
Manage authors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author name</th>
<th>Email</th>
<th>Linked user</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mschreck</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unlink user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Adrien Ragot&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Link with user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Chris Fuller&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Link with user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[unknown]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Link with user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aatkins</td>
<td>aatkins</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unlink user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhalla</td>
<td>abhalla</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unlink user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abutfield</td>
<td>abutfield</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unlink user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adam Jakubowski</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ajakubowski@atlassian.com">ajakubowski@atlassian.com</a></td>
<td>ajakubowski</td>
<td>Unlink user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adam Jakubowski <a href="mailto:ajakubowski@atlassian.com">ajakubowski@atlassian.com</a></td>
<td><a href="mailto:ajakubowski@atlassian.com">ajakubowski@atlassian.com</a></td>
<td>ajakubowski</td>
<td>Unlink user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adeccio</td>
<td>adeccio</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unlink user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Link with user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator <a href="mailto:Administrator@csipl">Administrator@csipl</a></td>
<td>Administrator@csipl</td>
<td></td>
<td>Link with user</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. On the 'Manage Authors' page you can perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search for author</td>
<td>Search for a particular author using their repository author name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search for user</td>
<td>Search for a particular author by their linked user name to see their author association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link user</td>
<td>Link an author with their Bamboo user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlink user</td>
<td>Unlink an author from their Bamboo user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlink all authors</td>
<td>Remove all existing author and user associations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-link unlinked authors</td>
<td>Automatically associate any unlinked authors with a Bamboo user based on their Bamboo username or Email address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To associate an author with a user

1. From the Manage Authors screen, use the search tool to locate the author in question
2. Select the unlinked author and click **Link with user**
3. Enter the user's name in the field, or use the drop down menu to select a user:

![Link with user](image)

4. Click **Add**

**Note:** You can link more than one author name to a Bamboo user name.

To disassociate an author with a user

1. From the Manage Authors screen, use the search tool to locate the author or username in question
2. Click **Unlink user**

**Connecting Bamboo to an external database**

**Before you begin**

Please note: if you are already using Bamboo with the embedded HSQL database (or any other database), and you want to keep
Bamboo can be connected to an external database. For details and instructions please see:

- PostgreSQL
- MySQL
- Tomcat and External MySQL Datasource Example
- Oracle
- Microsoft SQL Server
- Viewing your database connection details
- Moving your Bamboo data to a different database
- Troubleshooting Databases

PostgreSQL
This page describes how to connect Bamboo to a PostgreSQL database.

Note that the JDBC driver for PostgreSQL is bundled with Bamboo. You do not have to download and install the driver.

See Supported platforms for other information about the versions of PostgreSQL supported by Bamboo.

On this page:

1. Configuring PostgreSQL
2. Connecting Bamboo to PostgreSQL

Related pages:
- Troubleshooting Databases

1. Configuring PostgreSQL

Accept remote TCP connections (remote PostgreSQL server only)

If you are connecting Bamboo to a remote PostgreSQL server (i.e. if your PostgreSQL server is not installed locally on your Bamboo server host system), you will need to configure your data/postgresql.conf and data/pg_hba.conf files to accept remote TCP connections from your Bamboo server’s IP address.

The following PostgreSQL documentation contains information on the appropriate listen_addresses value in the postgresql.conf file as well as the pg_hba.conf file:

- PostgreSQL 8.2 documentation — Connections and Authentication

Once you have modified your data/postgresql.conf and data/pg_hba.conf files, you will need to restart PostgreSQL for your changes to take effect.

Creating a Bamboo database

```
sudo -s -H -u postgres
# Create the Bamboo user:
/opt/PostgreSQL/8.3/bin/createuser -S -d -r -P bamboouser
# Create the bamboo database:
/opt/PostgreSQL/8.3/bin/createdb -O bamboouser bamboo
exit
```

Creating a completely empty Bamboo database is recommended. Avoid using templates to create the database as some may insert default tables which can lead to conflicts when setting up Bamboo.

2. Connecting Bamboo to PostgreSQL

Bamboo provides two ways to connect to a PostgreSQL database — using JDBC or using a datasource. JDBC is generally simpler and is the recommended method.

Run the Setup wizard

For both methods, run the Setup Wizard and choose the Custom Installation option.
On the 'Choose a Database Configuration' page, choose External Database, select PostgreSQL 8.2 and above from the list and click Continue.

Choose one of the following:

Connecting using JDBC

On the 'Database Configuration' page of the Setup Wizard, ensure that Direct JDBC connection has been selected and make the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Driver Class Name</td>
<td>Type org.postgresql.Driver (if different from the default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver Class Name</td>
<td>Type the URL where Bamboo will access your database (if different from the default). For details about syntax, please refer to the Postgres JDBC driver documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Name</td>
<td>Type the username that Bamboo will use to access your database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Type the password (if required) that Bamboo will use to access your database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overwrite existing data</td>
<td>Select if you wish Bamboo to overwrite any tables that already exist in the database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Screenshot 1: Setup JDBC Connection (PostgreSQL)

Database Configuration

Choose how you wish Bamboo to connect to your database

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select Database Connection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Connecting with a datasource

Configure a datasource in your application server (consult your application server documentation for details).

*For details about the syntax to use for the JDBC database URL, please see the Postgres JDBC driver documentation.*

On the 'Database Configuration' page of the Setup Wizard, choose Connect via a datasource (configured in the application server) and make the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JNDI name</td>
<td>Type the JNDI name of your datasource, as configured in your application server. <strong>⚠️</strong> If java:comp/env/jdbc/DataSourceName does not work, try jdbc/DataSourceName (and vice versa).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overwrite existing data</td>
<td>Select if you wish Bamboo to overwrite any tables that already exist in the database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MySQL
This page describes how to connect Bamboo to a MySQL database.

On this page:

1. Creating and Configuring the MySQL database
2. Connecting Bamboo to the MySQL database
   Connect using JDBC
   Connect using a datasource

Related pages:
Troubleshooting Databases

The JDBC driver for MySQL 5.1 (JDBC Connector/J 5.1) is no longer bundled with Bamboo. You must download and install the driver yourself.

See Supported platforms for other information about the versions of MySQL supported by Bamboo.

1. Creating and Configuring the MySQL database

To connect Bamboo to an external MySQL database, you must first create and configure it. This database must be configured to use:

- utf8 character set encoding, instead of latin1
- utf8_bin collation
- the InnoDB storage engine
- (recommended, not required) lower_case_table_names=1

Setting lower_case_table_names=1 might break other Atlassian applications. For more information, see the steps.

- global transaction isolation level as READ_COMMITTED

If your MySQL database server is configured to use a storage engine other than InnoDB by default (such as MyISAM), then if possible change it to use InnoDB. Otherwise, you can configure Bamboo's JDBC connection to your MySQL database so that any tables which Bamboo creates in this database will be done using the InnoDB database engine.

A MySQL database administrator can easily create and configure a MySQL database for Bamboo by running the following MySQL commands:
This creates an empty MySQL database for Bamboo named **bamboo**, where:

- **bamboouser** — the user account name for the Bamboo MySQL database
- **localhost** — the host name of the MySQL database server
- **password** — the password for this user account

**With Bamboo 5.14, we’re dropping the lowercase table names requirement for the external database configuration introduced in Bamboo 5.13**

### See See Bamboo 5.13 Release Notes

However, we still **recommend** setting `lower_case_table_names=1`

**Important**

Changing the value of the `lower_case_table_names` parameter requires an export/import of all MySQL databases, and might affect functionality of other applications that use the same MySQL installation.

To change the value of the `lower_case_table_names` parameter:

1. Create a database dump for every database in your MySQL server:
   
   ```
   mysql> CREATE DATABASE bamboo CHARACTER SET utf8 COLLATE utf8_bin;
   mysql> GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON bamboo.* TO 'bamboouser'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
   mysql> FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
   mysql> QUIT
   ```

   This creates an empty MySQL database for Bamboo named **bamboo**, where:
   
   - **bamboouser** — the user account name for the Bamboo MySQL database
   - **localhost** — the host name of the MySQL database server
   - **password** — the password for this user account

   More information can be found in the MySQL documentation.

   For more information about configuring character set encoding and collation for Bamboo MySQL databases, refer to the MySQL 5 documentation — Specifying Character Sets and Collations.

2. Connecting Bamboo to the MySQL database

Bamboo provides two ways to connect to a MySQL database — by using either JDBC or a datasource. JDBC is generally simpler and is the recommended method.

**Connect using JDBC**

1. **Download and install the JDBC driver**

   The JDBC drivers for MySQL Enterprise Server are **no longer** bundled with Bamboo (due to licensing restrictions). You need to download and install the driver yourself.

   1. Download the MySQL Connector/J JDBC driver from the [download site](#).
   2. Expand the downloaded zip/tar.gz file.
   3. Copy the `mysql-connector-java-5.1.XX-bin.jar` file from the extracted directory to the `<Bamboo installation directory>/lib` directory (create the `lib` directory if it doesn’t already exist). If you are using the Java Service Wrapper to start your Bamboo instance (`Bamboo/wrapper/run-bamboo start`), copy the `mysql-connector-java-5.1.XX-bin.jar` file to `<Bamboo installation directory>/lib`.

   More information can be found in the [MySQL documentation](#).
2. Connect Bamboo to a MySQL database using JDBC

1. Run the Setup Wizard and choose the Custom Installation method.
2. On the 'Choose a Database Configuration' page, choose External Database > MySQL 5.1 and click Continue.
3. Ensure that Direct JDBC connection is selected and complete the following fields (as shown in the screenshot below):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Driver Class Name</th>
<th>Type com.mysql.jdbc.Driver (if different from the default).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Database URL</td>
<td>Type the URL where Bamboo will access your database (if different from the default). Your URL must include the autoReconnect=true flag. If your MySQL database server is configured to use a storage engine other than InnoDB by default, ensure that your URL includes the useUnicode=true and characterEncoding=utf8 flags. If you include all of these flags, your Database URL should look similar to: jdbc:mysql://localhost/bamboo?autoReconnect=true&amp;useUnicode=true&amp;characterEncoding=utf8 &amp;sessionVariables=storage_engine=InnoDB. If the autoReconnect=true flag is not specified, the MySQL JDBC driver will eventually time out and Bamboo will no longer be able to communicate with the database. For more information on the URL syntax, see the MySQL documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Name</td>
<td>Type the username that Bamboo will use to access your database. This is bamboouser defined in section 1 (above).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Type the password (if required) that Bamboo will use to access your database. This is password defined in section 1 (database user account was not specified).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select Overwrite existing data if you wish Bamboo to overwrite any tables that already exist in the database.
5. Click Continue.
Connect using a datasource

1. Configure a datasource in your application server (consult your application server documentation for details). Please note the following:
   - Ensure that the JDBC URL which you configure in your application server includes the `autoReconnect=true, useUnicode=true, characterEncoding=utf8` flags, such that your database URL should look similar to: `jdbc:mysql://localhost/bamboo?autoReconnect=true&useUnicode=true&characterEncoding=utf8`
   - If your MySQL database server is configured to use a storage engine other than InnoDB by default, also include the `sessionVariables=storage_engine=InnoDB` flag in this URL.
   - If the `autoReconnect` flag is not set, the MySQL JDBC driver will eventually time out, and Bamboo will no longer be able to communicate with the database.
   - If you plan to use non-Latin characters, you will also need to add `&useUnicode=true&characterEncoding=utf8` on the end of the above URL. These options are not required for any database other than MySQL.

2. Run the Setup Wizard and choose the Custom Installation method.
3. Choose External Database > MySQL 5.1 from the list and click Continue.
4. Choose Connect via a datasource (configured in the application server) (as shown in the screenshot below).
5. In the JNDI name field, type the JNDI name of your datasource, as configured in your application server.
6. Select Overwrite existing data if you wish Bamboo to overwrite any existing tables that may exist in the database.
7. Click Continue.

Screenshot 2: Setup Datasource Connection
Tomcat and External MySQL Datasource Example

Add the DataSource Resource tag inside the Context tags of your context descriptor in the server.xml file located under <bamboo-installation-directory>/conf:

```xml
<Context .... >
<Resource name="jdbc/bamboo" auth="Container"
type="javax.sql.DataSource"
    username="yourusername"
    password="yourpassword"
    driverClassName="com.mysql.jdbc.Driver"
    url="jdbc:mysql://localhost:3306/bamboo?autoReconnect=true"
    maxActive="100"
    maxIdle="7"
    validationQuery="Select 1" />
</Context>
```

Oracle

This page describes how to connect Bamboo to an Oracle database.

Bamboo provides two ways to connect to an Oracle database — using JDBC or using a datasource. JDBC is generally simpler and is the recommended method.

See Supported platforms for other information about the versions of Oracle supported by Bamboo.

On this page:
- Configuring Oracle
- Connecting using JDBC
- Connecting using a datasource

Important

- For JDBC or JNDI connections, please ensure that the user connecting to the database will have total permissions over it. This includes DBMS_LOB package and other resources available.

Related pages:
- Troubleshooting Databases

Configuring Oracle
1. Ensure that you have a database instance available for Bamboo (either create a new one or use an existing one).
2. Within that database instance, create a user which Bamboo will connect as (e.g. `bamboo-user`). Remember this database user name, as it will be used to configure Bamboo's connection to this database.

   When you create a user in Oracle, Oracle will create a 'schema' automatically.

   ```sql
   create user bamboo-user identified by password;
   ```

3. Ensure that the user has the following permissions:

   ```sql
   grant connect, resource, create table to bamboo-user;
   ```

Connecting using JDBC

1. Run the Setup Wizard and choose the Custom Installation method.
2. At the 'Choose a Database Configuration' step, choose External Database > Oracle.
3. Select Direct JDBC connection and complete the form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Driver Class Name</td>
<td>Type: <code>oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database URL</td>
<td>Type the URL where Bamboo will access your database, e.g. <code>jdbc:oracle:thin:@localhost:1521:SID</code>. For syntax, please see the Oracle documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>Type the username that Bamboo will use to access your database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Type the password that Bamboo will use to access your database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select Overwrite existing data if you wish Bamboo to overwrite any tables that already exist in the database.
5. Click Continue.

   **Screenshot: Setup JDBC Connection (Oracle)**

Connecting using a datasource

1. Configure a datasource in your application server (consult your application server documentation for details). For the syntax of the JDBC URL to use, please see the Oracle documentation.
2. Run the Setup Wizard and choose the Custom Installation method.
3. At the 'Choose a Database Configuration' step, choose External Database > Oracle.
4. Select Connect using a datasource (configured in the application server).
5. In the JNDI name field, type the JNDI name of your datasource, as configured in your application server.
   - If `java:comp/env/jdbc/DataSourceName` doesn't work, try `jdbc/DataSourceName` (and vice versa).
6. Select Overwrite existing data if you wish Bamboo to overwrite any tables that already exist in the database.
7. Click Continue.

   **Screenshot Setup Datasource Connection**
Microsoft SQL Server
This page describes how to connect Bamboo to a Microsoft SQL Server database.

See Supported platforms for other information about the versions of SQL Server supported by Bamboo.

Note that the JDBC driver for SQL Server is bundled with Bamboo. You do not have to download and install the driver.

On this page:

1. Configuring SQL Server
2. Creating your database
3. Connecting Bamboo to SQL Server
   - Connect to SQL Server using JDBC
   - Connect to SQL Server using a datasource

Related pages:
- Installing and upgrading
- Connecting Bamboo to an external database
- Troubleshooting Databases

1. Configuring SQL Server

Before you connect Bamboo to a SQL Server, you need to configure SQL Server appropriately.

- **Change server authentication to 'SQL Server and Windows Authentication mode'** — On a typical SQL Server installation, Windows Authentication mode is the default security mode. However, if you try to connect to the database with a database user using this authentication mode, SQL Server will throw an error. You need to change the server authentication mode to SQL Server and Windows Authentication mode in SQL Server before you can connect Bamboo to SQL Server. Please see this MSDN article for instructions on how to do this.

  *Screenshot: Changing the SQL Server authentication mode*
Configure your firewall to allow SQL Server access — If you need to access SQL server through a firewall, you will need to configure your firewall appropriately. The following MSDN article describes how to configure a Windows firewall to allow SQL Server access, however the instructions are applicable to other firewalls: Configuring the Windows Firewall to Allow SQL Server Access.

Enable the TCP/IP protocol for your database instance — You must enable the TCP/IP protocol for your SQL Server database instance by following the instructions in this MSDN article.

2. Creating your database

After configuring the SQL Server, you need to create the SQL database.

Create the database for Bamboo — see this MSDN article for instructions.

Assign the 'db-owner' role on the database for the user that will access the Bamboo database — the 'db_owner' fixed database role allows the user to perform all configuration and maintenance activities on the database. You need to add this role to the Bamboo user used to access your database by updating the login properties for your database user in SQL Server. Read more about login properties for SQL Server.

Screenshot: Adding the 'db_owner' database role to a database user in SQL Server
Please ensure that you use a SQL Server user account to log into your database, not a Windows user account.

- **Configure the database to use case-sensitive collation** — to make the SQL Server database respect case differences in the data it stores (which is required for Bamboo), ensure that you configure it using a case-sensitive collation option such as 'Latin1_General_CS_AS'. To access this feature in SQL Server Management Studio, right-click on the database name, select **Properties** from the resulting menu, then select the **Options** page.

*Screenshot: Configuring the Bamboo database to use 'Latin1_General_CS_AS' collation*
1. Configure the database to use the correct isolation level— Ensure that the new database was set to use Read Committed with Row Versioning as its isolation level. You can apply the new isolation by executing the following query:

```
ALTER DATABASE <database name>
    SET READ_COMMITTED_SNAPSHOT ON
    WITH ROLLBACK IMMEDIATE;
```

To verify the changes, use this query which should result in '1':

```
SELECT sd.is_read_committed_snapshot_on
FROM sys.databases AS sd
WHERE sd.[name] = '<database name>';```

3. Connecting Bamboo to SQL Server

Bamboo provides two ways to connect to a Microsoft SQL Server database — using JDBC or using a datasource. JDBC is generally simpler and is the recommended method.

**Connect to SQL Server using JBDC**

1. Run the Setup Wizard and choose the Custom Installation method.
2. On the Choose a Database Configuration page, choose External Database > Microsoft SQL Server and click Continue.
3. Ensure that Direct JDBC connection has been selected and complete the following fields (as shown in the screenshot below):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Driver Class Name</th>
<th>Type net.sourceforge.jtds.jdbc.Driver (if different from the default)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Database URL</td>
<td>The URL where Bamboo will access your database, e.g. jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://localhost:1433/&lt;database&gt;. If you are connecting to a Named Instance, you will need to append instance=mssqlnamehere to the connection string, where mssqlnamehere is the name of your named instance. For more details about syntax, please refer to the Microsoft SQL Server documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>The username that Bamboo will use to access your database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password that Bamboo will use to access your database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select **Overwrite existing data** if you wish Bamboo to overwrite any tables that already exist in the database.
5. Click **Continue**.

**Screenshot: Set Up JDBC Connection SQL Server 2005/2008**

---

**Database Configuration**

**Choose how you wish Bamboo to connect to your database**

**Select Database Connection**

- **Driver Class Name:** net.sourceforge.jtds.jdbc.Driver
- **Database URL:** jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://localhost:1433/<database>
- **Username:**
- **Password:**

**Connect to SQL Server using a datasource**

1. Configure a datasource in your application server (consult your application server documentation for details).
2. Run the **Setup Wizard** and choose the **Custom Installation** method.
3. On the 'Choose a Database Configuration' page, choose **External Database > Microsoft SQL Server 2005/2008** and click **Continue**.
4. Choose **Connect via a datasource** (configured in the application server), as shown in the screenshot below.
5. In the **JNDI name** field, type the JNDI name of your datasource, as configured in your application server.
   - If java:comp/env/jdbc/DataSourceName does not work, try jdbc/DataSourceName (and vice versa).
6. Select **Overwrite existing data** if you wish Bamboo to overwrite any tables that already exist in the database.
7. Click **Continue**.

**Screenshot: Set up Datasource Connection**
Viewing your database connection details
When you installed Bamboo, you would have set up a database connection by following one of these processes:

Once Bamboo is running, you can view the database configuration details as follows.

**To view your database connection details:**

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Database Configuration** in the left navigation column, under 'System'.

Moving your Bamboo data to a different database
You can move data to a different database by installing a new Bamboo instance and updating the settings. Alternatively, if the database systems are the same or compatible, you can move the data manually.

In the initial Bamboo configuration, the database can be set to:

- an internal HSQL database (not recommended for production environments) OR
- an external database.
To move your Bamboo data to a different database:

1. Export the data of the original Bamboo instance as described in Exporting data for backup.
2. Stop the original Bamboo instance.

You may have to disable automatic Bamboo start if the instance was configured to run as, for example, a Windows service.

3. Install a new Bamboo instance as described in Installing and upgrading Bamboo.

**Important**
If you are installing a Bamboo instance on the same server, make sure that the new Bamboo instance doesn't have the same

<bamboo-install> or <bamboo-home> paths as the original Bamboo instance. Using the same paths may result in data loss. For more information, see Locating important directories and files.

4. Start the new Bamboo instance.
5. In the Setup Wizard:

   **Step 1**
   Make sure that the new Configuration Directory, Build Data Directory and Build Working Directory are not located in the same place as the original Bamboo instance directories.

   **Step 2**
   Select a new database:
   - PostgreSQL
   - MySQL
   - Tomcat and External MySQL Datasource Example
   - Oracle
   - Microsoft SQL Server
   - Viewing your database connection details
   - Moving your Bamboo data to a different database

   **Step 3**
   Select Import existing data and specify the path to the file that you exported at the beginning of the procedure.

   The data import might take a while.

6. Once the data is ready, restart the new Bamboo instance.
7. Reindex the data as described in Reindexing data.
8. Verify that your build results and system settings are correct.

**Alternative DB migration**

If the database systems are:

- the same (for example, you are moving from PostgreSQL to another PostgreSQL) OR
- compatible (for example, you are moving from SQL Server 2005 to SQL Server 2008),

you can move the data manually. To migrate the data:

1. Stop the Bamboo instance that is using the source database.
2. Manually transfer the data.
3. Go to <bamboo-home> and open the bamboo.cfg.xml file.
4. Provide the properties of the new database.
5. Start the Bamboo instance.

**Add-ons**

An add-on is an installable component that supplements or enhances the functionality of Bamboo in some way. For example, the JIRA Bamboo Plugin is an add-on that integrates JIRA and Bamboo. Other add-ons are available for integrating Bamboo into the Visual Studio IDE, running arbitrary commands before or after builds, and accessing Atlassian support from the Bamboo interface.

Bamboo comes with many pre-installed add-ons (called system add-ons). You can install more add-ons, either by acquiring the add-on from the Atlassian Marketplace or by uploading it from your file system. This means that you can install add-ons that you have developed yourself.

For information about developing your own add-ons for Bamboo, see the Bamboo Developer documentation.

**On this page:**
- About the Universal Plugin Manager (UPM)
- Administering Add-ons in Bamboo
About the Universal Plugin Manager (UPM)

You administer add-ons for Bamboo using the Universal Plugin Manager (UPM). The UPM is itself an add-on that exposes add-on administration pages in the Bamboo Administration Console. UPM works across Atlassian applications, providing a consistent interface for administering add-ons in Bamboo, JIRA, Confluence, Crucible, Fisheye or Bitbucket.

UPM comes pre-installed in recent versions of all Atlassian applications, so you do not normally need to install it yourself. However, like other add-ons, the UPM software is subject to regular software updates. Before administering add-ons in Bamboo, therefore, you should verify your version of the UPM and update it if needed.

Administering Add-ons in Bamboo

You can update UPM, or any add-on, from the UPM's own add-on administration pages. Additionally, you can perform these tasks from the UPM administration pages:

- Install or remove add-ons
- Configure add-on settings
- Discover and install new add-ons from the Atlassian Marketplace
- Enable or disable add-ons and their component modules

For information on performing these add-on administration tasks, see the Universal Plugin Manager documentation.

For add-on information specific to Bamboo, see these pages:

- Add-on blacklist
- Enabling the Clover add-on

Add-on blacklist

Outdated add-ons may break certain functionality in Bamboo. If Bamboo detects the presence of a non-working add-on it will print a warning to its logs during startup and ask you to refer to this page.

For more information about why Bamboo printed a particular warning, please refer to a section below that is relevant to the add-on in question.

Experimental Bamboo Git Plugin

Since version 3.0, Bamboo is distributed with a fully supported version of the Bamboo Git Plugin.

The experimental Bamboo Git Plugin that was available before Bamboo 3.0 (and was not distributed with Bamboo) does not work with Bamboo 3.0 and later.

If you were using the experimental Bamboo Git Plugin, please remove the add-on from your Bamboo installation, and manually reconfigure each plan that was using it to use the Bamboo Git Plugin that is distributed with Bamboo.

Enabling the Clover add-on

This page describes how to enable and configure Atlassian's Clover add-on for a job in Bamboo.

When Bamboo is integrated with Clover, you can:

- View code-coverage details (i.e. the percentage of code covered by tests) for each build result
- View code-coverage trends for a job over a period of time
- View the code-coverage summary for the job.

On this page:

- Enable the Clover add-on
- Automatic Clover integration
- Manual Clover integration
- Browsing Clover results
- Limit the machines that Clover runs on
- Troubleshooting
Enable the Clover add-on

1. Navigate to the desired job, as described on Configuring jobs.
2. Choose Actions > Configure Job.
3. Click the Miscellaneous tab.
4. Select Use Clover to collect Code Coverage for this build and set the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Automatically integrate Clover into this build</td>
<td>You will need to provide a Clover license, unless this has been configured globally in the Administration panel (Administration &gt; Plugins &gt; Clover Plugin).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Generate a Clover Historical Report</td>
<td>Displays the current coverage results compared with previous Clover code coverage reports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Generate a JSON report</td>
<td>Provides the Clover results in a format ready for embedding into applications or external report views.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Use plan-defined Clover license key</td>
<td>Override the global Clover license for this particular plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clover is already integrated into this build</td>
<td>Use this option when you already have Clover-for-Ant, Clover-for-Maven or another Clover integration configured to generate a report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Clover XML Location</td>
<td>Specify the location where Bamboo will look for the XML report file from Clover. Please specify the file path relative to your plan's root directory (e.g. /home/bamboouser/bamboo-home/xml-data/build-dir/MY_PLAN/), i.e. do not specify an absolute path.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
target/site/clover/clover.xml
```

Screenshot: Settings to enable Clover for a job:
Would you like to view Clover Code Coverage for this plan?

- Use Clover to collect Code Coverage for this build.

Clove is a code coverage tool reporting how well tested your code is and also highlights parts of code that require more testing. For more information visit Atlassian Clover or view the online documentation.

Attention: as Clover modifies your classes, ensure that you will not publish them to production - more details here.

Integration Options

- Automatically integrate Clover into this build.
- Clover is already integrated into this build and a clover.xml file will be produced.
- Generate a Clover Historical Report

Inclue coverage trends and class movers in the Clover HTML report. More info.

(Will only work consistently if this plan is run on a single agent and no clean checkout is performed.)

- Generate a JSON report

JSON makes it very easy to integrate Clover data into a webpage. Learn how.

Global Clover license has been configured in administration panel. To override use option below:

- Use plan-defined Clover license key

Override globally defined Clover license and provide dedicated license for this plan.

As Clover integration (automatic and manual) produces instrumented classes, we recommend that you ensure that your job does not install them to production (for instance: 'mvn deploy' to public repository, 'scp' to an application server running on production, etc ...). Having instrumented code in such locations is usually not desired.

Common practices to ensure proper separation of instrumented and non-instrumented classes are:

- create a dedicated plan or job with Clover integration enabled
- enable automatic Clover integration for jobs running tests only (e.g. "mvn verify")
- use different location of local artifact cache if you need to install artifacts (e.g. ~/.m2/repository-clover and "mvn install")
- use different URL for uploading artifacts if necessary (e.g. a separate repository for "mvn deploy")

Automatic Clover integration

Automatic integration works with Ant, Maven 2.x, Maven 3.x and Grails tasks:

1. Check Use Clover to collect Code Coverage for this build in the Clover Code Coverage settings.
2. Select Automatically integrate Clover into this build.
3. Enter the global license key for Clover (go to Administration > Plugins > Clover Plugin), or enable Use plan-defined Clover license key and paste the key into the text field that appears.

Additionally, you can:

- Select Generate a Clover Historical Report to compare the current coverage results with previous Clover code coverage reports.
- Select Generate a JSON report to get the Clover results in a format ready for embedding into applications or external report views.

Behavior of automatic integration has changed in Bamboo 5.9

Automatic Clover integration for Maven 2 and Maven 3 tasks has been improved in Bamboo 5.9. It became tighter and now it adds Clover goals between goals from the original command in such way that a build is performed only once. It does not run "clean" and "verify" separately anymore. Thanks to this, builds with automatic Clover integration may be as twice as fast.

In order to protect you against publishing instrumented code, automatic Clover integration will not run if the Maven task runs the "i nstall" or "deploy" phases. In such case, you will find no Clover report and a build log will contain an appropriate warning message. In order to get coverage reports for such job, either edit the Maven task to run the build till the "verify" phase (or earlier) or configure Clover manually.

Automatic Clover integration before Bamboo 5.9 was adding Clover goals at the end of the original Maven command. As a consequence, build was performed twice (first - original goals/phases, next - with Clover enabled and the "verify" phase), which had it's advantages (better, but not full, separation of instrumented and non-instrumented code) and drawbacks (build times as twice as long, problems with artifact dependencies in maven-surefire-plugin or maven-assembly-plugin as described in BAM-13208).

What happens during automatic integration...
When automatic Clover integration is enabled, Bamboo:

- Creates an artifact named **Clover Report (System)**, which is visible on the 'Artifacts' tab for the job.
- and during every build:
  - Extracts the Clover license (either the global or plan license key) into a temporary file and passes it to:
    - an Ant task as `-Dclover.license.path=/<bamboo-home>/xml-data/build-dir/<your-job>/clover/clover.license`
    - a Maven task as `-Dmaven.clover.licenseLocation=/<bamboo-home>/xml-data/build-dir/<your-job>/clover/clover.license`
  - Enhances tasks by adding
    - Ant - targets like "with.clover", "clover:report"
    - Maven - goals like "clover2:setup", "clover2:aggregate", "clover2:clover", "clover2:save-history"; it also adds "verify" phase if original command does not call "compile" or later phase
    - Grails - options like "-clover.on"
  - Generates Clover XML and HTML reports (by default)
  - Generates statistics and charts for a plan summary

### Manual Clover integration

Manual Clover integration works with any kind of task in which Clover can be called (Ant, Maven 2.x, Maven 3.x, Command, Grails).

1. Check **Use Clover to collect Code Coverage for this build**, in the Clover Code Coverage settings.
2. Check **Clover is already integrated into this build** ...
3. Specify in **Clover XML Location** where Bamboo will look for the XML report file generated by Clover.
4. On the 'Artifacts' tab, click **Create Definition** and complete the form as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>This should begin with &quot;Clover Report&quot;.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>This should point to the HTML report directory (e.g. target/site/clover)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy Pattern</td>
<td>Use &quot;**&quot;/.*&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Configure Clover in your build script so that it generates both XML and HTML reports.

```xml
<clover-report initstring="target/clover/database/clover.db">
  <current outfile="target/site/clover/clover.xml" />
  <current outfile="target/site/clover">
    <format type="html"/>
  </current>
</clover-report>
```

**Example for Ant...**

**Example for Maven...**
Configure the Clover license in your build script or pass it as a proper task parameter in the job configuration:

a. Save the Clover license key in a file (for example in /opt/bamboo/clover.license).
b. Pass the location of the license key to the build task:
   - Define it in the build script, or
   - Pass it as a Java property for the Ant/Maven task in the plan configuration.

   **How to declare the license location in pom.xml...**

```
<plugin>
  <groupId>com.atlassian.maven.plugins</groupId>
  <artifactId>maven-clover2-plugin</artifactId>
  <version>3.1.8</version>
  <configuration>
    <licenseLocation>/opt/bamboo/clover.license</licenseLocation>
    <generateXml>true</generateXml>
    <generateHtml>true</generateHtml>
  </configuration>
</plugin>
```

   **How to declare the license location in build.xml...**

```
<project>
  <property name="clover.license.path" location="/opt/bamboo/clover.license"/>
</project>
```

   **How to pass the license location for Ant...**

```
clean with.clover test clover.report
-Dclover.license.path=/opt/bamboo/clover.license
```

   **How to pass the license location for Maven...**

```
mvn clean clover2:setup verify clover2:aggregate clover2:clover
-Dmaven.clover.licenseLocation=/opt/bamboo/clover.license
```
After every build, Bamboo will parse the Clover XML file and generate statistics and charts for a plan summary. The Plan summary and job summary pages will contain a “Clover” tab.

Browsing Clover results

Clover HTML report and Clover statistics for a job: see Viewing the Clover code-coverage for a plan.

Clover code coverage summary for a plan: see Viewing the Clover code-coverage for a build.

Clover code coverage statistics across multiple plans: see Generating reports across multiple plans.

Limit the machines that Clover runs on

If you have more remote agents than the number of machines for which Clover is licensed, you can restrict the machines on which Clover runs by using capabilities:

1. For each of the EC2 images on which you would like to run builds with Clover, add a capability such as "clover=true" to the configuration for the image.
   To do this, go to Administration > Elastic Bamboo > Configuration. Select the elastic image and click Add Capability.
2. Now, add a matching requirement, such as "clover=true", to the configuration for each job.
   To do this, go to Actions > Configure Plan > Jobs. Select the job where Clover runs and click Requirements and then Add Extra Requirement.

Troubleshooting

Automatic or manual Clover integration and spawned processes

Using automatic Clover integration or adding a dependency to the maven-clover2-plugin manually is usually sufficient.

However, if your build spawns another JVM process (for example: unit tests executed in a forked JVM, tests in the container instantiated on the fly, tests calling code deployed on another server), you must manually add the dependency to the Clover JAR for these spawned processes.

See NoClassDefFoundError com_atlassian_clover/CoverageRecorder KB article.

Automatic Clover integration and building in a subdirectory

In case you perform a build in a subdirectory (for instance, in the Maven Task configuration you have the "Working sub directory” field set) and you have automatic Clover integration, you may need to correct the Location in the “Clover Report (System)” artifact. Otherwise, an HTML report may be empty as automatic Clover integration uses the default path (for instance, the “target/site/clover” in case of integration with Maven).

This issue has been fixed in Bamboo 5.7.

Automatic Clover integration and multi-module Maven projects

If you have a multi-module Maven project with dependencies between modules and use Automatic Clover integration, it can happen that an instrumented JAR of the dependent artifact will be taken for test execution in a build phase where Clover was not enabled yet. See BAM-13208 for more details. In such case, we recommend the following:

- create a separate Job in which automatic Clover integration is enabled
- create a Maven task in this job, which will do nothing (call the "clean" goal, for instance)
- Bamboo will automatically add Clover-related goals (clover2:setup verify clover2:aggregate clover2:clover)

This issue has been fixed in Bamboo 5.9.
Clover Results Collector is unable to find the XML report file

In the build log you may see a warning like:

```
Failed to execute plugin 'Clover Results Collector' with error: No file matches the specified pattern ...
```

There are several possible reasons, see this article for more details: Failed to execute plugin 'Clover Results Collector'.

Data and backups

For information on managing data and backups, see the following topics:

- Locating important directories and files
- Specifying Bamboo’s working directory
- Reindexing data
- Specifying a backup schedule
- Exporting data for backup
- Importing data from backup
- Configuring global expiry
- Importing data from Jenkins
- Plan directory information REST API

Locating important directories and files

The information on this page describes how to find important Bamboo directories and files.

**On this page:**

- Bamboo server installation directory
- Bamboo server home directory
- Bamboo agent home directory

Bamboo server installation directory

When you installed your Bamboo server, you specified the location for the Bamboo installation directory — this is the directory where the Bamboo application files are installed. (The default location depends on your operating system: Windows, Unix/Linux, Solaris or Mac OS.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directory</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>atlassian-bamboo/WEB-INF/classes/bamboo-init.properties</td>
<td>This file tells Bamboo where to find the Bamboo home directory. The location of this directory is specified by the Bamboo administrator as described in the Bamboo installation guide. See Starting Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bin/start-bamboo.sh</td>
<td>This is the startup file for Bamboo under Unix/Linux, Solaris and Mac OS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bin\start-bamboo.bat</td>
<td>This is the startup file for the Bamboo under Windows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scripts/Triggers</td>
<td>This directory contains operational scripts (used when configuring the repository to trigger a Bamboo build).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logs/*</td>
<td>This directory contains logs unless you have used the Installer for Windows. (Note: The Bamboo server logs are written to the root installation directory. Build logs are stored in the <code>&lt;BambooHome&gt;/xml-data/builds</code> sub-directories.) If you used the Installer for Windows, log files will be located at <code>%USERPROFILE%\bamboo.log</code>. For Bamboo running as a Windows service it can be found at <code>%WINDIR%\System32\Config\systemprofile\bamboo.log</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atlassian-bamboo/WEB-INF/lib/</td>
<td>This directory is used when deploying Bamboo add-ons. It also contains other libraries required by Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atlassian-bamboo/WEB-INF/classes/log4j.properties</td>
<td>This is Bamboo's logging configuration file. Also the logging can be configured from the Bamboo UI by navigating to Administration -&gt; Log Settings page, but the changes made on that page will be reverted by a Bamboo restart; however, changes made in the log4j.properties file will stay even if Bamboo gets restarted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Bamboo server home directory

When you installed your Bamboo server, you specified the location for the Bamboo home directory — This is the directory where your Bamboo configuration data and build results are stored. (The default location depends on your operating system: Windows, Unix/Linux, Solaris or Mac OS.) This directory can grow quite large when managing large quantities of plans and builds.

The structure of the home directory will change in an upcoming Bamboo release, potentially breaking any tools or scripts that rely on the current structure. You can future-proof your tools by using the Plan directory information REST API.

- **artifacts/**<br>
  This is a folder shared by all the stages of a certain plan. Stages will place Artifacts here so that other stages from the same plan can have access to them. The \**BUILD_NUMBER** always will have a minimum of 5 digits, having the number completed with zeros when necessary. For instance, for build "42" the number will be "00042".

- **bamboo.cfg.xml**<br>
  This is Bamboo's core configuration file. It includes the configuration information for connecting to Bamboo's database.

- **xml-data/**<br>
  This directory contains all files relating to source repositories and build results.

- **xml-data/build-dir/**<br>
  This is known as the Working Directory: This is where Bamboo temporarily puts the checked-out files it is building. The location of this directory can be changed as described in Specifying Bamboo's Working Directory.

- **xml-data/builds/**<br>
  This is known as the Build Directory: This is where Bamboo stores build results (note that they will be deleted as described in Configuring global expiry). Its contents can be backed up as per Exporting data for backup.

- **xml-data/builds/**<br>
  Contains the build results for all the builds belonging to the JOB_KEY plan. Each build result is an individual XML file. Do not edit these files or the corresponding information in the database may become corrupt.

- **xml-data/configuration/**<br>
  This is known as the Configuration Directory. It contains server-wide configuration information. Its contents can be backed up as per Exporting data for backup.

- **database/**<br>
  This directory contains Bamboo's embedded HSQL database. The database contains plan configurations and some build results data. This directory is not present if an external database is used instead of the embedded HSQL.

  **Hi** HSQL is **not recommended** for production Bamboo instances.

- **index/**<br>
  This directory contains the build results index. Removing or modifying files in this directory may corrupt build history. Rebuilding the search index from Bamboo's global administration screen (see Reindexing data) will completely regenerate the contents of this directory.

- **logs/**<br>
  Bamboo server home directory:<br>
  This directory contains logs unless you have used the Installer for Windows. (Note: The Bamboo server logs are written to the root of the installation directory. Build logs are stored in the xml-data/builds/ sub-directories.)

  **Tip** If you used the Installer for Windows, log files will be located at %USERPROFILE%\bamboo.log. For Bamboo running as a Windows service it can be found at %WINDIR%\System32\Config\systemprofile\bamboo.log.

Bamboo agent home directory

When you installed your remote agents (if any), you specified the location for the Agent home directory — this is the directory where the agent's configuration data is stored. The default name of this directory is bamboo-agent-home. This directory can grow quite large when managing large numbers of plans and builds. The default bamboo-agent-home location depends on your operating system: Windows, Unix/Linux, Solaris or Mac OS.

The contents of the agent home directory are:

- **bamboo-agent.cfg.xml**<br>
  This contains configuration information about this remote agent. Most notably, it stores the agent id, which gets generated the first time this agent connects to the Bamboo server.

- **xml-data/build-dir/**<br>
  This is where the agent will check out the files and perform builds (similar to the Bamboo server’s xml-data/build-dir/ directory)

Specifying Bamboo’s working directory

The Working Directory is where Bamboo temporarily puts the checked-out files it is building. The location of this directory was specified using the Setup Wizard, can be viewed as described in Bamboo's system information, and can be changed as described below.
By default, this directory is located under the xml-data directory in the Bamboo home directory.

Each build's jobs have their own working directory relative to this configured working directory:

xml-data/build-dir/JOB_KEY

If Concurrent Builds are enabled, local agent builds will use the format:

xml-data/build-dir/AGENT_ID/JOB_KEY

To change the location of Bamboo's working directory:

1. Shut down Bamboo.
2. Open the `<Bamboo-Home>/bamboo.cfg.xml` file in a text editor. Find the following line -

   ....
   <property
   name="buildWorkingDir">/home/Bamboo-home/xml-data/build-dir</property>
   ....

3. Edit the Bamboo working directory to point to a new folder on disk.
4. Save the changes and restart Bamboo.
   Note: Bamboo will do a fresh checkout and perform a clean build of all your plans, once the directory is changed.

Reindexing data

About re-indexing

You will need to re-index your Bamboo build results data whenever you perform a data import. Re-indexing your data can also be helpful if your reports appear to be out-of-sync with your data. This may take a few minutes to complete (see System settings for an estimate of how long it will take).

To re-index Bamboo's build results data:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Indexing in the left navigation column, under 'System'.
3. Click Perform a full reindex.

Specifying a backup schedule

You can configure Bamboo to automatically create a backup each night, rather than doing a manual export every time.

Before you begin,

- Bamboo will be unavailable while the backup process completes. The export itself may take a long time to complete, depending on the number of builds and tests. We recommend running your backups at a time of day or night when usage is low.
- Backups may require large amounts of disk space, depending on the number of builds and tests. Please make sure you have enough disk space in your desired backup location before proceeding.
- Bamboo will not export if plans are currently being built (see Using the Bamboo dashboard).

For large instances we recommend using native database and filesystem backup tools instead of the built in backup/export functionality. For more details, see Automating Bamboo backup operations. Reserve the use of the built-in tools for database type migrations only (e.g. MySQL to Postgre).

On this page:

- Specifying a backup schedule
- Disabling a backup

Related pages:

- Data and backups
- Exporting data for backup
- Importing data from backup
Specifying a backup schedule

To specify a backup schedule:

1. Click the
   
   icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.

2. Click Scheduled Backups in the left navigation column (under ‘System’).

3. Click Edit to modify the schedule settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable scheduled backups</td>
<td>This check box must be cleared for automatic backups to be performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Artifacts</td>
<td>Select if you want to include build artifacts in your scheduled backups.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Backup path                    | Specify the directory where you want to store your backups. Each backup will be stored as a single file. It may be necessary to modify the Bamboo bamboo.paths.set.allowed system property to do this.  
   Note that: Bamboo restricts the editing of certain file path settings for security reasons (see Bamboo Security Advisory 2010-05-04). If you must configure Bamboo to permit modification to its file path settings, start Bamboo with the system property bamboo.paths.set.allowed=true. The procedure for configuring a Bamboo system property is described on Starting Bamboo. Once you have configured your file path setting, we recommend removing or disabling the bamboo.paths.set.allowed system property and restarting Bamboo. If your Bamboo instance is accessible to anyone outside your organization, then this will minimize the risk of Bamboo being compromised by security-related attacks. |
| Backup file prefix             | Specify the first part of the filename for all your backup files.     |
| Backup file date pattern       | Specify the date/time format for identifying your individual backup files. This will be appended to Backup file prefix to form the complete filename for your backup files. |
| Schedule                       | Use the Schedule Editor to choose the frequency with which backups will be performed. See Cron-based scheduling for more information about the Schedule Editor. |

4. Click Save. Your first backup will run when your server's clock matches the specified time.

Disabling a backup

If you disable scheduled backups, your schedule details will be retained but no automatic backups will be performed.

To disable a scheduled backup:

1. Click the
   
   icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.

2. Click Scheduled Backups in the left navigation column. The ‘Scheduled Backup Details’ page will be displayed, showing details about the status of scheduled backups or any currently configured backup.

3. Click Edit to edit the current ‘Scheduled Backup Details’.

4. Select the Disable scheduled backups check box.

5. Click Save.
Exporting data for backup

The instructions on this page describe how to export Bamboo data for backup.

Before you begin:

- Bamboo will be unavailable while the backup process completes. The export itself may take a long time to complete, depending on the number of builds and tests. We recommend running your backups at a time of day or night when usage is low.
- Backups may require large amounts of disk space, depending on the number of builds and tests. Please make sure you have enough disk space in your desired backup location before proceeding.
- Bamboo will not export if plans are currently being built.
- User management settings for Bamboo will be saved as part of the export. For information on user management in Bamboo, see [Connecting to external user directories](#).
- **Export Directory Path** setting: Bamboo restricts the editing of certain file path settings for security reasons (see Bamboo Security Advisory 2010-05-04). If you must configure Bamboo to permit modification to its file path settings, start Bamboo with the system property `bamboo.paths.set.allowed=true`. The procedure for configuring a Bamboo system property is described on [Starting Bamboo](#). Once you have configured your file path setting, we recommend removing or disabling the `bamboo.paths.set.allowed` property and restarting Bamboo. If your Bamboo instance is accessible to anyone outside your organization, then this will minimize the risk of Bamboo being compromised by security-related attacks.

For large instances we recommend using native database and filesystem backup tools instead of the built in backup/export functionality. For more details, see [Automating Bamboo backup operations](#). Reserve the use of the built-in tools for database type migrations only (e.g. MySQL to Postgre).

To export data for backup:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Export** in the left navigation column (under 'System').
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Export Directory Path</strong></td>
<td>This can be configured – see the note above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>File Name</strong></td>
<td>Edit the default name of the file to which Bamboo will export, if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Export Results</strong></td>
<td>Clear this to export only the plan configurations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Export Artifacts</strong></td>
<td>Select to have Bamboo export build artifacts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Importing data from backup

The instructions on this page describe how to import data from a Bamboo backup.

Before you begin:

- Bamboo will be unavailable until the import process is complete, which may take some time.
- The import process will delete your Bamboo installation and restore data from a previous export of Bamboo. This includes login data, so you will need to know an administration login in the Bamboo data to be imported.
- If you created your backup file using Bamboo 3.2 or later, importing the file will restore your user management settings. If you created your backup file using Bamboo 3.1 or earlier, importing the file will default your user management settings to ‘Local users and groups’ (i.e. user/group management in Bamboo). You may need to change your settings after the import.
- If you manage users externally (using LDAP or Crowd) and the Bamboo internal user repository (in the backup file) contains user names that duplicate user names in the external repository, you will not be able to import from the backup file.
- Backup Directory Path: Bamboo restricts the editing of certain file path settings for security reasons (see Bamboo Security Advisory 2010-05-04). If you must configure Bamboo to permit modification to its file path settings, start Bamboo with the system property `bamboo.paths.set.allowed=true`. The procedure for configuring a Bamboo system property is described on Starting Bamboo.

Once you have configured your file path setting, we recommend removing or disabling the `bamboo.paths.set.allowed` system property and restarting Bamboo. If your Bamboo instance is accessible to anyone outside your organization, then this will minimize the risk of Bamboo being compromised by security-related attacks.

To import data from backup:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Click Import in the left navigation column (under ‘System’).
3. Complete the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>File Path</strong></td>
<td>The absolute path to the data file that Bamboo should import. For example, &quot;/opt/bamboo/bamboo-home/export.zip&quot; on UNIX-based operating systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Backup data</strong></td>
<td>Highly recommended. Bamboo will not import data unless it is able to successfully export data first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Backup Directory Path</strong></td>
<td>This can be configured – see the note above.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring global expiry

Global expiry allows you to manage the timing for when build and deployment artifacts should be deleted from your Bamboo system.

You may want to consider doing this for the following reasons:

- Build and deployment artifacts can be large, and so consume storage on your system. Your system may run out of disk space if artifacts no longer in active use are retained indefinitely.
- Large numbers of builds and deployments clutter the Bamboo user interface, and may reduce performance, making it slower to work with Bamboo.

See this [Atlassian blog post](https://confluence.atlassian.com/blog/2014/03/20/build-expiry/) for a discussion of using build expiry and labels.

Global expiry applies to all build plans and deployment projects, and is generally the easiest way to manage artifacts expiry in Bamboo.

However, note that:

- You can configure build expiry for individual build plans to override the global expiry settings. You can not yet override the global expiry configuration for particular deployment projects.
- You can also delete the results of a plan build manually.

A Bamboo administrator can configure global expiry for both build and deployment artifacts as described below.

#### Configure global expiry

Ensure that you back up any build results data before their expiry date is reached.

To enable and configure global expiry:

1. Click the **Configuration** icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
2. Click **Expire** (under ‘Plans’) in the left-hand navigation panel.
3. If necessary, enable deployment expiry. **Note that this can not be reversed – see the Bamboo 5.7 upgrade notes.**
4. Click Edit.
5. Configure global expiry using the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complete build &amp; deployment results...</td>
<td>All build results data (including artifacts and build logs), and deployment results and release artifacts, are deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build and release artifacts</td>
<td>Only user-defined artifacts are deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build and deployment result logs</td>
<td>Only build logs and deployment result logs are deleted. Note that log files smaller than 10MB are never expired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expire after</td>
<td>Specifies the age (days, weeks or months) that build and deployment results must reach before they are deleted. For example, specify ‘24 months’ to keep results created in the last two years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum builds to keep</td>
<td>Specifies the minimum number of results you want to keep. For example, specify ‘50’ to keep the latest 50 build results, even if they are older than the age specified with Expire after.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keep builds with the following labels</td>
<td>Specifies the build labels (not plan labels or job labels) applied to builds for which you want to keep build results, regardless of the Expire after and Minimum builds to keep settings. Note that builds can be labeled either manually or automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum deployments to keep</td>
<td>Specifies the minimum number of successful deployments to keep, even if they are older than the age specified with Expire after. The minimum value is 2.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Click the icon to the right of ‘Schedule’ to set when the expiry event will be triggered. You can specify a cron expression if required. See this FAQ for help constructing cron expressions.
7. Click Save.

The global expiry event runs periodically (as determined by the expiry Schedule), regardless of whether you disable or enable expiry for your build and deployment results. When this event occurs, your build and deployment results will be expired according to the global and plan settings you have made.

Calculating the expiry date

This section outlines how the ages of build or deployment results are calculated so as to determine when they should be expired.

Build results and all logs

The ages of build results, build logs, and deployment logs are simply calculated from their respective creation dates.

If the age of the build result or log is equal to or greater than the Expire after age, then it is deleted when the expiry event occurs (assuming build results or logs are configured for deletion).

Note that log files smaller than 10MB are never expired.

Build and deployment artifacts

The ages of build and deployment artifacts are calculated as follows:

- If there is no release associated with the build result, then use the build result creation date.
- Otherwise, if the build result has never been deployed, then use the creation date for the latest release that refers to it.
- Otherwise, use the creation date for the latest deployment.

If the age of the build or deployment artifact is equal to or greater than the Expire after age, then it is deleted when the expiry event occurs (assuming artifacts are configured for deletion).

Importing data from Jenkins

The Jenkins Importer helps you to migrate projects deployed in Jenkins to Bamboo.

On this page:

- Requirements & supported configurations
- Using the Jenkins importer
- Getting Help

Related pages:

- Getting started with Java and Bamboo
- Getting started with .NET and Bamboo
- Using Bamboo
- Installing and upgrading

Requirements & supported configurations
While the importer assists and supports the migration of projects from Jenkins to Bamboo, a small amount of manual configuration may also be required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jenkins Version</th>
<th>Required Dependencies*</th>
<th>Jenkins Project Types</th>
<th>Repository Types</th>
<th>Build Steps</th>
<th>Notifications</th>
<th>Parameter Types</th>
<th>Other plugins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jenkins 1.581</td>
<td>✅ Jenkins built-in job dependencies</td>
<td>✅ Freestyle</td>
<td>✅ Git 1.1.25</td>
<td>✅ Email</td>
<td>✅ Boolean</td>
<td>EnvInject plugin 1.73</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✅ Pipelines plugin 1.3.3</td>
<td>✅ Maven</td>
<td>✅ SVN 1.43</td>
<td>✅ Choice</td>
<td>JavaDoc 1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✅ Join plugin 1.15</td>
<td>✅ Matrix</td>
<td>✅ Mercurial</td>
<td>✅ String</td>
<td>Wall Display plugin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Required Dependencies are the functional Jenkins plugins that the Bamboo Jenkins Importer requires to be present. These must be present in your Jenkins instance.

Using the Jenkins importer

1. **Start the importer**

You must have administration privilidges to run the Jenkins Importer

The Jenkins Importer is accessed from the welcome screen or Administration panel. To start the Jenkins Importer:

If running Bamboo for the first time

From the Bamboo Welcome screen:

1. Click **Import from...**
2. Select **Import from Jenkins**.

If already running Bamboo

From anywhere within the Bamboo interface:

1. Click on the **Administration** tab at the top of the Bamboo interface
2. Scroll down to the **System** side panel
3. Click on **Import from Jenkins**.

The Locate Jenkins screen will appear.

2. **Select Jenkins data for importing**

You may either import Jenkins data from its home location on the Bamboo server, or you may import from a zipped archive of your Jenkins home:

Importing from the Jenkins home location

From the Locate Jenkins interface:

1. Click the **Source of Jenkins home** dropdown menu
2. Select **Location on the Bamboo server**
3. Enter the path to your Jenkins home directory in the text field
4. Click **Next**.

You must specify the path to your Jenkins home directory.
Importing from an archived Jenkins home

From anywhere within the Bamboo interface:

1. Click the **Source of Jenkins home** dropdown menu
2. Select **Upload a zip archive**
3. Click **Choose Files**. A file manager window will open. Use it to locate your zipped Jenkins home directory
4. Click **Next**.

When creating your Jenkins zip archive, you need to remove or exclude the `userContent` and `builds` directory for each job from the archive before zipping:

1. Make a copy of Jenkins home
2. Remove/exclude the `userContent` directory
3. Remove/exclude the `builds` directory
4. Zip the archive.

Bamboo Jenkins Importer supports only ZIP file archives. Other archive formats such as tar and tar.gz are not currently supported.

Once you have selected your Jenkins data and clicked **Next**, the Jenkins job and pipeline selector will open.

3. **Configure Jenkins data for import**

The Job and Pipeline selector screen allows you to select and configure which Jenkins import items you would like to import into Bamboo. Import items include Jenkins pipelines and jobs, and the importer will identify how many items were found for processing:

The Jenkins Importer processes both Jenkins pipelines and jobs, but handles each differently:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jenkins Import Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Bamboo Equivalent</th>
<th>Jenkins Importer Process</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Pipeline            | A group of associated jobs linked using a Jenkins pipeline | Plan | • Creates a new Bamboo plan  
|                     |             |                   | • Imports individual pipeline jobs as Bamboo jobs into the new plan |
| Job                 | A stand alone build job | Job | • Imports job into a Bamboo plan with a single associated job within the plan |

**Importing a Jenkins job**

To import a Jenkins job:

Bamboo has found one pipeline and 13 jobs that can be imported from Jenkins.

**Choose Jenkins jobs and pipelines to import as Bamboo Plans**

Importing a Jenkins pipeline converts it into a Bamboo Plan, and all associated jobs into Bamboo jobs inside the plans.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Import PIPELINEs</th>
<th>Bamboo Plan Name</th>
<th>Enabled in Bamboo?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Build Pipeline Dashboard View</td>
<td>Build Pipeline Dashboard View</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Import Jobs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Import Jobs</th>
<th>Bamboo Job Name</th>
<th>Enabled in Bamboo?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DLINK_COMPILE</td>
<td>SPLAN_COMPILE</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DUNK_TEST</td>
<td>SPLAN_TEST</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Locate the relevant Jenkins Import item on the selector screen
2. Ensure the Import Jobs check box is checked
3. Enter a Bamboo Job Name (or leave to accept the default name from Jenkins)
4. Check the Enabled in Bamboo? check box. To disable an imported job, leave the box unchecked. Bamboo will not automatically run a disabled job.

By default, all jobs are selected for importing. To reject a Jenkins job for importation:

1. Locate the relevant Jenkins Import item on the selector screen
2. Uncheck the Import Jobs check box

**Importing a Jenkins pipeline**

To import a Jenkins pipeline, all of the associated jobs must be imported. The importing of individual jobs is described above.

**Changing the imported Bamboo plan or job name**

By default, the Jenkins Importer uses the Jenkins import item name as the default for the Bamboo name. To change the default name:

1. Locate the relevant Jenkins Import item on the selector screen
2. Enter a new name in the Bamboo Plan Name text field

**Existing Bamboo plans**

Existing Bamboo plans are not overwritten when you use the Jenkins Importer. When importing Jenkins data, Bamboo creates a new project called 'Imported from Jenkins' to contain all of the newly imported plans.

**Starting the import**

When you have identified and selected all of the Jenkins import items that you require, click Next at the bottom of the screen. Bamboo will start to import the specified plans and a progress indicator screen will display:

Once importing has finished, the importer results screen will display.

### 4. Review the importer results

The Importer Results screen shows the success outcome of the import activity for each import item. The three possible success outcomes are:

- Success
- Partial
- Fail

An example of Importer results is seen below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPLAN_DOCS</th>
<th>PARTIAL</th>
<th>Imported with warnings. See Import log for details.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DUNK_CODE_CHECK</td>
<td>FAIL</td>
<td>Could not import due to fatal error. See Import log for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPLAN_DEPLOY</td>
<td>SUCCESS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Success**

A 'success' result indicates that the Jenkins item was successfully imported into Bamboo. No additional work is required.

**Partial**

A 'partial' result indicates that the import was partially successful, however there may be unmapped configuration or other issues that require
Fail

A 'fail' result indicates that the importer was unable to import the Jenkins job or pipeline if the repository type is unsupported, none of the build steps could be converted to tasks or another unknown error occurred.

The Import log

In the case of a fail or partial, additional information can be obtained from the Import log, which provides the following:

- The name of the attempted job import
- The severity of the problem/issue. Severity is rated as:
  - Low – warning that might be interesting to the administrator such as how dependencies were imported
  - Medium – unsupported publishers or other configurations that are non-critical to running the build
  - High – unsupported repository or none of the build steps could be imported
  - Fatal – un-handled error that prevents the job from importing at all
- A brief description of the problem/issue.

An example Import Log entry can be seen below:

```
------------------------------
Job name: SPLAN_DOCS
SEVERITY: HIGH
Unsupported configuration for plugin 'ClearCase UCM Plugin'
------------------------------
```

It is possible that an import item has multiple problems/issues. Where this is the case, the Import Log will identify the severity and brief description for each problem/issue associated with an import item. An example Import Log entry detailing multiple problems/issues can be seen below:

```
------------------------------
Job name: DLINK_CODE_CHECK
SEVERITY: HIGH
Unsupported configuration for plugin 'ClearCase Plugin'
SEVERITY: HIGH
Requested plugin parameterized-trigger but we don't support it
SEVERITY: HIGH
Requested plugin downstream-ext but we don't support it
SEVERITY: FATAL
Scm cannot be imported
------------------------------
```

The import log is accessed by clicking on the Import Log link associated with an import issue, or by clicking on the Download import log file button at the base of the Import Results screen.

Missing or incompatible plugins

From time to time, Bamboo may not support particular Jenkins functionality. When this occurs, a great place to look is the Atlassian Marketplace. The Marketplace contains over 120 add-ons and plugins for Bamboo, and you will more than likely find a plugin for your functionality there. If you can't find what you need in the Marketplace, then consult the 'Getting help' section below.

5. View the imported plans

Once you have completed examining the importer results, click on View Plans to examine the imported plans in the Bamboo dashboard. An example of plans imported from Jenkins is seen below:
Imported plans can now be configured and managed using existing Bamboo methods.

Getting Help

Support

Help with the Jenkins importer is never far away. The best way to get help is to raise a support ticket directly via the Atlassian support site.

To create a support ticket:

1. Download the import log
2. Go to [https://support.atlassian.com](https://support.atlassian.com) and select Create New Issue
3. Enter a detailed description of your problem within the support ticket
4. Attach the import log and lodge your support ticket
5. Wait to be notified of updates by Email

Plan directory information REST API

An upcoming Bamboo release will make changes to the on-disk directory structure for BAMBOO_HOME. These changes are required for the improvement of the robustness of some Bamboo features.

As the use cases for this endpoint are somewhat different to the typical usage of Bamboo REST API functionality and the information disclosed is relatively low-risk, we have decided to make the access control strategy configurable using a system property.

For more information about system properties, see Starting Bamboo.

Plan directory information property details

The `bamboo.plan.directory.info.rest` is a system property with the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>disabled</td>
<td>The plan directory information REST API is disabled and all requests will be rejected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local</td>
<td>The plan directory information REST API is available without authentication to any request originating from localhost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anonymous</td>
<td>The plan directory information REST API is accessible anonymously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticated</td>
<td>The plan directory information REST API is accessible to any authenticated request</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
API Usage

The API is available at /rest/api/latest/planDirectoryInfo/{planKey}. For example:

GET /rest/api/latest/planDirectoryInfo/PROJ-PLAN

```json
{"results":
[{  "planName": "Plan name",  "isBranchBuild": false,  "artifact_plan_roots": ["/opt/bamboo-home/artifacts/PROJ-PLAN"],  "build_log_job_roots": {
    "PROJ-PLAN-JOB1": ["/opt/bamboo-home/xml-data/builds/PROJ-PLAN-JOB1"],
    "PROJ-PLAN-JOB2": ["/opt/bamboo-home/xml-data/builds/PROJ-PLAN-JOB2"]
  }]
}
```

If no build exists that matches the provided key, an empty list is returned for the results.

`artifact_plan_roots` contains a list of directories that contain artifacts for the plan.

`build_log_job_roots` returns a map of job keys to the directory arrays. That is, each job in the plan is mapped to a list of directories that contain logs and build results for that build.

Bamboo 5.9 will only ever return single-item lists, but future versions of Bamboo will make changes to the on-disk directory layout and may return lists with multiple entries.

Security

As a distributed application, Bamboo's security is important. This page contains links to security-related information in the Bamboo documentation.

Security advisories

For information on how to report a security vulnerability in Bamboo and our policy on security advisories and patches, please read Bamboo security advisories. A full list of security advisories that we have previously issued is also available on that page.

Bamboo permissions

For information on Bamboo's internal security model, i.e. user management and permissions, please see Users and permissions.

Remote agent security considerations

Please note the following security implications when enabling remote agents for Bamboo:

- No encryption of data passed between server and agent — this includes data such as:
  - login credentials for version control repositories
  - build logs
  - build artifacts
- No authentication of the agent or server — this could result in unauthorized actions being taken on your system, such as:
  - Unauthorized parties installing new remote agents — version control repository login credentials could be stolen.
  - Unauthorized parties masquerading as a Bamboo server — the unauthorized server could pass malicious code to the agent to run.
- See Agent authentication for more information.

We strongly recommend that you do not enable remote agent installation on any Bamboo instance accessible from a public or untrusted network. Creating remote agents is Disabling and enabling remote agents support by default.
Bamboo configuration

The following pages contain information on how to configure Bamboo features that can permit/forbid access to the Bamboo application.

- Agent authentication
- Bamboo cookies
- Best practices for Bamboo security
- Securing your remote agents
- Serialization protection methods
- Configuring XSRF protection
- Managing trusted keys
- System-wide encryption

Other security resources

Content by label

There is no content with the specified labels

Agent authentication

Bamboo provides ways to verify that remote agents are allowed to connect to the Bamboo server. This provides improved security for sensitive information in Bamboo.

- Bamboo prevents unknown remote agents from connecting to the Bamboo server.
- Remote agents need to be manually approved by an administrator before they can communicate with the Bamboo server in any way.
- You can enable security token verification for additional level of safety.

Remote agent authentication (the manual agent approval) doesn't interfere with security token verification an both features can be enabled or disabled independently.

Note that Elastic agents do not have to be approved.

On this page:

- Authenticating remote agents
- Security token verification
- Notes

Related pages:

- Bamboo remote agent installation guide
- Disabling and enabling remote agents support
- Configuring agents

Authenticating remote agents

To enable agent authentication:

1. Click the gear icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Then select Agents (under ‘Build Resources’).
3. Click Enable Remote Agent Authentication, and then Confirm.

Now you can approve access for a particular remote agent. To do this, click on the Agent Authentication tab (under ‘Remote Agents’).

See Bamboo remote agent installation guide for details about installing a remote agent.
Security token verification

Enable token verification to ask all remote agents to provide the token during the initial contact with the Bamboo server. Once you enable the verification, all agents that try to connect to Bamboo without the token are rejected before leaving any trail in Bamboo. By default, the feature is disabled for Bamboo Server.

Enabling security token verification

To enable security token verification, go to Bamboo administration > Build resources > Agents.

When you enable the verification, all agents that already authenticated and connected continue to work. In other words, no running builds should be stopped or broken when the feature gets enabled. However, on server restart or agent restart each agent is required to have a correct token.

Viewing the current security token

To view the current token, go to Bamboo administration > Build resources > Agents > Install remote agent page.

Each time the feature gets enabled, a new security token is generated, which means that disabling and re-enabling security token verification can be used to reset the token.

Notes

- If the agent's IP address changes, perhaps because DHCP is being used, then you will have to reapprove the agent when it next tries to connect using that different IP address.
- If you revoke access for a connected agent, the agent will remain connected and will continue to run. However, if the agent is subsequently restarted, it will not be able to connect.
- If you enable remote agent authentication, having previously revoked access for connected agents and disabled remote agent authentication, then you get the option to approve access for all connected agents at once. If you don't approve this, the agents stay connected and continue to run, but you will need to manually approve them when they next try to connect.

Bamboo cookies

Bamboo uses Seraph, an open source framework, for HTTP cookie authentication.

Authentication cookies

Bamboo uses two cookies:

- The JSESSIONID cookie is created by the application server and used for session tracking purposes.
• The 'remember me' cookie, seraph.bamboo, is generated by Bamboo when the user selects the Remember me checkbox on the login page.

You can read about cookies on the Wikipedia page.

On this page:
• Authentication cookies
• The 'Remember Me' cookie
  • Cookie key and value
  • Use of cookie for authentication
  • Life of 'Remember Me' cookies
• Other cookie usage

The 'Remember Me' cookie

The 'remember me' cookie is a long-lived HTTP cookie. This cookie can be used to authenticate an unauthenticated session. Bamboo generates this cookie when the user selects the Remember me checkbox on the login page.

Cookie key and value

By default, the cookie key is seraph.bamboo. This key is defined in the BAMBOO-INSTALLATION/webapp/WEB-INF/classes/seraph-config.xml file, in the login.cookie.key parameter.

The cookie contains a unique identifier plus a securely-generated random string.

Use of cookie for authentication

When a user requests a web page, if the request is not already authenticated via session-based authentication or otherwise, Bamboo will match the 'remember me' cookie (if present) against the token stored for the user in the Bamboo database (if present).

If the random string matches the value stored in the database and the cookie has not expired, the user is authenticated.

Life of 'Remember Me' cookies

You can configure the maximum age of the cookie. To do that you will need to modify the BAMBOO-INSTALLATION/webapp/WEB-INF/classes/seraph-config.xml file and insert the following lines below the other init-param elements:

```xml
<init-param>
  <param-name>autologin.cookie.age</param-name>
  <param-value>2592000</param-value><!-- 30 days in seconds -->
</init-param>
```

Other cookie usage

There are several cookies in Bamboo that are used for storing basic presentation states, such as the number of log lines to show, which tab was previously selected etc. They are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cookie</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AJS.conglomerate.cookie</td>
<td>Track which general tabs are open and closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAMBOO-AGENT-FILTER</td>
<td>Date range to show the builds for agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAMBOO-BUILD-FILTER</td>
<td>Date range to show the builds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAMBOO-LOG-REFRESH</td>
<td>Log refresh interval in seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAMBOO-MAX-DISPLAY-LINES</td>
<td>Maximum # of lines to show on the live logs page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atlassian.bamboo.dashboard.tab.selected</td>
<td>Which tab is selected on the dashboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.author.view</td>
<td>Which tab is selected on the Authors tab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.build.groupby.type</td>
<td>Which time group-by period is used in the reports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.dash.display.toggle</td>
<td>The ids of the projects that are expanded on the dashboard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Best practices for Bamboo security

The best way to harden a system is to look at each of the involved systems individually. Contact your company’s security officer or department to find out what security policies you should be using. There are many things to consider, such as the configuration of your underlying operating systems, application servers, database servers, network, firewall, routers, etc. It would be impossible to outline all of them here.

This page contains guidelines on good security practices, to the best of our knowledge.

On this page:
- Configuring the web server
- Configuring the application server
- Configuring the application
- Securing JGit connections
- Configuring system admin access
- Further precautions

Configuring the web server

Please refer to the following guides for system administrators:
- How to configure Apache to lock down the administration interface to those people who really need it. See Using Apache to limit access to the Confluence administration interface for guidance.
- How to reduce the risk of brute force attacks: Enabling or Disabling Captcha for Failed Logins.

Configuring the application server

See the following system administrator guide for general hints on the application server level:
- Tomcat security best practices

Configuring the application

The way you set up Bamboo roles, permissions and processes makes a big difference in the security of your Bamboo site.

Below are some more Bamboo-specific items to consider. None of these provides 100% security. They are measures to reduce impact and to slow down an intruder in case your system does become compromised.

- Restrict the number of users with powerful roles or group memberships. If only one department should have access to particularly sensitive data, then do restrict access to the data to those users. Do not let convenience over-rule security. Do not give all staff access to sensitive data when there is no need.
- Put documented procedures in place for the case of employees leaving the company.
- Perform security audits regularly. Know who can help in case a security breach occurs. Perform ‘what if’ planning exercises. (‘What is the worst thing that could happen if a privileged user’s password were stolen while he’s on vacation? What can we do to minimize damage?’).
- Make sure the Bamboo database user (and all datasource database users) only has the amount of database privileges it really needs.
- Monitor your binaries. If an attacker compromises an account on your system, he will usually try to gain access to more accounts. This is sometimes done by adding malicious code, such as by modifying files on the system. Run routine scripts that regularly verify that no malicious change has been made.
- Disable Bamboo from serving HTML and JavaScript artifacts. Allowing Bamboo to do this creates an XSS vulnerability where HTML and JavaScript artifacts can be executed on the user's browser. Go to Security settings (under 'Security') in the Bamboo admin area, and clear the Resolve artifacts content type by extension checkbox. Such artifacts will then be returned as plain text resources and the user's browser will handle them as simple text.

Securing JGit connections

Use the bamboo.crypto.trust.jgit.all system property. The default value is "true", which means that the application maintains the old logic when AllTrustingHttpConnectionFactory is used for JGit connections. You can override this property by setting the value to "false", which means that org.eclipse.jgit.transport.http.JDKHttpConnectionFactory will be used for certificate validation.

This feature addresses the issue mentioned in

BAM-16194 - JGit allows Bamboo agents to trust any given certificate

Configuring system admin access
Below are some things to consider specifically related to the system admin role:

- Keep the number of Bamboo administrators extremely low. For example, 3 system administrator accounts should be the maximum.
- The administrators should have separate Bamboo accounts for their administrative roles and for their day to day roles. If John Doe is an administrator, he should have a regular user account without administrator access to do his day to day work (such as configuring build plans). This could be a ‘john.doe’ account. In addition, he should have an entirely separate account (that cannot be guessed by an outsider and that does not even use his proper name) for administrative work. This account could be ‘jane smith’ – using a username that is so obscure or fake that no outsider could guess it. This way, even if an attacker singles out the actual person John Doe and gets hold of his password, the stolen account would most likely be John’s regular user account, and the attacker cannot perform administrative actions with that account.
- Lock down administrative actions as much as you can. If there is no need for your administrators to perform administrative actions from outside the office, then lock down access to those actions to known IP addresses, for example. See Using Apache to limit access to the Confluence administration interface for guidance.

Further precautions

As another precaution:

- Regularly monitor the above requirements. There are many things that could start out well, but deteriorate over time:
  - A system may start out with just 3 administrators, but over the course of a year this could grow to 30 administrators if no one prevents expansion.
  - Apache administration restrictions may be in place at the start of the year, but when the application server is migrated after a few months, people may forget to apply the rules to the new system.

Again, keep in mind that the above steps may only be a fraction of what could apply to you, depending on your security requirements. Also, keep in mind that none of the above rules can guarantee anything. They just make it harder for an intruder to move quickly.

Securing your remote agents

This page applies to remote agents and not elastic agents. Elastic agents are secured automatically by the Bamboo server and no additional steps are required.

We strongly recommend that you do not enable remote agent installation without securing them on any Bamboo instance accessible from a public or untrusted network. Creating remote agents is disabled by default. If you choose to enable your remote agents without securing them, please read this Security Advisory to understand the security implications.

You can secure your remote agents by configuring them to use SSL (Secure Sockets Layer). This protocol provides a secure mechanism for communication between your Bamboo server and remote agents. The information below describes how to configure your remote agents to use SSL.

**On this page:**
- Configure your Bamboo server to use SSL
- Special considerations/troubleshooting

**Related pages:**
- Security
- Agent authentication
- Bamboo remote agent installation guide
- Disabling and enabling remote agents support
- Configuring agents
- Knowledge Base articles

**Configure your Bamboo server to use SSL**

To instruct your Bamboo server to start using SSL so that agents will be able to authenticate the server, you need to modify the addresses used for communication between the agent and the server.

To configure your Bamboo server to use SSL:
If you are setting up Bamboo for the first time,

1. Launch the Bamboo Setup Wizard and change the protocol of the 'Broker URL' to 'SSL'.
   i.e. ssl://host:port/

   Setting up Broker URL during the installation doesn't change the Broker Client URL to the same protocol. You can change the Broker Client URL either directly in the Bamboo GUI (Bamboo administration > Overview > System > General Configuration) or in the bamboo.cfg.xml file. Restart Bamboo to run it with the updated setup.

Or, if you are configuring an existing installation of Bamboo,

1. Shut down your Bamboo server and agents.
2. Change the protocol of your Broker URL and Broker client URL in the bamboo.cfg.xml file to 'SSL'. Note, do not change the address of this URL.
   <property name="bamboo.jms.broker.uri">ssl://myhost:myport</property>
   <property name="bamboo.jms.broker.client.uri">failover:(ssl://myhost:myport)</property>
3. Start up the Bamboo server.
4. Start up the Bamboo agents. If your agents do not start up, please check that you have set up your certificates correctly.

Special considerations/troubleshooting

On a standard Bamboo installation, the above steps are sufficient to secure your agents. After they're done, Bamboo will automatically Bamboo will automatically set up the key/trust stores and distribute certificates to the agents.

If you’re using custom SSL setup (e.g. you’re running Bamboo with -Djavax.net.ssl.keyStore=SOMEPATH), you need to follow the guidelines in Manually securing your remote agents.

The automatic keystore management can be enabled or disabled by adding -Dbamboo.manage.jms.ssl=true/false to the server command line. When this variable is present, Bamboo will not decide whether to run automatic key management.

The following files are used by automatic key management:
- The Agent stores the keystore and truststore in BAMBOO_AGENT_HOME/xml-data/configuration/jmsclient.ks and BAMBOO_AGENT_HOME/xml-data/configuration/jmsclient.ts, respectively.
- Server stores the keystore in BAMBOO_HOME/xml-data/configuration/broker.ks

To force generation of new keystores and truststores, simply remove these files. They will be regenerated on the next restart.

Serialization protection methods

For security/compatibility reasons, you can control the way Java classes are filtered during deserialisation. This is particularly important for agent-server communication. The filtering can be either whitelist- or blacklist-based.

The whitelist is the only recommended option for XStream serialisation. Blacklist (the former default) is scheduled for removal and should only be considered as a temporary fix in case of problems with the whitelist.

You can disable serialization security completely by setting the bamboo.security.serialization.disable system property. This is not recommended for security reasons.

You can set up the serialization protection methods in Bamboo administration > Security > Security settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serialization</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XStream</td>
<td>Agent - server messaging</td>
<td>· whitelist (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>· blacklist (insecure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>· strict blacklist (insecure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandana</td>
<td>Bamboo custom storage mechanism that can be used by plugins</td>
<td>· blacklist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>· strict blacklist (default)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Overview of options

The recommended option: whitelist

Whitelist has three sources:
- bundled with Bamboo (can't be modified),
- a list of whitelisted classes can be added into Bamboo home directory,
- plugin vendors can define certain classes as allowed.

A whitelist has higher priority than a blacklist. If a class is blacklisted by Bamboo, but is whitelisted anywhere (by a plugin or via bamboo
home directory settings), then even if we're using the blacklist security setting, the class will still be allowed to be serialized/deserialized.
For more information about how to add classes to the whitelist or implement a plugin module, see Bamboo developer documentation.

Blacklist (insecure)
Blacklists are provided by Bamboo and can't be modified by plugin vendors or administrators.

Strict blacklist (insecure)
Strict blacklist restricts a bit more classes then the blacklist. Nevertheless, it's still considered insecure and it can cause problems with some of the plugins.

Configuring XSRF protection
To prevent users being tricked into unintentionally submitting malicious data, Bamboo uses XSRF security protection.

Atlassian supported plugins have been updated to support XSRF. XSRF protection is enabled by default for Atlassian Cloud customers and new customers for Bamboo Server, however, if you are using a plugin that is not yet compatible with this security feature, you can disable it.

Please carefully consider the security risks before you disable XSRF protection in your Bamboo installation.

Read more about XSRF (Cross Site Request Forgery) at wikipedia.

To configure XSRF protection:

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. Choose Security settings in the left-hand panel.
3. Choose Edit.
4. Uncheck Enable XSRF protection to disable XSRF protection or check it to enable XSRF protection.
5. Choose Save.

Related pages:
- Security
- Best practices for Bamboo security

XSRF protection was introduced in Bamboo 5.3, and is enabled automatically for all existing and new Atlassian Cloud users. Existing Bamboo Server users can enable XSRF protection by following the instructions above and checking Enable XSRF protection.

Is my Bamboo server already protected against XSRF attacks?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Customers upgrading...</th>
<th>XSRF protection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... an existing installation of Bamboo 5.2, and earlier, to Bamboo 5.3, and later.</td>
<td>✗ XSRF protection is NOT enabled by default. You can enable XSRF protection using the instructions on this page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... a new installation of Bamboo Server 5.3, and later.</td>
<td>✓ XSRF protection IS enabled by default.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Managing trusted keys
By default, Bamboo accepts communication from all repository hosts that authenticate with SSH. You can secure communication between Bamboo and repositories by setting up trusted key management.

- Prevent Bamboo from connecting to unauthorized services via SSH.
- Manually authorize SSH key of the repository hosts upon first connection.
- Automatically authorize repository hosts that were added to the trusted keys list.

Trusted keys management is available only for restricted administrators.

Enabling trusted keys management in Bamboo

To enable SSH key management:

1. Go to Administration > Security > Security settings > Global security and permission properties.
2. Select the Manage trusted keys check box:
Results

- The **Trusted keys** configuration page is now available in **Administration > Security**:

Adding and deleting trusted keys in Bamboo

You can manage the authorized public SSH keys in the **Trusted keys** page.

To add a trusted key:

1. Go to **Administration > Security > Trusted keys**.
2. Specify the host URL, for example:

```
bitbucket.org
```

3. Paste the **public** key that you generated for your repository host and click **Add**.
System-wide encryption

As a CI/CD system, Bamboo stores sensitive data used to authenticate to external systems, such as VCS's, issue trackers and deployment targets. To protect this data, Bamboo uses a central encryption service.

Data encrypted at rest

The following data is encrypted:

- variables that include keywords such as "secret" and "password". These variables will also be obfuscated in the UI,
- shared credentials,
- credentials stored in the repository configuration (keys, passwords and passphrases).

This data is encrypted in the database and in the backups.

Encryption of data in transit

Bamboo relies on transport-level encryption for security of data in transit.

In the case of remote agents, this means that Bamboo must be configured with SSL for the JMS and web interfaces. In case of elastic agents, the encrypted tunnel (automatically set up by Bamboo) provides security out of the box.

Encryption algorithm

The data is encrypted with AES algorithm using a key length of 256 bits. Both the key and the initialization vector are automatically generated using a secure random source when first used.

Key storage

The encryption key is stored in the database and on the filesystem. Both the filesystem and the database key parts are required to perform successful decryption.

The key part stored on your filesystem is located under `BAMBOO_HOME/xml-data/configuration/cipher`.

Data recovery

In case a part of your key is lost, your credentials will no longer be available and nothing can be done to recover them.

Advanced actions

This section describes the administrative actions that are performed from outside of the Bamboo administration console.

- Integrating Bamboo with Apache HTTP server
- Securing Bamboo with Apache using SSL
- Securing Bamboo with Tomcat using SSL
- Running Bamboo as a Windows Service
- Disabling SSH access to elastic instances
Integrating Bamboo with Apache HTTP server

This page explains how to establish a network topology in which Apache HTTP Server acts as a reverse proxy for Bamboo. Typically, such a configuration would be used when Bamboo is installed in a protected zone 'behind the firewall', and Apache HTTP Server provides a gateway through which users outside the firewall can access Bamboo.

Be aware that Bamboo does not need to run behind a web server, since it is capable of serving web requests directly; to secure Bamboo when run in this way see Securing Bamboo with Tomcat using SSL. Otherwise, if you want to install Bamboo in an environment that incorporates Apache HTTP Server, keep on reading.

About using Apache software

This section has general information pertaining to the use of Apache HTTP Server and Apache Tomcat. It is important that you read this section before proceeding to the steps that follow.

Configuring Tomcat 7

Bamboo ships with an instance of Tomcat 7, the configuration of which is determined by the contents of the `server.xml` file, which can be found in the `conf` directory immediately under the Bamboo installation directory. Note that any changes that you make to the `server.xml` file will be effective upon starting or re-starting Bamboo.

You may also find it helpful to refer to the Apache Tomcat 7.0 Proxy Support HowTo page.

On this page:
- About using Apache software
- Step 1: Configure the Tomcat Connector
- Step 2: Change Bamboo's base URL
- Step 3 (optional): Set a context path for Bamboo
- Step 4: Enable mod_proxy and mod_proxy_http in Apache HTTP Server
- Step 5: Configure mod_proxy to map requests to Bamboo
- Step 6: Configure mod_proxy to disable forward proxying
- Step 7: Allow proxying to Bamboo from everywhere
- Step 8 (optional): Configure Apache HTTP Server for SSL
- A note about application links
- Troubleshooting

Configuring Apache HTTP Server

Since Apache HTTP Server is not an Atlassian product, Atlassian does not guarantee to provide support for its configuration. You should consider the material on this page to be for your information only; use it at your own risk. If you encounter problems with configuring Apache HTTP Server, we recommend that you refer to the Apache HTTP Server Support page.

You may find it helpful to refer to the Apache HTTP Server Documentation, which describes how you can control Apache HTTP Server by changing the contents of the `httpd.conf` file. The section on Apache Module `mod_proxy` is particularly relevant. Note that any changes you make to the `httpd.conf` file will be effective upon starting or re-starting Apache HTTP Server.

This document relates to Apache HTTP Server version 2.4.2; the configuration of other versions may differ.

Step 1: Configure the Tomcat Connector

Find the normal (non-SSL) `Connector` directive in Tomcat's `server.xml` file, and add the `scheme`, `proxyName`, and `proxyPort` attributes as shown below. Instead of `mycompany.com`, set the `proxyName` attribute to the domain name that Apache HTTP Server will be configured to serve. This informs Bamboo of the domain name and port of the requests that reach it via Apache HTTP Server, and is important to the correct operation of the Bamboo functions that construct URLs.
<Connector port="8085" protocol="HTTP/1.1" connectionTimeout="20000" useBodyEncodingForURI="true" redirectPort="8443" compression="on"

compressableMimeType="text/html,text/xml,text/plain,text/css,application/json,application/javascript,application/x-javascript"

scheme="http"

proxyName="mycompany.com"

proxyPort="80" />

Note: Apache HTTP Server's ProxyPreserveHost directive is another way to have the hostname of the incoming request recognized by Bamboo instead of the hostname at which Bamboo is actually running. However, the ProxyPreserveHost directive does not cause the scheme to be properly set. Since we have to alter Tomcat's Connector directive anyway, we recommend that you stick with the above-described approach, and don't bother to set the ProxyPreserveHost in Apache HTTP Server.

For more information about configuring the Tomcat Connector, refer to the Apache Tomcat 7.0 HTTP Connector Reference.

Step 2: Change Bamboo's base URL

After re-starting Bamboo, open a browser window and log in using an administrator account. Go to the Bamboo administration area and click Server settings (under 'Settings'), and change Base URL to match the proxy URL (the URL that Apache HTTP Server will be serving).

Step 3 (optional): Set a context path for Bamboo

By default, Bamboo is configured to run with an empty context path; in other words, from the 'root' of the server's name space. In that default configuration, Bamboo is accessed at:

http://localhost:8085/

It's perfectly fine to run Bamboo with the empty context path as above. Alternatively, you can set a context path by changing the Context directive in Tomcat's server.xml file:

```xml
<Context path="/bamboo" docBase="${catalina.home}/atlassian-bamboo" reloadable="false" useHttpOnly="true">

....

</Context>
```

If you do set a context path, it is important that the same path be used in Step 5, when setting up the ProxyPass and ProxyPassReverse directives. You should also append the context path to Bamboo's base URL (see Step 2).

Step 4: Enable mod_proxy and mod_proxy_http in Apache HTTP Server

In the mod_proxy documentation, you will read that mod_proxy can be used as a forward proxy, or as a reverse proxy (gateway); you want the latter. Where the mod_proxy documentation mentions 'origin server', it refers to your Bamboo server. Unless you have a good reason for doing otherwise, load mod_proxy and mod_proxy_http dynamically, using the LoadModule directive; that means un-commenting the following lines in the httpd.conf file:

```
LoadModule proxy_module modules/mod_proxy.so
LoadModule proxy_http_module modules/mod_proxy_http.so
```

Experienced administrators may be aware of the Apache Connector module, mod_jk. Atlassian does not recommend use of the mod_jk module with Bamboo, since it has proven itself to be less reliable than mod_proxy.
Step 5: Configure mod_proxy to map requests to Bamboo

To configure mod_proxy for use with Bamboo, you need to use the `ProxyPass` and `ProxyPassReverse` directives in Apache HTTP Server's `httpd.conf` file as follows:

```
ProxyPass        / http://localhost:8085/ connectiontimeout=5
timeout=300
ProxyPassReverse / http://localhost:8085/
```

Suppose Apache HTTP Server is configured to serve the `mycompany.com` domain; then the above directives tell Apache HTTP Server to forward web requests of the form `http://mycompany.com/*` to the Tomcat connector (Bamboo) running on port `8085` on the same machine.

The `connectiontimeout` attribute specifies the number of seconds Apache HTTP Server waits for the creation of a connection to Bamboo.

The `timeout` attribute specifies the number of seconds Apache HTTP Server waits for data to be sent to Bamboo.

If you set up a context path for Bamboo in Step 3, you'll need to use that context path in your `ProxyPass` and `ProxyPassReverse` directives. Suppose your context path is set to `"/bamboo"`, the directives would be as follows:

```
ProxyPass        /bamboo http://localhost:8085/bamboo
connectiontimeout=5 timeout=300
ProxyPassReverse /bamboo http://localhost:8085/bamboo
```

If Bamboo is to run on a different domain and/or different port, you should use that domain and/or port number in the `ProxyPass` and `ProxyPassReverse` directives; for example, suppose that Bamboo will run on port `9900` on `private.mycompany.com` under the context path `/bamboo`, then you would use the following directives:

```
ProxyPass        /bamboo http://private.mycompany.com:9900/bamboo
connectiontimeout=5 timeout=300
ProxyPassReverse /bamboo http://private.mycompany.com:9900/bamboo
```

Step 6: Configure mod_proxy to disable forward proxying

If you are using Apache HTTP Server as a reverse proxy only, and not as a forward proxy server, you should turn forward proxying off by including a `ProxyRequests` directive in the `httpd.conf` file, as follows:

```
ProxyRequests Off
```

Step 7: Allow proxying to Bamboo from everywhere

Strictly speaking, this step is unnecessary because access to proxied resources is unrestricted by default. Nevertheless, we explicitly allow access to Bamboo from any host so that this policy will be applied regardless of any subsequent changes to access controls at the global level. Use the `Proxy` directive in the `httpd.conf` file as follows:

```
<Proxy *>
    Order Deny,Allow
    Allow from all
</Proxy>
```

The `Proxy` directive provides a context for the directives that are contained within its delimiting tags. In this case, we specify a wild-card url (the asterisk), which applies the two contained directives to all proxied requests.

The `Order` directive controls the order in which any Allow and Deny directives are applied. In the above configuration, we specify "Deny,Allow", which tells Apache HTTP Server to apply any Deny directives first, and if any match, the request is denied unless it also matches an Allow directive. In fact, "Deny,Allow" is the default; we include it merely for the sake of clarity. Note that we specify one Allow directive,
which is described below, and don’t specify any Deny directives.

The Allow directive, in this context, controls which hosts can access Bamboo via Apache HTTP Server. Here, we specify that all hosts are allowed access to Bamboo.

**Step 8 (optional): Configure Apache HTTP Server for SSL**

If you want to set up SSL access to Bamboo, take steps 8(a) to 8(d) below. When you are finished, users will be able to make secure connections to Apache HTTP Server; connections between Apache HTTP Server and Bamboo will remain unsecured (not using SSL). If you don’t want to set up SSL access, you can skip this section entirely.

**Note:** It would be possible to set up an SSL connection between Apache HTTP Server and Tomcat (Bamboo), but that configuration is very unusual, and not recommended in most circumstances.

**Step 8(a): Configure the Tomcat Connector for SSL**

Find the normal (non-SSL) Connector directive in Tomcat’s `server.xml` file, and change the `redirectPort`, `scheme` and `proxyPort` attributes as follows:

```xml
<Connector port="8085"
  protocol="HTTP/1.1"
  connectionTimeout="20000"
  useBodyEncodingForURI="true"
  redirectPort="443"
  compression="on"

  compressableMimeType="text/html, text/xml, text/plain, text/css, application/json, application/javascript, application/x-javascript"
  secure="true"
  scheme="https"
  proxyName="mycompany.com"
  proxyPort="443" />
```

The `redirectPort` directive causes Tomcat-initiated redirections to secured resources to use the specified port. Right now, the Bamboo `redirectPort` configuration of Tomcat does not involve Tomcat-initiated redirections, so the change to `redirectPort` is redundant. Nevertheless, we suggest that you change it as directed above for the sake of completeness.

**Step 8(b): Set up a virtual host in Apache HTTP Server**

Un-comment the following LoadModule directive in Apache HTTP Server’s `httpd.conf` file:

```bash
LoadModule ssl_module modules/mod_ssl.so
```

Add the following directives to the `httpd.conf` file:

```bash
Listen 443
<VirtualHost *:443>
  SSLEngine On
  SSLCertificateFile  "/usr/local/apache2/conf/server.crt"
  SSLCertificateKeyFile  "/usr/local/apache2/conf/server.key"
  ProxyPass        / http://localhost:7990/ connectiontimeout=5
  timeout=300
  ProxyPassReverse / http://localhost:7990/
</VirtualHost>
```

The `Listen` directive instructs Apache HTTP Server to listen for incoming requests on port 443. Actually, we could omit that directive in this case, since Apache HTTP Server listens for `https` requests on port 443 by default. Nevertheless, it’s good to make one’s intentions explicit.
The **VirtualHost** directive encloses a number of child directives that apply only and always to requests that arrive at port 443. Since our `VirtualHost` block does not include a `ServerName` directive, it inherits the server name from the main server configuration.

The **SSLEngine** directive toggles the use of the SSL/TLS Protocol Engine. In this case, we’re using it to turn SSL on for all requests that arrive at port 443.

The **SSLCertificateFile** directive tells Apache HTTP Server where to find the PEM-encoded certificate file for the server.

The **SSLCertificateKeyFile** directive tells Apache HTTP Server where to find the PEM-encoded private key file corresponding to the certificate file identified by the `SSLCertificateFile` directive. Depending on how the certificate file was generated, it may contain an RSA or DSA private key file, making the `SSLCertificateKeyFile` directive redundant; however, Apache strongly discourages that practice. The recommended approach is to separate the certificate and the private key. If the private key is encrypted, Apache HTTP Server will require a pass phrase to be entered when it starts up.

The `ProxyPass` and `ProxyPassReverse` directives should be set up in manner described in **Step 5**.

For more information about the support for SSL in Apache HTTP Server, refer to the [Apache SSL/TLS Encryption](http://httpd.apache.org/docs/current/mod/mod_ssl.html) manual. In addition, you will find lots of relevant information in the `<apache directory>/conf/extra/httpd-ssl.conf` file, which is included in the standard Apache distribution.

**Step 8(c): Create SSL certificate and key files**

In **Step 8(b)**, you specified `server.crt` and `server.key` as the certificate file and private key file respectively. Those two files must be created before we can proceed. This step assumes that OpenSSL is installed on your server.

Generate a server key file:

```
openssl genrsa -des3 -out server.key 1024
```

You will be asked to provide a password. Make sure that the password is strong because it will form the one real entry point into the SSL encryption set-up. **Make a note of the password because you’ll need it when starting Apache HTTP Server later.**

Generate a certificate request file (`server.csr`):

```
openssl req -new -key server.key -out server.csr
```

Generate a self-signed certificate (`server.crt`):

```
openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in server.csr -signkey server.key -out server.crt
```

The above command generates a self-signed certificate that is valid for one year. You can use the certificate signing request to purchase a certificate from a certificate authority. For testing purposes though, the self-signed certificate will suffice. Copy the certificate file and private key file to the locations you specified in **Step 8(b)**.

```
cp server.key /usr/local/apache2/conf/
cp server.crt /usr/local/apache2/conf/
```

**Step 8(d): Update the base URL for `https`**

Open a browser window and log into Bamboo using an administrator account. Go to the Bamboo administration area and click **Server settings** (under ‘Settings’). Change **Base URL** to use `https`.

**Using a self-signed certificate**

There are two implications of using the self-signed certificate:

- When you access Bamboo in a web browser, you can expect a warning to appear, alerting you that an un-trusted certificate is in use. Before proceeding you will have to indicate to the browser that you trust the certificate.
- When you perform a git clone operation, SSL verification will fail. The SSL verification error message will look something like this:

```
error:14090086:SSL routines:SSL3_GET_SERVER_CERTIFICATE:certificate verify failed while accessing
https://justme@mycompany/git/TP/test.git
```

It’s easy to fix. Turn SSL verification off for individual git operations by setting the `GIT_SSL_NO_VERIFY` environment variable. In Unix, you
can set the variable in-line with git commands as follows:

```bash
GIT_SSL_NO_VERIFY=true git clone https://justme@mycompany/git/TP/test.git
```

In Windows you have to set the variable in a separate shell statement:

```bash
set GIT_SSL_NO_VERIFY=true
```

```bash
git clone https://justme@mycompany/git/TP/test.git
```

Once you have purchased and installed a signed certificate from a certificate authority, you will no longer have to include the `GIT_SSL_NO_VERIFY` modifier.

A note about application links

When an application link is established between Bamboo and another Atlassian product (e.g. JIRA), and Bamboo is operating 'behind' Apache HTTP Server, the link from the other product to Bamboo must be via the proxy URL; that is, the 'reciprocal URL' from, say JIRA, to Bamboo must comport with the proxy name and port that you set at Step 1.

Troubleshooting

- On Fedora Core 4, people have reported 'permission denied' errors when trying to get mod_proxy (and mod_jk) working. Disabling SELinux (/etc/selinux/config) apparently fixes this.
- Some users have reported problems with user sessions being hijacked when the mod_cache module is enabled. If you have such problems, disable the mod_cache module. Note that this module is enabled by default in some Apache HTTP Server version 2 distributions.
- In general, if you are having problems:
  1. Ensure that Bamboo works as expected when running directly from Tomcat on `http://localhost:8085/bamboo`
  2. Watch the log files (usually in `/var/log/httpd/` or `/var/log/apache2/`). Check that you have a `LogLevel` directive in your `httpd.conf`, and turn up logging (`LogLevel debug`) to get more info.

Securing Bamboo with Apache using SSL

If you want to set up SSL access to Bamboo, follow steps 1 to 4 below. When you are finished, users will be able to make secure connections to Apache HTTP Server; connections between Apache HTTP Server and Bamboo will remain unsecured (not using SSL).

Note:

- The steps on this page would normally be performed after Integrating Bamboo with Apache HTTP Server.
- It would be possible to set up an SSL connection between Apache HTTP Server and Tomcat (Bamboo), but that configuration is very unusual, and not recommended in most circumstances.

Step 1: Configure the Tomcat Connector for SSL

Find the normal (non-SSL) `Connector` directive in Tomcat's `server.xml` file, and change the `redirectPort`, `scheme` and `proxyPort` attributes as follows:

```
  `<Connector protocol="http/1.1" redirectPort="8443" scheme="https" proxyPort="80"/>
```

On this page:

- Step 1: Configure the Tomcat Connector for SSL
- Step 2: Set up a virtual host in Apache HTTP Server
- Step 3: Create SSL certificate and key files
- Step 4: Update the base URL for 'https'
- Using a self-signed certificate

Related pages:

- Integrating Bamboo with Apache HTTP Server
- Securing Bamboo with Tomcat using SSL
The redirectPort directive causes Tomcat-initiated redirections to secured resources to use the specified port. Right now, the Bamboo configuration of Tomcat does not involve Tomcat-initiated redirections, so the change to redirectPort is redundant. Nevertheless, we suggest that you change it as directed above for the sake of completeness.

Step 2: Set up a virtual host in Apache HTTP Server

Un-comment the following LoadModule directive in Apache HTTP Server’s httpd.conf file:

```
LoadModule ssl_module modules/mod_ssl.so
```

Add the following directives to the httpd.conf file:

```
Listen 443
<VirtualHost *:443>
  SSLEngine On
  SSLCertificateFile    "/usr/local/apache2/conf/server.crt"
  SSLCertificateKeyFile  "/usr/local/apache2/conf/server.key"
  ProxyPass        / http://localhost:8085/ connectiontimeout=5
timeout=300
  ProxyPassReverse / http://localhost:8085/
</VirtualHost>
```

The Listen directive instructs Apache HTTP Server to listen for incoming requests on port 443. Actually, we could omit that directive in this case, since Apache HTTP Server listens for https requests on port 443 by default. Nevertheless, it’s good to make one’s intentions explicit.

The VirtualHost directive encloses a number of child directives that apply only and always to requests that arrive at port 443. Since our VirtualHost block does not include a ServerName directive, it inherits the server name from the main server configuration.

The SSLEngine directive toggles the use of the SSL/TLS Protocol Engine. In this case, we’re using it to turn SSL on for all requests that arrive at port 443.

The SSLCertificateFile directive tells Apache HTTP Server where to find the PEM-encoded certificate file for the server.

The SSLCertificateKeyFile directive tells Apache HTTP Server where to find the PEM-encoded private key file corresponding to the certificate file identified by the SSLCertificateFile directive. Depending on how the certificate file was generated, it may contain a RSA or DSA private key file, making the SSLCertificateKeyFile directive redundant; however, Apache strongly discourages that practice. The recommended approach is to separate the certificate and the private key. If the private key is encrypted, Apache HTTP Server will require a pass phrase to be entered when it starts up.

The ProxyPass and ProxyPassReverse directives should be set up in the manner described in Step 5 of the Integrating Bamboo with Apache HTTP server page.

For more information about the support for SSL in Apache HTTP Server, refer to the Apache SSL/TLS Encryption manual. In addition, you will find lots of relevant information in the <apache directory>/conf/extra/httpd-ssl.conf file, which is included in the standard
Apache distribution.

**Step 3: Create SSL certificate and key files**

In **Step 2**, you specified `server.crt` and `server.key` as the certificate file and private key file respectively. Those two files must be created before we can proceed. This step assumes that OpenSSL is installed on your server.

Generate a server key file:

```
openssl genrsa -des3 -out server.key 2048
```

You will be asked to provide a password. Make sure that the password is strong because it will form the one real entry point into the SSL encryption set-up. **Make a note of the password because you’ll need it when starting Apache HTTP Server later.**

Generate a certificate request file (`server.csr`):

```
openssl req -new -key server.key -out server.csr
```

Generate a self-signed certificate (`server.crt`):

```
openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in server.csr -signkey server.key -out server.crt
```

The above command generates a self-signed certificate that is valid for one year. You can use the certificate signing request to purchase a certificate from a certificate authority. For testing purposes though, the self-signed certificate will suffice. Copy the certificate file and private key file to the locations you specified in **Step 2**.

```
 cp server.key /usr/local/apache2/conf/
 cp server.crt /usr/local/apache2/conf/
```

**Step 4: Update the base URL for 'https'**

Open a browser window and log into Bamboo using an administrator account. Go to the Bamboo administration area and click **Server settings** (under ‘Settings’). Change **Base URL** to use ‘https’.

Using a self-signed certificate

There are two implications of using the self-signed certificate:

- When you access Bamboo in a web browser, you can expect a warning to appear, alerting you that an un-trusted certificate is in use. Before proceeding you will have to indicate to the browser that you trust the certificate.
- When you perform a git clone operation, SSL verification will fail. The SSL verification error message will look something like this:

```
error:14090086:SSL routines:SSL3_GET_SERVER_CERTIFICATE:certificate verify failed while accessing https://justme@mycompany/git/TP/test.git
```

It's easy to fix. Turn SSL verification off for individual git operations by setting the `GIT_SSL_NO_VERIFY` environment variable. In Unix, you can set the variable in-line with git commands as follows:

```
GIT_SSL_NO_VERIFY=true git clone https://justme@mycompany/git/TP/test.git
```

In Windows you have to set the variable in a separate shell statement:

```
set GIT_SSL_NO_VERIFY=true
git clone https://justme@mycompany/git/TP/test.git
```

Once you have purchased and installed a signed certificate from a certificate authority, you will no longer have to include the `GIT_SSL_NO_VERIFY` modifier.

**Securing Bamboo with Tomcat using SSL**

This page is intended for administrators setting up Bamboo for a small team. It describes how to enable HTTPS (HTTP over SSL) access for Tomcat, the webserver distributed with Bamboo, using a self-signed certificate. You should consider doing this, and making secure access mandatory, if Bamboo will be internet-facing and usernames, passwords and other proprietary data may be at risk.

If you are setting up a production instance you should consider using a **CA certificate**, briefly described below.
Note that you can set up Bamboo to run behind a web server, such as Apache HTTP Server. To secure Bamboo with HTTPS, when Apache HTTP Server acts as a reverse proxy for Bamboo, see Integrating Bamboo with Apache HTTP Server.

Please note that Atlassian Support will refer SSL-related support to the issuing authority for the certificate. The documentation on this page is for reference only.

On this page:
1. Generate a self-signed certificate
2. Configure HTTPS in Tomcat
   Exporting the self-signed certificate
   Requesting a CA certificate
   Troubleshooting

Related pages:
• Integrating Bamboo with Apache HTTP Server

1. Generate a self-signed certificate

Self-signed certificates are useful where you require encryption but do not need to verify the website identity. They are commonly used for testing and on internal corporate networks (intranets).

Users may receive a warning that the site is untrusted and have to "accept" the certificate before they can access the site. This usually will only occur the first time they access the site.

The following approach to creating a certificate uses Java's keytool, for Java 1.6. Other tools for generating certificates are available.

To generate a self-signed certificate:

• Log in with the user account that Bamboo will run under, and run the following command:

  Windows
  "%JAVA_HOME%\bin\keytool" -genkey -alias tomcat -keyalg RSA

  Linux, MacOS and Unix
  $JAVA_HOME/bin/keytool -genkey -alias tomcat -keyalg RSA

  This will create (if it doesn't already exist) a new .keystore file located in the home directory of the user you used to run the keytool command.

  Note the following:
  • When running the keytool command you will be prompted with: What is your first and last name?

    You must enter the fully qualified hostname of the server running Bamboo. This is the name you would type in your web browser after 'http://' (no port number) to access your Bamboo installation. The qualified host name should match the base URL you have set in Bamboo (without the port number).

  • The keytool utility will also prompt you for two passwords: the keystore password and the key password for Tomcat.

    You must use the same value for both passwords, and the value must be either:
    1. "changeit", which is the default value Tomcat expects, or
    2. any other value, but you must also specify it in conf/server.xml by adding the following attribute to the <Connector/>

      `<keystorePass="<password value>"`

2. Configure HTTPS in Tomcat

To configure HTTPS in Tomcat:

• Edit conf/server.xml and, at the bottom, before the </Service> tag, add this section (or uncomment it if it already exists):
<Connector port="8443"
  maxHttpHeaderSize="8192"
  SSLEnabled="true"
  maxThreads="150"
  minSpareThreads="25"
  maxSpareThreads="75"
  enableLookups="false"
  disableUploadTimeout="true"
  useBodyEncodingForURI="true"
  acceptCount="100"
  scheme="https"
  secure="true"
  clientAuth="false"
  sslProtocol="TLS" />

This enables SSL access on port 8443 (the default for HTTPS is 443, but 8443 is used instead of 443 to avoid conflicts).

Exporting the self-signed certificate

If Bamboo will run as the user who ran the keytool --genkey command, you do not need to export the certificate.

You may need to export the self-signed certificate, so that you can import it into a different keystore, if Bamboo will not be run as the user executing keytool --genkey. You can do so with the following command:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Windows</th>
<th>$JAVA_HOME\bin\keytool -export -alias tomcat -file file.cer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Linux, MacOS and Unix</td>
<td>$JAVA_HOME/bin/keytool -export -alias tomcat -file file.cer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you generate the certificate as one user and run Bamboo as another, you'll need to do the certificate export as the generating user and the import as the target user.

Requesting a CA certificate

Digital certificates that are issued by trusted 3rd party CAs (Certification Authorities) provide verification that your website does indeed represent your company.

When running Bamboo in a production environment, you will need a certificate issued by a CA, such as VeriSign, DigiCert or Thawte. The instructions below are adapted from the Tomcat documentation.

First, you will generate a local certificate and create a 'certificate signing request' (CSR) based on that certificate. You then submit the CSR to your chosen certificate authority. The CA will use that CSR to generate a certificate for you.

1. Use Java's keytool utility to generate a local certificate, as described in the section above.
2. Use the keytool utility to generate a CSR, replacing the text <MY_KEYSTORE_FILENAME> with the path to and file name of the keystore file generated for your local certificate:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Windows</th>
<th>&quot;%JAVA_HOME\bin\keytool&quot; -certreq -keyalg RSA -alias tomcat -file certreq.csr -keystore &lt;MY_KEYSTORE_FILENAME&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Linux, MacOS and Unix</td>
<td>$JAVA_HOME/bin/keytool -certreq -keyalg RSA -alias tomcat -file certreq.csr -keystore &lt;MY_KEYSTORE_FILENAME&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Submit the generated file called certreq.csr to your chosen certificate authority. Refer to the documentation on the CA's website to find out how to do this.
4. The CA will send you a certificate.
5. Import the new certificate into your local keystore. Assuming your certificate is called "file.cer" whether obtained from a CA or self-generated, the following command will add the certificate to the keystore:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Windows</th>
<th>&quot;%JAVA_HOME\bin\keytool&quot; -import -alias tomcat -file file.cer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
Troubleshooting

Here are some troubleshooting tips if you are using a self-signed key created by keytool, or a CA certificate, as described above.

When you enter "https://localhost:8443/" in your browser, if you get a message such as "Cannot establish a connection to the server at localhost:8443", look for error messages in your logs/catalina.out log file. Here are some possible errors with explanations:

SSL + Apache + IE problems

Some people have reported errors when uploading attachments over SSL using IE. This is due to an IE bug, and can be fixed in Apache by setting:

```bash
BrowserMatch ".MSIE." 
  nokeepalive ssl-unclean-shutdown 
  downgrade-1.0 force-response-1.0
```

Google has plenty more on this.

Can't find the keystore

java.io.FileNotFoundException: /home/user/.keystore (No such file or directory)

This indicates that Tomcat cannot find the keystore. The keytool utility creates the keystore as a file called .keystore in the current user’s home directory. For Unix/Linux the home directory is likely to be /home/username. For Windows it is likely to be C:\User\<UserName>.

Make sure you are running Bamboo as the same user who created the keystore. If this is not the case, or if you are running Bamboo on Windows as a service, you will need to specify where the keystore file is in conf/server.xml. Add the following attribute to the connector tag you uncommented:

```xml
keystoreFile="<location of keystore file>"
```

Incorrect password

java.io.IOException: Keystore was tampered with, or password was incorrect

You used a different password than "changeit". You must either use "changeit" for both the keystore password and for the key password for Tomcat, or if you want to use a different password, you must specify it using the keystorePass attribute of the Connector tag, as described above.

Passwords don’t match

java.io.IOException: Cannot recover key

You specified a different value for the keystore password and the key password for Tomcat. Both passwords must be the same.

Wrong certificate

javax.net.ssl.SSLException: No available certificate corresponds to the SSL cipher suites which are enabled.

If the Keystore has more than one certificate, Tomcat will use the first returned unless otherwise specified in the SSL Connector in conf/server.xml.

Add the keyAlias attribute to the Connector tag you uncommented, with the relevant alias, for example:
Using Apache Portable Runtime

APR uses a different SSL engine, and you will see an exception like this in your logs

```
SEVERE: Failed to initialize connector [Connector[HTTP/1.1-8443]]
LifecycleException: Protocol handler initialization failed: java.lang.Exception: No Certificate file specified or invalid file format
```

The reason for this is that the APR Connector uses OpenSSL and cannot use the keystore in the same way. You can rectify this in one of two ways:

**Use the Http11Protocol to handle SSL connections**

Edit the server.xml so that the SSL Connector tag you just uncommented specifies the Http11Protocol instead of the APR protocol:

```
<Connector port="8443"
    maxHttpHeaderSize="8192"
    SSLEnabled="true"
    keystoreFile="${user.home}/.keystore"
    maxThreads="150"
    enableLookups="false"
    disableUploadTimeout="true"
    acceptCount="100"
    scheme="https"
    secure="true"
    clientAuth="false"
    sslProtocol="TLS"
    useBodyEncodingForURI="true"/>
```

**Configure the Connector to use the APR protocol**

This is only possible if you have PEM encoded certificates and private keys. If you have used OpenSSL to generate your key, then you will have these PEM encoded files - in all other cases contact your certificate provider for assistance.
Enabling client authentication

To enable client authentication in Tomcat, ensure that the value of the `clientAuth` attribute in your `Connector` element of your Tomcat's `server.xml` file is `true`.

```xml
<Connector port="8443" maxThreads="200" scheme="https" secure="true" SSLEnabled="true"
    SSLCertificateFile="${user.home}/certificate.pem"
    SSLCertificateKeyFile="${user.home}/key.pem"
    clientAuth="optional"
    SSLProtocol="TLSv1"/>
```

For more information about `Connector` element parameters, please refer to the 'SSL Support' section of the Tomcat 6.0 documentation.

Wrong certificate type

If the certificate from the CA is in PKCS12 format, add the `keystoreType` attribute to the SSL Connector in `conf/server.xml`.

```xml
<Connector... clientAuth="true"... />
```

For more information about `Connector` element parameters, please refer to the 'SSL Support' section of the Tomcat 6.0 documentation.

Certificate chain is incomplete

If the root certificate and intermediary certificate(s) aren't imported into the keystore before the entity/domain certificate, you will see the following error:

```
[root@dev atlas# /usr/java/jdk1.7.0_17/bin/keytool -import -alias
tomcat -file my_entity_cert.crt
Enter keystore password:
keytool error: java.lang.Exception: Failed to establish chain from reply
```

Most likely, the CA sent a compressed file containing several certificates. The import order matters so you must import the root certificate first, followed by one or many intermediate certificates, followed lastly by the entity/domain certificate. There are many resources online that provide guidance for certificate installation for Tomcat (Java-based) web servers using keytool.

Disabling SSH access to elastic instances

By default, SSH (Secure Shell) access is enabled for elastic instances, the first time that you use Elastic Bamboo. Access rules for the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) are managed by 'security groups' in the Amazon Web Services Console. You can disable SSH access for your elastic instances by changing the EC2 access rules to remove the 'SSH' Connection Method from the 'elasticbamboo' security group.

For instructions on changing the EC2 access rules for Elastic Bamboo, please read the Elastic Bamboo Security document.

Changing Bamboo's root context path

There are various reasons why you may wish to change Bamboo's context path. Two of those are:

- You are running Bamboo behind a proxy.
- You have another Atlassian application, or Java web application, available at the same hostname and context path as Bamboo, and are experiencing login problems.
Changing the context path for Bamboo:

1. Navigate to the directory where you are running Bamboo from. This is the install directory that you extracted Bamboo to, not Bamboo home.
2. Stop Bamboo. This can be done using /bin/stop-bamboo.bat on Windows or /bin/stop-bamboo.sh on OSX or Linux.
3. Edit conf/server.xml and find the element below:

   `<Context path="" docBase="${catalina.home}/atlassian-bamboo" reloadable="false" useHttpOnly="true"/>`

   Update the `path` attribute to reflect the context path that you want Bamboo to be accessible at, e.g. "/bamboo":

   `<Context path="/bamboo" docBase="${catalina.home}/atlassian-bamboo" reloadable="false" useHttpOnly="true"/>`

   Then save the file.

4. Start Bamboo using /bin/start-bamboo.bat on Windows or /bin/start-bamboo.sh on OSX or Linux.

   Bamboo should now be available at the same host as before under the new context path. For example a server that was at http://localhost:8085 will now be reachable at http://localhost:8085/bamboo.
5. Once Bamboo has started, go to the administration area and click General Configuration (under 'System'). Add the new context path to your base URL:

   `https://my-bamboo-hostname:8085/bamboo`

6. Click Save.

Bamboo + Apache

Note that if you are running Bamboo behind Apache:

- You will need to make sure that the host or context path that Bamboo is exposed on is not also being used by another web application that is listening on a different port.
- If you have updated the Bamboo context path using the steps outlined above, you will need to update your Apache configuration, as described in Integrating Bamboo with Apache HTTP Server.

Collecting analytics for Bamboo

We are continuously working to improve Bamboo. Data about how you use Bamboo helps us do that. We have updated our Privacy Policy so that we may collect usage data automatically unless you disable collection. The data we collect includes information about the systems on which your installation of Bamboo is operating and the features you use in Bamboo.

For more details, see our Privacy Policy, in particular the 'Analytics Information from Downloadable Products' section. See also our End User Agreement.

How to change data collection settings?

You can opt in to, or out of, data collection at any time. A Bamboo admin can change the data collection settings by going to Analytics (under 'Settings') in the Bamboo admin area.

How is data collected?
We use the Atlassian Analytics plugin to collect event data in Bamboo. Analytics logs are stored locally and then periodically uploaded to a secure location.

### Bamboo Instance Health check

Bamboo provides a set of tools that you can use to monitor the health of your instance, as well as to identify the root cause when the instance is not performing as expected.

It's recommended that you look at the status of the health check tools after you install Bamboo or when you need to troubleshoot your setup.

To access the health check tools, go to

> System > Atlassian Support Tools. Then choose the Health Checks tab.

Health checks visibility is dependent on your instance setup. For example, MySQL health checks are visible only if you're using a MySQL database.

Instance Health is a functionality provided by a built-in Support Tools Plugin. For more information, see Instance Health.

#### Bamboo Instance Health check types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo Embedded database</td>
<td>Checks if the instance is connected to an HSQL database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo MySQL Max Allowed Packet</td>
<td>Checks if the max_allowed_packet variable in your MySQL database is appropriate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo MySQL Character Set</td>
<td>Checks if the character set used by the tables, columns and database defaults in your MySQL database is correct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo MySQL Collation</td>
<td>Checks if the collation used by the tables, columns and database defaults in your MySQL database is correct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo MySQL InnoDB Log File Size</td>
<td>Checks if the innodb_log_file_size variable in your MySQL database is appropriate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Bamboo Embedded database

This check verifies if the instance is connected to an HSQL database.

The HSQL database is provided for evaluating Bamboo and is not supported as a production database. To keep your data safe, migrate to a production database once you finish the evaluation and before moving the instance to production.

For more information about how to move to a supported database, see Moving your Bamboo data to a different database.

#### Bamboo MySQL Max Allowed Packet

This check verifies if the max_allowed_packet variable in your MySQL database is appropriate.

If the packet size limit is too small, it may cause problems with saving build results to the database.

For more information about the packet size limit, see:

- Unable to Save Build Results to the Database due to Error 'Packet for query is too large'
- MySQL Packet Too Large

#### Bamboo MySQL Character Set

This check verifies the correctness of the character set that is used by tables, columns, and database defaults in your MySQL database.

Character set issues affect not only data storage, but also communication between client programs and the MySQL server.

For more information about character sets, see MySQL Character Set Support.

#### Bamboo MySQL Collation

The check verifies the correctness of the collation used by tables, columns, and database defaults in your MySQL database.
Incorrect collation may result in data loss, incorrect results, unwanted sorting orders, and poor performance.

For more information, see MySQL Collation Implementation Types.

**Bamboo MySQL InnoDB Log File Size**

This check verifies if the innodb_log_file_size variable in your MySQL database is appropriate.

A fail might be caused either by the maximum allowed packet size of the MySQL server being too small or when the InnoDB log file is too small (sometimes both).

For more information, see:

- MySQLSyntaxErrorException: Row size too large
- MySQL Limits on Table Column Count and Row Size

**Installing and upgrading**

**Release notes**

**Bamboo releases**

- Bamboo 5.9
  - Release Notes
- Bamboo 5.8
  - Release Notes
- Bamboo 5.7
  - Release Notes
- Bamboo 5.6
  - Release Notes
- Bamboo 5.5
  - Release Notes

**Installing**

- Installing Bamboo on Linux
- Installing Bamboo on Mac OS X
- Installing Bamboo on Windows
- Connecting Bamboo to an external database
- Bamboo remote agent installation guide

**Supported platforms**
Upgrading

Bamboo upgrade guide

Security advisories

Bamboo security advisories

- Bamboo Security Advisory 2014-05-21
- Bamboo Security Advisory 2014-02-26
- Bamboo Security Advisory 2013-07-16

Supported platforms

This page describes the supported platforms for Bamboo 5.15.

See also:

- End of support announcements for Bamboo
- Bamboo Best Practice - System Requirements
- stock images

Java

You only need to run the agent and server using a supported JDK. Agents can build software with any JDK version.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flavor</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Support</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oracle JDK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>For Bamboo server, it is not enough to have just the JRE. Please ensure that you have the full JDK. You can download the Java SE Development Kit (JDK) from the Oracle website.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>no</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>no</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>no</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpenJDK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>no</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>no</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Once the JDK is installed, you will need to set the JAVA_HOME environment variable, pointing to the root directory of the JDK. Some JDK installers set this automatically (check by typing 'echo %JAVA_HOME%' in a command prompt, or 'echo $JAVA_HOME' in a shell). You need to do this before installing Bamboo, as Bamboo will automatically configure JDK capabilities based on the system environment variables on your machine.
Operating systems

Bamboo is a pure Java application and runs on any platform, provided all the JDK requirements are satisfied. However, only the following operating systems are supported:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Support</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Windows</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>✔️ yes</td>
<td>You should create a dedicated user to run Bamboo. Bamboo runs as the user it is invoked under and can potentially be abused.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>An example of how to create a dedicated user to run Bamboo in Linux:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$ sudo /usr/sbin/useradd --create-home --home-dir /usr/local/bamboo --shell /bin/bash bamboo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linux</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>✔️ yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solaris</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>✔️ yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>✔️ yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Application servers

Bamboo runs on a bundled Apache Tomcat and it's the only supported configuration.

Databases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Database</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Support</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MySQL</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>✔️ yes</td>
<td>MySQL is supported when used with the JDBC Connector/J 5.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.6.3</td>
<td>✔️ yes</td>
<td>Supported only with the InnoDB storage engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>✗ no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>✗ no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>✗ no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.0.x</td>
<td>✗ no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>9.2-9.6</td>
<td>✔️ yes</td>
<td>PostgreSQL is supported when used with the JDBC driver bundled with Bamboo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.0, 9.1</td>
<td>✗ no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.x</td>
<td>✗ no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft SQL Server</td>
<td>2012, 2014, 2016</td>
<td>✔️ yes</td>
<td>SQL Server is supported when used with JTDS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2005, 2008</td>
<td>✗ no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle</td>
<td>12c</td>
<td>✔️ yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10g, 11g</td>
<td>✗ no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSQLDB</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>✔️ yes</td>
<td>Bamboo ships with a built-in HSQL database, which is fine for evaluation purposes but is somewhat susceptible to data loss during system crashes. For production environments we recommend that you configure Bamboo to use an external database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Web browsers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Browser</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Support</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Edge</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>Latest stable version supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Internet Explorer</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8, 9, 10</td>
<td>✗ no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mozilla Firefox</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>Latest stable version supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safari</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chrome</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Source repositories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Repository</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Support</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mercurial</td>
<td>1.7+</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>We support the latest minor releases of versions 1.7+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subversion</td>
<td>1.5-1.8 (version requirement applies only to the server)</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>• Bamboo 4.2, and later versions, support Subversion 1.7, but use the Subversion 1.6 Workspace Format by default to keep backwards compatibility with older Subversion working copies. You can set the <code>bamboo.svn.wc.format</code> system property if your Bamboo plans need to use Subversion 1.7 commands as part of your build scripts. See <a href="#">Setting Bamboo to Support Subversion 1.7 Workspace Format</a> for details.  • Bamboo works with Subversion 1.8, and supports the 1.8 Workspace Format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Git</td>
<td>with client 1.8</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>On Windows, we recommend using Git for Windows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perforce</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVS</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Agents and custom images

Atlassian doesn’t provide support for customized images. Bamboo provides flexibility to use customized machine images, but it’s impossible for us to support all individual configurations.

Use Bamboo stock images as the base for all image customizations to ensure a minimal level of consistency of your Elastic Bamboo setup.

### Operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Support</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Windows</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>Bamboo is a pure Java application and runs on any platform, provided all the JDK requirements are satisfied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linux</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>You must create a dedicated user to run Bamboo. Bamboo runs as the user it is invoked under and can potentially be abused.  An example of how to create a dedicated user to run Bamboo in Linux:  <code>bash  $ sudo /usr/sbin/useradd --create-home --home-dir /usr/local.bamboo --shell /bin/bash bamboo  </code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solaris</td>
<td>with Java JDK 1.8</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>☑ yes</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License](#).
End of support announcements for Bamboo

This page announces the end of support for various platforms and browsers used with Atlassian Bamboo.

### Why is Atlassian ending support for these platforms?
Atlassian is committed to delivering improvements and bug fixes as fast as possible. We are also committed to providing world class support for all the platforms our customers run our software on. However, as new versions of databases, web browsers etc. are released, the cost of supporting multiple platforms grows exponentially, making it harder to provide the level of support our customers have come to expect from us. Therefore, we no longer support platform versions marked as end-of-life by the vendor, or very old versions that are no longer widely used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Announcement date</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>End of support for Oracle 11g</td>
<td>18 May 2016</td>
<td>The end of support for Oracle 11g databases with the upcoming release of Bamboo Server 5.12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End of support for MySQL 5.5</td>
<td>18 May 2016</td>
<td>The end of support for MySQL 5.5 with the upcoming release of Bamboo Server 5.12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deprecation of PostgreSQL 9.0 and 9.1</td>
<td>16 May 2016</td>
<td>The deprecation ofpostgresql 9.0 and 9.1 with the upcoming release of Bamboo Server 5.12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End of support for PostgreSQL 8</td>
<td>13 April 2016</td>
<td>The end of support for PostgreSQL 8 with the upcoming release of Bamboo Server 5.11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End of support for Microsoft SQL Server 2005 and 2008</td>
<td>13 April 2016</td>
<td>The end of support for Microsoft SQL Server 2005 and 2008 with the upcoming release of Bamboo Server 5.11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deprecation of Oracle 11g</td>
<td>13 April 2016</td>
<td>The deprecation of the Oracle 11g database with the upcoming release of Bamboo Server 5.11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End of support for Windows 2008 and Amazon Linux 32bit stock images</td>
<td>13 April 2016</td>
<td>The end of support for Windows 2008 and Amazon Linux 32bit images in Bamboo Server with the upcoming release of Bamboo 5.10. We will provide the last refreshed version of these images with Bamboo 5.10.0. After 5.10.0, the images will continue to be available on upgraded instances, but will not be shown anymore on new installations. Note that the 32bit variant of Amazon Linux has been abandoned by Amazon in 2014 and no longer receives security fixes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End of support for MySQL 5.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>The end of support for MySQL 5.1 in Bamboo Server with the upcoming release of Bamboo 5.10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End of support for Internet Explorer 9 and 10</td>
<td></td>
<td>The end of support for Internet Explorer 9 and 10 in Bamboo Server with the upcoming release of Bamboo 5.10.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
End of support for JDK 6 and 7 | 26 October 2015 | We’re announcing the end of support for JDK 6 and 7 in Bamboo Server with the upcoming release of Bamboo 5.10.
It means that agents, custom images, and Bamboo itself won’t run against a JDK less than 8.
We highly recommend upgrading to the latest version of JDK 8 as soon as you upgrade to Bamboo 5.10 to avoid any issues with existing agents or custom images. The stock images are upgraded automatically.

**Note:** Atlassian doesn’t provide support for customized images. Bamboo provides flexibility to use customized machine images, but it’s impossible for us to support all individual configurations.

**Tips:**
- Try to match the layout and scripts of our stock images as closely as possible.
- Choose Oracle if you have the choice between Oracle and OpenJDK flavor of JDK.

**Related links:**
- Bamboo supported platforms
- Managing your elastic images
- Managing your elastic agents
- Latest Oracle JDK 8 download

| Deprecation of Windows 2008 images | 16 October 2015 | The deprecation of support for Windows 2008 images. After 5.1 s0.0, the images will continue to be available on upgraded instances, but will not be shown anymore on new installations.

| Deprecation of Amazon Linux 32bit images | 16 October 2015 | The deprecation of support for 32bit Amazon Linux images. We will provide the last refreshed version of these images with Bamboo 5.10.0. After 5.10.0, the images will continue to be available on upgraded instances, but will not be shown anymore on new installations. Note that the 32bit variant of Amazon Linux has been abandoned by Amazon in 2014 and no longer receives security fixes.

| Deprecation of PostgreSQL 8 | 17 March 2015 | The deprecation of support for PostgreSQL 8 in Bamboo. PostgreSQL 8 will no longer be supported in a future release of Bamboo.


| Deprecation of MySQL 5.1 | 17 March 2015 | The deprecation of support for MySQL 5.1 in Bamboo. MySQL 5.1 will no longer be supported in a future release of Bamboo.

| Deprecation of Java 7 | 17 March 2015 | The deprecation of support for Java 7 in Bamboo. Java 7 will no longer be supported in a future release of Bamboo.

| Deprecation of Java 6 | 11 November 2014 | The deprecation of support for Java 6 in Bamboo. Java 6 will no longer be supported in a future release of Bamboo.

| Deprecation of Apache Tomcat 5.5 and 6.0 | 11 February 2014 | In version 5.5, Bamboo will no longer support Apache Tomcat 5.5 and 6.0, and will only support Apache Tomcat 7.0 and above. Bamboo 5.5 is expected to be released later in 2014.

| Deprecation of Internet Explorer 8 | 15 October 2013 | In version 5.3, Bamboo will no longer support Internet Explorer 8, and will only support Internet Explorer 9 and above. Bamboo 5.3 is expected to be released later in 2013.

| Deprecation of Maven Artifact Sharing plugin 8 | 15 October 2013 | In version 5.3, Bamboo will no longer support the Maven artifact sharing plugin. Bamboo 5.3 is expected to be released later in 2013.
This section announces the end of Atlassian support for certain database versions for Bamboo. End of support means that Atlassian will not fix bugs related to certain database versions past the support end date.

We will stop supporting the following database versions in Bamboo 3.4, from December 2011:

- MySQL 5.0
- Oracle 10g

The details are below. Please refer to the list of supported platforms for details of platform support for Bamboo. If you have questions or concerns regarding this announcement, please email eol-announcement at atlassian dot com.

### End of Life Announcement for Database Support

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Database</th>
<th>Support End Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MySQL 5.0</td>
<td>When Bamboo 3.4 releases, after December 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle 10g</td>
<td>When Bamboo 3.4 releases, after December 2011</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes for MySQL 5.0 and Oracle 10g:**

- Atlassian intends to end support for MySQL 5.0 and Oracle 10g in Bamboo 3.4. Bamboo 3.3 is the last version that will support MySQL 5.0 and Oracle 10g.
- ‘Support End Date’ means that Bamboo 3.3 and previously released versions will continue to work with MySQL 5.0 and Oracle 10g. However, Atlassian will not fix bugs affecting MySQL 5.0 and Oracle 10g past the support end date.
- Bamboo 3.4 will not be tested with MySQL 5.0 and Oracle 10g.

This section announces the end of Atlassian support for certain Java Platforms for Bamboo. We will stop supporting the following Java Platforms:

- From Bamboo 3.1, due in the first half of 2011, support for Java Platform 5 (JDK/JRE 1.5) will end.

We are ending support for Java Platform 5, in line with Sun’s Java SE Support Road Map (i.e. “End of Service Life” for Java Platform 5 dated October 30, 2009). We are committed to helping our customers understand this decision and assist them in updating to Java Platform 6, our supported Java Platform.

The details are below. Please refer to the Supported platforms for more details regarding platform support for Bamboo. If you have questions or concerns regarding this announcement, please email eol-announcement at atlassian dot com.

### End of Life Announcement for Java Platform Support

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Java Platform</th>
<th>Support End Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Java Platform 5 (JDK/JRE 1.5)</td>
<td>When Bamboo 3.1 releases, due in the first half of 2011</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Java Platform 5 End of Support Notes:**

- ‘Support End Date’ means that Bamboo 3.0.x and previous released versions will continue to work with Java Platform 5 (JDK/JRE 1.5), however we will not fix bugs related to Java Platform 5 past the support end date.
- Bamboo 3.1 will only be tested with and support Java Platform 6 (JDK/JRE 1.6).
- If you have concerns with this end of support announcement, please email eol-announcement at atlassian dot com.
This section announces the end of Atlassian support for certain web browser versions for Bamboo. End of support means that Atlassian will not fix bugs related to certain web browser versions past the support end date.

We will stop supporting the following web browser versions from Bamboo 3.0, due February 2011:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 7 (IE7)

The details are below. Please refer to the list of supported platforms for details of platform support for Bamboo. If you have questions or concerns regarding this announcement, please email eol-announcement at atlassian dot com.

### End of Life Announcement for Web Browser Support

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Web Browser</th>
<th>Support End Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Internet Explorer (version 7 only)</td>
<td>When Bamboo 3.0 releases, due February 2011</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Internet Explorer Notes:**

- Atlassian intends to end support for IE7 in Bamboo 3.0. Bamboo 2.7 is the last version that will support IE7.
- IE8 will still be supported.
- ‘Support End Date’ means that Bamboo 2.7 and previously released versions will continue to work with IE7. However, we will not fix bugs affecting IE7 past the support end date.
- Bamboo 3.0 will not be tested with IE7.

### Installing Bamboo on Linux

In this guide we'll run you through installing Bamboo with an external database on Linux.

Other ways to install Bamboo:

- **Evaluation** - get your free trial up and running in no time.
- **Windows** – install Bamboo on a Windows server.

### Before you begin

Before you install Bamboo, there are a few questions you need to answer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Are you using a supported operating system?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **Tell me more...**

Check the Supported platforms page for the version of Bamboo you are installing. This will give you info on supported operating systems, databases and browsers.

**Good to know:**

- We only support Bamboo on x86 and 64 bit x86 derived hardware platforms.
- You will need permissions for both the Bamboo installation and home directories.
Is your JAVA_HOME variable set correctly?

Tell me more...

Before you install Bamboo, check that you're running a supported Java version and that the JAVA_HOME environment variable is set correctly.

**Bamboo can only run with the JDK (not JRE).**

To check your Java version:

```
$ java -version
```

To check your JAVA_HOME variable is set correctly:

```
$ echo $JAVA_HOME
```

If you see a path to your Java installation directory, the JAVA_HOME environment variable has been set correctly. If a path is not returned you'll need to set your JAVA_HOME environment variable manually before installing Bamboo.

Create a dedicated user to run Bamboo.

Bamboo runs as the user it is invoked under and can potentially be abused.

Tell me more...

An example of how to create a dedicated user to run Bamboo in Linux:

```
$ sudo /usr/sbin/useradd --create-home
--home-dir /usr/local/bamboo --shell
/bin/bash bamboo
```

**Install Bamboo**

1. **Download Bamboo**

Download the tar.gz file for your operating system - [https://www.atlassian.com/software/bamboo/download](https://www.atlassian.com/software/bamboo/download)

2. **Create the installation directory**

   a) Extract the downloaded file to an install location.
   
   b) The path to the extracted directory is referred to as the *Bamboo installation directory* in these instructions.

3. **Create the home directory**

   Specify your Bamboo home directory, where your Bamboo data is stored, before you run Bamboo for the first time.

   a) Create your Bamboo home directory (without spaces in the name).

   **Note:** You should not create your Bamboo home directory inside the web application’s home directory, because if you put the home directory in the web application’s home directory, it will be overwritten, and lost, when Bamboo is upgraded.

   b) Open `<Bamboo installation directory>/atlassian-bamboo/WEB-INF/classes/bamboo-init.properties`
   
   c) Uncomment the `bamboo.home` line.
   
   d) Provide the absolute path absolute path to your home directory.

   **Example:**

   `bamboo.home= /home/nathan/bamboo/bamboo-home`

4. **Start Bamboo**

   a) In the command line, change the directory to `<Bamboo installation directory>` and run the following command:

   `bin/start-bamboo.sh`
Start using Bamboo

That's it! Your Bamboo site is accessible from a URL like this: http://<computer_name_or_IP_address>:

Here's a few things that will help you get your team up and running:

- Set up Bamboo
- Running Bamboo as a service

Running into problems installing Bamboo?

If something is not working correctly after you have completed the steps above to install Bamboo, please check for known Bamboo issues and try troubleshooting your upgrade as described below:

- Check for known issues. Sometimes we find out about a problem with the latest version of Bamboo after we have released the software. In such cases we publish information about the known issues in the Bamboo Knowledge Base. Please check the known issues in the Bamboo Knowledge Base and follow the instructions to apply any necessary patches if necessary.

- Did you encounter a problem during the Bamboo installation? Please refer to the guide to troubleshooting upgrades in the Bamboo Knowledge Base.

- If you encounter a problem during the upgrade and cannot solve it, please create a support ticket and one of our support engineers will help you.

Installing Bamboo on Mac OS X

In this guide we'll run you through installing Bamboo with an external database on Mac OS X.

Before you begin

Before you install Bamboo, there are a few questions you need to answer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Are you using a supported operating system?</th>
<th>Tell me more…</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check the Supported platforms page for the version of Bamboo you are installing. This will give you info on supported operating systems, databases and browsers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Good to know:

- We only support Bamboo on x86 and 64-bit x86 derived hardware platforms.
- You will need permissions for both the Bamboo installation and home directories.
1. Is your `JAVA_HOME` variable set correctly?

- **Tell me more...**
  
  Before you install Bamboo, check that you're running a supported Java version and that the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable is set correctly.

  **Bamboo can only run with the JDK (not JRE).**

  To check your Java version:

  ```
  java -version
  ```

  To check your `JAVA_HOME` variable is set correctly:

  ```
  echo $JAVA_HOME
  ```

  If you see a path to your Java installation directory, the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable has been set correctly. If a path is not returned you'll need to set your `JAVA_HOME` environment variable manually before installing Bamboo.

---

1. **Download Bamboo**

   1. Download the Bamboo `tar.gz` archive.
   2. Extract the downloaded file to a selected location.
      
      The path to the extracted directory is referred to as the `<Bamboo installation directory>` in these instructions.

2. **Specify your Bamboo home location**

   Specify your Bamboo home directory, where your Bamboo data is stored, before you run Bamboo for the first time.

   a) Create your Bamboo home directory (without spaces in the name).

   **Note:** You should not create your Bamboo home directory inside the `<Bamboo installation directory>` — they should be entirely separate locations. If you do put the home directory in the `<Bamboo installation directory>` it will be overwritten, and lost, when Bamboo is upgraded.

   b) Open `<Bamboo installation directory>/atlassian-bamboo/WEB-INF/classes/bamboo-init.properties`.

   c) Uncomment the `bamboo.home` line.

   d) Provide the absolute path to your home directory.

   **Example:**

   ```
   bamboo.home= /home/nathan/bamboo/bamboo-home
   ```

3. **Start Bamboo**

   a) In the command line, change the directory to `<Bamboo installation directory>` and run the following command:

   ```
   bin/start-bamboo.sh
   ```

   b) In your Web browser, enter the following address: `http://localhost:8085`

4. **Configure Bamboo**

   Follow the Setup Wizard to configure Bamboo. See **Running the Setup Wizard**.

---

**Start using Bamboo**

That's it! Your Bamboo site is accessible from a URL like this: `http://<computer_name_or_IP_address>:<port>`

Here's a few things that will help you get your team up and running:

- Set up Bamboo
- Running Bamboo as a service
Troubleshooting

Running into problems installing Bamboo?
If something is not working correctly after you have completed the steps above to install Bamboo, please check for known Bamboo issues and try troubleshooting your upgrade as described below:

- **Check for known issues.** Sometimes we find out about a problem with the latest version of Bamboo after we have released the software. In such cases we publish information about the known issues in the Bamboo Knowledge Base. Please check the known issues in the Bamboo Knowledge Base and follow the instructions to apply any necessary patches if necessary.

- **Did you encounter a problem during the Bamboo installation?** Please refer to the guide to troubleshooting upgrades in the Bamboo Knowledge Base.

- If you encounter a problem during the upgrade and cannot solve it, please create a support ticket and one of our support engineers will help you.

Installing Bamboo on Windows

In this guide we'll run you through installing Bamboo with an external database on Windows.

**On this page**

Before you begin:
1. Download Bamboo
2. Start Bamboo
3. Configure Bamboo
4. Start using Bamboo
5. Troubleshooting

**Before you begin:**

Before you install Bamboo, there are a few questions you need to answer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Are you using a supported operating system?</th>
<th><strong>Tell me more...</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check the <strong>Supported platforms</strong> page for the version of Bamboo you are installing. This will give you info on supported operating systems, databases and browsers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Good to know:**

- We only support Bamboo on x86 and 64 bit x86 derived hardware platforms.
- You will need permissions for both the Bamboo installation and home directories.
1. Download Bamboo

Download Bamboo from the Atlassian download site. You can choose either the Windows Installer version (.exe) or a ZIP Archive (.zip).

**Installing using the Windows Installer**

i. Launch the Bamboo Windows installer to begin the installation wizard.

ii. The installer requires you to specify two directories:

- **Destination directory** — This is the directory where Bamboo’s application files will be installed. The default is:
  
  ```
  C:\Program Files\Bamboo
  ```

- **Bamboo home directory** — This is the directory where Bamboo will store its configuration data. If the directory you specify doesn’t exist, Bamboo will create the directory when it launches. The default is:
  
  ```
  C:\Users\<current-user>\Bamboo-home
  ```

Ensure that the Bamboo home directory is not located inside the `<Bamboo installation directory>`. 

**Installing using the Zip archive**

i. Extract the files from the zip Archive to a `<Bamboo installation directory>` of your choice. By default, the root directory in your zip file is named "Bamboo".

**Warning: Some unzip programs cause errors**
Some archive-extract programs cause errors when unzipping the Bamboo archive file. We highly recommend that you use the free 7Zip archive-extract program (if in doubt, download the ‘32-bit .exe’ version).

ii. Set up your **Bamboo home directory** — this is the directory where Bamboo will store its root configuration data. To do this, edit the file named `bamboo-init.properties` in the `<Bamboo installation directory>/atlassian-bamboo/WEB-INF/classes/` directory. In this file, insert the property “bamboo.home”, with an absolute path to your Bamboo home directory. Your file should look something like this:
bamboo.home=C:/test/bamboo-home

Alternatively, you can specify an environment variable 'BAMBOO_HOME' which specifies the absolute path to your Bamboo home directory. Bamboo will check if an environment variable is defined.

iii. If you are going to use Bamboo remote agents, set the following in the bamboo-init.properties file in the <Bamboo installation directory>/atlassian-bamboo/WEB-INF/classes directory:

```
bamboo.jms.broker.uri=tcp://localhost:54663
```

- Replace 'localhost' with the real host name or IP address of your Bamboo server.
- If port number 54663 is already in use, specify a different port number

2. Start Bamboo

   a) In the command line, change the directory to <Bamboo installation directory> and run the following command:

   ```
   bin\start-bamboo.bat
   ```

   b) In your Web browser, enter the following address:  http://localhost:8085/

3. Configure Bamboo

   Follow the Setup Wizard to configure Bamboo. See Running the Setup Wizard.

Start using Bamboo

That's it! Your Bamboo site is accessible from a URL like this: http://<computer_name_or_IP_address>:<port>

Here's a few things that will help you get your team up and running:

- Set up Bamboo
- Running Bamboo as a service

Troubleshooting

- Running into problems installing Bamboo?

  If something is not working correctly after you have completed the steps above to install Bamboo, please check for known Bamboo issues and try troubleshooting your upgrade as described below:

  - **Check for known issues.** Sometimes we find out about a problem with the latest version of Bamboo after we have released the software. In such cases we publish information about the known issues in the Bamboo Knowledge Base. Please check the known issues in the Bamboo Knowledge Base and follow the instructions to apply any necessary patches if necessary.

  - **Did you encounter a problem during the Bamboo installation?** Please refer to the guide to troubleshooting upgrades in the Bamboo Knowledge Base.

  - If you encounter a problem during the upgrade and cannot solve it, please create a support ticket and one of our support engineers will help you.
Running the Setup Wizard

When you launch Bamboo for the first time, the Bamboo setup wizard will display. The wizard will lead you through the Bamboo settings that you need to configure before you can start using it.

**Before you begin**
If you are currently using Atlassian's Crowd with Bamboo and wish to import existing data into Bamboo (see Step 5. Starting Data below), you will need to disable Crowd before starting the Setup Wizard. To do this, go to Administration > User Repositories (under 'Security') and choose Local users and groups.

You can then re-enable Crowd and restart Bamboo at the completion of the Setup Wizard.

**Step 1. License Details and Setup Method**

You must have a valid Bamboo license (evaluation or commercial) to use Bamboo. You can generate your own Bamboo evaluation license from your MyAtlassian self-service account here.

Once you have entered a valid license key, you can choose which setup method you prefer for your Bamboo installation:

- **Express Installation** — use this method if you are evaluating or demonstrating Bamboo.
  - The 'Express Installation' method requires only a minimum of configuration information. It sets up Bamboo with default settings and an embedded database (HSQL).
  - If you choose the 'Express Installation' method you can skip to Step 6. Set Up Administrator User below.

- **Custom Installation** — use this method if you are setting up a production instance of Bamboo.
  - The 'Custom Installation' method takes longer, but allows you to configure Bamboo with an external database, customize the default settings, and/or initialize the server with your own data.
  - If you choose, the 'Custom Installation' method, proceed to Step 2. General Configuration below.

**On this page:**
Step 1. License Details and Setup Method
Step 2. General Configuration
Step 3. Choose a Database Configuration
Step 4. Database Configuration
Step 5. Starting Data
Step 6. Set Up Administrator User

**Related pages:**
- Installing Bamboo on Linux
- Installing Bamboo on Mac OS X
- Installing Bamboo on Windows

**Screenshot: License Details and Setup Method**
Step 2. General Configuration

**This step applies to the ‘Custom Installation’ method only.**

On this page you specify a number of Bamboo server settings, such as the address of the server, where data is stored and the message broker used to communicate with remote agents.

You may find it simplest to keep the default settings for the three directory settings, in the table. For more information please see Locations important directories and files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>See Specifying Bamboo’s Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base URL</td>
<td>See Specifying Bamboo’s URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Directory</td>
<td>The location for Bamboo configuration files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build Data Directory</td>
<td>The location for Bamboo project data files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build Working Directory</td>
<td>The location of project files checked out from source control.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Broker URL        | Only visible if you are permitted remote agents under your Bamboo license.  
|                   | The URL of the embedded messaging broker that Bamboo sets up to communicate with its remote build agents. This URL will be written to bamboo.cfg.xml as a property. You can update this file if you want to change your Broker URL.  
|                   | • Replace localhost with the real host name or IP address of your Bamboo server. You should not use localhost as the host name in the Broker URL, as remote agents are provided with the Broker URL on startup and use it to communicate to the server.  
|                   | • If port number 54663 is already in use, specify a different port number. |
| Broker client URL | The URL used by agents to connect to the broker. This URL will be written to bamboo.cfg.xml as a property. You can update this file if you want to change your Broker URL. The default includes an actual IP of the Bamboo server. Specify if the default IP is not reachable from the agents. |

Screenshot: General Configuration
Step 3. Choose a Database Configuration

This step applies to the 'Custom Installation' method only.

Picking a database configuration is an important choice. If you pick the 'Embedded Database' configuration, you do not have to set up a database. However, the embedded HSQL database is only suitable for evaluation purposes. You will need to move to an external database, if you decide to deploy Bamboo in production at a later stage (as described in Moving your Bamboo data to a different database).

Choose one of the following:

- **Embedded** — Choose this for quick and easy first-time installation of Bamboo. This option is suitable for evaluation purposes only. Skip to Step 5. Starting Data.

- **External** — Choose this if you wish to use an external database. Proceed to Step 4. Database Configuration below.

Screenshot: Choose a Database Configuration
Step 4. Database Configuration

ℹ️ This step applies to the 'Custom Installation' method only.

If you selected 'External Database' in Step 3, you will need to provide the configuration details for your database. Please see Connecting Bamboo to an external database for further instructions.

Screenshot: Database Configuration

Choose a database configuration

- **Embedded**: The embedded database will allow Bamboo to operate without an external database.
- **External**: If you wish to store your Bamboo data in an external database, choose it from the list of supported databases. This is recommended for production systems. If your database is not listed in the menu, you may configure an 'unsupported database', but be aware that Bamboo may not be fully tested.

PostgreSQL 8.2 and above

Continue

Step 5. Starting Data

ℹ️ This step applies to the 'Custom Installation' method only.

Screenshot: Starting Data

Select starting data for Bamboo

- **Create a new Bamboo home**
- **Import existing data**

Continue
On this page you specify how Bamboo will populate the 'home directory' that you set up when you installed Bamboo.

Choose one of the following:

- **Create new Bamboo home** — choose this if you are performing a normal installation or upgrade.
- **Import existing data** — only choose this under exceptional circumstances, e.g. if you are connecting Bamboo to a different database, or moving your pre-existing Bamboo installation to a different server. Avoid importing backups from different versions of Bamboo.

### Step 6. Set Up Administrator User

The final step of the setup wizard is to enter the details of the first registered user for the Bamboo system. This user will have global administrative privileges over the entire installation of Bamboo and should not be removed.

Once you have entered the details for your administrator user, click **Finish**. The Bamboo dashboard will be displayed.

Congratulations, you have successfully set up Bamboo!

**Screenshot: Set Up Administrator User**

---

**Bamboo remote agent installation guide**

**Before you begin**

Before you begin installing remote agents, there are a few questions you need to answer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you need to install a remote agent?</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Agents and capabilities</a> to understand how remote agents interact with your Bamboo server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you have sufficient agent licenses?</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Bamboo licensing</a> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does your system meet the minimum requirements?</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Supported platforms</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you have a supported version of Java installed on the agent machine</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Supported platforms</a>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that you can run multiple Bamboo agents on the same machine – you just need to provide a separate home directory for each agent installation.

**On this page:**

**Before you begin**

1. Enable remote agent support
2. Download and install the remote agent
3. Launch the remote agent
4. Configure the remote agent’s capabilities

**Related pages:**

- Configuring remote agent capabilities using `bamboo-capabilities.properties`
- Implementing a remote agent service wrapper
- Legacy remote agent installation guide
- Enabling creation of remote agents
- Specifying a Broker URL
1. Enable remote agent support

1. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
2. In the left-hand panel, under Build Resources, click Agents.
3. Click either Enable Remote Agent Support or Disable Remote Agent Support.

Read more about enabling and disabling remote agent support here.

2. Download and install the remote agent

1. Create a directory on the agent machine (e.g. bamboo-agent-home) to serve as the Bamboo agent home for the remote agent.
2. Click the icon in the Bamboo header and choose Overview.
3. In the left-hand panel, under Build Resource, click Agents in the left panel. The 'Agents' screen displays showing the lists of all local agents and all remote agents that currently exist on your Bamboo system.
4. If not already enabled, click the Enable remote agent support link
5. Click Install Remote Agent. The 'Installing a remote agent' screen will display
6. Click DOWNLOAD Remote Agent JAR and save the JAR file to the directory on the agent machine that you created above.
7. Copy the command under 'Running a Remote Agent' to the clipboard for use in Step 3 that follows.

3. Launch the remote agent

Once installed, run the remote agent by executing the command line obtained above. This command will look something like this:

```
java -jar atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer-X.X-SNAPSHOT.jar
http://bamboo-host-server:8085/bamboo/agentServer/
```

Where X.X represents your Bamboo version number.

If you are having issues launching the agent, then take a look at our troubleshooting guide.

4. Configure the remote agent’s capabilities

All remote agents feature a capability that can be defined. Examples include an executable, such as Maven, a JDK, a DVCS client or a custom capability. They typically define the path to an executable that has already been installed, and must be defined in Bamboo before Bamboo or its agents can make use of them.

Capabilities can be defined specifically for an agent, or shared between all local or all remote agents.

See Configuring capabilities for more on defining capabilities.

Configuring remote agent capabilities using bamboo-capabilities.properties

You can define the capabilities for a specific remote agent by using a configuration file on the agent machine. When the Bamboo agent starts up, it will look in the current runtime directory (i.e. <bamboo-agent-home>/bin) for a file named bamboo-capabilities.properties. The capabilities defined in that file will then be published for the Bamboo agent after registering.
To configure remote agent capabilities:

1. Shut down the remote agent, if it is running.
2. Create a file named `bamboo-capabilities.properties` in the current runtime directory (i.e. `<bamboo-agent-home>/bin`) on the agent machine.
3. Edit the `bamboo-capabilities.properties` file to add capabilities. You need to use the formats shown below:

   **Notes:**
   - Use `'\' to escape spaces, periods and backslashes (`\`).
   - All capabilities, other than custom capabilities, should start with `system`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capability Type</th>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **JDK capabilities**   | `system.jdk.JDK\ <jdk number>=<jdk location>`                        | `system.jdk.JDK\ 1.6=/System/Library/Frameworks/JavaVM.framework/Versions/1.6`  
|                       |                                                                        | `system.jdk.JDK\ 1.6=C:\\Program Files\\Java\\jdk6.0.17`              |
| **Executable capabilities** | `system.builder.<executable type>.<executable label>=<executable path>` | `system.builder.ant.Ant=/opt/apache-ant-1.7.1`  
|                       |                                                                        | `system.builder.maven.Maven\ 1=/opt/maven-1.0.2`  
|                       |                                                                        | `system.builder.maven2.Maven\ 2=/opt/maven-2.0`  
|                       |                                                                        | `system.builder.node.Node.js\ 0.12=/opt/node-0.12/bin/node`             |
| **Version control capabilities** | `system.<DVCS>.executable=<DVCS command location>`                     | `system.git.executable=/usr/bin/git`  
|                       |                                                                        | `system.hg.executable=/usr/bin/hg`                                      |
| **Perforce capabilities** | `system.p4Executable=<perforce executable location>`                  | `system.p4Executable=/usr/bin/p4`                                       |
| **Custom capabilities** | `<custom capability name>=<custom capability value>`                    | `system.os=osx`                                                         |

4. Save your changes to the `bamboo-capabilities.properties` file.
5. Start up your remote agent. The capabilities defined in the `bamboo-capabilities.properties` file will be configured for your agent.
Legacy remote agent installation guide

If you have implemented your own remote agent service wrapper or have problems with the service wrapper used by the remote agent supervisor in Bamboo, you can install the legacy remote agent (pre-Bamboo 2.2) which does not have a service wrapper.

**Before you begin:**
- **Not sure whether to install a Remote Agent?** See About Agents to understand how Remote Agents interact with your Bamboo server.
- **Ensure that you have specified the Broker URL,** as described in the Bamboo Setup Wizard.
- **Do you have sufficient Agent licenses?** See Bamboo licensing for details.
- **Have you enabled the creation of Remote Agents,** as described in Disabling and enabling remote agents support.
- **Ensure that you have Java Runtime Environment 5.0 or later** installed on the agent machine.

**Step 1. Download and install the Legacy Remote Agent**

1. Create a directory on the agent machine (e.g. `bamboo-agent-home`), to serve as the “Bamboo agent home” for the remote agent.
2. On your Bamboo server, click **Administration** in the top menu.
3. Click **Agents** in the left navigation panel. This will display the ‘Agents’ screen, showing lists of all Local Agents and all Remote Agents that currently exist in your Bamboo system.
4. Click **Install Remote Agent.** The ‘Install Remote Agent’ screen will be displayed.
5. Click **bamboo-agent.jar** under the ‘Running the agents without the service wrapper’ section and save the JAR file to the directory you created in step 1.1.

**Note that if you configure the capabilities of the remote agent using a `bamboo-capabilities.properties` file, that file should be located in the same directory as the JAR file (that is, `bamboo-agent-home` in the above instructions).**

**Step 2. Launch the Remote Agent**

Once installed, you can run the remote agent by executing the command line obtained in the previous step. This command will look something like the following:

```
java -jar bamboo-agent-2.0-SNAPSHOT.jar
http://bamboo-host-server:8085/agentServer/
```

You may wish to configure the remote agent machine to start the Bamboo remote agent automatically when the machine boots. Please consult your operating system documentation for instructions on how to do this.

You can also choose to run the remote agent with different command line parameters, to change where the remote agent stores its data or suppress the self-signed certificate of the server.

**Changing where the remote agent stores its data**

By default, the remote agent will store its data in a directory called `bamboo-agent-home`. If you wish to specify a different directory, add the following command line parameter:

```
-Dbamboo.home=RemoteAgentHome
```

where `RemoteAgentHome` is the path to the Bamboo agent home directory you created in step 1.1. Your command line will look something like this:

```
java -Dbamboo.home=RemoteAgentHome -jar bamboo-agent-2.0-SNAPSHOT.jar
http://bamboo-host-server:8085/agentServer/
```

**Suppressing the self-signed certificate of the server**

If your Bamboo server uses SSL (https) with a self-signed certificate, you will need to carry out one of the following two options:

- **Add the parameter** `-Dbamboo.agent.ignoreServerCertName=true` to the remote agent’s command line, for example:

  ```
  java -Dbamboo.agent.ignoreServerCertName=true -jar bamboo-agent-2.0-SNAPSHOT.jar
  http://bamboo-host-server:8085/agentServer/
  ```
Please be aware that this reduces the security of your configuration, as the identity of your Bamboo server will not be authenticated by the remote agent.

- Use the keytool utility to add the self-signed certificate to the trusted certificates in your keystore. This is a more secure option, but is complex to set up. For detailed instructions of how to do this, please refer to the relevant Oracle documentation.

Step 3. Configure the Remote Agent’s Capabilities

Please see Configuring capabilities.

Bamboo installation guide

1. Check the system requirements

Supported platforms

Please read the Supported platforms page before you install Bamboo. The Supported Platforms page lists the applications servers, databases, operating systems, web browsers and JDKs that we have tested Bamboo with and recommend.

Note that Bamboo ships with a built-in HSQL database, which is fine for evaluation purposes but is somewhat susceptible to data loss during system crashes. For production environments we recommend that you configure Bamboo to use an external database.

Hardware requirements

While some of our customers run Bamboo on SPARC-based hardware, Atlassian only officially supports Bamboo running on x86 hardware and 64-bit derivatives of x86 hardware.

Servlet container requirements

You will need a servlet container that supports the Servlet 2.4 specification. Most modern containers should comply with this.

Related pages:

- Running the Setup Wizard
- Upgrade guide
- Bamboo remote agent installation guide
- Bamboo releases

2. Install and setup

Choose the relevant instructions for your operating system:

- Linux
- Mac
- Windows

3. Check for known issues and troubleshoot the Bamboo installation

If something is not working correctly after you have completed the steps above to install Bamboo, please check for known Bamboo issues and try troubleshooting your upgrade as described below:

- Check for known issues. Sometimes we find out about a problem with the latest version of Bamboo after we have released the software. In such cases we publish information about the known issues in the Bamboo Knowledge Base. Please check the known issues in the Bamboo Knowledge Base and follow the instructions to apply any necessary patches if necessary.

- Did you encounter a problem during the Bamboo installation? Please refer to the guide to troubleshooting upgrades in the Bamboo Knowledge Base.

- If you encounter a problem during the upgrade and cannot solve it, please create a support ticket and one of our support engineers will help you.

Running Bamboo as a service

You can configure Bamboo to start automatically on system startup, allowing it to recover automatically after a reboot.

Running Bamboo as a Windows Service

Running Bamboo as a Windows service as the local user

Running Bamboo as a Linux service

Running Bamboo as a Windows Service
Once you have installed Bamboo, you can choose to run Bamboo as service so that it starts up every time Windows restarts.

To do this,
1. Click on the **Start menu** in Windows,
2. Select **Bamboo** from the programs list,
3. Click on **Install Service** option to install Bamboo as a service in Windows.
4. Click **Start Service** to start the service.

Running Bamboo as a Windows service as the local user

1. Install Bamboo Application Server
   1. **Download Bamboo** and run the **Setup Wizard**.
   2. **Install Bamboo** as Windows service, as described in Running Bamboo as a Windows service.

2. Edit the Bamboo service to run as the "local user"

   1. Go to **Start -> Run** and enter ‘services.msc’.
   2. The 'Services' window will display (see screenshot below). Double-click the 'Bamboo build server' row.

Upgrading Bamboo server

If you have just upgraded your Bamboo server, you must re-install the Bamboo service. You can do this by removing the service and installing it again.

Upgrading Bamboo server

If you start as a Windows service Bamboo version 5.1 or later, make sure that the user has 'Full Control' access to BambooInstall/temp directory (otherwise this might cause problems when installing/upgrading plugins).
3. The 'Bamboo build server Properties' window will display (see screenshot above). Select the 'This account' option, provide a local admin account credentials, and click the 'OK' button to apply your changes.

3. Give the local user access to "logon as a service"

1. Go to Start -> Run and enter `secpol.msc`
2. The 'Local Security Settings' window will display. Expand the 'Local Policies' tree and click 'User Rights Assignment'.
3. Scroll down and find the 'Logon As a Service' Policy (see screenshot below). Double-click the 'Log on as a service' policy.
4. The properties window for the 'Log on as a service' policy will display (see screenshot below). Click the 'Add User or Group' button.

5. The 'Select Users or Groups' window will display (see screenshot above). Enter your local user and click 'OK' to allow your user to "logon as a service".
6. Click 'OK' and close all open windows.

Bamboo will now start as service, under the local user.

Running Bamboo as a Linux service

Linux system administration is outside the scope of Atlassian support. This page is provided for your information only.

On Linux/Solaris, the best practice is to install, configure and run each service (including Bamboo) as a dedicated user with only the permissions they require.

To install, configure and get Bamboo to start automatically on Linux/Solaris:

1. Create a bamboo user account which will be used to run Bamboo. For example, enter the following at a Linux console:

   ```bash
   sudo useradd --create-home -c "Bamboo role account" bamboo
   ```

2. Create a directory into which Bamboo will be installed. For example:

   ```bash
   sudo mkdir -p /opt/atlassian/bamboo
   sudo chown bamboo: /opt/atlassian/bamboo
   ```

3. Log in as the bamboo user to install Bamboo:

   ```bash
   sudo su - bamboo
   ```

4. You need to extract Bamboo:
5. Edit `current/atlassian-bamboo/WEB-INF/classes/bamboo-init.properties` and set `bamboo.home=/var/atlassian/application-data/bamboo` (or any other directory of your choice, but not the same as Bamboo's installation directory)

6. Then back as root, create the file `/etc/init.d/bamboo` (code shown below), which will be responsible for starting up bamboo after a reboot (or when manually invoked).

```
cd /opt/atlassian/bamboo
tar zxf /tmp/atlassian-bamboo-X.Y.tar.gz
ln -s atlassian-bamboo-X.Y/ current
```
#!/bin/sh
set -e

### BEGIN INIT INFO
# Provides: bamboo
# Required-Start: $local_fs $remote_fs $network $time
# Required-Stop: $local_fs $remote_fs $network $time
# Should-Start: $syslog
# Should-Stop: $syslog
# Default-Start: 2 3 4 5
# Default-Stop: 0 1 6
# Short-Description: Atlassian Bamboo Server
### END INIT INFO

# INIT Script

# Define some variables
# Name of app (bamboo, Confluence, etc)
APP=bamboo
# Name of the user to run as
USER=bamboo
# Location of application's bin directory
BASE=/opt/atlassian/bamboo/current

case "$1" in
  # Start command
  start)
    echo "Starting $APP"
    /bin/su - $USER -c "export BAMBOO_HOME=${BAMBOO_HOME};
    $BASE/bin/startup.sh &> /dev/null"
    ;;
    # Stop command
  stop)
    echo "Stopping $APP"
    /bin/su - $USER -c "$BASE/bin/shutdown.sh &> /dev/null"
    echo "$APP stopped successfully"
    ;;
    # Restart command
  restart)
    $0 stop
    sleep 5
    $0 start
    ;;
  *)
    echo "Usage: /etc/init.d/$APP {start|restart|stop}"
    exit 1
    ;;
esac

exit 0

7. Make the init script executable:

    chmod a+x /etc/init.d/bamboo
8. Place symlinks in the run-level directories to start and stop this script automatically.
   a. For Debian-based systems:

   ```bash
   update-rc.d bamboo defaults
   ```

   The following commands will be executed to place symlinks in the run-level directories:

   ```bash
   Adding system startup for /etc/init.d/bamboo ...
   /etc/rc0.d/K20bamboo -> ../init.d/bamboo
   /etc/rc1.d/K20bamboo -> ../init.d/bamboo
   /etc/rc6.d/K20bamboo -> ../init.d/bamboo
   /etc/rc2.d/S20bamboo -> ../init.d/bamboo
   /etc/rc3.d/S20bamboo -> ../init.d/bamboo
   /etc/rc4.d/S20bamboo -> ../init.d/bamboo
   /etc/rc5.d/S20bamboo -> ../init.d/bamboo
   ```

   b. For RedHat-based systems:

   ```bash
   sudo /sbin/chkconfig --add bamboo
   ```

   Ensure the script is executed in the correct order, in particular after the database startup script.

   Note: If starting your new bamboo service fails immediately with an error, it may be that your /etc/init.d/bamboo script has had carriage return characters introduced into it. You can confirm this by running:

   ```bash
   cat -v /etc/init.d/bamboo
   ```

   If there are carriage return characters in your /etc/init.d/bamboo script, they will appear as `^M` in the output:

   ```bash
   #!/bin/sh
   set -e
   ### BEGIN INIT INFO
   # Provides: bamboo
   # Required-Start: $local_fs $remote_fs $network $time
   # Required-Stop: $local_fs $remote_fs $network $time
   # Should-Start: $syslog
   # Should-Stop: $syslog
   ```

   You can remove carriage return characters from /etc/init.d/bamboo with the following command:

   ```bash
   sed -i -e 's/\r//g' /etc/init.d/bamboo
   ```

   Retry starting the service after making this change.

**Bamboo upgrade guide**

You can upgrade Bamboo by installing a new version of Bamboo and setting it up with the configuration of the original Bamboo instance.
Overview

The recommended paths for upgrading Bamboo to a new version differ depending on whether you want to move to a new server or not:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Upgrading Bamboo locally</th>
<th>Upgrading Bamboo with a move to a new server</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform the steps as described on this page. Make sure that your new Bamboo instance is not installed in the same directory as the original Bamboo instance.</td>
<td>1. Clone your Bamboo instance into the new location. 2. Perform the upgrade steps on the cloned Bamboo instance as described on this page. The cloned instance on the new server is referred to as original Bamboo instance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In both scenarios, the new Bamboo instance uses the home directory and the database of the original Bamboo instance.

We recommend that you test the Bamboo upgrade on a QA server before deploying to production.

If you are a Bamboo plugin developer, see our Bamboo API Changes by Version guide, which outlines changes in Bamboo that may affect Bamboo plugins compiled for earlier versions of Bamboo.

Recommended upgrade path

**update path**

When upgrading from Bamboo 4.0 and later, you can upgrade directly to the latest version of Bamboo:

- 4.0 +
- LATEST

When upgrading from earlier than Bamboo 4.0, you must upgrade to any of Bamboo 5.0–5.7 before upgrading to Bamboo latest version:

- PRE 4.0
- 5.0–5.7
- LATEST

When upgrading from very old versions of Bamboo you must follow this upgrade path:

- OLDER VERSIONS
- 2.0.6
- 2.6.3
- 2.7.4
- 5.0–5.7
- LATEST

You do not need to downgrade before upgrading.

Before you begin

- Read the specific upgrade notes for your version of Bamboo.
- Read End of support announcements for Bamboo.
- Check whether the system where you are going to install the new Bamboo instance meets the requirements.
- Check whether any add-ons may require an update.

The installation path is referred to as `<bamboo-install>` and points to the directory into which you extracted the Bamboo package. It is different from `<bamboo-home>`, which points to the directory where Bamboo data is stored.

1. Export and back up the existing Bamboo data

**Export the Bamboo database**

There are two database backup scenarios, depending on whether you are using an embedded or external database.
### Embedded HSQL database

Create an export .zip file for the original Bamboo instance. For more information, see Exporting data for backup.

The export may take a long time to complete and may require a large amount of disk space, depending on the number of builds and tests in your system.

HSQL is not recommended for production Bamboo instances.

### External database

Use native database tools to create a backup. For more information about external databases, see Connecting Bamboo to an external database.

---

### Stop Bamboo

Stop the original Bamboo instance.

If you have Bamboo running as a Windows service, uninstall the service by using the UninstallService.bat executable that came with your Bamboo instance.

### Back up the Bamboo configuration

When the original Bamboo instance is shut down, back up your `<bamboo-home>` directory, which contains the builds and configuration directories. You can compress it into a .zip file.

**Viewing Bamboo paths**

Go to Administration > System > System information > Bamboo paths. Note the Bamboo home path, Build path, and Configuration path:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bamboo paths</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current running directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build working directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artifacts directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamboo logs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User home</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information about these directories, see Important Directories and Files.

---

### 2. Download and install a new Bamboo instance

To upgrade Bamboo, you must install a new Bamboo instance in a `<bamboo-install>` directory that is different from the `<bamboo-install>` directory of the original Bamboo instance.

This upgrade scenario uses the home directory and the external database of the original Bamboo instance.

- Make sure that the original Bamboo instance is not running before you start the new installation.
- To prevent data loss during updates or reinstallation, the `<bamboo-home>` directory must be different from the `<bamboo-install>` directory.

The guidelines for the new Bamboo instance installation are the following:

**Mac OS X**

- The Mac installer deletes the previous version of Bamboo.
- Follow the Mac OS X install instructions.

**Linux**

...
1. Delete your old `<Bamboo-install>` directory to remove any legacy files.
   Follow the Linux install instructions.

2. The Windows installer deletes the previous version of Bamboo.
   Follow the Windows install instructions.
   Configure Bamboo to run as a service on Windows, using the `service.bat` executable.

3. Configure the new Bamboo instance

   **Set the home directory for the new Bamboo instance**
   
   Set the `<home-directory>` to use the `<home-directory>` of the original Bamboo instance:
   
   1. Go to the new Bamboo instance `<bamboo-install>` directory. It is the directory where you installed Bamboo.
   2. Open `atlassian-bamboo/WEB-INF/classes/bamboo-init.properties`
   
   For Bamboo versions prior to 5.1, the file path is: `<bamboo-install>/webapp/WEB-INF/classes/bamboo-init.properties`
   
   3. Set the `bamboo.home` variable to use the `<bamboo-home>` path of the original Bamboo instance.

   **Reconnect external user directories (optional)**
   
   If you had integrated the original Bamboo instance with Crowd or LDAP, you must enable the integration for the new Bamboo instance.
   
   For more information, see Integrating Crowd with Bamboo and Integrating Bamboo with LDAP.

   **Update any installed add-ons**
   
   If you installed any add-ons in addition to the pre-installed system add-ons:
   
   - Check if all add-ons are compatible with the new version of Bamboo.
   - Update any add-ons that are out-of-date.
   - Disable any add-ons that are incompatible with the new version of Bamboo.

   **Automatic update of remote agents**
   
   For Bamboo 3.2 and later, remote agents are updated automatically. Remote agents automatically detect when a new version is available and downloads new classes from the server.
   
   For more information, see Bamboo remote agent installation guide.

   **Configure the context path**
   
   If you had a context path configured for the original Bamboo instance (http://hostname:[port]/context_path), you have to configure it for the new Bamboo instance. For more information, see Changing Bamboo’s root context path.

   **Check database access permission**
   
   Before you start the new Bamboo instance, make sure that it has the `write` access to the database, which is required to complete the upgrade tasks.

4. Start Bamboo

   **Start Bamboo**
   
   Once you have installed Bamboo and set the `bamboo.home` property, start the new Bamboo instance. The upgrade runs automatically.
   
   You can check whether the upgrade was successful in the `atlassian-bamboo.log` file.

   Upgrading Bamboo may require reindexing.
Depending on the number of existing builds and tests, the reindexing process may take a significant amount of time, during which Bamboo will not be available.

Version-specific upgrade notes

The version-specific notes provide additional information to the main upgrade documentation. We recommend reading the version-specific notes for the original and new Bamboo instance versions.

- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.15
- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.14
- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.13
- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.12
- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.11
- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.10
- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.9
- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.8
- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.7
- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.6
- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.5
- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.4

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.15

Bamboo 5.15 contains upgrade tasks that can take extra time when moving from earlier versions of Bamboo. Keep this in mind when planning your upgrade outages.

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.14

New API for VCS repositories

We've rebuilt the repository subsystem, added new plugin points, and introduced new web repository viewers.

Action required

Before you upgrade to Bamboo 5.14, check for potential plugin incompatibilities, especially if you're using any plugins that aren't officially supported by Atlassian (third-party plugins, plugins developed in-house, or plugins marked as unsupported on Atlassian Marketplace).

Plugins that are particularly prone to incompatibilities and require special attention are those that deal with:

- automatic plan creation and management
- automatic plan branch creation and management
- repository configuration management

We strongly recommend reporting compatibility issues to the plugin vendor and Atlassian Support.

For details about the API changes, see our developer documentation.

Changes in requirements for table names of the external databases

With Bamboo 5.14, we're dropping the lowercase table names requirement for the external database configuration introduced in Bamboo 5.13. For more information, see:

- Upgrading to Bamboo 5.13 below
- MySQL
- Bamboo 5.13 Release Notes

See also

- the general update steps section above.
- Bamboo 5.14 Release Notes
- the Bamboo Supported platforms page.

You might also want to check our developer documentation.

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.13

Bamboo 5.13 introduces stricter verification of the external database configurations which prevents both upgrade and application start:
Microsoft SQL Server

The check ensures that the tables in the Bamboo database have correct collation and correct commit isolation, see Microsoft SQL Server.

All DBs except SQL Server

The check ensures that the database engine is correctly configured to be case-insensitive.

Make sure your specific database is configured correctly according to Connecting Bamboo to an external database. For MySQL specifically, this might affect all databases in the instance, see MySQL documentation.

If the check fails

If the check fails and you can't correct your database configuration immediately, you can roll back to the previous installed version of Bamboo without changing anything in your database or home directory configuration.

See also:

- the general update steps section above.
- the Bamboo Supported platforms page.

You might also want to check our developer documentation.

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.12

See:

- the general update steps section above.
- the Bamboo Supported platforms page.

You might also want to check our developer documentation.

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.11

See:

- the general update steps section above.
- Bamboo 5.11 Release Notes.
- the Bamboo Supported platforms page.

You might also want to check our developer documentation.

Remember that remote agents must be restarted after the upgrade.

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.10

See:

- the general update steps section above.
- Bamboo 5.10 Release Notes.
- the Bamboo Supported platforms page.

You might also want to check our developer documentation.

Remember that remote agents must be restarted after the upgrade.

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.9

See also:

- the general update steps section above.
- the Bamboo 5.9 Release Notes.
- the Bamboo Supported platforms page.

Changes to Clover Plugin integration

Automatic Clover integration for Maven 2 and Maven 3 tasks has been changed. It has tighter integration and adds Clover goals between goals from an original command so that a build will be performed only once (i.e. it will not run a separate build phase as it did before).
Automatic Clover integration will not happen when your Maven task contains the `install` or `deploy` commands; this is to protect your repositories from being polluted by instrumented code. Therefore, please check if any of your Maven tasks that use automatic Clover integration use the `install` or `deploy` Maven commands. If they do: either disable automatic Clover integration for those jobs, or change the phase to the `verify` command (or earlier) or set up a dedicated job for Clover. Otherwise, your jobs will not produce Clover’s coverage reports.

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.8

See also:

- the general update steps section above.
- the Bamboo 5.8 Release Notes.
- the Bamboo Supported platforms page.

If you are upgrading from Bamboo versions earlier than Bamboo 4.0, you must upgrade to any of Bamboo 5.0–5.7 before upgrading to Bamboo 5.8.

Hibernate dialect update

When you upgrade to Bamboo 5.8, an upgrade task will run that changes the Hibernate dialect in the `bamboo.cfg.xml` file. The new dialects are:

```java
org.hibernate.dialect.PostgreSQLDialect
org.hibernate.dialect.HSQLDialect
org.hibernate.dialect.Oracle10gDialect
org.hibernate.dialect.MySQL5Dialect
com.atlassian.bamboo.hibernate.SQLServerIntlDialect
```

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.7

See also:

- the general update steps section above.
- the Bamboo 5.7 Release Notes.
- the Bamboo Supported platforms page.

Global deployment expiry

If you are updating to Bamboo 5.7 from 5.6 or earlier and you were previously using build expiry then the Global expiry page in Bamboo looks and works the same as it does in 5.6. In other words you are able to expire builds but not deployments. There is an option to enable deployment expiry however and selecting this option enables the new expiry features introduced in Bamboo 5.7.

Note that this may mean that deployment artifacts and deployment result logs that were previously not being removed will start to be removed. Most likely this is what you want but it’s important to be aware of this change.

Note also that enabling deployment expiry is not reversible. If you enable deployment expiry you will be unable to go back to the legacy Bamboo 5.6 behavior. The legacy Bamboo 5.6 behavior for expiry is deprecated and will be removed in a future release.

Read more about global expiry in Bamboo 5.7.

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.6

See also:

- the general update steps section above.
- the Bamboo 5.6 Release Notes.
- the Bamboo Supported platforms page.

Bitbucket Server notifications and the Bitbucket Server web repository type are deprecated

Bitbucket Server notifications and the legacy Bitbucket Server web repository type are deprecated in Bamboo 5.6, and will be removed in Bamboo 5.7. Use the Bitbucket Server repository integration available in Bamboo 5.6, which is based on application links, to replace that functionality. Read about using Bitbucket Server repositories with Bamboo on [Bitbucket Server](#).

Update time

When scheduling the outage window for the Bamboo 5.6 update, keep in mind that update task 4407 that is executed during the update may take up to 45 minutes to complete on large instances, depending on the size of the VARIABLE_CONTEXT table. For a more precise calculation, assume that 10 minutes are needed to process 15 million records in that table.
Installer package on MAC OS X can not be opened due to code signing requirements

Note, this issue was found in Bamboo 5.4 and still applies to Bamboo 5.6.

Previously, Mac OS X required binaries to be Developer ID signed in order to run out of the box. Without signing, users would receive a warning that the app isn't from the App Store or a registered Apple Developer. Users were able to apply a work-around to solve this problem.

The latest version of Mac OS X (10.8 and above), however, now reports that the Bamboo installer for Mac is corrupted rather than being blocked by developer ID.

Please see [BAM-11742 - Installer package is "damaged and cannot be reopened" on Mac OS X](https://jira.atlassian.com/browse/BAM-11742) for more information.

1. The Mac installer will not be available until this has been resolved
2. There is a temporary work-around available [here](https://jira.atlassian.com/).

This is a small bug with our installer. Please be assured that we are working on a permanent solution to this issue.

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.5

- We recommend that you add OAuth authentication (in addition to existing authentication) to any existing application links between your Bamboo and Bitbucket servers. If you have previously integrated Bamboo with Bitbucket Server, you will probably have Basic HTTP authentication configured for your link. The new Bitbucket repository type will work with Basic HTTP, but OAuth is a better as it is an impersonating authentication type. For more information, see Configuring authentication for an application link.
- Git will use `--ancestry-path` when trying to extract changeset due to

Please see [BAM-13760 - Too many notifications for release -> feature merge in Git plan branches](https://jira.atlassian.com/browse/BAM-13760) for more information. Since that command is available for Git 1.7.2 and above (see Release Notes), please update your native Git, if you have Git 1.7.1 installed (especially those who use RHEL 6 or CentOS).

See also:

- the general update steps section above.
- the Bamboo 5.5 release notes.
- the Bamboo Supported platforms page.

Installer package on MAC OS X can not be opened due to code signing requirements

Note, this issue was found in Bamboo 5.4 and still applies to Bamboo 5.5.

Previously, Mac OS X required binaries to be Developer ID signed to run out of the box. Without signing, users would receive a warning that the app isn't from the App Store or a registered Apple Developer. Users were able to apply a work-around to solve this problem.

The latest version of Mac OS X (10.8 and above), however, now reports that the Bamboo installer for Mac is corrupted rather than being blocked by developer ID.

Please see [BAM-11742 - Installer package is "damaged and cannot be reopened" on Mac OS X](https://jira.atlassian.com/browse/BAM-11742) for more information.

1. The Mac installer will not be available until this has been resolved
2. There is a temporary work-around available [here](https://jira.atlassian.com/).

This is a small bug with our installer. Please rest assured that we are working on a permanent solution to this issue.

Upgrading to Bamboo 5.4

Note that Bamboo will run a full reindex after updating.

See also:

- the general update steps section above.
- the Bamboo 5.5 release notes.
- the Bamboo Supported platforms page.

Installer package on MAC OS X can not be opened due to code signing requirements

Previously, Mac OS X required binaries to be Developer ID signed to run out of the box. Without signing, users would receive a warning that the app isn't from the App Store or a registered Apple Developer. Users were able to apply a work-around to solve this problem.

The latest version of Mac OS X (10.8 and above), however, now report that the Bamboo installer for Mac is corrupted rather than being blocked by developer ID.
Please see -

**BAM-11742** - Installer package is "damaged and cannot be reopened" on Mac OS X [RESOLVED] for more information.

1. The Mac installer will not be available until this has been resolved
2. There is a temporary work-around solution available [here](https://answers.atlassian.com).

This is a small bug with our installer, please rest assured that we are working on a permanent solution to this issue.

### Troubleshooting

If you followed the documentation and you still have problems with the upgrade process:

- Check the How to Upgrade/Migrate Bamboo article in the Bamboo Knowledge Base.
- Check other Knowledge Base articles.
- Ask questions at [https://answers.atlassian.com](https://answers.atlassian.com).
- You can also create a support ticket. To help us address the issue, attach the `atlassian-bamboo.log` file to the ticket.

### Running Bamboo Server in AWS

There are no special prerequisites or configuration options required to run your server in AWS. If you're an experienced AWS user, you can set up your instance using the regular installation instructions.

You may also choose to use our Bamboo Server EC2 Wizard, which will get your Bamboo server up and running in AWS in less than 10 minutes.

#### Prerequisites

- Amazon Web Services account access (you will need AWS Access and Secret Key, with sufficient access rights to run an instance and perform some maintenance tasks)
- Bamboo EC2 Wizard binary (download from [here](https://answers.atlassian.com), optionally verify the SHA256 checksum)
- Java JRE 8 (download from [here](https://answers.atlassian.com))

#### Outcome

After the wizard finishes, it will provide you with a HTTPS link to a Bamboo Server instance set up on Linux Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and Postgres DBMS. All data will be located on a separate persistent EBS volume.

#### Running the wizard

To run the wizard, execute:

```bash
java -jar bamboo-server-ec2-wizard.jar
```

You can safely execute that command - the wizard provides extensive guidance and will not perform any actions without asking for your permission.

### FAQ

*Does Atlassian have access to my EC2 instance or manage it any way?*

No, we do not. In terms of access, support, or management, the instance does not differ from regular instances in any way. The instance can only be accessed using the SSH key provided by you during the installation (or generated by the wizard, if you chose that option).

*Can I restart my EC2 instance without data loss?*

Yes, you can restart your instance – the Bamboo server is set up to automatically start up after a restart of the EC2 instance.

*Can I stop my EC2 instance?*

Yes, in case you temporarily don’t need your instance, it can be stopped.

*Can I shut down my EC2 instance?*

Yes. The data volume will not be destroyed during shutdown. You will be able to reattach it to a new instance later. You can also decide to destroy the data volume if you no longer need the data.

*How can I add more resources (memory, CPU, I/O) to my EC2 instance?*

Shut down your EC2 instance (note: stopping is not enough) and re-run the wizard. It will detect the data volume and offer you the option to reattach it. You will be able to select a new instance type. Use Amazon documentation to find an instance type more...
appropriate for your Bamboo server traffic.

**How can I back up my Bamboo instance?**

In the root directory of data volume (/media/atlassian-data) there's a script called backupInstance.sh. You will need to provide credentials with permissions to create EBS snapshots.

**How can I upgrade Bamboo?**

Note: before upgrading, Atlassian recommends backing up your data.

In the root directory of data volume (/media/atlassian-data) there's a script called upgradeBamboo.sh. Run it and give it a version number (or "latest") as a parameter, eg:

```
upgradeBamboo.sh 5.14.1
```

or

```
upgradeBamboo.sh latest
```

The script will stop your server, download the new Bamboo version, and start the server again. No additional steps are required.

**I need shell access and I've lost my SSH key, how can I access the EC2 instance?**

You can't. Shut down the instance and re-run the wizard, it will give you the option to start a new server using existing data. Remember to choose a new key.

**I want to get rid of the privacy warning, what can I do?**

You need to install a valid certificate instead of the default self-signed one. The files you need to replace are under /etc/apache2/ssl/.

**What customisations are present on the EC2 instance after I run the wizard?**

Overview of changes done by the wizard:

- a couple of packages (DBMS, java, git etc.) are installed using the standard packaging system
- the DBMS data directory is redirected to the EBS mount
- Bamboo start/stop script is added to startup scripts
- Apache reverse proxy setup
- HTTPS certificate is generated

In general, the changes are not fragile, so you should be able to add your customisations without problems.

**Where do I request support/give feedback/report bugs?**

Use the regular communication channels: For support, [http://support.atlassian.com](http://support.atlassian.com) For community support, [http://answers.atlassian.com](http://answers.atlassian.com) (project Bamboo) for feedback/bugs.

### Bamboo releases

The following pages can be found in the latest documentation for Bamboo:

- the Bamboo upgrade guide
- the Bamboo security advisories
- the End of support announcements for Bamboo
- the full release notes for every Bamboo release.

You can get automated notifications about major Bamboo releases by subscribing to the [Atlassian dev tools blog](http://atlantisc.com).

The list below is a summary of the Bamboo releases. The change logs included in the release notes (linked below) have details of the related bug-fix releases.

**Bamboo 5.15**

February 2017

- Git LFS support
- System-wide encryption
- Improvements to the Branch Status page
- Spring Scanner 2 support

For more information, see [Bamboo 5.14 Release Notes](http://jira.atlassian.com).
27 October 2016

- Platform upgrades
- New Branch status page
- Build plans and deployment projects in YAML (beta)
- Override of repository settings for plan branches
- Enhancements for Subversion repository configuration
- New API for VCS repositories
- Bug fixes

For more information, see Bamboo 5.14 Release Notes.

Bamboo 5.13

24 August 2016

- Platform upgrades
- Deployment requirements
- SSH support for Bitbucket Cloud
- Improvements for the script task
- Absolute paths for artifacts
- Bug fixes
- API changes

For more information, see Bamboo 5.13 Release Notes.

Bamboo 5.12

24 May 2016

- Platform upgrades
- Quick Filters
- User deactivation directly from Bamboo
- Bug fixes

For more information, see Bamboo 5.12 Release Notes.

Bamboo 5.11

26 April 2016

- Platform upgrades
- Application Links upgrade to version 5.0.7
- Bamboo Instance Health check
- New Create repository permission
- REST API deployment triggers

For more information, see Bamboo 5.11 Release Notes.

Bamboo 5.10

19 January 2016

- Platform upgrades
- Bamboo build status for Bitbucket

For more information, see Bamboo 5.10 Release Notes.

Bamboo 5.9

11 June 2015

- Improved automatic branch management
- Improved Docker task customization
- AWS Code Deploy task for Bamboo
- Easier shared credentials management
- Future changes to on-disk directory layout: plan directory information REST API
- Bamboo Clover Plugin improvements

Read more in Bamboo 5.9 Release Notes.

For more information, see Bamboo upgrade guide.
Bamboo 5.8

17 March 2015

- Docker task for builds and deployments
- Improved integration with AWS
- Bamboo analytics added
- Support for Java 8
- Support for Java 7 is deprecated
- Support for Microsoft SQL Server 2005 and 2008 is deprecated
- Support for MySQL 5.1 is deprecated
- Support for PostgreSQL 8 is deprecated

Read more in the Bamboo 5.8 Release Notes.

See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 5.7

11 November 2014

- Control storage demands of deployment artifacts
- Take charge of build and release variables
- Manage remote Bamboo agents with Docker
- Use Bamboo with Node.js projects
- New Bamboo search tool for projects and plans
- Bamboo now supports Microsoft SQL Server 2012
- Support for Java 6 is deprecated
- Legacy Stash integration features removed

Read more in the Bamboo 5.7 Release Notes.

See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 5.6

29 July 2014

- Improved Stash integration:
  - Bamboo builds are triggered by Stash repo events
  - Bamboo plan branches update when branches are created or deleted in Stash
  - Bamboo build status is notified automatically to Stash
- Dedicated agents
- Clone deployment projects
- Deployments now appear in the activity streams for agents and builds
- Build queue improvements
- Project name is now editable
- The legacy Stash notifications and web repository type are deprecated in Bamboo 5.6, and will be removed in Bamboo 5.7.

Read more in the Bamboo 5.6 Release Notes.

See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 5.5

28 April 2014

- Improved Stash integration
- Share repositories renamed to 'linked' repositories
- Stash legacy web repositories deprecated
- Bamboo menu layout change
- Subversion 1.8 is now supported
- Tomcat 5.5 and 6.0 are no longer supported
- Internet Explorer 8 is no longer supported.

Read more in the Bamboo 5.5 release notes.

See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 5.4

11 February 2014

- Administration access navigation change
• Deployment workflow
• Deployment dashboard
• Reliability and stability
• Tomcat 5.5 and 6.0 deprecated.

Read more in the Bamboo 5.4 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 5.3
11 December 2013
• XSRF protection
• Deployment preview

Read more in the Bamboo 5.3 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 5.2
15 October 2013
• Branch deployments
• Advanced Gravatar support
• Branch checking interval editing

Read more in the Bamboo 5.2 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 5.1
13 September 2013
• JIRA issue deployment reporting

Read more in the Bamboo 5.1 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 5.0
28 August 2013
• Deployment projects and environments
• Release versioning

Read more in the Bamboo 5.0 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 4.4
29 January 2013
• Jenkins importer
• Enhanced performance
• TestNG reports parser
• Selective task running
• Quick build number copying
• Server pausing

Read more in the Bamboo 4.4 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 4.3
30 October 2012
• Simple deployments to Tomcat
• Deploy to the Cloud with Heroku
- Upload files using SCP
- Build from any revision
- Runtime variables for Manual Stages
- Rebuild with one click
- Multiple build Triggers
- Build dependencies after all Stages
- Automatic dependencies for Maven 3
- Dashboard filtering
- Amazon Virtual Private Cloud for Elastic Bamboo
- Wallboard for Branches

Read more in the Bamboo 4.3 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 4.2

21 August 2012

- Notifications, build strategies and dependencies for plan branches
- Automatic linking of JIRA issues to feature branches
- Bamboo build artifacts are linked from JIRA issues
- Git support in the Bamboo Bitbucket connector
- Subversion 1.7 support
- UX improvements
- Mercurial commit isolation

Read more in the Bamboo 4.2 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 4.1

29 May 2012

- Get builds fixed faster with responsibilities
- Take action with JIRA issue creation
- Get your team communicating with Hipchat notifications
- Welcome to the family, Stash!

Read more in the Bamboo 4.1 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 4.0

27 March 2012

- Automatically Build Branches
- Automatically Merge Branches using Gatekeeper and Branch Updater
- Manage Build Failures by Quarantining Intermittent Tests
- Fresh New User Experience

Read more in the Bamboo 4.0 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 3.4

14 December 2011

- Git Submodule Support
- Shared Repositories
- Agent Security Improvements
- New Email Templates
- Elastic Bamboo support for Microsoft Windows®

Read more in the Bamboo 3.4 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 3.3

11 October 2011
- Multiple Source Repositories
- Reloadable Plugins
- Source Repository User Aliases
- Automatic Agent Upgrades
- Fast, history-friendly tabbed navigation
- Commit Centric View

Read more in the Bamboo 3.3 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

**Bamboo 3.2**

26 July 2011

- Release Management
- Manual Stages
- Rerunning a Failed Stage
- Plan Filters on the Dashboard and Wallboard
- User Management via JIRA
- Improved Application Linking

Read more in the Bamboo 3.2 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

**Bamboo 3.1**

10 May 2011

- Tasks
- Parameterized Builds
- .Net Support
- Bitbucket Support
- GitHub Support
- New Plugin Manager
- Support for Amazon EC2 Spot Instances
- Gravatar Support
- Improved Windows process handling

Read more in the Bamboo 3.1 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

**Bamboo 3.0**

16 February 2011

- Artifact Sharing
- Git Support
- User Interface Overhaul — Redesigned Plan Summary, Job Summary and Build Results. New look and feel.
- Scheduled Repository Polling
- Configuration Changes Captured in Audit Logs

Read more in the Bamboo 3.0 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

**Bamboo 2.7**

9 Nov 2010

- Build Stages — Map Your Build Process, Parallel Builds, Enhanced Plan Structure
- Simplified Plan Creation
- Concurrent Builds
- Mercurial Support
- Improved Wallboards
- New Plan and Job Configuration Summaries
- Recent History on Plan and Job Summaries
- Other User Interface Enhancements — New Breadcrumb Trail, Build Histories, Improved Build Result Summary Tabs

Read more in the Bamboo 2.7 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.
Bamboo 2.6

1 June 2010

- Support for up to 100 Remote Agents
- Revamped Dashboard Pages and Other Usability Enhancements
- Performance and Security Improvements
- Automatically Managed Elastic Instances
- Grails Integration

Read more in the Bamboo 2.6 release notes.

See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 2.5

4 January 2010

- Maven Dependency Management
- Plan Import from a pom.xml
- Additional Bulk Actions
- Streamlined Plan Creation
- Express Setup Wizard

Read more in the Bamboo 2.5 release notes.

See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 2.4

6 October 2009

- Bamboo Gadgets in JIRA
- Clover Enhancements
- REST Improvements
- Runtime Log4j Configuration

Read more in the Bamboo 2.4 release notes.

See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 2.3

6 August 2009

- Dependency Blocking Strategies
- New Build Notifications and Queue Reordering
- Bulk Actions
- Multiple Elastic Images
- Elastic Instance Scheduling
- PHPUnit Builder
- Bamboo REST APIs
- Plugins Changes

Read more in the Bamboo 2.3 release notes.

See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 2.2

9 March 2009

- Elastic Bamboo
- Customizable Email Templates
- Build Comment Notification Event
- Hanging Build Detection Event
- Faster Artifact Transfer
- Dependent Builds
- Agent Improvements

Read more in the Bamboo 2.2 release notes.

See the Bamboo upgrade guide.
Bamboo 2.1
5 August 2008

- Link Issues and Builds
- Specify the Issues that are Fixed by a Build
- Track the Builds for your Projects and Versions
- View Issues under Development
- Post Change Detection Plugin Point

Read more in the Bamboo 2.1 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 2.0
14 April 2008

- Distributed builds
- Capability matching
- Memory usage improvements
- Parallel VCS updates and checkouts
- Ability to force a ‘clean build’
- Quiet Period functionality supported for Subversion & Perforce
- Bamboo Plugin for Confluence
- Support for Oracle and MS SQL Server databases
- Status Summary screens

Read more in the Bamboo 2.0 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 1.2
09 July 2007

- Permissions (global and plan-based)
- External database support
- Perforce triggering support
- Scheduled backups
- New Bundled NAnt plugin

Read more in the Bamboo 1.2 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 1.1
07 May 2007

- Advanced notifications - rules, triggers, preferences, dynamic recipients
- Build Metadata - pass them to your build, global variables, view them
- File Trigger Inclusions/Exclusions
- More pluggability
- Improved Maven 2 error log parsing
- LDAP and external user management support
- Dashboard loading has been improved

Read more in the Bamboo 1.1 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo 1.0
20 February 2007

- All Plans tab

Read more in the Bamboo 1.0 release notes.
See the Bamboo upgrade guide.

Bamboo security advisories
As a distributed application, Bamboo’s application-level security is important. This document contains links to version-specific security advisories and related documents for the Bamboo application.

This document is intended to provide information to system administrators about the security of the Bamboo application. It does not describe Bamboo’s internal security model – user management and permissions – except as it relates to the overall application security.

Finding and reporting a security vulnerability
Atlassian's channel for reporting security issues is detailed in How to Report a Security Issue.

Publication of Bamboo security advisories
Atlassian's approach to publishing security advisories is detailed in Security Advisory Publishing Policy. You can subscribe to email alerts or modify the settings according to the guidelines in Subscribing to security advisories below.

Severity levels
Atlassian's scale for measuring security issues is detailed in Severity Levels for Security Issues.

Our patch policy
Atlassian's approach to releasing patches is detailed in our Security Patch Policy.

Subscribing to security advisories
You can configure Atlassian email notifications in your MyAtlassian account. We especially recommend subscribing to email alerts if you're the primary contact for a product.

1. Go to MyAtlassian account. Sign in to your account or create a new one, it's super quick.
2. Once you signed in, click Email preferences in the menu at the very top of the page.
3. In Email preferences, scroll down to Alerts.
4. Select products for which you would like to receive alerts about security advisories, maintenance notifications, and pricing updates.
5. Select the format in which we’ll send you the emails. You can choose between HTML and text.
6. Click Update my email preferences to save the new configuration.

Security advisories

**Bamboo 5.15 Release Notes**

---

**February 2017**

The Atlassian Bamboo team are excited to release Bamboo 5.15. If you're upgrading, read the Bamboo upgrade guide.

---

**Git LFS support**

For Git, Bickbucket Cloud Git, and Bickbucket Sever repositories, Bamboo 5.15 is introducing Git LFS support.

Git LFS allows you to save time and space by replacing large files such with pointers inside Git, while storing the actual content of your files on a remote server.

Just select the Enable Git LFS support checkbox in the advanced options of your repository to enable this feature. When this option is selected, Bamboo will fetch Git LFS content as part of the checkout task and Git repository cache preparation.
System-wide encryption

Now, more than ever, you can be sure that sensitive data that you store in Bamboo is well protected with the central encryption service. For details on how Bamboo protects your data, see System-wide encryption.

---

Improvements to the Branch Status page

In Bamboo 5.15, we have fixed a number of small issues in the Branch Status page to make your user experience even better.

- Introducing plan sorting by plan name, build status (default), and completion date. Your choice is saved and kept for all repositories and branches even after refreshing the page or logging out.

- The new favicon with the status of a branch which allows you to monitor the condition of your branch at a quick glance.

- When opening a dropdown to select a repository or branch, the most recently visited items are now displayed first.
- New animations were added to help you distinguish better newly added or deleted plans.
- In the Add plans picker, projects names are now displayed next to plan names to help you differentiate between plans quickly.

---

Spring Scanner 2 support

Bamboo 5.15 provides support for Spring Scanner 2 library set. Read more about Spring Scanner.

---

Bug fixes and improvements

You can view the detailed list of fixed bugs at the bottom of this page.

---

Changelog

22 May 2017 - Bamboo 5.15.7

This is a bug fix release. We’ve fixed the following issues:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18405</td>
<td>Incorrect permission check for deployment projects (CVE-2017-8907)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18364</td>
<td>Slowness for non-admin users after upgrading Bamboo to 5.15 or above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 issues

28 March 2017 - Bamboo 5.15.5

This is a bug fix release. We’ve fixed the following issues:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Bamboo 5.15 contains upgrade tasks that can take extra time when moving from earlier versions of Bamboo. Keep this in mind when planning your upgrade outages.
24 March 2017 - Bamboo 5.15.4

This is a bug fix release. We've fixed the following issues:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18260</td>
<td>Upgrading Bamboo to 5.15.3 Breaks Plan Branches Using Repository Authentication Type 'Username and Password'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-13098</td>
<td>Plan branches use old (deleted) branches variable values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18233</td>
<td>NullPointerException when open build dashboard in heavy loaded instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18235</td>
<td>Bamboo doesn't handle null Variables values of existing builds after upgrade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18013</td>
<td>Trying to add dedicated agent to deployment plan, with no agent selected, throws NPE instead of showing user-friendly error</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 issues

9 March 2017 - Bamboo 5.15.3

This is a security bug fix release. We've fixed the following issues:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18240</td>
<td>Remote code execution through CVE-2017-5638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18242</td>
<td>Apache Struts 2 Remote Code Execution (CVE-2017-5638)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 issues

8 March 2017 - Bamboo 5.15.2

This is a bug fix release. We've fixed the following issues:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18199</td>
<td>Upgrade task 51509 fail if MySQL server contain database from old Bamboo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18216</td>
<td>Git LFS checkout fails for non-master branch when the Bamboo git cache is empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18182</td>
<td>MySQL 5.6.29 is reported as unsupported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18174</td>
<td>Polling branch detection runs even with Bitbucket Server application link added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18219</td>
<td>Exception on agent assignment removal affects other assignments of agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18161</td>
<td>Insufficient Permission when trying to deploy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18201</td>
<td>Auto merge branch plan fail with error - Name is null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18165</td>
<td>Specify Nunit 3 Runner executable in server capabilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18117</td>
<td>Intermittent Permission denied (password) exception occurs for SSH proxy connections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAM-18189</td>
<td>jgit can't check out using shared credentials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Showing 10 out of 11 issues

14 February 2017 - Bamboo 5.15.0

We've fixed the following issues:
### Bamboo FAQ

#### Bamboo FAQ

Answers to commonly raised questions about configuring and using Bamboo:

- **What Is Continuous Integration?**
• Usage FAQ
  • Can multiple plans share a common 3rd-party directory
  • Changing Bamboo database settings
  • Deploying Multiple Atlassian Applications in a Single Tomcat Container
  • How Bamboo processes task arguments and passes them to OS shell
  • Securing your repository connection
  • Changing the remote agent heartbeat interval
  • Cloning a Bamboo instance
  • How do I connect Bamboo to an unsupported database
  • How do I shut down my elastic instances if I have restarted my Bamboo server
  • How do I stop the Bamboo server from automatically configuring my remote agent's capabilities
  • JUnit parsing in Bamboo
  • Known issues with CVS in Bamboo
  • Monitoring and Profiling Bamboo
  • Monitor Memory usage and Garbage Collection in Bamboo
  • Moving Bamboo-Home of an agent
  • Performing a thread dump
  • Restoring passwords to recover admin users
  • Send Errors to stderr - Script Builder in Visual Studio WinXP to build Solutions Files
  • Using Bamboo with Clover
    • Getting gcov results in Clover coverage summary
  • Working with Java libraries
  • Bamboo indicates that my Ant or Maven builds failed, even though they were successful
  • DRAFT - Usage FAQ
  • Raising a request with Atlassian Support
  • Support Policies
    • Bamboo Support Policy
    • New Features Policy
    • Finding Your Bamboo Support Entitlement Number (SEN)
  • Bamboo resources
  • Glossary
    • activity log
    • agent
    • agent-specific capability
    • artifact
    • authors in Bamboo
    • build
    • build activity
    • build duration
    • build log
    • build queue
    • build result
    • build telemetry
    • capability
    • child
    • committer
    • custom capability
    • default repository
    • elastic agent
    • elastic Bamboo
    • elastic block store
    • elastic image
    • elastic instance
    • executable
    • favorites
    • global permission
    • job
    • label
    • local agent
    • parent
    • permission
    • plan
    • plan permission
    • projects in Bamboo
    • queue
    • reason
    • remote agent
    • remote agent supervisor
    • requirement
    • shared capability
    • stage
    • stock images
    • task
    • triggering
    • watcher
  • Contributing to the Bamboo documentation
Bamboo Evaluator's FAQ

If you are evaluating Bamboo, you may also wish to consult the Bamboo Evaluator's FAQ:

- Can Bamboo be Extended or Integrated with Other Tools?
- Can Bamboo be Used for Release Management?
- Can I use Clover Code Coverage with Bamboo?
- How is Bamboo Licensed?
- What are Remote and Elastic Agents?
- What are the Hardware Requirements for Bamboo?
- What Build Tools can Bamboo Work With?
- What Environments are Supported?
- What is Continuous Integration?
- Who Broke The Build?

Need more help?

Do you have a question, or need help with Bamboo? Please create a support request.

Browse our Bamboo Developer FAQ.

You may also like to check out the forums:

- Bamboo General Forum
- Bamboo Developers Forum

Usage FAQ

- Can multiple plans share a common 3rd-party directory
- Changing Bamboo database settings
- Deploying Multiple Atlassian Applications in a Single Tomcat Container
- How Bamboo processes task arguments and passes them to OS shell
- Securing your repository connection
- Changing the remote agent heartbeat interval
- Cloning a Bamboo instance
- How do I connect Bamboo to an unsupported database
- How do I shut down my elastic instances if I have restarted my Bamboo server
- How do I stop the Bamboo server from automatically configuring my remote agent's capabilities
- JUnit parsing in Bamboo
- Known issues with CVS in Bamboo
- Monitoring and Profiling Bamboo
- Monitor Memory usage and Garbage Collection in Bamboo
- Moving Bamboo-Home of an agent
- Performing a thread dump
- Restoring passwords to recover admin users
- Send Errors to stderr - Script Builder in Visual Studio WinXP to build Solutions Files
- Using Bamboo with Clover
  - Getting gcov results in Clover coverage summary
  - Working with Java libraries
  - Bamboo indicates that my Ant or Maven builds failed, even though they were successful
  - DRAFT - Usage FAQ

Can multiple plans share a common 3rd-party directory

For example, you might have three repository directories, say, A, B, and C, where A is a common 3rd-party library. A is used across projects.

At this stage, Bamboo doesn't support having multiple checkout directories per build plan. However, you can work around this by setting these three directories up as separate Bamboo build plans - P_A, P_B, and P_C.

To make this work, you will also need to specify as an argument to your build scripts for P_B and P_C the location of A, which will be something like this:

```
../Plan_key_for_A/
```

Using a setup like this, your library module (A) should only be checked out once across the Bamboo instance.

See also:

- Triggering a build when another build finishes

Changing Bamboo database settings

The Bamboo database configuration is persisted in the `<Bamboo-Home>/bamboo.cfg.xml` file. You can change the database settings by editing this file, as detailed in the instructions below:

Changing the Bamboo database username and password.
If you want to change the database username and password, edit the following line,

```
<property name="hibernate.connection.password">YOUR_PASSWORD</property>
<property name="hibernate.connection.username">YOUR_USERNAME</property>
```

**Changing the Bamboo database URL**

If you want to change the database URL, edit the following line,

```
<property name="hibernate.connection.url">DATABASE_URL</property>
```

⚠️ You need to restart the Bamboo application server for the changes to take effect. If you have any elastic agents running, ensure that they are shut down before you restart the Bamboo server. If you do not shut down your elastic instances before restarting, they will continue to run and become orphaned from your Bamboo server.

**Deploying Multiple Atlassian Applications in a Single Tomcat Container**

Deploying multiple Atlassian applications in a single Tomcat container is not supported. We do not test this configuration and upgrading any of the applications (even for point releases) is likely to break it. There are also a number of known issues with this configuration:

- You may not be able to start up all of the applications in the container, due to class conflicts (in 3rd party libraries bundled with our application) that result from the Atlassian applications sharing a single JVM in the Tomcat container.
- You will not be able to determine the startup order of the applications. Hence, you may experience problems such as JIRA starting before Crowd, rather than vice versa.
- Memory problems are also common as one application may allocate all of the memory in the Tomcat JVM to itself, starving the other applications.

We also do not support deploying multiple Atlassian applications to a single Tomcat container for a number of practical reasons. Firstly, you must shut down Tomcat to upgrade any application and secondly, if one application crashes, the other applications running in that Tomcat container will be inaccessible.

Finally, we recommend not deploying any other applications to the same Tomcat container that runs the Atlassian application, especially if these other applications have large memory requirements or require additional libraries in Tomcat's lib subdirectory.

**How Bamboo processes task arguments and passes them to OS shell**

- **Parsing arguments**
- **Passing arguments to shell**
- **FAQ**
  - I want to pass double quotes with my argument to Unix shell.
  - My Maven Task doesn’t work when I specify multiple targets in argument field

**Parsing arguments**

When executing different Tasks, Bamboo attempts to tokenize value entered in Arguments field. The general rules are:

- white characters are argument separators,
- single and double quotes are used to preserve white characters in arguments.

This particular string

```
clean install -DpartiallyQuotedArgument1="Partially Quoted Argument"
 'Fully Quoted Argument'
```

would be tokenized as

```
clean
install
-DpartiallyQuotedArgument1="Partially Quoted Argument"
 'Fully Quoted Argument'
```

Each line here represents a single argument that will be passed to shell.

**Passing arguments to shell**
Bamboo generally doesn't modify tokenized arguments before passing them to shell with one exception:

- on non-Windows OS arguments that are fully enclosed in single or double quotes will be stripped from those quotes.

This particular string

```
clean install -DpartiallyQuotedArgument1="Partially Quoted Argument"
'Fully Quoted Argument'
```

would be passed to Windows shell as

```
clean
install
-DpartiallyQuotedArgument1="Partially Quoted Argument"
'Fully Quoted Argument'
```

but to Unix shell as

```
clean
install
-DpartiallyQuotedArgument1="Partially Quoted Argument"
Fully Quoted Argument
```

**FAQ**

*I want to pass double quotes with my argument to Unix shell.*

Try this

```
'"Only external quotes will be stripped and double quotes will be preserved when passing this to Unix shell"'
```

*My Maven Task doesn't work when I specify multiple targets in argument field*

Make sure you haven't quoted the whole contents of Arguments field:

```
"clean install"
```

You should simply delete quotes

```
clean install
```

**Securing your repository connection**

*About this page*

This page shows how to secure your bamboo server to source repository connection.

**Subversion**

*svn+ssh*

In your build plan you must specify the absolute path to the repository when using svn+ssh, for example `svn+ssh://<svnhost>/absolute/path/to/repository/root/your/module`
Using a key pair

They key pair is shared between your bamboo agent box (the bamboo server box in case of local agents) and the repository server box. Your repository configuration allows you to specify the location of a private key file that must be stored on the agent box.

The key pair has to be in PKCS12/OpenSSH format and the private key must be passphrase protected, otherwise a runtime exception is thrown by JDK security engine while opening the user key.

Linux and related

1. On the repository box generate the keypair
   
   ```
   ssh-keygen -t rsa
   ```

2. add public key to `~/.ssh/authorized_keys`
   
   ```
   cat id_rsa.pub >> ~/.ssh/authorized_keys
   ```

3. copy the private key to all the agent boxes into a directory that is common to all agents (remote and local) e.g. `/var/keys/ssh/id_rsa`

**For windows agents**

Store the private key file in the same location on the drive that the agent is started from. For example you start your agent with

```d:\bamboo-agent > java -jar
atlassian-bamboo-agent-installer-xxx.jar ....
```

Then the key file must be in `d:\var\keys\ssh\id_rsa`

Windows

Private key should always be in OpenSSH format. On windows usually "putty" (plink) program is used that uses keys in its proprietary format (PPK - putty private key), this format is not supported by bamboo. The PuttyGen program may be used on Windows to convert key in PPK format to OpenSSH.

How to add the public key to the windows version of `~/.ssh/authorized_keys` <<<< comment needed

Trouble shooting

You can test the svn+ssh connection from the command line.
First you need to tell the svn command line client which key file to use:

```$ export SVN_SSH="ssh -i /absolute/path/to/private/key"
```

Then you can test the connection with

```$ svn list svn+ssh://<svn-server>/Absolute/Path/To/Repository/[Module]
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.agent.heartbeatInterval=60</td>
<td>The frequency of the heartbeat signal from remote agents. The value is in seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.agent.heartbeatTimeoutSeconds=600</td>
<td>How long the Bamboo server will wait before it times out an agent that it hasn’t received a heartbeat signal from. A remote agent that has been timed out will be marked as ‘Offline’. Any builds being run by agents which have timed out will be abandoned. The value is in seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo.agent.heartbeatCheckInterval=30</td>
<td>How often Bamboo checks for agents that have exceeded the heartbeat timeout specified in bamboo.agent.heartbeatTimeoutSeconds. The value is in seconds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Configuring Bamboo on startup for instructions on how to change a Bamboo system property.

**Cloning a Bamboo instance**

You can clone an existing Bamboo instance by getting a new Bamboo instance in the same version and using the setup of the existing one.

You may want to transfer a snapshot of your current production Bamboo instance to a test server as permitted in the license agreement.

Cloning Bamboo can be a step in preparation for migrating to another database or for upgrading.

If you are using JIRA or Crowd for user management, the URL of the Bamboo server may change when you clone the Bamboo instance, in which case you will need to edit that setting for the Bamboo application in JIRA/CROWD to match the new URL.

**License**

Development licenses are available for any Commercial or Academic license. Create one or contact us for help.

**Cloning a Bamboo instance to a new server**

To clone a Bamboo instance to a new server:

1. Export/Backup your original Bamboo instance.
2. Install the same version of Bamboo on the new server.
3. On the new server, in the new <bamboo-install> directory, go to webapp/WEB-INF/classes/ and open the bamboo-init.properties file. In the bamboo-init.properties file, set the new <bamboo-home> path.
4. Start the new Bamboo instance and import the existing export/backup data prepared in Step 1.

**Alternative cloning scenario**

If your current instance has grown too large and export/import does not work, you can still clone your instance by using an alternative backup and restore strategy.

The approach is to clone the <bamboo-home> content and make it available to the new Bamboo instance.
1. Stop the original Bamboo instance.
2. Create a backup:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>embedded DB</th>
<th>external DB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compress the original <code>&lt;bamboo-home&gt;</code> directory into a <code>.zip</code> file. The embedded database is included in the directory.</td>
<td>• Compress the original <code>&lt;bamboo-home&gt;</code> directory into a <code>.zip</code> file. • Create a database backup with the native tools.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can reduce the size of a compressed `<bamboo-production-home>` file by deleting the `xml-data/build-dir` directory that contains working copies of the checked-out sources.

For more information about migrating databases, see Moving your Bamboo data to a different database.

3. Restart the original Bamboo instance.
4. Install the same version of Bamboo on the new server.

   If you are cloning a Bamboo instance on the same server, make sure that the new Bamboo instance doesn't have the same `<bamboo-install>` installation path as the original Bamboo instance.

5. Transfer the compressed original `<bamboo-home>` directory to the new server where you installed the new Bamboo instance.
6. Replace the content of the new `<bamboo-home>` directory with the unzipped `<home-directory>` content.
7. On the new server, in the new `<bamboo-install>` directory, go to `webapp/WEB-INF/classes/` and open the `bamboo-init.properties` file. In the `bamboo-init.properties` file, set the new `<bamboo-home>` path.

   If you are cloning a Bamboo instance on the same server, make sure that the new Bamboo instance doesn't have the same `<bamboo-home>` path as the original Bamboo instance.

8. (External DB only) Create a new database for the cloned instance and import the external database backup.
9. In the new `<bamboo-home>` directory, open:
   - `bamboo.cfg.xml`
   - `xml-data/configuration/administration.xml`

   and change the server names/IP addresses according to the new location.
10. (External DB only) Go to the new `<bamboo-home>` directory, open the `bamboo.cfg.xml` file, and enter the new database connection details and credentials.
11. Start the new Bamboo instance.

**Next steps**

- (Optional) You can upgrade the new Bamboo instance.
- If the new server has different locations for:
  - JDKs
  - Ant
  - Maven
  - Perforce
  - Msbuild tools
  adjust the settings in the server capabilities settings to match the locations on the new server.

**How do I connect Bamboo to an unsupported database**

We strongly recommend that you use Bamboo with one of the databases that we support (see Supported platforms for details). However, if you wish to connect Bamboo to an unsupported database, you can do so using the instructions below.

First, choose one of the following methods by which you will connect to your database:

- Connecting using JDBC
- Connecting using a datasource

Then follow the instructions for that method. Note that using JDBC is generally simpler, and is therefore the recommended method.

**On this page:**

- Connecting using JDBC
  - Connecting using a datasource

**Related pages:**

- Connecting Bamboo to an external database
- Moving your Bamboo data to a different database
- Troubleshooting Databases
Connecting using JBDC

To connect Bamboo to an unsupported database, using JDBC:

1. Put the appropriate JDBC driver jar file into your application server's classpath by copying the jar file into the `webapp/WEB-INF/lib` directory.
2. Set the following system property before starting your upgraded Bamboo server to enable "Unsupported Database" as a selectable option in the Setup Wizard:
   ```
   -Dbamboo.enable.unsupported.db=true
   ```
3. At Step 2 of the Bamboo Setup Wizard, choose External Database > Unsupported Database.
4. In the 'Select Database Connection' screen, choose Direct JDBC connection.
5. In the 'Setup JDBC Connection' screen, make the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Driver Class Name</td>
<td>The classname of your JDBC driver (consult your JDBC driver documentation for details).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database URL</td>
<td>The URL where Bamboo will access your database (consult your JDBC driver documentation for details).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>The username that Bamboo will use to access your database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password (if required) that Bamboo will use to access your database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibernate Dialect</td>
<td>The Hibernate dialect for your particular database. Using these databases is not recommended as there is no guarantee that they will operate correctly with Bamboo. Please consider using a supported database instead.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. Select Overwrite existing data if you wish Bamboo to overwrite any tables that already exist in the database.
7. Go to Step 3 of the Setup Wizard.

Connecting using a datasource

To connect Bamboo to an unsupported database, using a datasource:

1. Configure a datasource in your application server (consult your application server documentation for details). For the syntax of the JDBC URL to use, please see your JDBC driver documentation.
2. Set the following system property before starting your upgraded Bamboo server to enable "Unsupported Database" as a selectable option in the Setup Wizard:
   ```
   -Dbamboo.enable.unsupported.db=true
   ```
3. At Step 2 of the Bamboo Setup Wizard, choose External Database > Unsupported Database from the list.
4. In the 'Select Database Connection' screen, select Connect via a datasource (configured in the application server).
5. The 'Setup Datasource Connection' screen is displayed. In the JNDI name field, type the JNDI name of your datasource, as configured in your application server.
6. If `java:comp/env/jdbc/DataSourceName` doesn't work, try `jdbc/DataSourceName` (and vice versa).
7. Select Overwrite existing data if you wish Bamboo to overwrite any tables that already exist in the database.
8. Go to Step 3 of the Setup Wizard.

How do I shut down my elastic instances if I have restarted my Bamboo server

If you restart your Bamboo server without shutting down your elastic instances first, your elastic instances will continue to run. Your elastic instances will also be orphaned from your Bamboo server, and you will not be able to shut them down via Bamboo after your Bamboo server has restarted. You will need to terminate them via the Amazon Web Services (AWS) Console.

To shut down an elastic instance via the AWS Console:

1. Log in to the AWS Console. The 'Amazon EC2' tab of the console should display.
2. Click the Instances link under the 'Images & Instances' section of the left navigation column. Your EC2 instances should be displayed.
3. Check the checkbox next to the instances that need to be terminated in the 'My Instances' panel. In most cases, it should be all instances unless you are running Elastic Bamboo on multiple Bamboo servers.
4. The buttons at the top of the 'My Instances' panel should become enabled. Click Terminate to terminate your instances.
How do I stop the Bamboo server from automatically configuring my remote agent's capabilities

The Bamboo server automatically detects and populates the capabilities that a remote agent should be configured with upon agent start up. If you have modified the agent capabilities, they will be reset by the server's automatic capability detection when the agent is next restarted.

You can override this by adding the following flag, "-DDISABLE_AGENT_AUTO_CAPABILITY_DETECTION=true", to the Bamboo server. Read Starting Bamboo for information on how to do this.

JUnit parsing in Bamboo

Bamboo can parse any test output that conforms to standard JUnit XML format. The implementation of this is pretty simple — Bamboo looks for specific tags in the JUnit XML output.

A failed JUnit XML report, that is successfully parsed by Bamboo.

```xml
<testsuite errors="0" tests="3" time="0.391" failures="1"
    name="com.atlassian.bamboo.repository.perforce.PerforceSyncCommandTest">  
    <properties>  
        <property value="Java(TM) 2 Runtime Environment, Standard Edition" name="java.runtime.name"/>  
        <property value="UnicodeBig" name="sun.io.unicode.encoding"/>  
        ................  
    </properties>  
    <testcase time="0.001" name="testGeneratesCorrectP4CommandLine"/>  
    <testcase time="0" name="testGettersReturnExpectedStuff"/>  
    <testcase time="0.164" name="testUsingPerforceWhenNoFilesHaveChanged">  
        <failure type="junit.framework.AssertionFailedError" message="Should not have any errors. [Perforce client error:, Connect to server failed; ]">  
            junit.framework.AssertionFailedError: Should not have any errors. [Perforce client error:, Connect to server failed; check $P4PORT., TCP connect to keg failed., keg: host unknown.] expected:&lt;0&gt; but was:&lt;4&gt;  
            at junit.framework.Assert.fail(Assert.java:47)  
            at junit.framework.Assert.failNotEquals(Assert.java:282)  
            at junit.framework.Assert.assertEquals(Assert.java:64)  
            at junit.framework.Assert.assertEquals(Assert.java:201)  
            at com.atlassian.bamboo.repository.perforce.PerforceSyncCommandTest.testUsingPerforceWhenNoFilesHaveChanged(PerforceSyncCommandTest.java:60)  
            at sun.reflect.NativeMethodAccessorImpl.invoke0(Native
cycle(DefaultLifecycleExecutor.java:475)
at
org.apache.maven.lifecycle.DefaultLifecycleExecutor.executeGoal(DefaultLifecycleExecutor.java:454)
at
org.apache.maven.lifecycle.DefaultLifecycleExecutor.executeGoalAndHandleFailures(DefaultLifecycleExecutor.java:306)
at
org.apache.maven.lifecycle.DefaultLifecycleExecutor.executeTaskSegments(DefaultLifecycleExecutor.java:273)
at
org.apache.maven.lifecycle.DefaultLifecycleExecutor.execute(DefaultLifecycleExecutor.java:140)
at
org.apache.maven.DefaultMaven.doExecute(DefaultMaven.java:322)
at
org.apache.maven.DefaultMaven.execute(DefaultMaven.java:115)
at
org.apache.maven.cli.MavenCli.main(MavenCli.java:256)
at
sun.reflect.NativeMethodAccessorImpl.invoke0(NativeMethodAccessorImpl.java:39)
at
sun.reflect.NativeMethodAccessorImpl.invoke(NativeMethodAccessorImpl.java:39)
at
at
java.lang.reflect.Method.invoke(Method.java:585)
at
org.codehaus.classworlds.Launcher.launchEnhanced(Launcher.java:315)
at
org.codehaus.classworlds.Launcher.launch(Launcher.java:255)
at
org.codehaus.classworlds.Launcher.mainWithExitCode(Launcher.java:430)
at
org.codehaus.classworlds.Launcher.main(Launcher.java:375)
</failure>
<system-out>
  PerforceSyncCommand.command: /usr/local/bin/p4
</system-out>
Click here to download the XML report.
A passed JUnit XML report, that is successfully parsed by Bamboo.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<testsuite errors="0" skipped="0" tests="1" time="0.045" failures="0"
name="com.atlassian.bamboo.labels.LabelManagerImplTest">
  <properties>
    <property value="Java(TM) 2 Runtime Environment, Standard Edition"
name="java.runtime.name"/>
    <property value="/usr/java/jdk1.5.0_07/jre/lib/i386"
name="sun.boot.library.path"/>
    <property value="1.5.0_07-b03" name="java.vm.version"/>
    <property value="Sun Microsystems Inc." name="java.vm.vendor"/>
    <property value="http://java.sun.com/" name="java.vendor.url"/>
    <property value=":" name="path.separator"/>
    <property value="Java HotSpot(TM) Client VM" name="java.vm.name"/>
    <property value="sun.io" name="file.encoding.pkg"/>
    <property value="US" name="user.country"/>
    <property value="unknown" name="sun.os.patch.level"/>
    <property value="Java Virtual Machine Specification"
name="java.vm.specification.name"/>
    <property value="/opt/bamboo-data/bamboohome/xml-data/build-dir/BAM-MAIN"
name="user.dir"/>
    <property value="1.5.0_07-b03" name="java.runtime.version"/>
    <property value="/opt/bamboo-data/bamboohome/xml-data/build-dir/BAM-MAIN/bamboo-core"
name="basedir"/>
    <property value="/usr/java/jdk1.5.0_07/jre/lib/endorsed"
name="java.endorsed.dirs"/>
    <property value="i386" name="os.arch"/>
    <property value="/tmp" name="java.io.tmpdir"/>
    <property value="Sun Microsystems Inc." name="java.vm.specification.vendor"/>
    <property value="Linux" name="os.name"/>
    <property value="/opt/java/tools/maven2/bin/m2.conf"
name="classworlds.conf"/>
    <property value="ISO-8859-1" name="sun.jnu.encoding"/>
    <property value="/opt/bamboo-data/bamboohome/xml-data/build-dir/BAM-MAIN/bamboo-core/bamboo-co" name="basedir"/>
    <property value="/usr/java/jdk1.5.0_07/jre/lib/endorsed"
name="java.endorsed.dirs"/>
    <property value="i386" name="os.arch"/>
    <property value="/tmp" name="java.io.tmpdir"/>
    <property value="Sun Microsystems Inc." name="java.vm.specification.vendor"/>
    <property value="Linux" name="os.name"/>
    <property value="/opt/java/tools/maven2/bin/m2.conf"
name="classworlds.conf"/>
    <property value="ISO-8859-1" name="sun.jnu.encoding"/>
    <property value="/opt/bamboo-data/bamboohome/xml-data/build-dir/BAM-MAIN/bamboo-core/bamboo-co" name="basedir"/>
  </properties>
</testsuite>
```
<property value="1.5" name="java.specification.version"/>
<property value="bamboo" name="user.name"/>
<property value="/opt/java/tools/maven2/boot/classworlds-1.1.jar" name="java.class.path"/>
<property value="1.0" name="java.vm.specification.version"/>
<property value="32" name="sun.arch.data.model"/>
<property value="/usr/java/jdk1.5.0_07/jre" name="java.home"/>
<property value="Sun Microsystems Inc." name="java.specification.vendor"/>
<property value="en" name="user.language"/>
<property value="mixed mode, sharing" name="java.vm.info"/>
<property value="1.5.0_07" name="java.version"/>
<property value="/usr/java/jdk1.5.0_07/jre/lib/ext" name="java.ext.dirs"/>
<property value="Sun Microsystems Inc." name="java.vendor"/>
<property value="/opt/java/tools/maven2" name="maven.home"/>
<property value="/home/bamboo/.m2/repository" name="localRepository"/>
<property value="/" name="file.separator"/>
<property value="http://java.sun.com/cgi-bin/bugreport.cgi" name="java.vendor.url.bug"/>
<property value="little" name="sun.cpu.endian"/>
<property value="UnicodeLittle" name="sun.io.unicode.encoding"/>
<property value="" name="sun.cpu.isalist"/>
</properties>
Known issues with CVS in Bamboo

Bamboo uses CVS `rlog` command - this lets you perform a CVS update on your local working directory without checking out your project.

**CVS Error logging in Bamboo**

Currently, if the server throws an error during a CVS build in Bamboo versions 2.0.x, the application will hang with no indication of any checkout/update problems. There is an open JIRA issue tracking this problem.

In order to further debug any CVS issues, you will need to turn up the CVS logging by passing in the `-DcvsClientLog=system` argument to Bamboo.

1) **Incompatibility with CVS servers 1.11.1 and below**

Support for the `rlog` command 1.11.1p and performing a CVS `rlog` command returns the following error:

```
-cvs [rlog aborted]: server does not support rlog
```

2) **Incompatibility with CVS server version 1.11.x when using "." to denote the root module to be checked out.**

The CVS `rlog` command fails if you are using CVS version 1.11.x, with the following error.

```
INFO | jvm 1 | 2008/05/15 14:19:10 | E cvs: recurse.c:642: do_recursion: Assertion `strstr (repository, "/./") == ((void *)0)'
failed.
INFO | jvm 1 | 2008/05/15 14:19:10 | error
```

Please upgrade your CVS version to 1.12.x to get around this issue.

3) **CVS Checkout format**

Due to prior issues, Bamboo will checkout all files (including text files) from the CVS server as binary, however post Bamoo 2.1.2 this behavior can be changed via a system parameter. To do this restart Bamboo with the following parameter (if you have any elastic agents running, ensure that they are shut down before you restart the Bamboo server. If you do not shut down your elastic instances before restarting, they will continue to run and become orphaned from your Bamboo server).

```
-DCVS_CHECKOUT_BINARY_FORMAT=false
```

Post 2.1.5 this has been replaced with a more flexible option

```
-DCVS_CHECKOUT_FORMAT=BINARY
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Command Options</th>
<th>Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BINARY (Default)</td>
<td>-b</td>
<td>forces all files to be checked out in binary and won’t convert any line endings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEXT</td>
<td>-kv</td>
<td>forces all files to be checked out as text and converts all line endings (even Binary files)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONE</td>
<td></td>
<td>lets CVS decide whether or not to convert line endings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For further reference, on configuring Bamboo start-up options see this document
Monitoring and Profiling Bamboo

This page helps you to set up profiling for bamboo. Profiling information can be useful to monitor bamboo’s performance, memory consumption and the server’s CPU load.

On this page
- Profiling with JMX
  - Enabling the profiler
  - Monitoring and Controlling the Profiler with JConsole
- Profiling with Yourkit
  - Installing Yourkit
  - Enabling the profiler

Profiling with JMX

Enabling the profiler

JMX is Sun’s native java platform monitor. JConsole can be used to visualize the profiling data.

To enable JMX add `-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote` (or `-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.port=<portNum> for remote monitoring) as a command line argument when starting bamboo.

For Unix: add the parameter to the `RUN_CMD` line in `bamboo.sh`
For Windows: add the parameter to the `.\conf\wrapper.conf` file as `wrapper.java.additional.4=-D....`

Restart Bamboo.

Does not work when bamboo is run as a windows service

At the moment profiling via JMX only works when bamboo is run as a console application on windows. Running bamboo as a windows service with profiling is currently not supported.

Monitoring and Controlling the Profiler with JConsole

Please refer to Sun’s documentation

Profiling with Yourkit

Installing Yourkit

Yourkit is an alternative (commercial) java profiler.

Follow the installation instructions for your platform.

You do not need a license if you just run the profiling agent with bamboo.

Enabling the profiler

Add `-agentlib:yjpagent=onexit=snapshot` to the command line in `bamboo.sh` or as an additional parameter to `wrapper.conf`

Then follow the instructions on enabling the profiler manually for your platform.

Restart Bamboo.

Monitor Memory usage and Garbage Collection in Bamboo

A simple way to do this is to turn on garbage collection and heap dump on out of memory.

Parameters

Please add the following parameters to Bamboo

```
-XX:+PrintGCDetails -XX:+PrintGCTimeStamps -verbose:gc
-Xloggc:/path/to/gc.log
```

Note: Remember to substitute `/path/to/gc.log` with a meaningful file path on your server.
GC log file location

The garbage collection traces and the heap dumps are in `<bamboo-install>/gc.log`.

Additional Note

The `-XX:+PrintGCTimeStamps` flag, prints when GCs happen relative to the start of the application.

Some helpful links:

http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/articles/javase/gcportal-136937.html

Moving Bamboo-Home of an agent

To move an agent's Bamboo-Home -

1. Move the Bamboo-Home of the agent, to the intended location.
2. Edit the `<Bamboo-Agent-Home>/bamboo-agent.cfg.xml` file, find the following line -

   ```xml
   ```

3. Point the working directory and the artifact directory to the new Bamboo-Home.
4. Start your Agent with `-Dbamboo.home=your_new_agent_home` and point to your new Bamboo-Agent-Home.

Performing a thread dump

If Bamboo stops responding, or is performing poorly, you should create a thread dump to help Atlassian determine the cause of the problem.

This will show the state of each thread in the JVM, including a stack trace and information about what locks that thread is holding and waiting for.

**Linux (and Solaris and other Unices) Users**

Find the process id of the JVM and issue the command:

```
ps
```

Use the `kill -3 <pid>` command to kill the JVM.

Note: This will not kill your server (so long as you included the `-3` option, no space in between). The thread dump will be printed to Bamboo’s standard output.

Please note that some application servers (like tomcat) redirect stdout (to catalina.out for instance).

**Jstack (any Platform with an JAVA JDK)**

Sun JDK 1.5 and above ship with native tool called `jstack` to perform thread dump. To use the tool find the Proccess ID and execute the command:

```
jstack <ProcessID>
```

If you run your Atlassian product via wrapper (as a service) on Windows, you may encounter this error, 'Not enough storage is available to process this command'. See the suggestions in this KB article for workarounds.

**Java VisualVM (any Platform with an JAVA JDK)**

Oracle JDK has a native tool `jvisualvm` to perform thread dumps (and much more). To use the tool execute the command:
Find Bamboo process ({{com.atlassian.bamboo.server.Server}}) and execute "Thread Dump" option available from a context menu.

### Thread Dump Tools

- Samurai
- Thread Dump Analyzer TDA

### Restoring passwords to recover admin users

Use this document if you are unable to login as administrator or have forgotten your password and do not have Mail Server configured, to manually replace administrator passwords.

Follow the instructions for either the Embedded Database or External Database. If you have not configured a database, use the Embedded instructions.

#### Embedded Database Instructions

**Stage One - Identify Administrator**

This guide assumes that the first user added was an administrator. If this is not the case, search for the admin username and find their user id number, then modify their password hash instead.

1. Shutdown Bamboo
2. In your Bamboo home directory, open database\defaultdb.script file in a text editor
3. Search for the text:

   ```
   INSERT INTO USERS VALUES(1
   ```

   To find the administrator login entry:

   ```
   INSERT INTO USERS VALUES(1,'USERNAME','PASSWORD_HASH')
   ```

   Where the 1 is the user id number, and USERNAME and PASSWORD_HASH are actual values.

   As an example, my table entry for user admin with password admin looks like this;

   ```
   INSERT INTO USERS
   VALUES(1,'admin','x61Ey612Kl2gpFL56FT9weDnpSo4AV8j8+qx2AuTHdRyY036xxzTTr
   w10Wq3+4qQyB+XURPWX1ONxp3Y3pB37A==','admin@admin.com','2007-08-14
   11:26:18.504000000','admin')
   ```

   1. This step makes admin the administrator's password. Bamboo does not store passwords in plain text in the database, but uses hashes computed from the original password. The hash for the characters admin is below:

   ```
   x61Ey612Kl2gpFL56FT9weDnpSo4AV8j8+qx2AuTHdRyY036xxzTTrw10Wq3+4qQyB+
   XURPWX1ONxp3Y3pB37A==
   ```

   Paste the admin password hash between the " characters of their existing PASSWORD_HASH. The new administrator login entry should look like:

   ```
   INSERT INTO USERS
   VALUES(1,'USERNAME','x61Ey612Kl2gpFL56FT9weDnpSo4AV8j8+qx2AuTHdRyY0
   36xxzTTrw10Wq3+4qQyB+XURPWX1ONxp3Y3pB37A==','EMAIL','DATE_TIME','FULL
   LL_NAME')
   ```
Where USERNAME is the administrator username.

1. Save the file
2. Start up Bamboo
3. Login with the administrator username and password admin

External Database Instructions

Stage One - Identify User

The first user added is always an admin. To restore your password you simply need to update the password hash in the USERS table with the admin hash.

Connect to your database using a database admin tool such as DBVisualiser. Please download a database admin tool now if you do not have one installed already. Once installed, connect to your database and retrieve the list of administrator usernames with:

```
select * from USERS where ID=1
```

This command should list all users who belong to Bamboo-Admin user group.

Stage Two - Replace Administrator Password

Bamboo does not store passwords in plain text in the database, but uses hashes computed from the original password. You instead cut and paste a hash, rather than the plain password, over the existing password. Below is the hash for the password admin

```
x61Ey612K12gpFL56FT9weDnpSo4AV8j8+qx2AuThdRyY036xxzTTrw10Wq3+4qQyB+XURPWx1ONxp3Y3pB37A==
```

To change the password to admin for a given username:

1. Shutdown Bamboo
2. Connect to your database, run this SQL on your database:

   ```
   update USERS set PASSWORD = 'x61Ey612K12gpFL56FT9weDnpSo4AV8j8+qx2AuThdRyY036xxzTTrw10Wq3+4qQyB+XURPWx1ONxp3Y3pB37A==' where NAME = 'USER_NAME_FROM_STAGE_ONE'
   ```

3. Start Bamboo
4. Login with your username and your password is now admin

Bamboo Password Hashing

- Before Bamboo 4.3.x the pure hashing method was used for which the hash of 'admin' is:

  ```
x61Ey612K12gpFL56FT9weDnpSo4AV8j8+qx2AuThdRyY036xxzTTrw10Wq3+4qQyB+XURPWx1ONxp3Y3pB37A==
```

- From Bamboo 4.3.x the salted hash is used which can be recognized by the PKCS. The hash for 'admin' using the new method is:

  ```
  {PKCS5S2}2ji+BcvOsgMOh5QGHHc+reOU2qvyHdf20E/0caC/Lf+u3+JvEst9prD151LLLpqglJ
  ```

- However, the old hash will still work for all Bamboo versions when manually inserted into the DB.

Send Errors to stderr - Script Builder in Visual Studio WinXP to build Solutions Files

To display an Error Summary for erroneous builds in bamboo build summary is not available for the Script Builder - going through the build logs seems tedious.

There is a section named “Error summary” which collects all errors during the build process that are printed to stderr. For example a build...
script

```bash
#!/bin/bash
echo "ERROR build xyz failed" >&2
```

would print this message into the build summary section. It is up to you to insert the appropriate messages into your build script.

**Problem**

The actual problem is devenv.com/msbuild not being very helpful: both build tools only append to stdout stream, even in the case of warnings/errors during the build.

**Solution**

I solved the issue by writing a simple Ruby script that invokes the build tool and filters the stdout stream for any warnings and errors via regexp; the matching warning/error lines are then echoed to stderr and Bamboo picks them up nicely.

```ruby
pipe = IO.popen("devenv.com #{[$*[0]} /Rebuild ")
errors = 0
warnings = 0
while line = pipe.gets
  if line =~ /^.* : .* error .*$/
    $stderr.puts line
    errors += 1
  elsif line =~ /^.* : warning .*$/
    $stderr.puts line
    warnings += 1
  else
    $stdout.puts line
  end
end
exit errors > 0 ? 1 : 0
```

**Related Pages**

Knowledge Base - (BSP-1381) Script Builder Display build errors in Error Summary

Using Bamboo with Clover

**Getting Started**

**One-click Clover Integration**

Clover has been seamlessly integrated with Bamboo from Bamboo 2.4 and later. Clover reports can be activated in the Builder configuration screen. Please see Enabling the Clover add-on # Automatic Clover integration for further details.
To configure Clover activity refer to Clover Reference Guides for your builder:

- Clover for Ant
- Clover for Maven 2

**Classic Clover Integration**

To use Clover with Bamboo, you need to:

1. Integrate Clover with your build and ensure that HTML and XML reports are generated:
   - Clover-for-Ant Installation Guide
   - Clover-for-Maven 2 and 3 Installation Guide
2. Ensure that there are tests present in your build plan that generate test results in JUnit test report format.
3. Configure where Bamboo can find Clover reports:
   - see Enabling the Clover add-on # Manual Clover integration

For further details, please see Configuring tasks.

**Common Problems**

Q: I have managed to get Clover statistics displayed in numerical form for each build, but the graphs do not show a history of these statistics?
A: The history of Clover is displayed over time periods (e.g. a day, a week, a month), and the minimum data point is per day. The Clover coverage will not display data that is less than a day old.

Q: Will the Bamboo/Clover integration run on failed builds?
A: Before Bamboo version 1.2.1, Bamboo would only report Clover coverage for successful builds. As of Bamboo 1.2.1, Bamboo will report Clover coverage regardless of the build outcome.

**Getting gcov results in Clover coverage summary**

This feature is not officially supported by Atlassian. It is being maintained by open source community, feel free to contribute.

**Description**

Clover does not support code coverage for C/C++. However, it is possible to display C/C++ coverage statistics on "Clover" tab on "Job Summary" and "Plan Summary" pages. In order to get this working:

- create a task in which gcov is used and produces coverage file
- create a task in which python script (see references below) converts gcov data to clover.xml file
- enable Clover on Miscellaneous tab on Job Configuration page
  - enable "Use Clover to collect code coverage for this build"
  - select option "Clover is already integrated into this build and a clover.xml will be produced."
  - enter path to clover.xml file

**References**

Source code for Python script performing conversion is kept in Mercurial bamboo-gcov-plugin repository on bitbucket.org:

```
hg clone ssh://hg@bitbucket.org/atlassian/bamboo-gcov-plugin
```

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
Discussion about Clover schema on Atlassian Answers:

- https://answers.atlassian.com/questions/68875/clover-xml-schema

**Working with Java libraries**

Due to licensing restrictions, we are not allowed to re-distribute native Java libraries through our maven2 public repositories.

If you are developing plugins for Bamboo or building Bamboo from source, you might need `javax.mail` and `javax.transaction:jta.jar` for Bamboo to build successfully. The relevant POMs for this look something like this:

```
<dependency>
  <groupId>javax.mail</groupId>
  <artifactId>mail</artifactId>
  <version>1.3.2</version>
  <scope>compile</scope>
</dependency>
<dependency>
  <groupId>jta</groupId>
  <artifactId>jta</artifactId>
  <version>1.0.1</version>
  <scope>compile</scope>
</dependency>
```

Before building, please install the Oracle JAR's into your local Maven2 repositories by following the instructions below.

**To install the `javax.mail` jar into your local Maven2 repository:**

1. Download the `javax.mail` jar from the Oracle website.
2. Install it on your local machine by entering the following command in a terminal:

```
mvn install:install-file -DgroupId=javax.mail -DartifactId=mail
-Dversion=1.3.3 -Dpackaging=jar -Dfile=YOUR/PATH/TO/FILE
```

**To install `javax.transaction:jta:jar` into your local Maven2 repository:**

1. Download the `javax.transaction:jta:jar` from the Oracle website.
2. Install it on your local machine by entering the following command in a terminal:

```
mvn install:install-file -DgroupId=javax.transaction
-DartifactId=jta -Dversion=1.0.1B -Dpackaging=jar
-Dfile=/path/to/file
```

**Bamboo indicates that my Ant or Maven builds failed, even though they were successful**

Please note this Bamboo functionality relates only to the Maven Task and Ant Task outputs.

If your plan's build logs indicate that your Maven or Ant builds are passing but Bamboo is reporting them as failed (or vice-versa), it could be that:

- Bamboo is not finding 'BUILD SUCCESS' in your build logs
- Bamboo is finding 'BUILD FAILED' in your build logs when it should not be doing so. (This marker is not used in Maven.)
- Your builds are returning a non-zero return code. (For example, the build log will indicate `Build process for 'ABC Application - XYZ Build' returned with return code = 1`)

If your builds produce atypical or non-standard output, you can make Bamboo check for text other than 'BUILD SUCCESS' or 'BUILD FAILED' in your build logs. An additional system property is available to specify how far back in the logs Bamboo checks for these text markers.

Created by Atlassian in 2017. Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License.
### System Property

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>atlassian.bamboo.builder.successMarker</td>
<td>Specifies the text (or string) that Bamboo looks for in the build log to</td>
<td>BUILD SUCCESS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>determine if the build was successful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atlassian.bamboo.builder.failedMarker</td>
<td>Specifies the text (or string) that Bamboo looks for in the build log to</td>
<td>BUILD FAILED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>determine if the build failed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUCCESS_MESSAGE_LINES</td>
<td>Specifies the number of lines from the end of the builder log in which to</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>check for the values of atlassian.bamboo.builder.successMarker or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>atlassian.bamboo.builder.failedMarker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For instructions on how to configure a system property, please refer to the Starting Bamboo page.

### Raising a request with Atlassian Support

If you encounter any problems when setting up or using Bamboo, please let us know — we're here to help!

You may want to search the following first:

- the [Atlassian Answers site](https://answers.atlassian.com) (the Bamboo forum), where Atlassian staff and Bamboo users can answer your questions.
- the Bamboo Knowledge Base.

If you've found a bug in Bamboo, or want to request a feature or improvement, raise a ticket in the Bamboo project of our [public issue tracker](https://jira.atlassian.com). Try searching for similar issues - voting for an existing issue is quicker, and avoids duplicates.

If you still need assistance, please raise a support request, either from within Bamboo or on the Atlassian Support site, as described in the following sections.

*Providing as much information as possible about your Bamboo installation with your initial request will help our Support Engineers to give you a faster and more complete response.*

#### On this page:

- Raising a Support Request from within Bamboo
- Raising a Support request yourself at Atlassian Support
- Information you should provide

### Raising a Support Request from within Bamboo

This method depends on having a mail server configured for Bamboo that supports large zip file attachments.

1. Log in to Bamboo (as a System Administrator) and go to the admin area.
2. Click Atlassian Support Tools (under 'System') then Support Request.
3. Provide as much information as possible in the Description, including steps to replicate the problem, and any error messages that are appearing on the console or in the logs. For performance issues, please include profiling logs. See the section below about information you should provide.
4. Click Send.

This will produce a zip file containing the information categories selected from the list and will email this to Atlassian Support. You will receive an email advising you of details of the Support Request that was automatically created, and you will receive emailed updates about progress on your issue. You can also see the status of your request directly by visiting the Atlassian Support System.

### Raising a Support request yourself at Atlassian Support

1. Log in to Bamboo (as a System Administrator) and go to the admin area.
2. Click Atlassian Support Tools (under 'System') then Support Zip.
3. Select information categories to include in the zip file.
4. Click Create.

The zip file is created in the home directory of the Bamboo server, for example `<Bamboo_HOME>/export/Bamboo_support_2013-11-17-20-49-18.zip`.

When you now go to Atlassian Support and create a Support Request, you can attach the Support Zip file to the request.

Please provide as much information as possible in the request, including steps to replicate the problem, and any error messages that are appearing on the console or in the logs. For performance issues, please include profiling logs. See the section below about information you should provide.

### Information you should provide

In addition to the logs and configuration information that you can include in the Support Request zip file, the following information can help to
give you a faster response:

Environment details
- Bamboo version
- Java version (for example OpenJDK 1.7.0 JDK)
- Operating system (for example, Windows 7, Mac OS X 10.6.8)
- Database type (for example, MySQL) and version
- Browsers and versions
- Network topology - is Bamboo running behind a reverse proxy? Is that secured using HTTPS (SSL)?

Configuration
- Java settings, including JVM_MINIMUM_MEMORY, JVM_MAXIMUM_MEMORY

Logs
You may need to adjust the logging level, or enable profiling in Bamboo, in order to get more detailed logs. See Bamboo debug logging.
- Debug logs – Bamboo debug logs can be found in `<Bamboo_HOME>/log`.
- Profiling logs – Bamboo profiling logs can help with analyzing performance issues and can be found in `<Bamboo_HOME>/log`.

Performance factors
- Number of users
- CPU spec, number of cores, whether hyperthreading is enabled
- RAM and cache sizes

Integrations
- Other Atlassian applications (and their versions)
- Which build servers are integrated with Bamboo, if any?
- Are Application Links configured?

Support Policies
Welcome to the support policies index page. Here, you'll find information about how Atlassian Support can help you and how to get in touch with our helpful support engineers. Please choose the relevant page below to find out more.
- Bamboo Support Policy
- New Features Policy
- Finding Your Bamboo Support Entitlement Number (SEN)

To request support from Atlassian, please raise a support issue in our online support system. To do this, visit support.atlassian.com, log in (creating an account if need be) and create an issue under Bamboo. Our friendly support engineers will get right back to you with an answer.

Bamboo Support Policy
This page contains details about the scope of Bamboo Support.

On this page:
- Build Failures
- Distributed Builds
- EC2
- Plugins

Build Failures
Atlassian will provide Troubleshooting Guide(s) and documentation to help customers resolve Bamboo-related issues.

Ultimately, users are responsible for the administration and maintenance of their build systems and infrastructure.

However, if the root cause of the problem is partially or wholly related to Bamboo, we will create a Bug Report or Feature request to address the issue.

Any bug or feature request reported during the course of investigation is subject to Atlassian's Bug Fixing and New Features Policies, as outlined in the Atlassian Support Offerings document.

Distributed Builds
The pre-requisites outlined in the Technical Overview section of Troubleshooting Guide must be met for server/agent communication to work.

If Atlassian determines that a customer's agent connectivity or communication problem results from a network or environmental factor, it is the customer's responsibility to address this problem and keep their network maintained.
EC2

Atlassian does not support custom elastic images (custom AMIs) and recommends using an EBS volume to customize your image if desired. While we are happy to assist with issues related to the elastic agent, we can not help troubleshoot modifications to the stock images which are not directly related to Bamboo functionality.

Plugins

Atlassian offers support for certain third party plugins as listed in our supported plugins list. For unsupported plugins, issues should be raised with the provider of the plugin.

The following can be classified as being third-party plugins:

- Integration with repositories other than Subversion, CVS and Perforce.
- Third party builders, test and code coverage tools other than what is shipped with Bamboo.

Each plugin’s supported status is listed on its page in the Plugin Exchange.

New Features Policy

Summary

- We encourage and display customer comments and votes openly in our issue tracking system, http://jira.atlassian.com.
- We do not publish roadmaps.
- Product Managers review our most popular voted issues on a regular basis.
- We schedule features based on a variety of factors.
- Our Atlassian Bug Fixing Policy is distinct from this process.
- Atlassian provides consistent updates on the top 20 issues.

How to track what features are being implemented

When a new feature or improvement is scheduled, the 'fix-for' version will be indicated in the JIRA issue. This happens for the upcoming release only. We maintain roadmaps for more distant releases internally, but because these roadmaps are often pre-empted by changing customer demands, we do not publish them.

How Atlassian chooses what to implement

In every major release we aim to implement highly requested features, but it is not the only determining factor. Other factors include:

- Customer contact: We get the chance to meet customers and hear their successes and challenges at Atlassian Summit, Atlassian Unite, developer conferences, and road shows.
- Customer interviews: All product managers at Atlassian do customer interviews. Our interviews are not simply to capture a list of features, but to understand our customers’ goals and plans.
- Community forums: There are large volumes of posts on answers, of votes and comments on jira.atlassian.com, and of conversations on community forums like groups on LinkedIn.
- Customer Support: Our support team provides clear insights into the issues that are challenging for customers, and which are generating the most calls to support.
- Atlassian Experts: Our Experts provide insights into real-world customer deployments, especially for customers at scale.
- Evaluator Feedback: When someone new tries our products, we want to know what they liked and disliked and often reach out to them for more detail.
- In product feedback: The JIRA Issue Collectors that we embed our products for evaluators and our Early Access Program give us a constant pulse on how users are experiencing our product.
- Usage data: Are customers using the features we have developed?
- Product strategy: Our long-term strategic vision for the product.
- Please read our post on Atlassian Answers for a more detailed explanation.

How to contribute to feature development

Influencing Atlassian’s release cycle

We encourage our customers to vote on issues that have been raised in our public JIRA instance, http://jira.atlassian.com. Please find out if your request already exists - if it does, vote for it. If you do not find it you may wish to create a new one.

Extending Atlassian products

Atlassian products have powerful and flexible extension APIs. If you would like to see a particular feature implemented, it may be possible to develop the feature as a plugin. Documentation regarding the plugin APIs is available. Advice on extending either product may be available on the user mailing-lists, or at Atlassian Answers.

If you require significant customisations, you may wish to get in touch with our partners. They specialise in extending Atlassian products and can do this work for you. If you are interested, please contact us.

Further reading
Finding Your Bamboo Support Entitlement Number (SEN)

Your Support Entitlement Number (SEN) is required when raising a support request in our Support system: http://support.atlassian.com. See How to find your Support Entitlement Number (SEN) in the Support space for more general information about how Atlassian Support uses this number.

The three ways of finding your SEN are described below.

1. **Method 1 — Check the Bamboo Administration Interface**
   
   **To find your SEN in the Bamboo administration interface:**
   
   1. Click the `cog` icon in the Bamboo header and choose **Overview**.
   2. Click **License Details** in the left navigation panel (under ‘System’). The SEN is shown, as in the screenshot below:

   ![License Details screenshot](image)

2. **Method 2 — Check my.atlassian.com**
   
   **To find your SEN via my.atlassian.com:**
   
   1. Log into my.atlassian.com as the Account Holder or Technical Contact for your Bamboo product.
   2. The SEN will be shown, as per the screenshot below:
Method 3 — Check your Atlassian Invoice

Your Support Entitlement Number (SEN) appears on the third page of your Atlassian Invoice.

Bamboo resources

Resources for Evaluators
- Free Trial
- Feature Tour

Resources for Administrators
- Bamboo forum at Atlassian Answers
- Bamboo Knowledge Base
- Bamboo FAQ
- Guide to Installing an Atlassian Integrated Suite
- The big list of Atlassian gadgets

Resources for Developers
- Bamboo Developer Documentation
- API documentation
- Developer topics on Atlassian Answers

Downloadable Documentation
- Bamboo documentation in PDF, HTML or XML formats

Plugins
- Atlassian Marketplace

IDE Connectors
- Use the Atlassian Connector for Eclipse or the Atlassian Connector for IntelliJ IDEA to work with your Bamboo builds right there in your development environment. Do you use JIRA, Crucible or FishEye too? With the connector you can manage your issues and code reviews within your IDE, or move quickly between the IDE and a FishEye view of your source repository. Hint: The Atlassian IDE Connectors are free.
Support

- Atlassian Support
- Support Policies

Training

- Atlassian Training

Forums

- Bamboo forum at Atlassian Answers
- Bamboo developers forum

Mailing Lists

- Visit http://my.atlassian.com to sign up for mailing lists relating to Atlassian products, such as technical alerts, product announcements and developer updates.

Feature Requests

- Issue Tracker and Feature Requests for Bamboo

Glossary

- activity log
- agent
- agent-specific capability
- artifact
- authors in Bamboo
- build
- build activity
- build duration
- build log
- build queue
- build result
- build telemetry
- capability
- child
- committer
- custom capability
- default repository
- elastic agent
- elastic Bamboo
- elastic block store
- elastic image
activity log

Every plan has an activity log. An activity log is a temporary display of the latest output from the plan's most recent build log.

agent

A Bamboo agent is a service that can run job builds. There are the following types of Bamboo agents:

- **local agents** run as part of the Bamboo server.
- **remote agents** run on computers, other than the Bamboo server, that run the remote agent tool.
- **elastic agents** run in the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2).

Local agents run in the Bamboo server's process, i.e. in the same JVM as the server. Each remote agent runs in its own process, i.e. has its own JVM.

Each agent has a defined set of capabilities and can only run builds for jobs whose requirements match the agent's capabilities.

agent-specific capability

An agent-specific capability is a capability that applies to one agent only. Note that the value of an agent-specific capability will override the value of a shared capability of the same name (if one exists).

See
Agents and capabilities and

Configuring capabilities for more information.

artifact
Artifact definitions are used to specify which artifacts to keep from a build and are configured for individual jobs.

See Sharing artifacts.

authors in Bamboo
An author is any person who checks in code to a repository that is associated with a Bamboo plan. An author need not be a Bamboo user.

See Generating reports on selected authors.

build
A build is the execution of either a plan or a job. The execution of a plan is referred to as a 'plan build' and that of a job is a 'job build'.

build activity
Build activity is the number of builds that occur in a given period of time.

build duration
Build duration is the total time taken to execute a plan - from the time the plan is dispatched till the plan is finished and the build results are processed.

Variations in a plan's build duration can be over time.

build log
Every build has a build log. A build log is a permanent record of all the output generated by compiling the job's source-code and executing the tests.

build queue
The Bamboo build queue controls the sequence of builds. When a plan submits a build to the build queue, the build will wait in the build queue until a suitable agent is available to run the build.

The build queue is displayed on the Current Activity tab of the Dashboard.

build result
Every completed build has a build result:

- 'Successful' — the code compiled, with or without errors, and all tests completed successfully.
- 'Failed' — either the code did not compile, or at least one test failed.
- 'Incomplete' — the build was not completed, e.g. it may have been stopped manually.

Additionally,

- if the build result is 'Failed', and the previous build result was 'Successful', the build is said to be 'Broken'.
- if the build result is 'Successful', and the previous build result was 'Failed', the build is said to be 'Fixed'.

build telemetry
Build telemetry is the insight provided by Bamboo's dynamic reports, charts and collation of build metrics. Build telemetry helps identify trends across build plans and across authors — not just focusing on the results of a single build.

capability
A capability is a feature of an agent. A capability can be defined on an agent for:

- an executable (e.g. Maven)
- a JDK
- a Version Control System client application (e.g. Git)
- a custom capability. This is a key-value property which defines a particular characteristic of an agent (e.g. 'operating.system=WindowsXP' or 'fast.builds=true').

Capabilities typically define the path to an executable that has already been installed, and must be defined in Bamboo before Bamboo or its agents can make use of those.

Capabilities can be defined specifically for an agent, or they can be shared between either all local agents or all remote agents. Note that the value of an agent-specific capability overrides the value of a shared capability of the same name (if one exists).

See Configuring capabilities for more information.

child
A child is a plan which gets triggered when another plan completes a build. See Setting up plan build dependencies.

committer
A **committer** is the Bamboo user(s) who committed code to a particular build (i.e. someone who committed code after the previous build was checked out by Bamboo).

Administrators can configure a plan's **notifications** to be sent to the build's committer(s).

**custom capability**
Custom capabilities can be used to control which **jobs** will be built by a particular agent, since agent **capabilities** are required to match job **requirements**. For example, if the builds for a particular job should only run in a Windows environment, you could create a custom capability `operating.system=WindowsXP` for the appropriate agent(s), and specify it as a requirement for this job.

- To create a new custom capability in your Bamboo system, see Defining a new custom capability.
- To specify a job's requirement for a custom capability, see Configuring a job's requirements.

**default repository**
The first repository in the list of plan repositories is the **Plan's Default Repository**. The default repository will be automatically checked out by any new **job** created.

Repository specific **Plan Variables**, such as `repository.revision.number`, will point to the default repository of a Plan. To address a specific repository, you must add the name of the repository to the end of the variable as follows: `repository.revision.number.product_core`.

**elastic agent**
An **elastic agent** is an agent that runs in the **Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2)**. An elastic agent process runs in an **elastic instance** of an **elastic image**. An elastic agent inherits its capabilities from the elastic image that it was created from.

**elastic Bamboo**
Elastic Bamboo allows you to use computing resources from the **Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2)** to run builds. Elastic Bamboo uses a **remote agent AMI (Amazon Machine Image)** to create instances of remote agents in the Amazon EC2.

**elastic block store**
The Amazon **Elastic Block Store (EBS)** provides 'EBS volumes' which can attach to EC2 instances. EBS volumes (and the 'EBS snapshots' created from these volumes) provide persistent storage for your elastic instances.

If you have relatively static resources required for building your Bamboo jobs (such as, source code checkouts and Maven repository artifacts), you can add these to an EBS volume. From this volume, you can create an EBS snapshot, which effectively records the 'state' of an EBS volume at a given point in time.

**elastic image**
An **elastic image** is an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that is stored in one of Amazon data centers for use with the Elastic Bamboo feature. An elastic image is used to create elastic instances, which in turn create elastic agents. Conceptually, an elastic image is equivalent to an operating system running on a computer's boot hard drive and elastic instances would be the software that runs on this operation system.

Each elastic image registered with the Amazon Web Services (AWS) has its own unique identifier, known as an **AMI ID**.

You can **associate multiple elastic images** with a Bamboo server. One default shared image is maintained by Atlassian in AWS, and is available to all Elastic Bamboo users.

You can also **create your own custom elastic images**.

**elastic instance**
An **elastic instance** is a running instance of an elastic image. One elastic instance is created whenever an elastic image is started. Hence, starting one elastic image multiple times, results in the creation of multiple elastic instances. Each time an elastic instance is created, one elastic agent is created on that instance.

Conceptually, an elastic instance can be thought of as a computer. The elastic agent's processes are run on this computer and the elastic image is the boot hard drive. Unlike computers, however, elastic instances are temporary and stateless. When an elastic instance is shut down:
Any changes that an elastic instance makes to the boot hard drive (e.g. agent log file) will not persist.
Any customizations to the instance itself will also be lost.

The Amazon Elastic Block Store can provide persistent storage for your elastic instances.

executable
An executable is an external program that Bamboo uses during the build process. Generally, executables compile source code to generate compiled executable files (referred to as artifacts in Bamboo). Ant, Maven, MSBuild or PHPUnit are just some examples of executables that can be used as part of your build process.

New executables can be defined as capabilities in Bamboo. Once an executable has been defined in Bamboo, it can be configured as part of a task.

See Defining a new executable capability.

favorites
Each Bamboo user can nominate their favorite plans — that is, the plans they work with the most.

Each user's favorites are displayed on the 'My' page of the Dashboard. Bamboo administrators can also configure each plan to send build result notifications to users who have nominated the plan as one of their favorites (these users are known as the plan's 'watchers').

global permission
A global permission is the ability to perform a particular operation in relation to Bamboo as a whole. See Granting global permissions to users or groups.

See also plan permission.

job
A Bamboo job is a single build unit within a plan. One or more jobs can be organized into one or more stages. The jobs in a stage can all be run at the same time, if enough Bamboo agents are available. A job is made up of one or more tasks.

A job:
- Processes a series of one or more tasks that are run sequentially on the same agent.
- Controls the order in which tasks are performed.
- Collects the requirements of individual tasks in the job, so that these requirements can be matched with agent capabilities.
- Defines the artifacts that the build will produce.
- Can only use artifacts produced in a previous stage.
- Specifies any labels with which the build result or build artifacts will be tagged.

Each new plan created in Bamboo contains at least one job known as the 'Default Job'.

Projects and plans can only be configured by Bamboo administrators (see Creating a plan).

label
A label is a convenient way to tag and group build results that are logically related to each other. Labels can also be used to define RSS feeds.

Labels can be applied to build results automatically, by specifying the label(s) in a plan (note that only Bamboo administrators can do this). Labels can also be applied to build results manually by Bamboo users.

local agent
See agent.

parent
A parent is a plan which triggers another plan to build whenever it completes a build. See Setting up plan build dependencies.

permission
See plan permission and global permission.

plan
A plan defines everything about your continuous integration build process in Bamboo.

A plan:
- Has a single stage, by default, but can be used to group jobs into multiple stages.
- Processes a series of one or more stages that are run sequentially using the same repository.
- Specifies the default repository.
- Specifies how the build is triggered, and the triggering dependencies between the plan and other plans in the project.
- Specifies notifications of build results.
- Specifies who has permission to view and configure the plan and its jobs.
- Provides for the definition of plan variables.

Every plan belongs to a project.
Projects and plans can only be configured by Bamboo administrators (see Creating a plan).

**plan permission**

A *plan permission* is the ability to perform a particular operation on a *plan* and its *jobs*. For each plan, different permissions can be granted to particular groups and/or users.

See Configuring a plan's permissions and Granting plan permissions in bulk.

See also *global permission*.

**projects in Bamboo**

A *project* is a collection of *plans*. Projects enable you to easily group and identify plans which are logically related to each other. They are especially useful when generating *reports* across multiple plans.

A project:

- Has one, or more, *plans*.
- Provides *reporting* (using the wallboard, for example) across all plans in the project.
- Provides links to other applications.

Projects are created from the create plan screen. Select New Project from the project drop down when creating a new plan.

**queue**

See *build queue*.

**reason**

A build's *reason* is the way in which the build was triggered.

Triggering in Bamboo allows plan builds to be started automatically. Bamboo has the following trigger methods:

- **Polling the repository for changes** — Bamboo polls the source repository for changes, either periodically or according to a schedule. This ensures that a plan build only runs when code has changed in the plan's source repository.
- **Repository triggers the build when changes are committed** — Requires that your source repository is configured to fire an event to Bamboo. This has the advantage of placing minimal load on your Bamboo server.
- **Cron-based scheduling** — Builds are run according to a schedule, regardless of whether any code changes have occurred. This can allow a team to structure the day according to a predictable schedule.
- **Single daily build** — The build is run at a specified time every day.

For more information, see Triggering builds.

**remote agent**

See *agent*.

See also the Bamboo remote agent installation guide.

**remote agent supervisor**

A *remote agent supervisor* is an application that is installed alongside a Bamboo remote agent, by default. The remote agent supervisor is an implementation of the Java Service Wrapper.

The remote agent supervisor monitors remote agents on the machine that it is installed on. If any remote agent crashes, the remote agent supervisor will automatically attempt to restart it. If communications are lost with the Bamboo server, the remote agent will shut itself down and wait for the remote agent supervisor to restart it.

The remote agent supervisor will run on the following operating systems:

- **Linux**:
  - x86
  - x86_64
  - IA64
  - PPC 64 bit *(but not 32 bit)*
- **Mac OS X**: all architectures
- **Solaris**: x86, x86_64 (running in 32 bit mode), IA64 (running in 32 bit mode), SPARC (both 32 bit and 64 bit)
- **Windows**: 32 bit
• 64 bit

requirement

A requirement is specified in a job or a task. A requirement specifies a capability that an agent must have for it to build that job or task. A job inherits all of the requirements specified in its tasks.

Together, capabilities and requirements control which agents can execute builds for particular jobs. Each job can only be built by agents whose capabilities match the job’s requirements. See Configuring a job’s requirements for more information.

shared capability

Shared capabilities are inherited by all applicable agents, that is, (shared) local server capabilities are inherited by all local agents, and shared remote capabilities are inherited by all remote agents. Note, however, that the value of a shared capability will be overridden by the value of an agent-specific capability of the same name (if one exists).

See:

Agents and capabilities and

Configuring capabilities.

stage

Stages group (or ‘map’) jobs to individual steps within a plan’s build process. For example, you may have an overall plan build process that comprises a compilation step, followed by several test steps, followed by a deployment step. You can create separate Bamboo stages to represent each of these steps.

A stage:

• Has a single job, by default, but can be used to group multiple jobs.
• Processes its jobs in parallel, on multiple agents (where available).
• Must successfully complete all its jobs before the next stage in the plan can be processed.
• May produce artifacts that can be made available for use by a subsequent stage.

Each new plan created in Bamboo contains at least one stage (for the default job) and is known as the ‘Default Stage’. Stages can only be configured by Bamboo administrators.

stock images

This page describes the latest available stock elastic images. The previously released elastic images are still available.

For more information about how to get a list of stock images available for your Bamboo version, see Viewing the list of Bamboo stock images.

Atlassian maintains public ‘default’ elastic images, which are currently available as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>AWS availability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu</td>
<td>All regions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows 2012</td>
<td>All regions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon Linux</td>
<td>US East region</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All stock images in Bamboo use Java 8 for the system Java.

Bamboo’s Elastic Bamboo feature uses these images by default. In your list of elastic image configurations, an image will have ‘(stock image)’ appended to its name.

On this page:

• Amazon Linux/Ubuntu stock image
• Windows stock image
• Notes

Amazon Linux/Ubuntu stock image

The stock images available for Bamboo contain one of the following operating systems:

• Amazon Linux
• Ubuntu
as well as the Bamboo elastic agent.

The images have the following default packages and capabilities:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Default packages/capabilities</th>
<th>Path/value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Builders</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ant 1.8</td>
<td>/opt/ant-1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ant 1.9</td>
<td>/opt/ant-1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 1.3</td>
<td>/opt/grails-1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 2.0</td>
<td>/opt/grails-2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 2.1</td>
<td>/opt/grails-2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 2.2</td>
<td>/opt/grails-2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 2.3</td>
<td>/opt/grails-2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 2.4</td>
<td>/opt/grails-2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 3.1</td>
<td>/opt/grails-3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 3.2</td>
<td>/opt/grails-3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2.0</td>
<td>/opt/maven-2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2.1</td>
<td>/opt/maven-2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2.2</td>
<td>/opt/maven-2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 3.0</td>
<td>/opt/maven-3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 3.1</td>
<td>/opt/maven-3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 3.2</td>
<td>/opt/maven-3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>JDKs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JDK 5</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JDK 6</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JDK 8</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JDK 9</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle JDK 7</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle JDK 8</td>
<td>/opt/jdk-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpenJDK 7</td>
<td>/opt/openjdk-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS CLI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bash (Command)</td>
<td>/bin/bash</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Docker
The latest version supplied with your Linux distribution, might be different for Amazon, Linux, and Ubuntu.

Git
/usr/bin/git

Mercurial
/usr/bin/hg

Node.js

Node 0.12.18

Node 4.7.2

Node 6.9.4

PHPUnit 3.7
/opt/phpunit-3.7

PHPUnit 4.4
/opt/phpunit-4.4

Windows stock image
The Windows stock image is built from:

- the Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard 64-bit operating system, with all updates applied.
- the Bamboo elastic agent.

Note that:

- the elastic agents now run on Java JDK 8.
- the image now uses Git for Windows and its SSH.
- support for MSBuild 2.0 and 3.5 has been removed.

The Windows stock image has the following default packages and capabilities:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Default packages/capabilities</th>
<th>Path/value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Builders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ant 1.8</td>
<td>C:\opt\ant-1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 1.3</td>
<td>C:\opt\grails-1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 2.0</td>
<td>C:\opt\grails-2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 2.1</td>
<td>C:\opt\grails-2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 2.2</td>
<td>C:\opt\grails-2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 2.3</td>
<td>C:\opt\grails-2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 2.4</td>
<td>C:\opt\grails-2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grails 3.2</td>
<td>C:\opt\grails-3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2.0</td>
<td>C:\opt\maven-2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2.1</td>
<td>C:\opt\maven-2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 2.2</td>
<td>C:\opt\maven-2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maven 3.0</td>
<td>C:\opt\maven-3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSBuild 4.0 (32bit)</td>
<td>C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v4.0.30319\MSBuild.exe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSBuild 4.0 (64bit)</td>
<td>C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework64\v4.0.30319\MSBuild.exe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAnt 0.92</td>
<td>C:\opt\nant-0.92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

JDKs

JDK 6                         | C:\opt\jdk-6               |

JDK 7                         | C:\opt\jdk-7               |
JDK 8 | C:\opt\jdk-8
---|---
JDK 9 | C:\opt\jdk-9

Browsers

Firefox 10 | C:\Program Files (x86)\Mozilla Firefox
Internet Explorer 9 | C:\Program Files (x86)\Internet Explorer

Other

Git (Cygwin Git 2.1) | C:\Program Files (x86)\Git\bin\git.exe
Mercurial 3.2 | C:\Program Files\TortiseHg\hg.exe
Node.js 4 | C:\opt\node-4\node.exe
Node.js 5 | C:\opt\node-5\node.exe
Node.js 6 | C:\opt\node-6\node.exe
Node.js 7 | C:\opt\node-7\node.exe
PHP 5.3 (with xdebug support) | c:\opt\php-5.3
PHPUnit 4.4.1 | c:\opt\phpunit-4.4

Notes

Be aware that the default packages and capabilities listed above may change with each major release of Bamboo. There is a new default image (with its own AMI ID) for each new version of Bamboo. However, older default images will still be available for use.

A task:

- Is a small discrete unit of work, such as source code checkout, executing a Maven goal, running a script, or parsing test results.
- Is run sequentially within a job on a Bamboo working directory.

Tasks may make use of an executable if required. Tasks are configured within the scope of a job. A job can be configured to execute a number of tasks, on the same working directory. For example, before executing a Maven goal, the user could substitute specific files within the working directory, substitute version numbers, check out source repositories, or execute a script.

Final tasks for a job are always executed, even if previous tasks in the job failed.

triggering

Triggering in Bamboo allows plan builds to be started automatically. Bamboo has the following trigger methods:

- **Polling the repository for changes** — Bamboo polls the source repository for changes, either periodically or according to a schedule. This ensures that a plan build only runs when code has changed in the plan's source repository.
- **Repository triggers the build when changes are committed** — Requires that your source repository is configured to fire an event to Bamboo. This has the advantage of placing minimal load on your Bamboo server.
- **Cron-based scheduling** — Builds are run according to a schedule, regardless of whether any code changes have occurred. This can allow a team to structure the day according to a predictable schedule.
- **Single daily build** — The build is run at a specified time every day.

For more information, see Triggering builds.

watcher

A plan’s watchers are the Bamboo users who have marked this plan as one of their favorites. Administrators can configure a plan’s notifications to be sent to the plan’s watchers.

Contributing to the Bamboo documentation

Would you like to share your Bamboo hints, tips and techniques with us and with other Bamboo users? We welcome your contributions.

Blogging your technical tips and guides
Have you written a blog post describing a specific configuration of Bamboo or a neat trick that you have discovered? Let us know, and we will link to your blog from our documentation.

Contributing documentation in other languages

Have you written a guide to Bamboo in a language other than English, or translated one of our guides? Let us know, and we will link to your guide from our documentation.

On this page:
- Blogging your technical tips and guides
- Contributing documentation in other languages
- Updating the documentation Itself
  - Getting permission to update the documentation
  - Our style guide
  - How we manage community updates

Related pages:
- Author Guidelines
- Atlassian Contributor License Agreement

Updating the documentation Itself

Have you found a mistake in the documentation, or do you have a small addition that would be so easy to add yourself rather than asking us to do it? You can update the documentation page directly

Getting permission to update the documentation

Please submit the Atlassian Contributor License Agreement.

Our style guide

Please read our short guidelines for authors.

How we manage community updates

Here is a quick guide to how we manage community contributions to our documentation and the copyright that applies to the documentation:

- **Monitoring by technical writers.** The Atlassian technical writers monitor the updates to the documentation spaces, using RSS feeds and watching the spaces. If someone makes an update that needs some attention from us, we will make the necessary changes.
- **Wiki permissions.** We use wiki permissions to determine who can edit the documentation spaces. We ask people to sign the Atlassian Contributor License Agreement (ACLA) and submit it to us. That allows us to verify that the applicant is a real person. Then we give them permission to update the documentation.
- **Copyright.** The Atlassian documentation is published under a Creative Commons CC BY license. Specifically, we use a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License. This means that anyone can copy, distribute and adapt our documentation provided they acknowledge the source of the documentation. The CC BY license is shown in the footer of every page, so that anyone who contributes to our documentation knows that their contribution falls under the same copyright.

_REDIRECTS_

A parent page for obsolete pages with redirects.

Checking plugin compatibility for Bamboo upgrades

Redirection Notice
This page will redirect to https://confluence.atlassian.com/display/UPM/Checking+Add-on+Compatibility+with+Application+Updates.

You can use the plugin manager's 'Upgrade Check' to verify that your plugins will still work after a Bamboo upgrade.

For example, if you are thinking of upgrading from Bamboo 3.1 to Bamboo 3.2, the upgrade check can tell you the following:

- Installed plugins that are compatible with Bamboo 3.1 and Bamboo 3.2.
- Installed plugins that are not compatible with Bamboo 3.2 but will be compatible with Bamboo 3.2 if you upgrade them.
- Installed plugins that are not compatible with Bamboo 3.2, even if you upgrade them to their latest version.
Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:

1. Log in as a user with the 'Admin' global permission.
2. Click Administration in the top navigation bar.
3. Click Plugin Manager, in the left-hand panel, under 'Plugins'.

To check the compatibility of your plugins against different Bamboo versions:

1. Click the 'Upgrade Check' tab.
2. In the ‘Check compatibility for’ dropdown menu, select the version of your application to check the plugins against.
3. Click the 'Check' button.
4. The page displays any of your installed plugins that are not compatible with the selected application version. The compatibility checker will also check the compatibility of the latest available version of each plugin (if not already upgraded). You can click on the name of any of the plugins to view more information about the plugin.

The plugins are grouped into sections under the following headings:
- **Incompatible** – The installed versions of these plugins are not compatible with the selected application version. There are currently no plugin upgrades available that are compatible with the selected application version.
- **Compatible, if upgraded** – The installed versions of these plugins are not compatible with the selected application version. However, the plugins will be compatible if you upgrade them. There are buttons allowing you to upgrade these plugins.
- **Compatible if both <the application> and the plugin are upgraded** – The installed versions of these plugins are not compatible with the selected application version. There is a plugin compatible with the newer application version, but it is not compatible with the application version you are currently running. You must upgrade the application and then upgrade the plugin. There are buttons allowing you to disable these plugins before proceeding with the upgrade.
- **Compatible** – The currently installed versions of these plugins are compatible with the selected application version.
- **Unknown** – These plugins may or may not be compatible with the selected application version. If a plugin is not registered with the Atlassian Plugin Exchange, the Universal Plugin Manager cannot check its compatibility with different application versions.

## Configuring plugins

A number of Bamboo plugins offer advanced configuration options. If you have one of these plugins installed in your application, you can view and update these configuration options via the Universal Plugin Manager (UPM).

If you would like to disable or enable a plugin, please refer to Disabling or enabling a plugin.

### Configuring a plugin

**Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:**

1. Log in as a user with the 'Admin' global permission.
2. Click Administration in the top navigation bar.
3. Click Plugin Manager, in the left-hand panel, under 'Plugins'.

**To configure a plugin in Bamboo:**

1. Click the 'Manage Existing' tab.
2. Locate the plugin that you want to configure and click its title. The plugin details section will expand.
3. Click the ‘Configure’ link for that plugin.
4. The advanced configuration options for the plugin will appear. Update the configuration settings as desired and save your changes. **Note:** The advanced configuration screens are provided by the plugin. If you encounter any problems after you click the 'Configure' link, the plugin is responsible for the issue, not the Universal Plugin Manager.

On this page:
- Configuring a plugin
- Configuration notes for specific plugins

**Related pages:**
- Add-ons
- Checking plugin compatibility for Bamboo upgrades
Configuration notes for specific plugins

Please refer to the following pages about configuring specific plugins:

Disabling or enabling a plugin

On this page:
- Disabling a plugin
- Enabling a plugin
- Disabling or enabling all user installed plugins (Safe Mode)

Related pages:
- Add-ons

Disabling a plugin

Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:
1. Log in as a user with the 'Admin' global permission.
2. Click Administration in the top navigation bar.
3. Click Plugin Manager, in the left-hand panel, under 'Plugins'.

To disable a plugin in Bamboo:
1. Click the 'Manage Existing' tab. You will see a list of the plugins installed in your application. Enabled plugins will have this icon:
2. Locate the plugin that you want to disable and click the title to expand the plugin details section.
3. Click the 'Disable' button.
4. Once a plugin has been disabled, you may need to restart your application for your change to take effect. If so, you will see a message for the plugin, 'Disabled, requires restart'. Once the plugin is fully disabled, you will see an 'Enable' link for the plugin.

Enabling a plugin

Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:
1. Log in as a user with the 'Admin' global permission.
2. Click Administration in the top navigation bar.
3. Click Plugin Manager, in the left-hand panel, under 'Plugins'.

To enable a plugin in Bamboo:
1. Click the 'Manage Existing' tab. You will see a list of the plugins installed in your application. Disabled plugins will have this icon:
2. Locate the plugin that you want to enable and click the title to expand the plugin details section.
3. Click the 'Enable' button.
4. Once a plugin has been enabled, you may need to restart your application for your change to take effect. If so, you will see a message for the plugin, 'Enabled, requires restart'. Once the plugin is fully enabled, you will see a 'Disable' link for the plugin.

Disabling or enabling all user installed plugins (Safe Mode)

Running your application in safe mode disables all user installed plugins at once. By "user installed plugins", we mean plugins that were not shipped with Bamboo but were installed later via the UPM.

All plugins that were disabled when you entered safe mode will be re-enabled when you exit safe mode.

Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:
1. Log in as a user with the 'Admin' global permission.
2. Click Administration in the top navigation bar.
3. Click Plugin Manager, in the left-hand panel, under 'Plugins'.

To enable safe mode in Bamboo:

1. Click the 'Manage Existing' tab. You will see a list of the plugins installed in your application.
2. Click the 'Enable Safe Mode' button.
3. Click the 'Continue' button in the confirmation window. All user installed plugins will be disabled and your application will now be running in 'Safe Mode'.
4. You can now make changes to your installed plugins as desired. For example, you may want to enable/disable specific plugins or plugin modules.
5. Exit safe mode by clicking one of the links in the Safe Mode banner:
   - Click 'Exit Safe Mode and restore the previous configuration' to restore your plugin configuration to its state before you entered Safe Mode.
   - Click 'Exit Safe Mode and keep the current configuration' to keep all changes made to your plugin configuration during Safe Mode.

Installing a plugin

This page describes how to install a plugin in Bamboo. You can use plugins to customize and extend the functionality of Bamboo.

A number of plugins are available from the Atlassian Plugin Exchange. You can also create your own as described in the Bamboo Plugin Guide.

Adding a plugin from the Atlassian Plugin Exchange

Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:

1. Log in as a user with the 'Admin' global permission.
2. Click Administration in the top navigation bar.
3. Click Plugin Manager, in the left-hand panel, under 'Plugins'.

To find a plugin in the Atlassian Plugin Exchange and add it to Bamboo:

1. Click the 'Install' tab in the UPM. You will see a list of featured plugins.
2. Search for your plugin as follows:
   - Enter some keywords that describe the plugin in the 'Search the Plugin Exchange' search box and press 'Enter'.
   - Alternatively, browse to the desired plugin in the list. You can choose 'Featured', 'Popular', 'Supported' (by Atlassian) or 'All available' from the 'Plugins to show' dropdown to see a different list of plugins.
3. Click the 'Install' button for the desired plugin to add it to your application. A confirmation message and the plugin details will appear when the plugin is installed successfully.

Note: You may need to restart your application for your change to take effect. The Universal Plugin Manager will inform you if this is the case.

Note: Not all plugins can be automatically installed. Some required manual installation. These plugins will have a 'Download' button instead of an 'Install' button. In these cases, you should read and follow the plugin's installation instructions.

Now, restart Bamboo with the plugin installed.

Related pages:
- Add-ons

Uploading your own plugin

Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:

1. Log in as a user with the 'Admin' global permission.
2. Click Administration in the top navigation bar.
3. Click Plugin Manager, in the left-hand panel, under 'Plugins'.

To upload your own plugin to Bamboo:

1. Click the 'Install' tab in the UPM. You will see a list of featured plugins.
2. Click the 'Upload Plugin' link. The 'Upload Plugin' window will appear.
3. Specify the location of your plugin:
If the plugin you want to install is on your computer, use the 'Browse' dialogue to choose the plugin JAR file.
• If you want to install a plugin from a remote location, enter the URL of the plugin JAR file in the 'From this URL' text box.

4. Click the 'Upload' button to upload and enable your plugin. A confirmation message will appear when the plugin is successfully installed.

*Note:* You may need to restart your application for your change to take effect. The Universal Plugin Manager will inform you if this is the case.

**Now, restart Bamboo with the plugin installed.**

Screenshot: Uploading a new plugin

![Upload Plugin](image)

### Notes
- In Bamboo, you can install and uninstall version 2 (but not version 1) plugins using the Universal Plugin Manager. You will see an Install or an Uninstall button.
- Some entries that you find listed in the Universal Plugin Manager are not actually plugins. These entries will show a Download button that allows you to download the application to your desktop and run it.

### Uninstalling a plugin

**Redirection Notice**
This page will redirect to [https://confluence.atlassian.com/display/UPM/Uninstalling+Add-ons](https://confluence.atlassian.com/display/UPM/Uninstalling+Add-ons).

If you wish to completely remove a plugin from Bamboo, you can uninstall it via the Universal Plugin Manager (UPM). If you only want to temporarily remove it, you may wish to disable the plugin instead.

**Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:**

1. Log in as a user with the 'Admin' global permission.
2. Click Administration in the top navigation bar.
3. Click Plugin Manager, in the left-hand panel, under 'Plugins'.

**To uninstall a plugin from Bamboo:**

1. Click the 'Manage Existing' tab. You will see a list of the plugins installed in your application.
2. Click the name of the plugin that you wish to uninstall. The plugin details will appear.
3. Click the 'Uninstall' button. The information summary will display an 'Uninstalling' message and the plugin will be uninstalled from your application.

**Related Topics**

Add-ons

**Upgrading your existing plugins**

**Redirection Notice**
This page will redirect to [https://confluence.atlassian.com/display/UPM/Updating+Add-ons](https://confluence.atlassian.com/display/UPM/Updating+Add-ons).

Plugins are often developed separately from Bamboo. You may wish to upgrade your plugins to more recent versions to allow them to work...
with your Bamboo version or simply to take advantage of new features in a plugin version. The Universal Plugin Manager (UPM) provides you with a list of plugins that have available upgrades and allows you to upgrade each plugin individually or in bulk.

**Upgrading a plugin**

**Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:**
1. Log in as a user with the ‘Admin’ global permission.
2. Click **Administration** in the top navigation bar.
3. Click **Plugin Manager**, in the left-hand panel, under ‘Plugins’.

**To upgrade a plugin in Bamboo:**
1. Click the ‘Upgrade’ tab. The plugin upgrades page will appear.
   - If there is a later version of a plugin that you have already installed, this page will show the latest **compatible** version of the plugin.
   - You can click the plugin name to expand the row and see more information about the plugin.
   - You can filter your list by entering keywords in the ‘Filter plugins’ text box.
2. Click the ‘Upgrade Now’ button next to the relevant plugin to update it to the plugin version shown.

**On this page:**
- Upgrading a plugin
- Upgrading all your plugins
- Notes

**Related pages:**
- Add-ons

**Upgrading all your plugins**

**Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:**
1. Log in as a user with the ‘Admin’ global permission.
2. Click **Administration** in the top navigation bar.
3. Click **Plugin Manager**, in the left-hand panel, under ‘Plugins’.

**To upgrade all available plugins in Bamboo:**
1. Click the ‘Upgrade’ tab. The plugin upgrades page will appear.
   - If there is a later version of a plugin that you have already installed, this page will show the latest **compatible** version of the plugin.
   - You can click the plugin name to expand the row and see more information about the plugin.
   - You can filter your list by entering keywords in the ‘Filter plugins’ text box.
2. Click the ‘Upgrade All’ button to update every plugin to the plugin versions shown.

**Note:** Some plugins cannot be installed via the Universal Plugin Manager. You must install these plugins manually. These plugins will not be upgraded automatically.

**Notes**
- If you are considering upgrading Bamboo, you can use the Universal Plugin Manager to check the compatibility of your plugins with your desired Bamboo version. See [Checking plugin compatibility for Bamboo upgrades](https://confluence.atlassian.com/display/UPM/Checking+plugin+compatibility+for+Bamboo+upgrades).

**Viewing the plugin audit log**

**Redirection Notice**
This page will redirect to [https://confluence.atlassian.com/display/UPM/Viewing+the+Add-on+Audit+Log](https://confluence.atlassian.com/display/UPM/Viewing+the+Add-on+Audit+Log).

The Universal Plugin Manager (UPM) keeps a log of all plugin activity for your Bamboo site. Such activities may be adding plugins, enabling plugins, and so on. You can adjust the period of time for which log entries are kept.

**Viewing the plugin audit log**

**Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:**
1. Log in as a user with the ‘Admin’ global permission.
2. Click **Administration** in the top navigation bar.
3. Click **Plugin Manager**, in the left-hand panel, under ‘Plugins’.

**To view the plugin audit log:**
1. Click the ‘Audit Log’ tab. The plugin audit log will appear, showing the 25 most recent entries.
2. Use the arrows if you want to view older entries.
3. Click the orange RSS icon if you want to receive the audit log activity in an RSS feed.

**On this page:**
- Viewing the plugin audit log
- Configuring the plugin audit log

**Related pages:**
- Add-ons

### Configuring the plugin audit log

#### Go to the Plugin Manager in Bamboo:
1. Log in as a user with the 'Admin' global permission.
2. Click **Administration** in the top navigation bar.
3. Click **Plugin Manager**, in the left-hand panel, under 'Plugins'.

#### To configure the length of time for which log entries are kept:
1. Click the 'Audit Log' tab. The plugin audit log will appear.
2. Click the 'Configure purge policy' link.
3. In the 'Purge audit log after' field, specify the number of days for which you wish to keep the logs.
4. Click the 'Confirm' button.

### Viewing your installed plugins

**Redirection Notice**
This page will redirect to https://confluence.atlassian.com/display/UPM/Viewing+Installed+Add-ons.

Using the Universal Plugin Manager (UPM) you can see a list of plugins installed on your Bamboo site. These include plugins that are bundled with Bamboo as well as any plugins that you have installed. Both enabled and disabled plugins are displayed.

#### Viewing your installed plugins

**To view your installed plugins:**
1. Click the **Manage Existing** tab. You will see a list of the plugins installed in your application.
   - The plugins are grouped into 'User-installed Plugins' and 'System Plugins'.
   - You can filter your list by entering keywords in the 'Filter visible plugins' text box.
   - The list of 'System Plugins' will be hidden by default. Click the **Show System Plugins** link to see them.
   - Enabled plugins will have this icon:

```
| Enabled plugin icon |
```

   Disabled plugins will have this icon:

```
| Disabled plugin icon |
```

   - Click the name of a plugin to view the plugin's details.
   - Click **Enable Safe Mode** to run your application in safe mode. This mode disables all user installed plugins.

**Note:** You can also see a list of the plugins that are enabled on your Bamboo server by clicking **Administration** and then **System Information** (under 'System').

**On this page:**
- Viewing your installed plugins
- Viewing a plugin's details
- Notes

**Related pages:**
- Add-ons

### Viewing a plugin's details

You can view the details for a plugin by clicking the name of a plugin in the list of installed plugins. The summary contains a short description of the plugin as well as links to plugin operations and related information.

- **Plugin key** — A unique key that identifies each plugin in the system.
- **Developer** — The name of the plugin developer and a link to the developer's home page, if provided by the plugin developer.
- **Plugin version** — The version of the plugin currently installed.
- **Manage plugin modules** — Click this link to display the plugin modules below the plugin summary. A module is a component of the
plugin. This link will only appear if the plugin has modules. If you want to enable or disable a plugin module, hover your mouse over the module and click the 'Enable/Disable' button for that module.

- **Configure** – Click this link to display the configuration settings for the plugin. This link is disabled if the plugin is disabled. Please note that not all plugins have settings that can be configured through the Universal Plugin Manager.
- **Disable** – Click this button to disable the plugin in your application. This button will only appear if the plugin is enabled.
- **Enable** – Click this button to enable the plugin in your application. This button will only appear if the plugin is disabled.
- **Uninstall** – Click this button to uninstall the plugin from your application. This button will only appear for user installed plugins.

**Notes**

- **What is the difference between a 'system plugin' and a 'user installed plugin'?**
  - System plugins are shipped with the application. These plugins are essential for the functioning of the system. Although you can disable some of them, you should not do so unless instructed by an Atlassian support engineer. Note: Not every system plugin can be disabled. You cannot uninstall any system plugins.
  - User installed plugins are those which have been installed in the application after it was set up. You can install a plugin either by uploading a JAR file or via the Universal Plugin Manager. You can uninstall these plugins.